



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

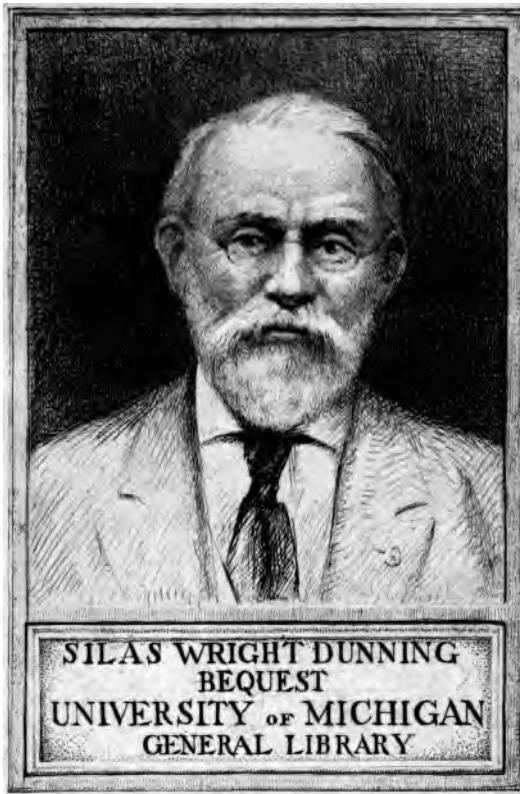
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

B

919,269





SILAS WRIGHT DUNNING
BEQUEST
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
GENERAL LIBRARY

LIBRARY USE

THE JOURNAL

OF THE

BOMBAY BRANCH

OF THE

ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

VOLUME XV.

1881—1882.

EDITED BY THE SECRETARIES.

BOMBAY:
SOCIETY'S LIBRARY, TOWN HALL.
LONDON:—TRÜBNER & Co., 57 AND 59 LUDGATE HILL.

1883.

W. M. G.
W. M. G.
7-2-36
32211

JOURNAL
OF THE
BOMBAY BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

No. XXXIX., VOL. XV.

ART. I.—*Dharmaśindhu, or the Ocean of Religious Rites, by the Priest Kasinatha.*¹ Translated from the Sanscrit and commented upon by the REV. A. BOURQUIN.

INTRODUCTION.

I worship the great Vittala,² the plenitude of gracious mercies, the easily pleased, the fulfiller of the distressed's desires, the dryer of the sea of transgressions innumerable, the ravisher of Rukmini's heart,³ the supreme being whose activity spreads over boundless limits, and who pervades the mind.

I worship Shankara,⁴ the destroyer of iniquities. May he lay his (divine)⁵ hand on my head day and night.

I hasten to worship Shiva's wife and also (Ganapati)⁶ the Lord

¹ See note 16.

² Shri-Vittala is the name of an idol worshipped at Pandharpur, a town of the Dekkan. He is more commonly called Vittoba, is considered to be an incarnation of Vishnu, the second deity of the Hindu triad, and is one of the most popular gods of the Marathas. The word I translate here and further on in the introduction by worship is "Vande," which usually is used for the bow of adoration made to the gods in the beginning of any religious performance or even of any worldly undertaking, like, for instance, the writing of a book.

³ Vittoba is here identical with Krishna, the renowned hero-god of the great epic poem Mahâbhârata; and the epithet used here refers to an anecdote related in that work, as also in another called Bhâgavatapurâna, that, namely, Rukmini, the beautiful and clever daughter of the king Bhishmaka, after having been promised into marriage to a man she could not love, heard of the heroic deeds of Krishna, became enamoured of him, and in a missive inflamed with love entreated him to save her from the impending calamity, whereupon he carried her off and married her. I have translated the word "mati" by "heart." Some native commentators take it to mean "intellect."

⁴ Shankara is another name for Shiva, the third deity of the Hindu triad.

⁵ All words placed in parenthesis are not in the Sanscrit text, but are used by me for the purpose of completing the meaning and the style of the translation.

⁶ The renowned elephant-headed god, son of Shiva and his spouse Pârvati. He puts both hindrances in one's way when displeased and removes them if propitiated.

of hindrances, the great Father (Brahma)⁷ too, with the (divine) Sarasvatī,⁸ and prostrating myself before the revered Lakshmi,⁹ Garuda,¹⁰ the thousand-headed (Shesha),¹¹ Pradyumna,¹² the lord (Shiva), the ape-god (Hanuman), the glorious Sun, the Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, (Saturn), the son of Chāyá,¹³ the six-faced (Kartikeya),¹⁴ Indra,¹⁵ and all other gods, together with my preceptors, my mother, and my father, called Ananta,¹⁶ and also Mādhava¹⁷ and the other chief

⁷ The first deity of the Hindu triad. It is a masculine form and a personified being, and quite different from Brhma, a neuter form and the impersonal Universal Essence.

⁸ The goddess of learning and speech. According to some records she is Brahma's wife, but according to others his daughter.

⁹ The wife of Vishnu and goddess of wealth and beauty.

¹⁰ The well-known bird-god and attendant of Vishnu.

¹¹ Shesha, the thousand-headed serpent-god, is described in some records as the king of the Nāgas or snakes of the seven infernal worlds; in others he is represented as forming the couch and canopy of Vishnu, and sometimes as supporting on one of his heads the seven infernal worlds followed by the terrene and six other superposed celestial worlds.

¹² An epithet of Kāmadeva, the god of love.

¹³ The shadow personified and wife of the Sun.

¹⁴ Better known under the name of Skanda, the god of war. He is said to have been born of Shiva alone without feminine help. At his birth each of the six Kritikas or Pleiades offering her breast to him, his head divided itself into six to the satisfaction of each of them. Hence the appellation "six-faced god."

¹⁵ Indra is the god of the atmosphere and lord of the gods of the sky, but subordinated to the triad.

¹⁶ Here the author gives only his father's name, but at the end of the book he mentions his own as well as the names of his father, uncle, and grandfather, who all seem to have been very rigid in their observance of the law. His grandfather, the priest Kashinatha, was a learned Brahmin of the Konkan. His uncle is said to have possessed a great knowledge of astronomy and astrology. His father Yajneshvar left, when young, his birthplace near Ratnágiri, in the Konkan, and became a student of the seminary of Pandharpur, in the Dekkan (see note 2). After he had finished the course of his studies, he married, but whether he had other children besides the author of this work, cannot be surmised from the contents of the book. He was so learned in the holy scriptures, that he was considered an incarnation of the Infinite One. At a later period of his life he became an ascetic wanderer, and died on the shore of the holy river Bhima. The author of a book on Hindu rites, which depend so much on the motions of the celestial bodies, could scarcely have had a better entourage than that of an uncle astronomer and astrologer and of a father acquainted from his earliest years with all the traditional rites of the orthodox temple priests. This work is said to have been completed in the year 1712 of the era of Shaliyahana (compare notes 35 and 36). Though of such recent date, it has become one of the most read standard books of orthodox Hindus, as its contents are known to be by no means of modern origin, but rather a reproduction of passages on rites taken from numerous old scriptural works of a more promiscuous character (compare note 19). It is to be seen in the house of every orthodox Hindu, not only in Western India, where it was first edited, but all over India: the holy Benares itself has reproduced several editions of it, and it is consulted at every occasion of religious rites to be performed.

¹⁷ An ancient author of religious treatises.

and honourable sages, I compose this moderate¹⁸ compendium of religious rites.

Reviewing older and well known (scriptural) treatises, but mostly avoiding a merely textual reproduction of sentences, I compose (this work) after the manner of the Nirnayasindhu¹⁹ for the instruction of the ignorant.

PART I.

CHAPTER I.—ON TIMES.

There are six different ways (of reckoning) time, viz., by years, solar half-years, seasons, months, half-months, and days.

There are five kinds of years: the lunar and the solar years, the year called Sávana, the sidereal year, and the year of Jupiter.

The lunar year consists of twelve months, the first of which is called Chaitra (the second Vaishákha), &c.,²⁰ each running from the first

¹⁸ Everything is relative, for what appears here to the Hindu mind of the author to be a moderate compendium of rites, is to the European reader a prolix and voluminous work of some 500 pages in 8vo.

¹⁹ The name of a work belonging to the Mimánsa school, one of the three great divisions of orthodox Hindu philosophy. The name of its author is Kama-lakarábhata, but the time of its composition is not known. It is believed by Hindus to be very ancient. Besides the Nirnayasindhu, the contents of our work show that its author has used numerous other old works, such as Hemádri, Yájnavalkya, Kálamádhava, Mayókha, Kaustubha, &c.

²⁰ The names of the twelve months are: Chaitra, Vaishákha, Jyeshta, Asháda, Shrávana, Bhádrapada, Áshvina, Kártika, Márgashirsha, Pausa, Mágha, and Phalguna. A careful remembrance of the consecution of these months is quite necessary to the right understanding of most parts of this work. The third chapter, for instance, on intercalary months would, without it, remain utterly incomprehensible to the reader. Each of these months consists of 29½ terrestrial days, the time which elapses between one conjunction of the moon and the sun to the next, that is, from new moon to new moon. However, to avoid the fraction, twelve months of 29 and 30 days alternately have been arranged, making a year of 354 days. Each of these months, whether of 29 or 30 days, is divided into 30 unequal parts called Tithis or dates. The numeration of these dates, however, does not run from 1 to 30, but only from 1 to 15, that is, to the end of the first half of the month, which is called the increasing or bright moon half month, when it begins again with 1 to 15 for the second half of the month, called the decreasing or dark moon half month. Now, in order to bring this year of 354 days into harmony with the solar course and with the seasons, a complicated scheme of intercalations, which will be described in Chapter III., has been devised by Hindu astronomers.

This clearly synodical lunar year has been for decades of centuries or more, and is still the single one among all Hindu sects all over India. Whatever wrongly may have been written by Europeans on this point to the contrary, must rest on misapprehension or carelessness, or perhaps with some on the want of the necessary knowledge of Sanscrit, without which no Indian calendar can be properly understood. That a scholar like Duncan Forbes in his Hindustáni Grammar, p. 148, says that the Hindus reckon time by solar years consisting of twelve equal portions, which it pleases him to call solar months, I can explain

increasing moon-day to the new moon-day, and of 354 days, or, when there is an intercalary month, of thirteen months (with 384 days).

only by conjecturing that he must have mistaken the Indian Tithis or dates for days, from which, however, they differ widely. Perhaps he looked at the dates of the month and found them to be always thirty; but had he counted the days, that is, Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, &c., he would soon have found that six of the twelve months of the year have really only twenty-nine days, and would have then looked carefully into the real state of the Tithis, which he would have found to be a strange, though not arbitrary division, of each month into very unequal thirty parts, be the month one of thirty or one of twenty-nine days. He would have found Tithis of more than 26 hours and others of scarcely 21 hours, as a proof that the principle of computing the Tithis is widely different from that of computing terrestrial or sidereal days. The *Surya Siddhanta*, Chap. 14, 12, expresses itself in the following terms on the subject:—"The time in which the moon moving from the sun describes 12° of its orbit is a Tithi." And the well known Hindu astronomer, Professor Keropant Chatré, has kindly given me the following definition of the Tithi:—"The Tithi," says he, "is the time which the apparent moon requires to move over 12° from the apparent sun." Accordingly, the computation of the Tithis rests first on an arbitrary division of the moon's orbit into thirty equal parts of 12° each, which parts are taken as measures for the time the moon requires to pass through them. Now, if the moon's course were always uniform, then must also the Tithis be uniform; but as its velocity is accelerated or diminished in the measure the moon in its elliptical revolution approaches the earth or recedes from it, it is obvious that it requires more time to describe certain 12° than others, and that therefore the Tithis must be unequal. A careful examination of the tables of a Sanscrit calendar shows that the shortest Tithi occurs at the time when the moon is at its nearest approach to the earth, as the velocity of its motion is then the greatest. It is likewise evident that, as at least one of the Tithis of each month is of nearly 27 hours, the sun may rise twice in it. This is the so-called Tithi Vriddhi, which stretches over a full day and parts of the two days enclosing it. In this case the first day of the three retains the date of the preceding Tithi in which a sunrise occurred, say, the fifth, a Monday, the enclosed day is the real sixth, a Tuesday, and the third is the Tithi Vriddhi, or completing sixth, a Wednesday. But in this manner we should have a supernumerary day at the end of the month, if it were not reduced by means of the Kshaya Tithi or subtracting date. This is the short Tithi in which no sunrise occurs. It is taken together with the preceding Tithis and both ascribed to a single day, bringing thus the days to their original number, viz., 29½ or 29 in a month and 30 in the next, while by the whole process both months are sub-divided into thirty Tithis which were absolutely necessary for the performance, for instance, of obligatory funeral rites, which monthly and yearly must take place at the very date of death. Had this sub-division of the lunar months of twenty-nine and thirty terrestrial days alternately not been contrived, the funeral rites of a man could not have been performed in the month of twenty-nine days whose death had occurred on the last day of the month with thirty days. These puzzling Indian dates, which begin at any hour of the day and can be known only by a daily reference to the calendar, are yet followed by the whole of Hindu India both for civil and religious purposes, and as some of them are considered as holy and others as unholy, like, for instance, the above Tithi Vriddhi and Kshaya Tithi, as also the Amavásia, or dark moon date, and the Paurnimá, or full moon date, with other numerous divisions and sub-divisions of sacredness and unsacredness, the common people in every act of life are made dependent on the more learned Gurus and Shastris.

As to the renowned so-called "Indian Solar Tables" procured to the learned Bailly by the two Jesuit missionaries Patouillet and Du Champ, and on which that savant in his "Astronomie Indienne et Orientale" built a remarkable speculative superstructure with regard to the two dates 1491 and 3102 B.C., up

The cyclus' sixty years, called Prabhava, Vibhava, Shukla, &c.,²¹ are lunar years.

The solar year consists of 365 days,²² the time the sun takes to pass through the twelve zodiacal mansions beginning with Aries.²³

to which the above solar tables were said to run and to prove that the solar course and a solar year of 365 days were already known in India at that early date, they have been proved by the great Laplace in his "Système du Monde," p. 330—332, to be impossibilities, as, according to scientific astronomy, the general conjunction of sun, moon, and planets reported in those tables cannot have taken place at those dates, and to be mere speculative fabrications of comparatively modern times computed backwards.

It is well known that the Jews have for ages followed the lunar month and year. Like the Hindus, they have a common lunar year of 354 days, consisting of twelve lunar months of twenty-nine and thirty days alternately, or sometimes two months having twenty-nine and the two following thirty; and an embolismic year of 384 days, consisting of thirteen lunar months, the thirteenth additional month serving to harmonise the lunar year with the seasons.—The names of the twelve months are: Nissan, Iyar, Siyyan, Tammuz, Ab, Ellul, Tishri, Heshván, Kislev, Tebet, Shebat, and Adar. This last one is in the embolismic year repeated, and called, therefore, Veadar. That the Muhammadans and Arabs also follow the lunar months is a well-known fact which has been explained by many writers on their laws and customs, and needs no mention here. There can, therefore, be no doubt as to the lunations having been in the ages and among the nations of antiquity the first measure of time.

²¹ The names of the sixty years of the cyclus are: Prabhava, Vibhava, Shukla, Pramoda, Prajāpati, Angira, Shrimukha, Bháva, Yuvá, Dhita, Ishvara, Bahudhánia, Pramáthi, Vikrama, Vrisha, Chitrabhanú, Subhánú, Tárana, Párvatíva, Vyaya, Sarvajit, Sarvadáhári, Virodhi, Vikriti, Khara, Nandana, Vijaya, Jaya, Manmatha, Durmukha, Hemalambi, Vilambi, Vikári, Shárvari, Plava, Shubhakrit, Shobhana, Krodhi, Vishvávasu, Pařábhava, Plavanga, Kilaka, Saumya, Sádhárana, Virodhákrit, Paridhávi, Pramádi, Ananda, Rákshasa, Anala, Pingala, Kálayukta, Sidhárti, Baudra, Durmati, Dundubhi, Rudhirodgári, Rakttákshi, Krodhana, and Kshaya. (As to the origin of this cyclus cf. note 36, last paragraph.)

²² This of course is a round number, for Indian astronomers, living as early as the sixth or even fifth century of our era, knew of the fraction to be added, though they make it exceed the real solar course by about an Indian hour or 24 minutes. The author of the Siddhánta Shiromany gives the length of the solar year to be 365 days, 15 ghaṭikas, 30 palas, and 22½ vipula, a ghaṭika being 24 minutes, a pala 24 seconds, and a vipula 24".

²³ This solar year of 365 days cannot have been in use among Hindus, or even known to them at a very remote period of their history; as,

1st, all their religious ceremonies are based upon the lunar year (cf. note 20); as,

2nd, their present calendar year, though harmonised with the solar year since perhaps nearly 1,400 years (cf. note 36), is a pure lunar year, as described in note 20, with intercalations; as,

3rd, at the beginning of even those ceremonies which they now perform in connection with solar events (for instance, at the time of each of the twelve solar passages into the zodiacal signs) they carefully pronounce and repeat (cf. note 27) the date of the year, month, and day of the moon-phases year, explained in note 20; and as,

4th, had they known the solar year, they would never have invented and adopted the lunar year with all the additions and reductions they require to adjust it to the seasons.

The year called Sávana has 360 days.²⁴

From the above ; from what we have said in note 20 ; from the jealous zeal with which we see the Hindus have from their accustomed unwillingness to accept anything foreign to their soil, in spite of their knowledge of the solar year and of the necessity they were in to adopt it for the purpose of harmonising their own lunar year to the seasons, carefully preserved and followed the lunar year ; there can be no doubt as to the solar year having been imported from the West into India, even if it were not possible by means of the history of the zodiac and of the lunar mansions, to prove, as Lassen has so conclusively done, that the Hindus' knowledge of exact astronomy is posterior and filial to that of Babylon and the Greeks.

²⁴ Some have supposed that this Sávana year of 360 terrestrial days (a terrestrial day being the time between one sunrise and the next) had never been but the well-known fictive year of Indian astronomers, one day being made to correspond with one degree of the ecliptic, one ghaṭika with one minute, and one pala with one second (*cf.* note 31), but never in use among any nation, as such a year would soon have ceased to be in harmony with the seasons. Against such an hypothesis, however, are the two facts, that the most ancient rites of the Hindus, like, for instance, the three daily worships and others, as will be seen in the sequel, are decidedly connected with terrestrial days, and not with the Tithis or dates on which more modern rites are all dependent ; and that this very Sávana year of 360 terrestrial days is still at the present day the one exclusively in use among the Zend Avesta Parsis. They brought it with them from Persia at the time of their immigration into India, and all their religious ceremonies being based upon it, they have up to this day, and in spite of all contrary influences, carefully followed it. It has twelve months of thirty terrestrial days, and without the sub-division into weeks, which are quite unknown to them, each day bearing a different name. In their present calendar they bring this Sávana year into harmony with the solar one by intercalating five days at the end of the year, which bear no names nor dates, and which, as they say, they "throw away." When this insertion of five days first took place, that is, when they first became acquainted with the subtil course, could be ascertained only by a careful inspection of their almanacs and temple records of the whole period of their era, the present date of which is 1240. Of the remaining 5 hours and 56 minutes they know nothing, so that, if the intercalation has begun with the first year of their era, their year must now have passed nearly through all the seasons of the year. The priests, with whom rested the knowledge of astronomy and the responsibility of the calendar, its days being bound up with their religious ceremonies, declared the five days to be holy and completely to be set apart.

The names of the twelve months are : Pharvardin, Ardišes, Khordad, Tir, Amardad, Sarévar, Mér, A'va, A'dar, Dé, Baman, and Aspandad.

The names of the thirty days are : Ormuzd, Baman, Ardišes, Sarévar, Aspandad, Khordad, Amardad, Dépádar, A'vá, Khorsad; Mor, Tir, Gos, Dakmér, Mér, Saré, Rastu, Pharvardin, Bérám, Rám, Guvad, Deptin, Din, Asisan, Astad, Asman, Jenjad, Marespan, Anderám.

Interesting it is to see all the names of the months recurring in their pure form as names of days except Dé, which becomes the composed Dépádar.

What these names signify, and whether in their meaning they bear any resemblance with the appellations of months and days of other nations, I am unable to say. It is remarkable that this same kind of solar year, consisting of 360 days with five epagomenic days was also in use not only among the ancient Egyptians, but also among the Mexicans and Peruvians, for at the time of the discovery and conquest of the New World, Spanish writers, describing the manners and religious usages of those nations, reported that their year was a solar one and consisted of 360 days with a yearly interval of five days. The great Tapirac, who in his "Système du Monde" describes fully this Peruvian and

The sidereal year consists of twelve sidereal months, which shall be described later on, and of 324 days.²⁵

The year of Jupiter has 361 days, just the time Jupiter wants to travel from Aries to the next mansion, and so on.²⁶

In connection with the declaration²⁷ of religious acts, &c., the lunar year should be used and no other.

Mexican year, says that those nations not having had themselves a scientifical knowledge of the solar course, nor any written records of the heavenly phenomena necessary for such a computation, must have received their solar year from the north of Asia; yet he seems to be puzzled how such a year of 360 days with five intercalary days can have come to them from Asia, where no such year has ever been in use. Had he known the fact we have just recorded as to the ancient year of the Persians, whose political influence once held sway over the whole of Asia, no doubt as to the truth of his assertion could have entered his mind (*cf. note 35*).

²⁵ I find nothing from which I could deduct that this year has ever been anything else than a year used by astronomers for celestial calculation. It is made up of twelve months of twenty-seven days each (in round numbers, of course, for in reality it is 27 $\frac{1}{4}$, 7 $\frac{1}{4}$, 43 $\frac{1}{4}$, and 12 $\frac{1}{4}$). This is just the time the moon, progressing somewhat more than thirteen degrees a day, wants for its course through the twenty-seven sidereal mansions of the oldest Hindu lunar ecliptic in which the 22nd, namely, Abhijit, is wanting. In the Jyotishasāra, which must therefore belong to a later time, I find the following 28: Ashvini, Bharani, Krittika, Rohini, Mrīga, Ardrā, Punarvasu, Pushya, Ashleshā, Maghā, Pūrvāphalgunā, Uttarāphalgunā, Hasta, Chitrā, Svāti, Viśhākhā, Anurādhā, Jyeṣṭhā, Mula, Purvāshādā, Uttarāshādā, Abhijit, Shrāvana, Dhanishtā, Shatārakā, Purvabhadrapadā, Uttarabhadrapadā, Revati.

²⁶ Jupiter's passage from one sign to the next taking place in 361 days, its whole course through the Zodiac is accomplished in 4,332 days. This computation of our author is but by half a day short of the scientific computation of our time, and may therefore be taken as quite correct in accordance with what we have adduced in note 36 concerning Indian astronomical plus or minus fractions. Hindu astronomers and almanack-makers, however, in their computation of Jupiter's course do not follow the rules of the Dharmasindhu. In a series of calendars for the years 1757 to 1769 of Śālivahana's era, I find that Jupiter entered Gemini on the 6th of the first half of the month of Jyeṣṭhā 1757, and that passing through the whole of the zodiac, it re-entered the same sign on the 2nd of the first half of the additive month of Jyeṣṭhā in 1769, the two dates, including 4,368 days, which, divided by 12, the number of the zodiacal signs, give exactly 364 days for a mean passage of Jupiter from one sign to another. It is interesting to mark here that this mean passage of 364 days is conformable to the solar year of 364 days in use among Hindus at some former period of their astronomical knowledge, and which is described by Bailly in his "Astronomie Orientale." Indian astronomers of that time, seeing that Jupiter's passage from one sign to the next was nearly equal to one solar year, gave up the difference, and for convenience sake made it exactly equal to it, saying that one course of Jupiter was equal to twelve solar years.

²⁷ This declaration must be made in the following manner. We will suppose that to-day's date is the twelfth day of the increasing moon of Māgha 1802. Before performing a sacrifice or any other religious rite the devotee must say: "I" (and here follow his name and surname) "in the Shaka era, in the year 1802, in the Shishira season (*cf. note 35*), in the increasing moon half month of Māgha, on the twelfth day, do offer this sacrifice."

There are two kinds of solar half-years, the Northing and the Southing.²⁸ The Southing begins with the sun entering Cancer and stretches over its passage through six of the mansions. The Northing begins with the sun entering Capricorn and stretches over its passage through the six (other) mansions.

There are also two kinds of seasons: the solar and the lunar. Beginning with Pisces or Aries, the sun's passage through two and two mansions makes up each time one of the six (solar) seasons called Vasanta,²⁹ &c. Beginning with the mouth of Chaitra there are six lunar seasons each of two months, and called (also) Vasanta, &c.

The lunar season in which an intercalary month occurs consists of somewhat less than 90 days. It is excellent at the time of declaring religious acts performed either after the ritual called Revelation or that called Tradition,³⁰ to remember (and pronounce) the (names of the) lunar seasons (*cf.* note 27).

There are four kinds of months: the lunar, the solar, the Sávana, and the sidereal months. The lunar month begins either with the first increasing moon-day and ends with the dark moon-day, or it begins with the first decreasing moon-day and ends with the full-moon day (*cf.* note 20). Yet of both ways of reckoning, the more commonly used is that which begins with the first increasing moon-day. North of the Vindya mountains, however, they should begin their months with the first day of the decreasing moon. These lunar months, beginning with the first called Chaitra, should be remembered (and

²⁸ In connection with these two half-years we shall always translate "Northing" and "Southing," and not "Northern" and "Southern"; that their peculiarity be always borne in mind, namely, that they are not congruent to our European way of calculating the solar course running from one equinoctial point to the other on each side of the equator, but that they are computed after the solar course from solstice to solstice and back again.

²⁹ The six seasons are: Vasanta (spring), Grishma (hot season), Varsha (monsoon), Sarad (autumn), Hemanta (cold season), and Shishira (cool season), spring beginning either in the end of March, or in the first days of April.

³⁰ The two words I translate by Revelation and Tradition are Shruti and Smriti. Shruti is "what is heard," specially the scriptures, called Vedas, as heard by the ancient sages from Brahma's own mouth. Smriti is "what is remembered," "moved in the mind," and "commented upon," and refers to all human commentaries and other scriptural literature relating to the Vedas, like the Kalpasutras, Sikshá, Chandas, Nirukta, Vyákerana, Jyotisha, Grihya-sutras, Sámayáchárikasutras, Dharmashástras, Itihásas, Puranas, and others, some of which works are unvedic, but still considered as revealed truth. Shruta and Smarta, the words of our text, mean therefore acts performed in connection with Shruti and Smriti, but chiefly the two kinds of holy fire used for the daily and other burnt offerings, and kindled by a Bráhmin householder in the holy fire-room set apart for this purpose.

their names pronounced) at the time of performing religious rites (*cf.* note 27).

Some (astronomers) beginning with Pisces call the months of Chaitra, &c., solar months. A solar month begins with the entrance of the sun into a zodiacal sign and ends with its entrance into another.

The Sávana month consists of thirty (terrestrial) days (*cf.* note 24).

The sidereal month (*cf.* note 25) is reckoned after the moon's passage through the twenty-seven sidereal mansions beginning with the Twins.

The time from the first increasing moon-day to the full moon-day is called the light half month, and the time from the first decreasing moon-day to the new moon-day is called the dark half month.

There are 60 ghatikas (or Indian hours) in a day.³¹

The Shruta is the Vedic burnt offering. It is not generally performed now except perhaps by some few Bráhmins of Benares and other holy places. It must consist of three fires which a Bráhmin householder kindles on three specially prepared fire-places forming a half-circle. Turned towards the east the Bráhmin steps forth followed by his wife; facing him towards the east is the fire called Ahavanya dedicated to Vishnu; to his right, towards the south, is the fire called Dakshina dedicated to Bráhma; and to his left, towards the north, is the fire called Garhapatyas dedicated to Shiva. Branches of the Ficus Religiosa, Kusha or other holy kind of grass, clarified butter, rice and sesamum seed are then gradually and under the necessary incantations thrown on the fire by the householder, while his wife, as a symbol of their unity, lays her right hand on his right arm. Only accompanied by her can a householder perform this rite. When a widower, he must relinquish his right to do so to his married son or nearest married relative, who henceforth performs the family ceremonies until the time at least of the father's remarriage. These fires, according to Vedic teaching, ought not to be extinguished, but kept glowing by means of lumps of dry cowdung added twice a day as fuel. Should they go out accidentally, then must fire be gained out of two pieces of wood from the Ficus Religiosa by means of an iron axis turned by a drill-bow. From them is the fire taken by which funeral piles are set ablaze.

All these accompanying features of the Shruta are found again with the Smarta burnt-offering, which is performed in accordance with the teaching of Smriti, and consists in the kindling of one fire only. It is still performed by a few rich Bráhmins in Bombay, and by many of the twice-born in up-country places and villages, where they more easily secure a room, which they dedicate to this rite, and call therefore the "house of fire." An earthen pot half buried in the ground contains the glowing holy cowdung fire.

The place is considered as holy, and cannot be entered by any one except after a thorough purification. A fuller description of this rite will follow in the course of the translation.

³¹ Accordingly a ghatika is equal to 24 minutes of our time; 2 ghatikas make a muhurta, used in connection with sacrificial acts by astrologers. A ghatika is divided into 60 kala (also palas), or Indian minutes, and the kala again into 60 vikalas (also vipalas), or Indian seconds. This method is extremely convenient, as all its divisions agree exactly with the divisions of the ecliptic, one day being equal to one degree, one ghatika equal to one minute, one kala to one second, and one vikala to one-sixtieth of a second of the ecliptic. As to the fact that one day is not exactly equal to one degree, nor one ghatika to one minute of the ecliptic, Indian astronomers know it and have

Thus is the first chapter of the compendium of the Ocean of Religious Rites.

CHAPTER II.

Here follows a definition (of what must be observed at the time) of the sun's entrance into the zodiacal signs.

When the sun enters into Aries, the propitious time (for the performance of religious rites) is 15 ghaṭikas (*cf.* note 31) before and 15 ghaṭikas after the event; yet some say only ten before and ten after it; when in Taurus the preceding 16 ghaṭikas; in Gemini the following 16; in Cancer the preceding 30; in Leo the preceding 16; in Virgo the following 16; in Libra the preceding and the following 15, or, as some say, 10 before and 10 afterwards; in Scorpio the preceding 16; in Sagittarius the following 16; in Capricorn the following 40; in Aquarius the preceding 16, and in Pisces the following 16.

Should the sun enter Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius, Pisces, or Capricorn at the end of a day, there remaining only 2 ghaṭikas or so, then the time preceding the event is propitious (instead of the time following it, as ruled above); and if the sun* enters into Taurus, Leo, Scorpio, Aquarius, or Cancer early in the morning, when only 2 ghaṭikas or so of the day are passed, then the time following the event is propitious (and not the time preceding it, as ruled above). Yet, as to the sun's entrance into Cancer in the morning, some say that the preceding day is to be considered as its holy time.

Now as to what must be observed when the sun enters at night time into one of the signs of the zodiac. If the event takes place before midnight, then is the afternoon of the preceding day its propitious time, but if it occurs after midnight, then is the forenoon of the following day propitious. Should it take place just at midnight, then both the afternoon of the preceding day and the forenoon of the following are propitious. This rule should be followed at the nightly entrance of the sun into any one of the twelve zodiacal signs except Capricorn and Cancer. Should the sun, when in the solstice, enter Capricorn at night, then is the whole following day holy; or Cancer, then is the (whole) preceding day holy.

Three ghaṭikas after sunset make up the evening twilight. If the sun enters Capricornus at that time, then the preceding day is holy.

Three ghaṭikas before sunrise make up the morning twilight. If at

therefore invented quite an ingenious way of equalizing the result of computations by means of certain additions and subtractions, the description of which would lead us too far.

that time the sun enters Cancer, then is the following day its holy time.

Thus are the peculiarities of the twilights set forth in the scriptures on astronomy.

Now as to presents (to be made to Bráhmans) at such times. When the sun is in Aries a ram should be given; when in Taurus a cow; when in Gemini clothes, provisions, &c.; when in Cancer clarified butter and a cow; when in Leo an umbrella and gold; when in Virgo a house and clothes; when in Libra sesamum seed and cow-milk; in Scorpio a lamp; in Sagittarius clothes and a chariot; in Capricorn fuel and fire;³² in Aquarius a cow, water,³³ and grass; in Pisces fields and necklaces; and other more donations which can be looked for (in other scriptures).

When the sun enters into the two solstitial signs (Cancer and Capricorn), or into the (two equinoctial) signs of Aries and Libra, one should, either during one day or during three days preceding the event, fast, bathe, and make donations. The last fasting should be kept throughout the day and night in which the solar entrance takes place, or throughout the day and night of its propitious time, just as it (according to the rules given above) may occur. This fasting is to be kept by a householder who has no son³⁴ with the desire of expiating his sin. It is voluntarily performed, and for some particular object, and not one of the fixed and obligatory rites.

Funeral rites to the manes, performed at a solar entrance into a zodiacal sign, must be without the (usual) rice balls;³⁵ but if performed at the sun's entrance into the solstitial signs (Cancer and Capricorn), then they are obligatorily regular.

Just at the time of the sun's passage into certain signs, certain donations must be made, so also before it enters into the sign, at its

³² In this rapacious list one is rather astonished to meet with such easy presents as fire and water, and they both are often used by Bráhmans, in discussion, as an example of their disinterestedness. However, it strikes one that they could as well have devised them as use them for the very purpose of feigning such a virtue. Besides, it must not be forgotten that even fire and water cannot be presented without the copper or brass (sometimes, as I hear, gold) vessels in which they are contained.

³³ A son being, according to Indian scriptures, necessary for the performance of the prescribed funeral rites, without which a deceased father's spirit has, sometimes for ages, to be without enjoyment, and, in a disembodied state, to roam through space, it is considered as a punishment of the gods for a sin committed either in this life or in one of the previous phases of the transmigratory course, to be without male issue; hence the above fast performed with the desire to remove the curse and gain the good-will of the gods.

³⁴ Rice balls, water, and other provisions are offered at such times to deceased ancestors, who are said to eat the essence thereof.

passage through a "portion" of the half-yearly course, those donations, ablutions, &c., must be performed which are proper to the (following) conjunction. These "portions" are described in the scriptures on astronomy. There are in this present year 1712 of the era of Sháliváhana,²⁵ twenty-one "portions" of the half-yearly solar course.²⁶ Thus

²⁵ The era of Sháliváhana is called Shaka, and begins with the year 78 after Christ. It is adopted by the whole of Southern India, from the Nerbudda and Vindhya mountains southwards. Nations between the Vindhya mountains and the Himalayas follow the era of Vikramáditya, called Samvat, which begins with the year 57 before Christ. Both eras consist of lunar years of 354 days, which are now harmonized with the solar year by means of intercalations, but when they first began to do it, is not known (*cf.* note 23).

²⁶ The word I translate by "half-yearly solar course" is Ayana (*cf.* note 28). Ayana-amsha means therefore a "portion of the half-yearly solar course" and is commonly used for one degree of the ecliptic, which is divided as follows :

The whole Bhágana or ecliptic is divided into 12 Ráshi or zodiacal signs.	
The Ráshi into	30 Amsha or degrees.
The Amsha into	60 Kala or minutes.
The Kala into	60 Vikala or seconds.

That Ayanámsha means a degree of the ecliptic is clear. That, however, Ayanámsha in the above text has a special meaning, is evident, for the author says that in the year 1712 of Sháliváhana's era (*cf.* notes 35 and 12) there were 21 such portions or degrees. I at first thought that this was a mere astrological calculation, but upon reflecting that even such astrological numbers were seldom unconnected with some real fact, I set to work in order to find the manner after which this number 21 was computed. In spite of the numerous and careful inquiries I made from astrologers and other Bráhmins versed in the sacred books, except that in the present year 1880 or 1802 of Sháliváhana's era there were 22 such portions with strong fraction, I could learn nothing, either because they themselves were ignorant of its meaning or way of computation, or because, which is more probable, they were unwilling to throw any light on the subject. After much ransacking of astronomical and astrological treatises, I found in the Gráhalághava, a treatise written in the beginning of the 15th century, the following short passage concerning the Ayanámsha of our text : अथ वेदान्यव्यूनः खरसहतः शकोयनात्मा : which means : "from the (current year of the) era of Sháliváhana subtract the Vedas, the Sea and the Sea, divide the rest with Cavity and Taste, and you shall have the Ayanámsha." Now, according to the symbolical meaning of the above words, as used in astronomy for the very purpose of rendering it obscure to the uninitiated, "Vedas" stands for the number 4, each "Sea" stands also for 4, making thus by numeration 444, which is the sum to be subtracted; "Cavity" stands for 0 (cypher) and "Taste" for 6, which reverted make 60, the divisor.

Now, take the year given in the above text	1,712
Subtract.....	444

Which divide by	60) 1,268 (21
	120

68
60

the holy time of the "portion" is the twenty-first day preceding the sun's entrance into the zodiac sign. Thus (at least) must its conclusive

giving thus 21 Ayanámsha or degrees with a fraction of eight kalas or minutes. The same operation made on the current year 1802 of Sháliváhana's era will give 22 degrees with a strong fraction of 38 minutes, just the number mentioned above. So much as to the computation itself. Now as to the meaning of the subtrahend 444, of the divisor 60, and of the quotient 21 (the Ayanámsha of the text). Concerning this point nothing can be surmised from the concise text of the Grahalághava itself, but a commentary on the Grahalághava, written in the beginning of the 16th century, says in connection with the very words we have quoted from the Grahalághava, that the first time a certain instrument for measuring the sun's shadow (a gnomon), which he minutely describes, was "in the year 444 at the time of the vernal equinox and in the middle of the day" used, no shadow whatever was thrown at the base, but that next year, at the vernal equinox, a shadow of one kala, or one minute, was observed, and that it went increasing one minute each year. Now, as there are 60 minutes in a degree or Ayanámsha, and as each year adds only one minute to the shadow, in order to find the number of Ayanámshas which are passed, a simple division of the era by 60 is sufficient, having previously taken care, however, to subtract from the era 444, the number of years up to which nothing was known and no computation made of these Ayanámshas.

To every one who has so far attentively followed us, it must be evident that the Ayanámshas denote the degrees of what we call the "precession of the equinoxes" discovered by the Greek Hipparchos in the year 130 B.C. An equinoctial precession of one minute a year is of course too much, as according to exact astronomy it is only of $50\frac{1}{3}$; but this slight difference can easily be accounted for partly by the primitiveness of the astronomical instruments used (as described in the commentary on the Grahalághava), partly by the penumbra, which is not taken into account, and partly by the fact that, as is seen by all computations of the sort and by what the above quoted commentary clearly says, small plus or minus fractions are not to be reckoned. Native astronomers know very well this want of exactness in their calculations, for a Marúthi translator and commentator of the above Grahalághava says that 210 years after the Grahalághava had been written, mistakes were discovered and mended by the astronomer Vishvanatha Deivajna by means of additions and subtractions. It is here important to remember that also at about the same period lived the great Mathematician and the Father of Indian astronomy Aryabhatta, who is commonly believed to have first introduced the knowledge of the precession of the equinoxes into Indian astronomy. (cf. Lassen's Indische Alterthumskunde, p. 1144.) The commentary to the Aryabhattijsa says that Aryabhatta was born after the 36th century of Kaliyuga. Now, as the Kaliyuga begins with the year 3102 B.C., he must have been born after the year 500 A.D., which fact can but add strength to our argument that the Ayanámshas in the sense of our text (or precession of the equinoxes) were first computed in the year 444 of Sháliváhanas, or 522 A.D. (cf. on the alphabetical notation of the Hindus, by C. M. Whish, in Trans. of the Lit. Soc. of Madras I., p. 54). According to the above the three following points must be self-evident:—

1st.—That no rite connected with these Ayanámshas or degrees of the precession of the equinoxes can have been performed before the year 444 of Sháliváhana's era;

2nd.—That all treatises or books containing any allusion to the precession of the equinox, that is, Ayanámshas in the sense of our text, or to rites connected with those Ayanámshas, must have been written after the year 444 of Sháliváhana's era;

3rd.—That the discovery of the precession of the equinoxes by the Greek Hipparchos is anterior to that of the astronomers of India by 652 years.

meaning be, and so it must be reckoned according to the higher or lower date of the era.

The sun's passage through Taurus, Leo, Scorpio, and Aquarius is

Somewhat less conclusive may perhaps the following conjecture appear to the reader, that, namely, these 60 years congruent to these 60 Ayanámsas of the precession of the equinoxes are also congruent to the renowned cycle of 60 years called by modern writers "Jupiter's Cyclus," which we have described in note 21, and that its origin, which has not as yet been either explained or even guessed at, is to be searched for just in these Ayanámsas. It is of course needless to demonstrate that no earnest inquirer can rest satisfied with the guess of some modern writers, that this 60 years' cyclus of Jupiter is a mere fictive calculation resting on a multiplication of one course of Jupiter equal to 12 years with a mystical number 5; and it must be, I contend, considered as an absolute impossibility that the origin of this cyclus, known and followed in every part and by every sect of India, could rest on any other basis but on a real astronomical fact, like, for instance, the astronomical phenomenon of the Ayanámsas of our text, corresponding in all its part exactly to Jupiter's cyclus. The time of the origin of these Ayanámsas, namely, the year 444 of Sháliváhaná's era as described above, suits also exactly our theory as to the origin of the cyclus, for it is well known (*cf. Lassen's Indische Alterthumskunde*) that this so-called cyclus of Jupiter is of post-vedic time, and that it can be traced only as far back as Vahára Mihira, who lived just at that very time, 444 of Sháliváhana. The objection that as this cycle is called "Jupiter's Cyclus," it must have some reference to the planet of that name, presents no difficulty, as, firstly, this appellation is but of modern origin, and probably invented after the fallacious multiplication of 12 by 5, as described above, had been imagined; and as, secondly, should this appellation be found to be of more ancient date, it would prove nothing at all, Jupiter being before all things the great and learned preceptor of the gods, and his name always used in connection with all kinds of scientifical researches. How easy of apprehension is it, therefore, that this cycle of 60 years, resting on the learned discovery of the precession of the equinoxes, should have been ascribed to Jupiter and his name given to it! Another objection which could be made, that, namely, should the cycles have begun with the Ayanámsas in the year 444, the name of the present year 1802 (or 1880 A.D.) should be Krodhi, according to note 21, while in the Maharashtra country, for instance, the present year is Pramathi, is equally fallacious; for it is well known that though all parts of India and all Hindu sects follow the 60 years' cycle, they do not all begin it with the same year, and that this present year 1802 is called differently in different countries and even in different calendars of the same country. As to the fact that some Indian astronomers have in their treatises computations after which the whole Kaliyuga (*cf. note 60*) is divided into cycles of 60 years, it should be remembered that they divide thus not only the Kaliyuga, but also their whole kalpa, a period of 4,320,000,000 years, and that the whole is of course an *après coup* process.

Now, as to what some believe, that besides the above cyclus of Jupiter there has been another cycle, also of 60 years and anti-vedic in existence, I am unable to express any opinion, as I have had no opportunity to see and study a so-called Vedic calendar, the principles of which are said to be found in the great epic Mahábáhrata.

And now, before closing the subject, let us give a key of the symbolical appellations of numbers as found in the Grahálgává, and in its commentary. It must be well noted, however, that we can give here each time but one of the numerous names of the symbolical objects used, but that of course all other appellations of the same object have the same meaning and the same numeric value. For instance, the number 4 is represented indifferently by सूर्यः, सागरः, अतिष्ठः, उदयिः, सिंहुः, &c., which all mean "sea." I can here but adduce their

called the "Foot of Vishnu;"³⁷ its passage through Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius, and Pisces is called the "Eighty-six;"³⁷ its passage through Aries or Libra is called "Equinoctial;"³⁷ and through Cancer or Capricorn "Solstitial."³⁷ Among these four classes each last is holier than the preceding.

For joyful ceremonies performed at the time of the sun's entrance into any of the zodiac signs, 16 ghatikas before and 16 after the event should ordinarily be rejected. But if it is the moon or any other of the planets which enters the zodiac signs, then before and after the event one should reject in their due order 2, 9, 2, 84, 6, and 150 ghatikas.³⁸

Some say that when the sun enters any of the zodiac signs at night, then it ought to be kept as it is with eclipses, namely, that donations and ablutions be performed at night. Yet most people agree, and it is so kept in most countries, that when the sun enters a sign at night, ablutions, &c., should be performed at day time, and not in the night. If during one's natal constellation the sun enters any of the mansions, then will one have to suffer loss of property, &c. In order to nullify this influence one must bathe in water strewed with the leaves of the lotus flower.

If the sun enters into the equinoctial mansions (of Aries and Libra), or into the solstitial mansions (of Cancer and Capricorn) in

Sanskrit names, reserving to myself for a later time the explanation of their inherent meaning, which forms in itself quite a large chapter of Indian history and mythology.

(0) शून्य, ख, आकाश; (1) एक, इत्थी, चंद्र, रूप; (2) हौ, अदिव, पक्ष, अक्षि, दोष, यम; (3) शि, क्रम, प्राप्त, राम, पुर, लोक, गुण, अग्नि; (4) चन्द्रार, समुद्र, वेद, युग कृत; (5) पंच, बाण, वायु, भूत, अक्ष; (6) रस, पट, अंग, जलु, तर्क; (7) सत, जरपि, स्वर, तुरण, पर्वत; (8) अष्ट, वसु, सर्प, मत्तगज; (9) नव, संख्या, नंद, रंत्र, निधि, गो, अंक, नमधर; (10) दश, आज्ञा, शून्य, अभ्र; (11) एकादश, महेश्वर; (12) द्वादश, अर्क; (13) विष्ण, व्रयोदश; (14) चतुर्दश, मनु, ईद्र, भुवन; (15) पञ्चदश, तिथि; (16) षोडश, कला, अष्टि, राजा; (17) सप्तदश, अत्यन्ति, घन; (18) अष्टादश, धृति; (19) एकोनविंशति, अतिधृति; (20) विंशति, कृति, नख, अंगुलि; (21) एकर्विंशति, स्वर, पक्षानि, मूर्छना, स्वः; (22) द्वार्विंशति, आति; (23) व्रयोविंशति, आकृति, विकृति, संकृति, अहैत; (24) जिन, सिद्ध, चतुर्विंशति; (25) पञ्चाविंशति, तत्त्व, अतिकृति; (26) पटविंशति, अहोकृति; (27) सप्तविंशति; नक्षत्र; (32) द्वार्षिंशति, दशन, हिज; (33) चतुर्विंशति, सुर; (49) उनपंचाशत्, तान.

³⁷ Why the two first are called so, I am unable to discover. The meaning of the two last names is self-evident.

³⁸ This refers to the seven first planets of Indian astronomers, viz., the Sun, Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, and Saturn. The rules concerning the sun having been given above, the author had now only to establish rules for the six other planets, each of the six numbers of the text corresponding in due order with each of these six planets.

day time, then both teaching and learning must be put aside for that day and for the two nights enclosing it ; but if it takes place in the night, teaching and learning must be put aside both for that night and for the two days enclosing it. That is the so-called Pakshini³⁹ solar passage, and the purpose of it is that one may get rest from study for twelve watches.⁴⁰

As to other particulars, they will be given further on in connection with (the description of) the sun's entrance into the solstitial mansions (of Cancer and Capricorn).

Thus is the second chapter concerning the sun's passage through the zodiacal signs.

CHAPTER III.

DESCRIPTION OF INTERCALARY MONTHS.

There are two kinds of intercalary months, viz., the Additive and the Subtractive.

The month in which no solar passage into the zodiacal signs occurs is an additive month, and the months in which two such passages take place is a subtractive month. From the time of the occurrence of an additive month one must count thirty (common) months, and then the next additive month will be found to be one of the eight or nine following months.⁴¹ The subtractive month, however, does not occur as often as the additive month, but only once in a period of either 141 years or 19 years. The subtractive month is always one of the months of Kártika, Márgashirsha, and Pausha, but never another. In the year in which a subtractive month occurs, there are also two additive months, one preceding and one following it.

³⁹ Pakshini is a kind of measure of time, consisting of one day and the two nights enclosing it, or of one night and the two days enclosing it.

⁴⁰ A watch is equal to $7\frac{1}{2}$ ghaṭikas, or three hours of our time.

⁴¹ The Jyotishasára says that it recurs exactly after 32 months, 16 days, and 4 ghaṭikas, which would leave but a small minus of $4\frac{1}{2}$ hours yearly to account for by the subtractive month-year, which, though it bears the name of subtractive, is really additive, for it has also two additive months, which more than nullify the subtractive month. Indian astronomers and astrologers, however, follow apparently neither the rule of the Jyotishasára, nor the general rule put down in our text above, for I find by means of Sanscrit almanacks that between the additive month, which took place in the year 1799 of Śāliváhaná's era, in the month of Jyeshtha, and that which took place in the year 1801 in the month of Aśvina, there are only twenty-nine months. The harmonising the lunar with the solar year is, according to Indian astronomy, altogether embarrassing (*cf.* note 49). It should be carefully noted that these intercalations do not take place within each lunar year of 354 for the purpose of harmonising it to the number of solar days in a year, viz. 365, but that they occur only in the third year, when the number of days fallen behind amount to a lunar month, in which year there are then 13 months and 384 days (*cf.* Chapter I.).

Here is an example of an additive month: If on the new moon-day^{**} of the (first) month called Chaitra the sun enters Aries, but from the first moonlight day^{**} (of the next month) to its new moon-day no other solar passage occurs, and the next passage into Taurus takes place only on the first moonlight day (of the third month), then the (second) month which has had no solar passage into the zodiacal signs is an additive month, and is called the additive Vaishákhā month, and the month which has the solar passage into Taurus is the common Vaishákhā month.

And here is an example of the subtractive month:

(Suppose that) on the new moon-day of the (sixth) month called Bhádrapada the sun enters Virgo; that the next month Áshvina (according to the rule given above) is an additive month, and is called the additive Áshvina month; that on the first increasing moon-day of the following common Áshvina month the sun enters Libra; that again on the first increasing moon-day of the following Kártika month the sun enters Scorpio; and that (finally) in the following month of Márgashirsha two solar passages in the zodiacal signs occur, viz., one into Sagittarius on the first increasing moon-day^{**} and one into Capricorn on the new moon-day;^{**} then this month of Márgashirsha, in which the sun enters the two signs of Sagittarius and Capricorn, is a subtractive month. It must then be carefully observed that this month of Márgashirsha, together with the following month of Pausha, makes only one month, the first-half of which, from the 1st to the 15th day, is called Márgashirsha, and the second half Pausha, because of two months being thus made up of the whole of the (thirty) days.^{**}

Now, whosoever dies in the first part of this subtractive month, his yearly funeral rites^{**} must be performed (in common years) always in the month of Márgashirsha; but whosoever dies in the second half of that month, his funeral rites must always be performed in Pausha.

^{**} It must be remembered that the new moon-day is the last day of the Indian lunar month, south of the Vindya Mountains.

^{**} The first moonlight day, or increasing moon-day, is always the first day of the Indian lunar month, south of the Vindya Mountains.

^{**} Cf. note 43.

^{**} Cf. note 42.

^{**} Concerning this subtractive month cf. notes 41 and 50.

^{**} These rites for the benefit of the departed spirits of ancestors and relatives are observed with the greatest strictness on very numerous occasions. As a detailed description of them is to follow in the course of our translation, it is unnecessary here to give a full explanation of them. Compare, however, notes 34 and 60.

Thus also must it be kept with the yearly remembrance rites of one's birth and severance of the umbilical cord.⁴⁸

Immediately after (the above described subtractive month) does the sun enter Aquarius on the new moon-day of the month Mágha, then cometh the additive Phalgunā month, then the common Phalgunā month, on the first increasing moon-day of which the sun enters Pisces. Thus is the subtractive month enclosed by two additive months, and the year in which there is a subtractive month has thirteen months and about 389 days.

The additive month which precedes the subtractive is called Samsarpa.⁴⁹ In it every (religious) act may be performed and no joyful rite should be omitted.

In the subtractive month, which is called Amhaspati,⁵⁰ and in the following additive month all religious acts should be omitted. In the same manner also should all religious acts be in that additive month omitted which recurs once in three years.

Here follows a description of those religious rites which should or should not be omitted (in the additive and in the subtractive month).

Those obligatory or occasional, or reward-desiring religious acts which are unadjournable, should be performed even in the additive and in the subtractive month, but those obligatory, occasional, or reward-desiring religious acts which are adjournable should be omitted. That is : Obligatory rites like the worship at the twilights,⁵¹ oblation to fire, &c.; occasional rites like ablutions at the time of eclipses, &c.; and reward-desiring rites like the Kárirí sacrifice,⁵² or the sacrifice which one possessed of a demon offers for the destruction of that demon, should be performed in the intercalary month. But obligatory rites like the

⁴⁸ This is done with great ceremonies and under the incantations of the officiating Brahmin.

⁴⁹ Samsarpa means "the regularly moving" month, probably because, more than the subtractive month, it recurs at more regular periods.

⁵⁰ Amhaspati means the "lord of perplexity," and truly is it so called, for not only am I, in spite of all my inquiries, still unable to see how the fraction of days remaining after the harmonization of the lunar year with the solar one by means of the additive month, can be fully equalized by the use of this subtractive month as described above, but Indian astronomers and astrologers, in their almanacs as well as in their oral opinions they give one about it, seem equally perplexed, and their explanations are conflicting, while the rule of 19 and 14½ years of the text also leaves always a fraction on one's hands.

⁵¹ The most generally and strictly performed morning and evening rite, called Sandhyá. It will be more fully described further on in the text.

⁵² A certain sacrificial rite in which the fruit of the plant Karira (*Capparis aphylla*) is used.

Jyotishtoma^{ss} sacrifice, &c., or occasional rites like the sacrifice offered after a son's birth, &c., or reward-desiring rites like the sacrifice for obtaining a son, &c., should be performed in the common month following the intercalary month. If a reward-desiring rite has been commenced before, it may be continued in the intercalary month, but no new one should be begun or finished in it. The reconsecration of an idol necessitated by the omission of its worship; all the rites (of birth) from the rite of the fertilization of the womb up to that of putting solid food into the child's mouth,^{ss} which must be performed at their proper times and cannot be adjourned; the healing from fever and other diseases; funeral rites and sacrifices performed on rare occasions; occasional atonements; the usual obligatory funeral rites; the funeral rites of the eleventh and of the following months, and the dark moon-day funeral rite may be performed in the intercalary month. Should anybody die in the intercalary month falling in Chaitra, then, sometimes many years afterwards, when the intercalary month falls again in Chaitra, his yearly funeral rite must be performed in that intercalary month. But if anybody dies in the common Chaitra month, then his yearly funeral rites must (always) be performed in the common Chaitra month, and not in the intercalary month. Yet concerning his first yearly funeral rites, though he should die in the common month, they must be performed

^{ss} A typical form of a whole class of sacrifices in which Soma, the Indian Vedic nectar expressed from plants and emblematic of the procreating fluid, is used.

^{ss} There are eight of them: 1, Garbhádhánam, or "fertilization of the womb," a religious rite performed for the benefit of a newly-married couple immediately before their first cohabitation; 2, Pumsavánam, literally "the male-producing rite," is a ceremony partly of rejoicing and declaration to the community of a woman's conception, when she perceives the first signs of it, and partly for the purpose of masculinizing (*c.f.* note 33) the new fetus by means of sacrificial worship and Brahmanical incantations; 3, Anavalobhanam, or "non-longing rite," a ceremony performed by a pregnant woman, after which no cohabitation is permissible, and by which miscarriage or any demoniacal influence is prevented; 4, Simantonñayánam, or "the rite of parting and smoothing the hair," the rite of a husband parting and smoothing the hair of his pregnant wife, and of putting a thrice becoloured stick, called therefore *tryeta*, into her tresses, while a Brahman repeats incantations; 5, Játakarma, or "birth ceremony," a rite performed at the time of birth for luck and in order to find the horoscope of the new-born child. The last act of it consists of the severance of the umbilical cord, under Brahmanical incantations; between the act of birth and that of the umbilical severance, butter is given to the child in a golden spoon; 6, Námakarma, "the name-giving rite," which is performed on the twelfth day after birth; 7, Nishkramanam, the "going-out" ceremony, which consists in taking out the child, when three months old, to look at the sun or at the moon; 8, Annaprásanam, the "feeding rite," or the ceremony of putting for the first time solid food, mostly boiled rice, into the child's mouth. All these ceremonies are performed with the help of the family Brahman-priest.

in the intercalary month and not in the common month, but his second yearly (and following yearly) funeral rites must be performed in the common month. The ceremonies (beginning with the day of death and) ending on the eleventh day, and the rice ball rites may be performed in the intercalary month, but the funeral rites of the second and following months must be repeated twice, once in the intercalary month and once in the common month. Thus, also, when the twelfth monthly funeral rite falls on an additive month, it should be performed twice, once in the intercalary month and once in the common month. The year's eve commemorative rite should take place just on the eve of the year, and the first yearly rite should take place in the fourteenth month. When in a year the additive month precedes immediately the subtracting month—for instance, the month of Kártika is the additive month, and the sun in the following month, entering both Scorpio and Sagitarius, is a subtractive month—then the yearly rite falling in the month of Kártika must be performed both in the preceding additive month and in the following subtractive month. But when the additive month is separated from the subtractive month (by another month)—for instance, Áshvina is the additive month and Márgashirsha is the subtractive month—then the funeral rites falling on Áshvina must be performed both in the additive Áshvina and in the common Áshvina, for it appears that both months are well qualified for the performance of rites. When the yearly rite falls on the separated subtractive month, it should be performed in that subtractive month. Thus also in the above given example of Márgashirsha being the subtractive month, the yearly rite falling on Márgashirsha (which is the first half of the subtractive month) or on Pausha (which is the second half of the subtractive month) must be performed only in one of both, and it is understood that it must be done without dividing the days into first and second halves.⁵⁵

Here follow the rites which are to be omitted in the intercalary month.

The ceremony of investing with the right of reading the Vedas and of taking it back,⁵⁶ the funeral rite of the eighth day (of the month), the rite of a child's tonsure, the rite of investing (with the sacred shoulder

⁵⁵ This refers to the manner some Indian astronomers and astrologers explain the subtractive month, namely, that the first half of each of the thirty days of that month (in the above given example Márgashirsha) constitutes the one month and the afternoon of each of these thirty days the other month.

⁵⁶ As each one of these rites will be fully described in the course of our translation, it is unnecessary to enter into details here, and some few general remarks, when needful, will suffice.

thread and) with the holy munji-grass waistband,⁵⁷ marriages, pilgrimages to holy waters and others, the rite performed at the time of building a house, the ceremony of (solemn) entrance into a new residence, the consecration of an idol, the making over of a well or of a garden, &c., the rite of putting on new clothes and ornaments, the (sixteen) great gifts (to Bráhmans), like, for instance, the sacrificial offering of one's weight (in silver, gold, or jewels), &c., sacrificial acts, the consecration of the holy fire-place, pilgrimages to holy waters and idols not before visited, wandering ascetism, the reward-desiring letting loose of a bull, anointing a king, sacrificial vows (to the gods), the adjournable feeding rite (*cf.* note 54), the ceremony of the return of a student home (after completion of his Vedic studies with his teacher), the sacrificial ceremonies for neglected religious duties, the investiture of an idol with the sacred cord, the rite of putting the holy shrub Damana on the penates (performed on the full moon-day of Chaitra), the rite of listening (to the Vedas), domestic oblations like the offerings to serpents, &c., the rite of Vishnu's sleep and of his turning from one side

⁵⁷ Maunji, properly speaking, is the ceremony of investiture with the sacred waistband, which is a sign of chastity, and should be kept up to the time of marriage. Unlike the sacred shoulder thread, which is made of cotton, and should be renewed every fourth month, or at least once a year, the holy waistband cannot be renewed, and is therefore made of the strong blades of the munji-grass. If very orthodox and a Vedic student, a Brahman will keep it during the whole time of his studies, which last twelve years; usually, however, now Brahmans do not keep it more than one year, many of them even only a few days. As this ceremony of the sacred waistband is always performed in connection with the investiture with the sacred shoulder thread, many (Europeans of course) have erroneously thought that Maunji meant the investiture with the sacred shoulder thread Brahmans so ostentatiously wear. Even the great orientalist E. Burnouf confounds it with it, while Böhtlingk and Roth, though knowing that Maunji is a grass girdle, seem to be ignorant of its being a religious rite far more general, obligatory, and holy than most other ceremonies, for with it is connected the initiation of the novice with the holiest of the holy mantras or incantations, the so-called Gáyatri, the key-stone of all spiritual knowledge without which no Veda can be studied or even touched, and no rite be performed. In the sequel of this work we shall meet more than once with the form and the meaning of this holy mantra. The sacred shoulder thread is worn by many other castes besides the Brahmanical and the two next castes of the twice born, while the holy waistband can be worn but by them. As remarked above, the two ceremonies take place on the same day. When, therefore, the author of our work speaks of rites in a general way, and says that on such and such a day Maunji should be or should not be omitted, he means the whole ceremony of the day consisting of both the investiture with the sacred thread and the investiture with the holy waistband. In this manner also do I translate it here, but in order that the fact of Maunji being in reality only the initiating investiture with the holy grass waistband be not lost sight of, I carefully even here put the accompanying words within brackets. When the detailed definition of both rites shall be (later on in the work given, we shall then, of course, meet with a special name for each of these two rites.

to the other, the divine rites like, for instance, that of making an oath, &c., must all be omitted in the intercalary month.

But occasional rites like, for instance, the rite performed for destroying the evil influence of ill-timed menstruation,⁵⁸ the rekindling of the holy fire, the reconsecration of an idol, if their performance follows at once their cause, may be done in the intercalary month; but if they are performed at a later time, then they should be done in the common month. In a time of famine the Soma libation called Āgrayanam⁵⁹ may be performed in the intercalary month, but in usual times it should be performed in the common month. The funeral rites called Yuga and those called Manu⁶⁰ must be repeated in both months.

In the additive month, which precedes the subtractive, and which, as we have seen above, is called Samsarpa, the following rites should be omitted: the tonsure of a child, the investiture with (the sacred shoulder thread and) the holy waistband, marriage, the installation of

⁵⁸ That does not mean out of the natural course, but happening at the unpropitious time of the sun's passages into the zodiacal signs, as explained in Chapter II.

⁵⁹ A kind of Soma sacrifice (*cf.* note 53) or oblation of thanksgiving for the first fruits after the monsoon, or of supplication for a fruitful season.

⁶⁰ There are yearly four Yuga funeral rites relating to the Indian four Yugas or mundane periods called, 1st, Krita (with 1,728,000 years); 2nd, Tretā (with 1,296,000 years); 3rd, Dvāpara (with 864,000 years); and 4th, Kali or the current period (with 432,000 years), making a total of 4,320,000, which is called a Mahāyuga or "great period." Seventy-one of these Mahāyugas are equal to 306,720,000 years, which is Manu period. There are fourteen of these Manu periods with an aggregate of 4,294,080,000 years, which fabulous number with its fifteen intercalations of 1,728,000, each makes up a full Kalpa or a day of Brahmā of 4,320,000,000 years. The fourteen funeral rites called in the text Manu funeral rites correspond with these fourteen great Manu periods, and are therefore performed fourteen times a year.

Besides these four Yuga and fourteen Manu funeral rites, there are seventy-eight others equally obligatory, making in all ninety-six, which are to be performed yearly. They are as follows: Twelve Amā or new-moon rites; four Yuga and fourteen Manu rites (as just now described); twelve Kranti, corresponding to the twelve passages of the sun into the zodiacal mansions; twelve Dhriti, performed on the day of the month the sun and the moon are on the same side of either solstice, but of opposite direction; twelve Pāta, performed on the day of the month the sun and the moon are on opposite sides of either solstice and their declination is the same; fifteen Mahalaya, great funeral rites and sacrifices performed at the end of the Hindu lunar year in the month of Bhādrapada, which is the last month of the year of the era of Vikramaditya, but not of Shālivāhana, which shows that Vikramaditya's era was once followed by all Hindus, as now even those who follow Shālivāhana's era still perform these rites according to Vikramaditya's calendar in the month of Bhādrapada; five Ashtaka, performed on the eighth day of five months of the year; five Anvashtaka, performed on the ninth day of five months of the year; and five Purvedyu, performed on the seventh day of five months of the year.

the sacred fire, sacrificial feasts, the festival of the last day of the lunar year, and anointing a king. Yet no other should be omitted.

The beginning and the end of a newly vowed sacrifice to the gods cannot take place in the subtractive month, but the ablutions of the month of Mágha may be begun and finished in the subtractive month, if they are not performed for the first time. The ablutions of Mágha ought to be begun on the full-moon day of the subtractive month in which the sun enters Capricorn, and ended on the full-moon day of the month of Mágha in which the sun enters Aquarius. In the same manner also should it be held with the month of Kártika.

When the month of Vaishákha is an additive month, then the Vaishákha ablutions and the monthly vowed sacrifices (to the gods) should be begun on the full-moon day of the preceding Chaitra month, and, continuing for two months, ended on the full-moon day of the common Vaishákha.

All that which has been hitherto described as to be omitted in the intercalary month refers also to the setting, youth, and old age of Venus and Jupiter.

The most common opinion is that their old age comprises seven days before their setting, and their youth seven days after their rising. When fifteen, five, and three days are given, that is done in connection with local custom, and calamitous or uncalamitous times.

The whole of the above description as to what ought or ought not to be omitted in the intercalary month, applies also to the time when Jupiter is in Leo. Here follow the particulars : The rites of ear-piercing, child's tonsure, investiture with (the sacred shoulder thread and) the holy loin-grass-cord, marriage, pilgrimages to idols, sacrificial vows to the gods, house-building ceremony, consecration of idols, and wandering ascetism should carefully be omitted.

Yet here are some exceptions regarding the time Jupiter is in Leo. When Jupiter has entered the constellation of Mágha, that is (α , γ , ξ , η , and ν), part of Leo, then, according to the custom of all countries,⁶¹ no joyful rites should be performed ; but after that portion of Leo is passed, then Jupiter's passage through Leo has nothing unpropitious for countries south of the Godáveri and north of the

⁶¹ This expression for us of course means all provinces of Hindustán, though in the mind of the author of this book and of the authors of the works he quotes it certainly meant the whole earth, as all Brahmanical authors have always assumed and perhaps believed that India was not only the centre of the world, but that the Brahmanic religion was first established everywhere.

Bhágirathi (or Ganges). But for the nations between the Godáveri and the Ganges throughout the whole passage of Jupiter through Leo nothing should be omitted but marriage and the investiture with the sacred thread and holy girdle. All other rites may be performed in every country after Jupiter's passage through that first portion of Leo. If, however, at the same time (Jupiter is in Leo), the sun enters Aries, then may in all countries and during the whole passage of Jupiter through Leo joyful rites be performed. In the same manner, when (during Jupiter's passage through Leo) the sun enters Taurus, then the opinion of some is that no sin is incurred by performing ceremonies at the time Jupiter is in Leo. When Jupiter is in Leo, ablutions in the Godáveri, but when it has entered Virgo, ablutions in the Krishna, are most meritorious. Those who make a pilgrimage to the Godáveri must first perform the sacred shaving and fast, but not those who live on its shore. At the time of pregnancy of one's wife, or after marriage and other joyful ceremonies, the sacred shaving is not sinful for the people dwelling on the shores of the Godáveri. To pilgrims going to the holy Gayá⁶² and to the Godáveri, the intercalary month and the setting and rising of Jupiter and Venus are not unpropitious.

As to particulars about the sacrifices called Vrata⁶³ in the intercalary month, they will be given elsewhere.

Thus is the third chapter, which sets forth what must be done and what omitted during the intercalary month, the setting and rising of Jupiter and Venus, and the passage of Jupiter through Leo.

⁶² A town of pilgrimage in Berár.

⁶³ It is difficult to translate this expression, as it includes every religious act which is connected with a vow. Often does it seem to mean "vowed sacrifices to the gods" for special mercies. In some places we have translated it in that way. It is not improbable that in the course of our translation of the text we may meet with a fuller description of it.

ART. II.—*Picture and Description of Borák.* By E. REHATSEK.

[Read 19th July 1889.]

In the representation of Borák given by D'Ohsson,¹ which is said to be a faithful copy of that occurring in Persian books, he appears with the head of a beautiful young woman and the tail of a peacock not quite opened, and rising almost perpendicularly. On his neck Borák has a collar, on his head a crown, pendants in his ears, and his body is, as it were, swimming in the atmosphere. Beneath are flames, and above are three angels pouring out rays of light, whilst the fourth of them, who is in the rear, carries a basin full of flames, and the fifth, namely, Gabriel, with youthful features and crowned head, as well as wings like the others, appears to be the leader; but Borák has no bridle. The body of the prophet Muḥammad, who bestrides Borák, is so covered with the celestial rays issuing from the hands of the angels who surround him that only his foot in the stirrup beneath and a curious kind of diadem which covers his head above can be seen. The portion of the saddle-cloth which can be seen contains no inscription; and on comparing this description with the subjoined drawing—which is an accurate copy of a picture on glass sold in the Bombay bazar—it will be observed that neither the prophet nor the angels are represented, but only Borák with two green wings, above which there is a canopy bearing the words *Ya Allah* *الله*, and the saddle-cloth bears the name of *Allah* and those of *Muhammad*, *Aly*, *Fatimah*, *Hasan*, and *Husayn*, the five persons most venerated among the Shyā'hs, whose names are also often engraved on cornelian and other stones as well as amulets. They are called the five "persons of the cloak," in Arabic *لِلْأَعْوَادِ* or *كَلْمَاتِ*, because, according to certain Moslem doctors, the Almighty, desirous of crowning the favours destined by Him for His favourite servants, sent Gabriel to Muḥammad with orders to the latter to assemble his son-in-law, his daughter, and his two grandsons, and so prepare himself for receiving the abundance of heavenly favours. Muḥammad

¹ Tableau de l'Empire Ottoman, t. I., p. 67.

gathered these favoured persons around himself, and whilst he covered them with his cloak, Gabriel poured over them the blessings of God.

The occasion on which these persons were under the cloak, or rather blanket, is explained as follows in the English translation of the Mishkát-ul-Masabih⁵ :—“ Sa'd-bin-Abu Wakkás said, when this revelation came down: ‘Come, let us call together our sons and your sons, and our wives and your wives, and ourselves and yourselves.’⁶ His majesty said: ‘O Lord, verily A'ly and Fa'timah, Hasan and Hosain, are people of my house,’ and he called them. When his majesty called the people of his house, the leader of the Christians saw them and said to his tribe: ‘Alas upon you! I see their faces; if they were to ask God to move mountains from one place to another, they would be able to do it. Take care, never venture to curse them; if you do, you will perish.’ Then they agreed to give a poll-tax. A'ýesha said: ‘One morning his majesty came out with a striped blanket over him, and Emám Hasan came, and his majesty took him under it. Then Hosain came, and his majesty took him under it also; after that Fa'timah came, and he took her under it. Then A'ly came, and his majesty said, ‘O people of the house of the prophet, God wishes to put away from you the impurity of evil and to purify you by purification.’’’

The Shya'hs entertain a special regard for these five persons, and believe that the following passage of the Korán was revealed for their sake⁷ :—“ For God desireth only to remove from you the abomination of vanity, since ye are the household of the prophet, and to purify you by a perfect purification.” They invoke them in their necessities, and quote the Arabic distich:—“ I have five by means of whom I extinguish the heat of the last pestilence; [Muhammad] the elect, the [A'ly] approved, their two sons [Hasan and Hosain], and

⁵ Collection of Authentic Traditions, vol. II., p. 779.

⁶ تعالوا ندع ابناءنا و ابناءكم و نسائنا و نساءكم و انفسنا و انفسكم
(III., 54)

This is called *ayyá-ul-mubáhelet*, the verse of imprecation, because after the words “and yourselves” comes the expression *لُمْ نَذْهَلْ* then let us make imprecations. The scene described in the Mishkát is recorded also by Mirkhond, vol. II., p. 14: Bombay lithogr. ed.

⁷ إنما يريد الله ليذهب عنكم الرجس أهل البيت و يطهركم تطهيرًا
(XXXIII., 33.)

Fatimah⁸.” Some, however, go still further and say:—“Divinity belongs to five individuals, the possessors of the cloak; they are Muḥammad, A’ly, Fatimah, Hasan, and Hosain, and they said that the five are one substance.”

The *Shebi mi’rāj*, or “night of the ascension,” is a festival celebrated in Persia with great solemnity, prayers, and lectures; and the ascension in which the prophet Muḥammad rose by the will of God up to the highest firmament is believed to have been a real fact. On this point Sale expresses himself as follows:—“It is a dispute among Muḥammadan divines whether the prophet’s night journey was really performed by him corporeally, or whether it was only a dream or a vision. Some think the whole was no more than a vision; and allege an express tradition of Moāwiyah, one of Muḥammad’s successors, to that purpose. Others suppose he was carried bodily to Jerusalem, but no farther; and that he ascended thence to heaven in spirit only. But the received opinion is, that it was no vision, but that he was actually transported in the body to his journey’s end; and that if any impossibility be objected, they think it a sufficient answer to say that it might easily be effected by an omnipotent agent.”⁹

Many authors describe the ascension of Muḥammad and the appearance of Borák; both are also recorded in the most ancient biography of the prophet, by Muḥammad Ben Eshák, who died A.H. 151 (A.D. 768). This work was published in Arabic by Dr. F. Wüstenfeld in 1860, and four years afterwards the German translation of Dr. Weil appeared.

هـ لـي خـمـسـةـ اـطـفـيـ بـهـ حـرـ الـوبـاءـ الـخـانـةـ

الـمـطـفـيـ وـالـمـرـتـفـيـ وـابـنـهـماـ وـالـفـاطـةـ

The words حـرـ الـوبـاءـ الـخـانـةـ have by Reinand (Monuments, p. 181) been translated “le brasier de la peste”; but here evidently the *last* calamity of the day of judgment or hell is meant.

هـ الـاـلـهـيـ لـخـمـسـ اـشـخـاصـ اـصـحـابـ الـكـساـ وـهـمـ مـحـمـدـ وـمـاـيـ وـفـاطـمـةـ
وـالـحـسـنـ وـالـحـسـيـنـ وـقـالـوـاـ خـمـسـتـهـمـ شـيـ وـاـهـدـ Maracci Prodromus, P. III.,
p. 83.

⁸ His Koran, Ch. XVII., pp. 226 and 227, foot-note c.—According to Masu’di ed. and transl. Meynard, t. IV., p. 146, Muḥammad was 51 years, 8 months, and 20 days old when he performed his night journey to heaven.
وـاـسـرـيـ بـهـ وـهـوـ اـبـنـ اـحـدـيـ وـخـمـسـيـنـ سـنـةـ وـثـمـانـيـ اـشـهـرـ وـمـشـرـينـ يـوـمـاـ

Also Mirkhond's son Khondemir not only mentions but gives the following detailed account of Boraḳ :—

Distich.—At midnight the divine angel [Gabriel] from afar
Came and brought the Borák [lightning] of light.

“Borák was a vehicle smaller than a mule and larger than an ass ; his face was like that of a man, his ears like those of an elephant, his mane like that of a horse, his neck and tail like those of a camel, his breast like that of a mule, his feet were like those of an ox, or, according to another tradition, like those of a camel, his hoofs like those of an ox, and his breast resembled a red ruby, whilst his wool resembled white armour, shining on account of its great purity. He had two wings on his flanks which concealed his legs. The swiftness of this vehicle was so considerable that each step of it extended as far as the eye could reach.

Verses:

A steed progressing like the moon and the turning sphere,
Borák, swift-stepping, like the light of vision ;
His nature was not composed of water and loam ;
He pastured in the garden of paradise.
He was distressed neither by saddle nor bridle,
Nor had any one thrown the lasso over him,
But all at once by the Creator's command
Gabriel the faithful led him with a bridle,
And conveyed him to the best of men, [saying]
“O thou to whom the arrangement of the affairs of the earth is given,
“Proceed this night towards the sphere,
“And put to shaine by thy face the sun and moon.”⁸

⁸ نیم شبان پیک الی ز دور آمد و آورد براقی زنور
و براق مرکبی بود از استر خوردن و از درازگوش بزرگتر رویش
مشابه روی آدمی و گوشای او مانند گوش فیل و بال او مثال بال
اسپ و گردان و دم شتر و سینه اش همچون سینه استر و قوایمش چون
قوایم گاو و بروایتی مثل قوایم شتر و سهای او مانند سم گاو و سینه
او شبیه قطعه یاقوت احمر بود و پیشنهش ممایل زرگ بیضا که از غایت
صفا می درخشد و دو پر بر ران داشت که ماق و پرا می پوشید
و آن مرکب بهرتانه تیز رفتار بود که آنجا که چشم کار میگرد بیک
کام میخرا مید

This animal is said to have been alluded to by Muhammad himself in the following words uttered by him:—“Whilst I was near the enclosure of the Ka’bah, one came who split my breast and took out my heart, which he washed with Zemzem water and returned it to its place. Then a white animal called Borák was brought to me; it was larger than an ass and smaller than a mule. It shook its ears and stepped as far as its eyes could reach. I was placed on it and carried towards Jerusalem, whereon a shouter called out thrice on the right side of the road:—‘O Muhammad I ask thee to stop a moment,’ but I proceeded and paid no attention to him”⁹

On this subject the statement of Abdulfeda (*Annales Musleinici*, t. I., p. 52) is as follows:—

وقد اختلف اهل العلم فيه هل بجسدة ام كان رويا مادقة والذى عليه ارجمه وورا انه كان بجسده وذهب اخرون الى انه كان رويا مادقة ورودا عن عايشة رضي الله عنها كانت تقول ما فقد جسد رسول الله ولكن الله اسرى بروحه ونقلوا عن معاوية ايضا انه كان يقول ان الا سراء كان رويا مادقة

“The learned further differ whether it [the ascension] took place in the body or whether it was a true vision, and the majority agree that it was in the body. Others, however, state that it was a true vision, and they refer to the tradition of A’áyshah (may God reward her), according to which she is stated to have said:—‘The body of the apostle of God was not missed, but God made him travel only in spirit.’ They also report that Moa’áyyah used to say that the Night Journey was a true vision.”

جواد قمر سیر گردون خرام
براقی چو نور بصر تیز کام
زآب وزخاکش نیوودی سرشت
چربیده به بستان باغ بهشت
نیزند اخته کس بسویش کمند
که ناگه بحکم جهان آفرین
کرفتش عنان جبور نیل امین
رسانید نزدیک خیرالنام
که ای داده کار زعین رانظام
خرامعن کن اعشب بسوی سپهر
خجل مازا زروی خود هما و همراه

ان رسول الله عن بنینما عذر البدت اذ او تیت شتف النحر فاستخرج
القلب ففصل بماء زمزم ثم اعيد مكانه ثم او تیت بدابة ایض يقال له
الدرارق فرق الحمار دون الدغل مضطرب الاذنين يضع خطورة عند منتمي

طرفه فجهدت دایه فساربی نحو بیت المقدس فاذ مناد بنا دی هن یوین
الطريق يا محمد علي رسالك اصالك يا محمد علي رسالك اصالك يا محمد
علي رسالك اصالك وفديت افلام اهرج مليه

The 17th chapter of the Korán, which bears the title of "The Night Journey," contains but two allusions to the ascension, and none of the details just given as being the words of the prophet himself, who had in the 52nd year of his age and in the 12th of his mission (A.D. 621), a vision in which he was visited by the Angel Gabriel, who led him mounted on Borák [lightning], the animal described above, from Mekkah to Jerusalem, and thence through the seven heavens into the presence of God. It has already been mentioned above, on the authority of Sale, that some Muhammadan doctors believe the *Mi'raj* or ascension to have been only a dream or vision, which was in course of time transformed into a reality and even a dogma. The allegorical explanation given by the celebrated Abu A'ly Syná [Avicenna] is so interesting that a portion of it is worth inserting in this place¹⁰ :—“Thus said the apostle of God, Muhammad the elect (the blessing and peace of God be upon him and on his family) :—‘One night I was sleeping in the house of Omm Hány¹¹; it was a night of thunder and lightning; no animal gave forth a sound, no bird sang, and no one was awake. I was not asleep, but [in a state] between sleeping and waking.’ By this figure of speech he means that a long time had elapsed [in a state of indifference] till he became desirous of attaining divine truths. In the still watches of the night human beings are more at liberty [to contemplate divine matters] because they are disengaged from physical occupations. Accordingly, it happened one night that I was [in a state] between sleeping and waking, i.e., between intellect and the senses, and I fell into the sea of knowledge. It was a night of thunder and lightning, i.e. the seven upper forces prevailed in such a manner that a man's power of wrath and of imagination ceased to operate, and lethargy took the place of activity. He said :—‘Gabriel descended in a pleasing form with so much splendour, glory, and magnificence that the house was illuminated,’ i.e., the power of the holy spirit joined me in the form of a command, and took such effect that all the powers of the rational soul were refreshed and brightened, and what he said in the description of Gabriel :—‘I saw him more white than snow; his face was beautiful, his hair curled, and his forehead inscribed with the words: No God except Allah. His eyes were handsome, his brows slender; he had seventy thousand curls twisted of red rubies, with six hundred thousand pearls of fine water,’ i.e., he was endued with so many moral beau-

¹⁰ Dabistán. Calcutta typogr. ed., 1809, p. 161 seq.

¹¹ Daughter of Abu Tálib.

ties that if a portion of them is to be made perceptible to external senses it would be done as just described. The words: *No God except Allah written with an appointed light* [or specific purpose] mean that every one whose eyes fall on his beauty will be severed from any connection with the darkness of idolatry and doubt; he will attain such a degree of certainty and confidence in demonstrating the existence of the Maker that hereafter the contemplation of any made thing will augment his monotheism.

"He [Gabriel] was so lovely that if any one had 70,000 curls he could not equal his beauty. He was in such haste that you would have said he flies with six hundred feathers and wings, so that his progress was independent of space and time. He [Muhammad] said: 'He arrived near me, took me in his arms, and kissed me between the eyes, saying: *O sleeper, how long wilt thou sleep? Arise!* That is to say, when the sacred force reached me, it caressed me, opened to me the road of self-knowledge, and honoured me, so that an unspeakable longing arose in my heart which transported me to devotion. His words *How long wilt thou sleep?* mean How long hast thou been satisfied with false imaginations? There are worlds: the fact is that thou art in one of them, and canst not reach them except in the wakefulness of knowledge, and I shall in the plenitude of my compassion guide thee; arise!' Then he [Muhammad] continued: 'I was frightened, and leapt from my place in terror, i. e., from awe for him [Gabriel]; no intention remained in my heart and mind!' He further said: 'Be at ease; I am thy brother Gabriel!' i. e., by his grace and revelation my dread abated; and he indulged in familiarity to deliver me therefrom, but I nevertheless said: 'O brother, a foe's hand prevails,' and he replied: 'I shall not deliver thee into the hands of a foe.' I asked: 'Who art thou?' he replied: 'Arise, be attentive, and keep up thy spirits, i.e., maintain a clear memory, follow me, and I shall remove all difficulties.' As he spoke I became entranced, transported, and commenced to follow the steps of Gabriel, i. e., I abandoned the physical world, and, followed by the aid of natural reason, the vestiges of divine grace."

His [Muhammad's] words, "I saw Borák on the footsteps of Gabriel," that is so say, the energetic intellect which conquers the sacred forces, and the aid of which is superior to them in this corruptible world, because it likewise originates from the upper intellects. The energetic intellect is the supreme king who aids the souls at all times with what is

proper, and resembles Borák because it illuminates¹² the night [of the untutored intellect], and is of aid like a vehicle to one who progresses [in the path of divine knowledge]; it was during that journey wanted by the protector [*i. e.*, Muḥammad], and therefore he called it the vehicle [Borák]. His words that it *was greater than an ass and smaller than a horse* mean that it [namely, the energetic intellect] is superior to the human but inferior to the first intellect. *His face was like the face of a man* means that it sympathises with human dispositions and displays as much resemblance [kindness literally] towards men as the genus to the species, so that its likeness to man consists in kindness and disposition. His saying that *its fore and hind legs are long* means that its benefits reach all places and its bounty keeps all things fresh. His words *I was desirous to mount him* [*i. e.* Borák], *but he was headstrong until Gabriel aided me*, imply that he [Muḥammad], although as yet under the influence of the physical world, wished to join it [*i. e.*, the energetic intellect], but it refused until the sacred force had washed him of the impediments of ignorance and corporeality, so that he became isolated, and attained by its means the plenitude and advantage of the energetic intellect." After this Borák is mentioned no more in the account, and the whole ascension or "night journey" is described in the same allegorical manner; it terminates as follows¹³:—"He [Muḥammad] said: 'When I had done all this I returned to the house and found, on account of the velocity of the journey, the bed clothes still warm;' he had namely performed an imaginary journey and travelled with his mind—attaining with his mind not only all created beings, but also reaching the self-existent necessary Being [*i. e.* God]. When the journey had been accomplished by imagination, he returned to his customary state of mind; he had no need of a day; it took place in less than the twinkling of an eye. Who knows what happened, is aware of it; and who does not, must be excused. Nor would it be suitable to communicate these explanations to ignorant or low persons, because only intelligent men can profit by them."

The following is another allegorical explanation,¹⁴ by Núrbakhsh, the founder of the Núrbakhshi [light-giver] sect in Kashmir:—"Be aware that the ascension of the lord Muḥammad the elect (peace and the blessing of God be on him) was a corporeal one, but allegorical and

¹² Borák means flashing, illuminating, lightning.

¹³ Dabistán, p. ५४८

¹⁴ Ibidem, p. ५८१.

in a state of trance, intermediate¹⁸ between sleeping and waking, for which reason the first tradition concerning the *mi'rāj* has the words :— كُنْتَ بَيْنَ النُّومِ وَالْيَقْظَانِ [I was between sleeping and waking] and likewise وَقَكَ اللَّهُ لِتَعْبِرَ الْأَهْوَالَ امْكُشْنَهُ مَلِي الْأَنْبِيَا وَالْأَنْبِيَاءِ عَلَيْهِمُ السَّلَامُ [God has referred thee for the explanation of revealed matters to the prophets and saints, on whom be peace]. The conveying from the mosque of the sanctuary [Mekka] to the further mosque [Jerusalem] represents removal from one place to another in this lower world. To be the leader [Emám] in prayers means that there will be many of the heirs of the prophet who will be saints and divines of celebrity."

"*Borák* is the vehicle of obedience and the allegorical representation of prayer ; his saddle and bridle are the allegorical representation of an attentive mind fully collected [in religion]. The limbs of *Borák*, which are of costly jewels, represent truth, sincerity, love, humility, lowliness, and perfect love towards God expelling all other desires except those tending to Allah in prayer. The restiveness of *Borák*, and the aid of Gabriel afforded [to Muhammad] in mounting, represent the subduing of the carnal mind by the God-knowing intellect, Gabriel himself representing the latter."

Also in the Apocalypse, i. e., Revelations, strange beasts and horses are mentioned. The allusion to the former occurs in VI., 6—10. They were four in number, one was like a lion, the second like a calf, the third had the face of a man, and the fourth was like a flying eagle. Each of them had six wings, and they were full of eyes. They appear to have been beasts of a superior kind, because they not only gave thanks to him that sat on the throne and liveth for ever and ever, but the twenty-four elders did so likewise after them. The same was probably the case with the horses (VI., 2, 4, 5, 8) white, red, black, and pale, each of them being mentioned first, and then the function of their riders whose personality is not even alluded to, excepting the last who rode the pale horse and whose name "was Death, and Hell followed with him."

The dragon whose "tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven and did cast them to the earth" (XII., 4) is further on (XII., 9) stated to be "that old serpent called the Devil and Satan," who delegates "his power, and his seat, and great authority" (XIII., 2) to a beast which rose out of the sea and "was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion" (*ibid.*), "and he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and

¹⁸ The word is *barzakh*, and occurs also in the Korán, XXIII., 102.

bound, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads" (*ibid.*, 16). A beast of this kind is only alluded to in the Korán (XXVII., 84), but not described. This, however, has been done afterwards by consigning the traditions of various authorities to writing, and the following is the account of Zamakhshari :—“ On the beast of the earth, the spy. It is recorded in the Ḥadith that its length is 60 cubits ; no one running after it will be able to reach it, and no one fleeing from it will be able to escape from it. It is said to have four legs, hair, feathers, and two wings. Ebn Jurayḥ states that it has the head of a bull, the eyes of a hog, the ears of an elephant, the horns of a stag, the neck of an ostrich, the breast of a lion, the colour of a tiger, the back of a cat, the tail of a raven, and the hoofs of a camel. The space between two of its joints measures twelve cubits according to human cubits. It is said that it will put forth only its head [from the earth], which will extend to the extremity of the horizon and reach the clouds. According to Abu Haryrah every colour will appear on it, and the space between its two horns amounts to one Farsakh for a rider. According to Alḥasan the exit of it will be completed only after three days. When the Commander of the Faithful, A'ly Ebn Abu Táleb (on whom be peace), was asked whence the beast would come forth, he replied :—‘ From the greatest of mosques and during three days, whilst the people are looking ; but only one-third of it will come forth.’ The prophet (upon whom be peace, &c.,) was asked whence it would issue, and he replied :—‘ From the mosque which is the greatest with God, namely, the mosque of the sanctuary [of Mekka].’ There is a tradition that it will issue in three issues ; it will come out on the boundaries of Yemen and then disappear ; then it will issue from the desert, and be concealed for a very long time, and whilst the people are in the greatest of mosques nor will anything frighten them except its coming forth Some people will flee and some will remain on beholding it. It is said that it will come forth from [mount] Čafa, and speak Arabic to the people with a smooth tongue, saying : ‘ Men had no firm belief in our signs,’ i. e., men did not believe in my coming forth ; because its coming forth is one of the signs. It will also say : ‘ Is not the curse of God to befall the wicked.’ According to Alsaddy it will address the people on the vanity of all religions except the religion of Islám. According to Ebn O'mar it will face the north and give forth a shout, then it will face the east, then Syria, then Yemen, and will do the same It is also related. . . . Whilst Jesus (peace be on him) will be walking around the temple and the Moslems with him,

the earth will quake beneath them, the chandelier will move, and [mount] Qafa will be split . . . Then the beast will come forth from [mount] Qafa, bearing the staff of Moses and the seal of Solomon; it will touch every believer on the forehead [literally, place of prostration], or between his eyes with the staff of Moses, so as to impress a white mark, which will spread over his face and make it shine . . . like a brilliant star, and it will write between his eyes 'believer.' It will mark every infidel with the seal on his nose, and the mark will spread until it blackens the face; and it [the beast] will write between his eyes 'infidel.' Then the face of the believer will shine from the staff of Moses and the nose of the infidel will be struck by the seal. Then it [the beast] will say to them: 'So-and-so, thou art of those who dwell in paradise, and O So-and-so, thou art of those who abide in hell.' "¹⁰

١٠ ودابة الأرض الجسامية جاءَ في الحديث ان طولها متنون ذراعاً
 لا يدركها طالب ولا يفونتها هارب وروي لها اربع قوايم ورغب وريش
 جناحان وعن ابن جرير في وصفها رام ثور وعين حنثبر واذن فبل
 وقرن ابل وعنق نعامة ومصدر اسد ولوون نهر وحاصرة هر وذنب كيش
 وخف بغير وما بين المفصلين اثنا عشر ذراعاً بذراع ادم وروي لا يخرج
 إلا رأسها وراسها يبلغ اعنان السماء ويبلغ السحاب وعن ابي هريرة فيها
 من كل لون وما بين قرنينا فرسخن للراكب وعن حسن لا يتم خروجهما
 إلا بعد ذلك أيام ومن امير المؤمنين علي ابن ابي طالب عليه السلام
 انه سهل من ابن تخرج الدابة فقال من اعظم المساجد الي ذلك أيام
 والناس ينظرون فلا يخرج إلا ذلكا ومن النبي ص انه سهل من ابن
 تخرج الدابة فتقال من اعظم المساجد على الله يعني المسجد الحرام
 وروي أنها تخرج ذلك خرجات تخرج باقصى اليمن ثم تندمون ثم تخرج
 بالبادية ثم تندمون دهراً طويلاً فبينما الناس في اعظم المساجد ...
 فما يهولهم إلا خروجها ... فقوم يهربون وقوم يقفون نظارة وقيل تخرج من
 الصفا فتكلهم بالعرية بلسان زلق وتقول ان الناس كانوا بايا تنا لا يوقفون

يعني ان الناس لا يقرون بخروجي لأن خروجها من الآيات وتقول
 الا لعنة الله علی الظالمين وعن السّدی تکلهم ببطلان الاديان كلها مسوی
 دین الاسلام وعن ابن عمر تستقبل المغارب فذمرخ صرخة ثم تستقبل
 المشرق ثم الشام ثم اليهود فتفعل مثل ذلك ... و روی ... بينما هيسي عـ
 يطوف بالبيت ومعه المسلمين ان تضرب الارض تحتهم تحرك القنديل و
 ينشق البابا ... فتخرج الدابة من البابا ومعها عصي موسى وخاتم صليمان
 فتضرب الموسمن في مسجدية او فيما بين عينيه بعضاً موسى فتنبت زنطة
 ببعضها فتشا تلك الزنطة في وجهه حتى تصيب بها وجهه ... كانه كورك
 دري وتكتب بين عينيه موسمن وتنبت الكافر بالخاتم في افقه فتفشا
 الزنطة حتى تسود بها وجهه وتكتب بين عينيه كافر فتجلو وجه الموسمن
 بالعصا وتختتم اذن الكافر بالخاتم ثم تقول لهم يا فلاں انت من اهل
 الجنة ويا فلاں انت من اهل النار

ART. III.—*The Alexander Myth of the Persians.*
BY E. REHATSEK, M.C.E.

What we take the liberty to call the Alexander-myth, passes with Persian chroniclers, all of whom wrote quite independently of Western sources, for real history. Nevertheless, their coincidence in the main points and in some proper names, with classic authors, is remarkable enough, considering that the earliest Persian authors whose works still exist, composed them more than a thousand years after the Greek and Roman classics had produced their accounts of the Macedonian hero. There is a consensus that Alexander was a Greek king who conquered Persia and a portion of India, but some Persian authors state that this celebrated sovereign was no other than the same two-horned Alexander, Sekander Dhulqarnyn, some of whose exploits are described in the Qorán (XVIII.), whilst others assert that the latter has been one of the prophets, and not the same with the Greek Alexander, Sekander Rúmy. The epithet "two-horned" is nevertheless applied unanimously to both, although the reasons why he obtained it are not satisfactorily explained, and are stated to be of various kinds. Mirkhond is one of those authors who calls the Alexander of the Qorán the "great two-horned," and considers him to have been a prophet who lived before the time of Abraham; he attributes to him the building of the famous rampart against Yajúj and Májúj (Gog and Magog) mentioned in that book, which may perhaps be a dark allusion to the Great Wall of China; he, nevertheless, causes him, after traversing the countries of the east and the west, as well as visiting India and other lands, to settle in Alexandria, and to found near it the city of *Makedoniá*.

The remote age in which this "*Greater Alexander*" is supposed to have lived may be conjectured from the following statement quoted by Mirkhond on the authority of the A'jáyib-ullákhbár, namely, that "it took 150 years to build the just mentioned city, and that it was surrounded by a wall so polished, that on account of its glare the inhabitants were forced to wear veils. In one corner of the town there was a tower 600 cubits high, containing a talismanic speculum, in which an army, coming from any quarter of the world, could be perceived, and the inhabitants were enabled to make timely preparations for defence."

It is said that the city remained inhabited during one thousand five hundred years ; after that it was in ruins one thousand years ; and now it is nearly two thousand years since Alexander the Greek built a town there in the same manner as he had learnt from ancient histories, and called it after his own name ; it still subsists till the present year, namely, A. H. 801 (A. D. 1398)."

Mirkhond had undoubtedly read, and also agrees often with the Shah-námah written in the tenth century of our era,¹ and, as is well known, based on much earlier sources. In that book, however, to save the honour of the Persians, who could not brook the idea of having been subjugated by a foreigner, whose nation was, moreover, supposed to be tributary to them, currency had already been given to the myth that

Birth and education of Dárá, the King of Persia, had espoused the daughter of Philip, the King of Macedonia, Alexander.

but had, on discovering that she had a fetid breath, sent her again back to her father to Greece, where she soon gave birth to Alexander, the future conqueror of Persia, who was generally believed to have been the son of Philip. Nevertheless, Mirkhond gives no opinion of his own concerning the descent of Alexander, and contents himself with quoting the above with some others, whilst Nízámí in his Sekander-námah first mentions that Philip had made an excursion into the desert, where he found a dead woman, with an infant at her feet, sucking his own finger for want of milk, and this child Philip adopted as his own son ; then he adduces another tradition, which is of Zoroastrian origin, and refers Alexander's parentage to Dara² ; Nízámí, however, rejects both these accounts, and asserts that Alexander was no other than Philip's own son. This, Khondemir says, is also the opinion of the Qády Názer-uddyn Beydávy, but nevertheless relates in the beginning of his account the statement above given from the Shahnámah.

According to Nízámí, Philip entrusted the philosopher Lysimachus, whose name he spells *Liqomájush*, with the education of Alexander.³ Aristotle, the son, of Nicomachus, and most distinguished disciple of

¹ Firdousy was born A. H. 328 (A. D. 939-40).

دگر گونه دهقان آذر پرست بدара کند نسل او باز گشت

² He who had both the name and business of preceptor was Lysimachus the Acarnanian (Langhorn's Plutarch, p. 417). According to the same author, Philip sent for Aristotle only after perceiving that he did not easily submit to authority (p. 471).

Plato, is, however, made the companion of Alexander, of whose age he was, in his studies and amusements.⁴ Diogenes Laertius (Lib. V., cap. i., n. vii., 9) asserts that Aristotle went only after his father's death to the Court of Philip, and was appointed teacher of the young prince, who was 15 years old. According to Justin (Lib. XII., cap. xvi.) Alexander remained five years under the tuition of this philosopher. There is, however, a general consensus among oriental and occidental authors, that Alexander always entertained the highest esteem for Aristotle,⁵ and that he corresponded with him even from the remotest countries.

Mirkhond accurately observes that Philip, *Fylqús*, was assassinated by Pausanias, *Felús*, and assigns his violent passion for the spouse of the king as the cause of the deed.⁶ Alexander was born in the first year of the hundred and sixth Olympiad, 354-5 B. C., and his father having been murdered in 336, he ascended the throne at the age of 19 or 20. Other authors generally commence the reign of Alexander with his expedition to, and conquest of Persia, but Nizámy gives before it an account of a campaign against the Ethiopians, of whose incursions the Egyptians had complained; the Macedonian hero defeats them and builds Alexandria.⁷ In this war, to the description of which Nizámy devotes several pages, but Firdousy only 2 or 3 distichs, Alexander is said to have been accompanied by Aristotle, and to have greatly profited by his advice. After returning from this campaign to

۴ هنر پیشه فرزند استاد بود که همدرس او بود و همزاد بود
۵ ارسطو که دستور درگاه بود بهر نیک و بد محروم شاوه بود

⁴ Pausanias nobilis ex Macedonibus adolescens, nemini suspectus, occupatus angustiis Philippum in transitu obruncavit. (Justin. L. IX., cap. ii.) Creditum est etiam immissum ab Olympiade, matre Alexandri fuisse.—(*Ibid.*, cap. vii.)

⁵ He indeed builds Alexandria, not, however, before his campaign against Darius, as Nizámy states, but after defeating that king in the battle of Issus, near the sea-shore, along which he continued to march with the intention of paying a visit to the temple of Jupiter Ammon in Lybia, and on reaching the site of what afterwards became Alexandria, "he ordered a city to be planned suitable to the ground, and its appendant conveniences." Then he continued his laborious journey through the sands to the temple of Jupiter Ammon, and accomplished it; after that he returned to Phenicia and resumed his march against Darius. (Plut.)—Ad Jovem deinde Hammonem pergit. (Justin L. XI., ch. xi.) Reversus ab Hammonie Alexandriam condidit et coloniam Maccdonum caput esse Egypti jubet. (*Ibid.* See also Diod., L. XVII., ch. vii.)

Greece, Alexander receives an embassy from Darius, asking the usual yearly tribute of one thousand golden eggs, but replies that the hen which laid them had died, and that henceforth Persia is to receive no more tribute. When Darius was informed of the proud reply of Alexander, he declared that a fly might as well presume to make war against an eagle, or a drop of water against the ocean, than the king of Greece against him. Darius hereon sent a swift courier to Alexander with a ball, a crooked bat for playing the Persian cricket or Chugán, and a box filled with millet, or mustard-seed, or sesame, according to various authors. This ambassador introduced himself with a polite speech, but also delivered the uncourteous message of Darius, that as Alexander was only a boy, he had sent him playthings, and emptying the box he poured out the grain, assuring the Greek king that the Persian armies were more numerous than these. Alexander, however, prognosticated his own success from the gifts, by replying that the ball represented the terrestrial globe which he meant to conquer, and that the crooked stick had been sent to him as an indication that he would draw Persia to himself. Then he called for the chickens of the palace, which unanimously assailed the grains, and said that if the king of Persia intended to attack him with troops of sesame he possessed fowls that would gobble them up. Hereon, says Nizámy, Darius declared war, and marched with an army, the cavalry alone of which amounted to 900,000 men, against Greece, till he reached the boundaries of the dominions of Alexander.

According to some authors, Alexander took the initiative in this war,⁸ but Josephus Flavius (B. XI., ch. viii.) Invasion and conquest of Persia. states that not only Darius, "but all those that were in Asia also, were persuaded that the Macedonians would not so much as come to a battle with the Persians, on account of their multitude." Alexander, however, invaded Asia in 334 B. C. with 32,000 infantry and only 500 cavalry,⁹

⁸ A general assembly of the Greeks being held at the Isthmus of Corinth, they came to a resolution to send their quota with Alexander against the Persians, and he was unanimously elected captain-general (Plut., p. 456). No reasons are, however, assigned why the campaign against Darius was undertaken.

⁹ As to the number of troops, those that put it at the least say he carried over 30,000 foot and 500 horse; and they who put it at the most, tell us his army consisted of 34,000 foot and 4,000 horse. (Plut., p. 457; Justin Lib. XI., ch. vi., has 32,000 infantry, 45,000 cavalry, and 80 ships.)

and the first battle near the river Granicus having been fought with the generals of Darius, the Persians retreated to Issus (333 b. c.), where he himself was present, and left 110,000 dead on the field of battle. Among the prisoners of the Greeks, as will be seen further on, were the mother, wife, and children of Darius, who then retired further into the interior, weakened but not dismayed.¹⁰

None of the numbers and names of places, just given, are mentioned by Persian authors, who use rather vague expressions, and agree only in the main points with our classical sources. Mirkhond very quickly jumps to the final catastrophe by causing Alexander at once to conquer Adarbaijan, Gayllán, and then to march to Fárs, where Darius meets him with an army more numerous than the leaves of trees; he evidently describes the battle of Arbela, but gives no name. He not only considers the Greeks to be monotheists, as other Persian chroniclers do, but when they rush to the attack they actually use a verse of the Qorán (LXI., 3,) for their war-cry :—“ Aid comes from Allah, and victory is at hand.”

In the Shahnámah three battles are described, but with very scanty topographical remarks; to fight the first Darius himself advances with his army from the river Euphrates, near which a battle was fought that lasted seven days, and on the eighth the Persians fled¹¹; for the second, Darius collected new forces from Erán and Turán, and was again beaten, the more so, as Alexander had issued a proclamation that he

¹⁰ In Castris Persarum multum auri ceterarumque opum inventum. Inter captivos castrorum, mater, et uxor eademque soror, et filiæ dñas Darii fuere. Ad quas visendas hortandasque quum Alexander venisset, conspectis armatis, invicem se amplectæ, velut statim moritura complorationem ediderunt. Pro voluntate deinde genubus Alexandri, non mortem, sed dum Darii corpus sepeliant, dilationem mortis deprecantur. Motus tanta mulierum pietate Alexander, et Darium vivere dixit, et timentibus mortis metum dempsit, easque haberit ut reginas præcepit. Filias quoque non sordidius dignitate patris sperare matrimoniū jussit. (Just. L. IV., ch. ix.)

¹¹ This battle was not fought near the Euphrates, as Firdousy believed, but near the Granicus, nor was Darius present in it; his satraps had assembled a great army and had taken a position upon the Granicus; they offered neither a great nor a long resistance to the Greeks, but soon turned their backs. According to Plutarch, 20,000 of their foot and 2,500 horse were killed in this battle, but according to Diodorus, only 10,000 in all. The classical authors put the loss of Alexander at a ludicrously small figure; Plutarch states that not more than 34 were killed, and Arrian that about 25 of the king's friends fell in the battle, and of persons of less note 60 horse and 30 foot.

did not wage war against the people¹³; whereon defections took place in the army of Darius, who gradually retired to Persepolis, where he gathered strength and hoped to retrieve his fortunes. Alexander traversed E'rāq and Kerman, whereon the third battle was fought,¹³ in which the family of Darius fell into the power of the Greeks, and his

شمارا از من بیم و زار نیست میباشد مرد با شما کار نیست ۱۳.

Thus it would appear that the Prussians in the Franco-German war of 1870-71 and the English generals in the Afghán war of 1879-80 only imitated the precedent of Alexander the Great, when they issued proclamations that they did not mean to attack the people but only the government.

¹³ On the first alarm of the approach of the Persians, Alexander took possession of the town of Issus, and in the battle which ensued in the vicinity of it, both Alexander and Darius fought in person; Oxathres, the brother of the latter, perceiving that the former was particularly desirous to encounter Darius, resolved to follow him. He took up his position with the bravest cavaliers in front of the chariot of Darius, and put to the sword great numbers of those who attempted to approach the person of the king. The escort of Alexander being, however, equally valiant, a heap of corpses was soon accumulated around the chariot of Darius; those who attacked and those who defended him being equally ready to sacrifice their lives. The horses of Darius, covered with wounds, and rendered savage by the tumult around them, no longer obeyed the reins, and were on the point to drag the king into the midst of his foes. Darius, perceiving this danger, himself seized the reins of his horses, contrary to the custom and dignity of the kings of Persia. Meanwhile his officers gave him another chariot, the disorder among his troops increased, and he fled, but again returned about midnight to the camp of his defeated troops, with which he then retreated to Babylon and again gathered strength. (See *Diod. B. XVII., ch. xvii.*) In this battle 110,000 Persians were killed according to Plutarch, but according to *Diodorus (B. XVII., ch. vi.)* 20,000 infantry and at least 10,000 cavalry, whilst the Macedonians lost only 300 of the former and not more than 150 of the latter. Here also the tent of Darius was taken, and when Alexander was sitting down to table, an account was brought him, that among the prisoners were the mother, the wife, and two unmarried daughters of Darius. Plutarch, Curtius, Diodorus, and Justin all agree that Alexander after some pause, during which he was rather commiserating the misfortunes of these ladies than rejoicing at his own success, sent Leonnatus to assure them "that Darius was not dead, and that they had nothing to fear from Alexander"; here Plutarch takes occasion to praise the continence of Alexander, and says that he knew no woman before his marriage with Bersine, a widow who had been taken prisoner at Damascus; she was well versed in Greek literature and of royal extraction, her father Artabazus having been the grandson of a king of Persia. This marriage is alluded to also by Justin (*L. IV., ch. x.*), who adds:—"Ex qua postea susceptum puerum Herculem vocavit."

nobles—many of whose relatives had been slain or taken prisoners—besought him to sue for peace. Accordingly, Darius wrote a letter to Alexander,¹⁴ in which he promised to give him enormous treasures, abdicated the throne in his favour, and adjured him to be generous, but finding that he could effect nothing, he despatched a courier with a letter to India, requesting *Für* (Porus of the classics), a sovereign of that country, to aid him with an army. When Alexander heard this he forthwith left Persepolis with his army and encountered Darius for the last time in a battle, after which the latter fled with only 300 men, among whom were also two officers, Máhyár and Jánúsyár, who became traitors and slew Darius, or rather wounded him mortally, hoping that Alexander would reward them for the deed. When they informed him of what they had done, he ordered them to take him to the spot where the body of Darius was, and there a most pathetic scene ensued. The conquered monarch still breathed, the victor compassionately bent over him, assured him of his fullest sympathy, promised to get his wounds cured by the best Indian and Greek physicians, and to re-instal him on the throne.¹⁵ Darius informed the conqueror of his approaching end, recommended to him his family, but especially requested him to preserve his wife and daughter *Rushang* (Roxane)

¹⁴ This letter is mentioned also by Plutarch, who says :—" It was about this time that he received a letter from Darius, in which that prince proposed, on condition of a pacification and future friendship, to pay him 10,000 talents in ransom of the prisoners, to cede to him all the countries on this side the Euphrates, and to give him his daughter in marriage. Upon his communicating these proposals to his friends, Parmenio said 'if I were Alexander, I would accept them.' 'So would I,' said Alexander, 'if I were Parmenio.' The answer he gave to Darius was 'that if he would come to him, he should find the best of treatment ; if not, he must go and seek him.' " This repartee of Alexander to Parmenio is recorded also in Diod. B. XVII., ch. vii.—Darius quum Babylonem profugisset, per epistolas Alexandrum deprecatur, redimendarum sibi captivarum potestatem faciat, inque eam rem magnam pecuniam pollicetur ; sed Alexander in pretium captivarum regnum omne, non pecuniam petit. Interjecto tempore alias epistola Darii, Alexandro redduntur, quibus filiæ matrimonium et regni portio offertur. (Justin, L. XI., ch. xii.)

¹⁵ " Alexander," says Plutarch, " having subdued all on this side the Euphrates, began his march against Darius, who had taken the field with a million of men." The abovementioned battle, which took place near Arbela, is not described by Plutarch ; but Diodorus and Arrian (L. III., ch. 18, seq.,) give a long account of it. Diodorus (B. XVII., ch. vii.) states that Darius, being very desirous that the battle should take place under the walls of Niniveh, because there was a plain favourable for the deploying of his large army,

from dishonour, then he expired. Alexander had the body of Darius removed, embalmed with camphor,¹⁶ and placed with due ceremony in a Dukhnah, he himself with all his courtiers accompanying the funeral procession. The ceremony being finished, two gibbets were erected, on which the two assassins were hanged.¹⁷ According to the classics, however, the governor of Bactriana, Bessus, murdered Darius in the hope of succeeding him on the throne (331 b. c.), whereas Persian authors are unanimous with reference to the abovementioned

pitched his camp near the village of Arbela. Whilst the Persian authors assert that Darius was slain in his flight after this battle, Plutarch narrates that Alexander traversed the whole province of Babylon, went to Ecbatana (Hamdán), made himself master of Susa, burnt Persepolis after a carousal, and then marched again against Darius ; but upon intelligence that Bessus had seized the person of that prince, he rode in pursuit and reached Darius only after hard riding of eleven days ; "they found him extended on his chariot and pierced with many darts." When Alexander came up he had already expired. The next movement of the conqueror was into Hyrcania, which he entered with the flower of his army, and had a view of the Caspian Sea. Thence he marched into Parthia, &c., as may be seen at a glance in Spruner's beautiful *Atlas Antiquus*, No. VIII., where the "Alexandri Magni iter" is traced out with red lines, whereas all the Persian authors cause Alexander at once to march to India after the just mentioned battle of Arbela.

تنش زیر کافور شد ناپدید و زانپس کسی روی دارا ندیده^{۱۶}.

¹⁷ That the above named two officers slew Darius and led Alexander to him is apocryphal ; and Bessus, the real murderer, was punished only after Alexander had marched to Bactriana ; for, says Diodorus (B. XVII., ch. xviii.), Darius had retreated from Alexander to Bactriana with an army of 30,000 men which he had again collected, and was just marching out from the town of Bactra (Balkh) when the satrap Bessus killed him. This author states in the same chapter that Alexander pursuing Darius at the head of his cavalry, and being informed of the murder of the Persian king, searched for, and found his corpse, which he got honourably interred ; he however adds that according to some authors Alexander found Darius still alive and complaining of his misfortunes, whereon the conqueror assured him that he would avenge his death. This is in conformity with our Persian authors. On the other hand, neither Plutarch nor Justin hint at any such interview between the two kings ; the latter says (L. XI., ch. xv.) :—"Emensus [Alexander] deinde multa millia passuum, quum nullum Darii indicium reperisset, respirandi equis data potestate, unus ex militibus dum ad fontem proximum pergit, in vehiculo Darium, multis quidem vulneribus confossum, sed spirantem invenit." Further on (L. XII., ch. v.) he says, after mentioning the conquests of Alexander in Central Asia :—"Interim unus ex amicis Darii, Bessus, vincitus producitur, qui regem non solum prodiderat, verum et interfecerat. Quem in ultionem perfidie excrucianum fratri Darii tradidit."

statement concerning the two officers of Darius ; they also agree perfectly with some Greek and Roman authors that Alexander married Roxane, whom they call Rushang, the daughter of Darius, or of one of his satraps.¹⁵ The Shahnámah contains a letter of Alexander to Dilárá, the spouse, and Rushang, the daughter, of Darius, informing them that the late king had promised him the latter in marriage. In reply to Alexander, Dilárá consents to bestow the hand of the young lady upon him,¹⁶ and a short time afterwards, the wedding takes place with great pomp. Then Rushang was, according to Nizámy, sent to Greece with Aristotle.

Mirkhond states that Alexander married Rushang and installed the brother of Dara as his viceroy in Fars, and chief of ninety-nine governors of Erán. By order of Alexander, works treating on medicine and astronomy were translated into the Greek language, but all the books of the Magi were burnt and their temples destroyed ; which latter statement is in strict accordance with the traditions of the Parsees, that the religion of the Parsees fell into decay by the conquest of Alexander.¹⁷ The author of the Shahnámah, on the contrary, has not a word to say of Alexander's enmity towards the Persian religion or his persecution of it ; and as Firdousy had throughout the work manifested rather laudatory than derogatory sentiments towards it, he was by his enemies accused of being a Zoroastrian in disguise ; this accounts for the presence of a passage in which he found it necessary to declare his stout adherence to Islám and admiration of A'ly, for which he incurred the odium of fanatic Sunnys, although he had praised also Abu Bekr and O'mar. Nizámy, however, like the majority of chroniclers, asserts that Alexander wished to destroy the Zoroastrian religion, wherefore nearly the whole piece concerning it is here given :—

The chronicler of ancient lore
Speaks thus of former times :—

¹⁵ Plutarch says nothing about the lineage of Roxane, but mentions that Alexander's marriage with her was entirely an effect of love. He saw her at an entertainment, and found her charms irresistible. Neither is the locality mentioned where the marriage took place. According to Arrian, Roxane was a captive, and daughter of Oxyartes, the brother of Darius.

¹⁶ دگر آنکه از روشنگ یاد کرد دل ما بدان آرزو شاد کرد پرسندۀ تست ما بنده ایم بفرمان و رایت سرانکنده ایم

¹⁷ Spiegel's Avesta, vol. i. Einleitung, ch. ii., p. 16.

When Zoroaster's Faith decayed
The fire went out, the ignicolist was burnt.
Alexander ordered the Eranians
To abandon ignolatry,
To leave their ancient Faith
To embrace that of their new king,
The Magi the fire to leave,
The fire-temples to destroy.
It was the custom of those times,
In fire-temples scholars to maintain,
The treasures there to guard,
That none obtain access to them.
A rich man without heirs
His wealth to fire-temples left.
This custom was a public injury,
As every temple was a treasure-house.
When Alexander destroyed those shrines,
He caused the treasures to flow out ;
Every fire-temple he met with,
He demolished, and its treasures took.
It was the usage of ignicolists
To sit throughout the year with brides ;
Ou Jamshyd-new-year's day, and Joshan Sedeh
To renovate the temples' festivals ;
From all directions maidens young
To the temples quickly sped.
Bedecked, with ornaments, adorned
They arrived in crowds with eagerness.
The book Barzyn, the magic words of Zend
Were chanted loud, to reach the sky,
But all their work was play and dalliance
Telling stories, or reciting magic spells ;
Some danced, some clapped their hands
Or played with rose-bouquets.
When the quickly turning sphere
Again a new year had commenced
A feast they kept, and left their homes
To celebrate it in the fields,
Then pleasure parties were arranged
Rejoicings great took place,

But when Greece and Persia became one
All these rejoicings had an end.
The throne becomes exalted by one king
When there are many it must decay ;
One king a hundred much excels
Just as too rich showers rain cause.
The well-meaning monarch now ordained :—
Rites of the Magi no one should observe,
Noble brides should show their face
To mothers and to husbands alone.
He broke the incantations, pictures all
Dispersed the Magi from the Butkhaneh,
He cleansed the world from all polluted Faiths
And kept the people orthodox.
This power in the country of Erán
Allowed no Zartosht fires to remain,
Henceforth the covetous Magi could no more
With treasures fill the Ateshkedehs.
When the king had abolished the rites of fire,
He grieved all those who worshipped it.
He ordered all the people of the period
Homage to pay to God alone,
To follow the orthodox religion
To turn their backs on sun and moon.
The realm was conquered by the liberal king
He turned his steed into the open plains
And joyously victory espoused
As is recorded in Firdousy's strains.
But if you wish to listen to my lay
And see some mysteries revealed
Take out the cotton from your ears
Because I humbly give a new account
Of what I learnt from trusted men
Concerning events of those times ;
Some chronicles I also possessed
Of which I left no word unread
Those treasures I compared.
I gathered scattered broken leaves,
From hidden records I produce,
The narrative I now present :—

A Persian sage and old
Spoke thus and my approval met :—
The king deprived Dárá of throne and crown
Then he from Mausul marched away
And entered Babel with much pomp,
He cleared the land of sorcerers
The fire of Mobeds he ordered
To be put out with gentleness ;
To purge the Zend-books from fatuity,
Or else to place them into libraries.
He showed the way to the barbarians
And blotted from their hearts the memory of fire
Thence he, highminded sovereign,
Sped towards Adharabádagán
Wherever he the fire perceived
He quenched it and the Zend-books washed.
That region had a fire, rock-enshrined
Called “ incomprehensible ” by ignicolists
Attended by hundred gold-collared Hyrbads
Placed side by side to worship it.
That ancient flame to quench,
He ordered, and was obeyed.
Having extinguished the said fire
He marched his troops to Espahán ;
That beauteous and adorned town
So pleasant and so rich,
Rejoiced the heart exceedingly ;
Here many fires were quenched
And their Hyrbads were abased.
There was a temple more adorned
Than pleasure gardens in the spring.
For Zartosht’s Faith, and Majús rites
Fine brides attended service there,
All captivating eyes and hearts ;
One was a sorceress, descendant of Sám
Her name was Adhar Humayún.
When that enchantress sang her spells
She hearts enfeebled, raptured souls.
Now Alexander speedily decreed
The demolition of that house,

But Adhar Humayún assumed
 A flaming dragon's shape ;
 The soldiers at the fiery serpent glanced
 Fled terror-stricken and dismayed ;
 The king they forthwith thus informed :—
 A dragon in the temple dwells
 With fire he our men assails
 And burns them or devours.
 The king this mystery to know
 His Dastur quickly called
 Who forthwith thus replied :—
 “ Balynás secrets can unfold
 The talismanic arts he knows.”
 “ Can phantoms such as this,”
 The king Balynás asked,
 “ Foil our designs in this place ?”
 The wise man said :—“ Such figures are
 Produced by sorcery alone,
 If it be the pleasure of the king
 I shall this serpent tame forthwith.”
 The sage now to the temple sped
 And saw a dragon's head erect.
 The sight of Balynás dismayed the witch
 She levelled incantations at the sage
 But they recoiled on her alone.
 He foiled all her sorceries
 The moment of defeat now came ;
 He called for rue, a medicinal herb,
 With which he touched the sorceress
 And broke her spells, as water quenches fire.
 The maiden saw that she was lost
 And mercy craved at his feet.
 Balynás now her face beheld,
 Relented, spared her life,
 But made the flames blaze aloft
 And had the fire temple burnt.

As the rest of the piece contains nothing more about the religion of the Persians, it is omitted, but it winds up with a marriage, just like a modern European novel. Balynás takes the lady to Alexander, who permits him to wed her.

Before Alexander invaded India he extended his conquests into Central Asia, where he built, according to Invasion of India. Mirkhond, a large city near the river Jayhún

(Bactrus), which he named Marjálús, and invited persons from other regions to settle there ; he also founded Samarqand and Herat.²¹ After accomplishing these conquests he marched to India through difficult passes, and across steep mountains. The invasion of India and the fights with two kings there, named Kyd and Fúr, are narrated by all the Persian chroniclers, although naturally in different ways.

No opposition is said to have been offered to the Greek conqueror on his entering India, and the gates of towns were freely opened to him.²² Kyd, the sovereign of India, whose province he first entered, presented him with a beauteous maiden, a skilled physician, a great philosopher, and an inexhaustible marvellous goblet, from which water or wine could be made at pleasure to flow at any time. After receiving these gifts, Alexander declared that he would never attack Kyd, buried his treasures in a mountain and marched to the ancient city of Qanúj on the Ganges,²³ to attack Fúr, who had given an insolent reply to a

²¹ After his campaign in Persia and his conquest of Arachosia (331-330, b. c.) Alexander marched to Bactriana, mounting along the basin of the Etymander (Helmend) ; thus he arrived at the foot of the passes on the Hindu-Koh, entered the upper basin of the Kophes (Kabul-river) and the basin of the Oxus. Thero he founded a town called 'Alexandria of the Caucasus' (Arr. L. III., c. xxviii., 4, and V.i., 5) and 'Alexandria of the Paropanisades' (ibid. L. IV., c. xxii., 4) whence he passed northwards to Balkh and Samarqand, but the campaign of the Kophes, the precursor of his Indian conquests, took place only two and a half years later, in the spring of 327. In his march from Arachosia to the passes of the Paropanisus (Hindu-Koh), Alexander necessarily also passed through Ortospanum, i. e. Kabura, the present Kabul. (Etude sur la geogr. grecque et latine de l'Inde. Vivien de St. Martin, p. 21, seq.

²² بجای که آمد مکندر فراز در شارما نہا کشادند باز

²³ It is too well known that Alexander never marched to the Ganges. The classic authors mention no sovereign of the name of Kyd ; Taxiles, however, the sovereign of Taxila (Takshasila, on which see "The Ancient Geogr. of India" by A. Cunningham, p. 114, seq.) paid a friendly visit to Alexander and brought him great presents, for which he received larger ones in return. (Plut.) Alexander desired indeed to attack the Gangarides, after he had conquered Porus and some other princes, and to march for that purpose to the river Ganges, but the army, now eight years from home, refused to comply ; wherefore he promised his troops that he would begin his return march, built ships, and descended the Indus. (Diod. L. XVII., c. lii.)

letter from Alexander. The numbers of the forces, which consisted of Greeks dressed in armour, of Egyptians [*sic*] and of Persians, are not given, except of the last named, who are said to have amounted to 40,000. When Fúr became aware of the approach of the enemy he prepared for resistance, and advanced with his army, which occupied four miles in extent, and was accompanied by numerous elephants trained for war. Alexander had an elephant constructed which moved on wheels, and was filled with naphtha, as well as other combustibles ; this model having been tried and found serviceable, more than a thousand were made, according to Firdousy, but Mir-khond states that 24,000 hollow figures were constructed. A battle ensued, and the Indian army having retreated before these fire-engines, Alexander advanced further, and again encountering it, challenged Fúr to single combat, to prevent another conflict between the two armies, which would necessarily result in terrible slaughter. Fúr agreed, and the condition was that the kingdom should belong to the victor in this duel. Accordingly the two kings fought, Fúr lost his life, and Alexander installed a great Hindu noble of the name of Súrak on the throne of the country.²⁴

Not a word is said by Firdousy how Alexander managed to transport himself all at once, with his army, to Mekkah, where he performs his devotions in the Ka'bah, approaching it on foot, and distributing largesses all the while. That piece must be spurious, not at all by Firdousy, but foisted in and gradually amplified during the lapse of eight centuries ; how else could Alexander again make his appearance among the Brahmins, as we shall see in the next paragraph ? After finishing his pilgrimage, Alexander constructs ships in Jeddah, whence he sails to Egypt, which is under the sway of Qytún, who pays allegiance to him, as soon as he hears that he is a great and pious monarch. Alexander rests himself a year in Egypt ; he leaves it, however, to go to Andalús, which is governed by a queen Qydáfeh, and makes a treaty of peace

²⁴ According to Plutarch, Porus was merely taken prisoner, and Alexander not only restored to him his dominions, but added very extensive territories to them, which he was to govern as his Lieutenant. This is stated also by Justin, L. XII., c. viii.; and Diodorus (L. XVII., c. xl.) mentions that Porus, although dangerously wounded, was still breathing, and entrusted to physicians of his own nation ; when he recovered his health, Alexander re-installed him in his kingdom. In the above mentioned contest, the head-quarters of Alexander were at Jalálpur, near the river Jhelum ; those of Porus about Muhábatpur, four miles to the W.S.W. of Mong, and three miles S.E. of Jalálpur according to Cunningham (*loco laudato*, p. 172).

with her, on which occasion the forger's ignorance of chronology appears in a very glaring way, because the Christian religion is alluded to as existing at that time. It may also be observed in this place that the queen Qydáfeh had sent a skilful painter to limn a portrait of Alexander by which she recognized him ; and it will be noticed further on, in the paragraph on the war with the Russians, that Nizamy causes Nushabeh, the queen of Borda, to recognize Alexander in the same manner.

No battles are mentioned as having been fought, nor any kind of hostilities since Alexander left India, where he again returns from Andalús to the province or rather town of the Brahmans, with surprising celerity, no allusion whatever being made to the distance intervening between Andalús and India, nor to the manner in which he succeeded to transfer his whole army again to that country. It is however expressly mentioned that he hastened from Andalús to India, for the purpose of questioning the ascetics on ancient subjects.²⁵ The Brahmans sent from their mountain a letter to Alexander, in which they informed him, after the usual compliments, that they were all devotees, and that if he had come in search of wealth, he would be disappointed, they being all in a state of nudity, engaged in the pursuit of knowledge, and the exercise of patience, of which nobody could deprive them. A messenger, dressed only in an apron of grass, had brought the letter, which Alexander perused, and then advancing only with his philosophers, left his army behind. When he met the Brahmans they greeted him politely, and the following conversation ensued :—

- A. What enjoyments in the world have you ? They consist in sleep, in eating, drinking, resting and fighting.
- B. We have nothing to do with war, nor with clothing, as we are all born naked, and shall again be so when we die.
- A. What is more abundant, the visible or the invisible ; the living or the dead ?
- B. The invisible is more abundant, because all who have lived before, are dead.
- A. What is more, land or water ?

دوان تا شهر برهون رسیده لشکر اندر کشید وز آنجا یگه
بدهان تاز گردار ۶۴ کهنه ز پرهیز گاران سخن پرسید

- B. Also land is preserved by water.
- A. Who is most independent ?
- B. He who is contented with little.
- A. Who is the greatest sinner ?
- B. He who refuses to listen to the dictates of reason.
- A. What is always with us ?
- B. Our soul, our cares, and our sins.
- A. What is the nature of greed for money that makes it deplorable ?
- B. Greed of money resembles two demons ; the one distressed by want, the other by wealth.
- A. What can I do for you ; will you accept treasures ?
- B. O mighty king ! ward off from us old age and death !
- A. From death there is no escape, even iron is destroyed.
- B. Then why, O mighty king, do you exert yourself so much in war, and in the accumulation of wealth ?
- A. I am destined by fate for this course of life, and those who are slain in their contests with me, are only punished for their own deeds.²⁶

After leaving the Brahmins, Alexander departs to the fish-eaters,²⁷ who live near the boundless sea, veil their faces like women, use robes, paints, and perfumes. A mountain is discovered, yellow, and shining like the sun ; Alexander wishes to examine it, but is persuaded to send a few Persians and philosophers in a ship, and not to risk his own life ; the mountain, however, proved to be a large yellow fish, who destroyed the ship. Then he comes to a region where he meets with trees that let down their branches and spread their foliage over a distance, so that people are living under them ; the description answers to our Banian-tree, i. e., *Ficus Indica*.²⁸ Then he marches

²⁶ It is extremely surprising that the number and scope of the questions here given, is the same with those which Plutarch states that Alexander asked the Gymnosophists. Had Firdousy not been a poet and therefore biassed by imagination as well as shackled by the exigencies of rhyme and metre, a much greater coincidence, if not identity of this dialogue, would have resulted between his description of it and that of his Greek predecessor.

²⁷ These may be the ichthiophagi of Gedrosia (Mekran) whom Alexander encountered when he marched back to Persia through Beluchistan. Bad diet, excessive heat, and maladies destroyed large numbers of the army, but the Persian accounts mention nothing of the sort.

۲۸ زد و رش فزون بود پهناي او چهل رش به پهناي او

through a region where many snakes issued from the water, whilst on the land many fire-coloured scorpions appeared, which stung his soldiers while they slept. Wild boars with teeth as strong as adamant, as well as lions, whom it became necessary to combat, also made their appearance, but the army put the whole district on fire, and departed from the sea coast, after having slain so great a number of hogs that they almost blocked up the road.

Now Alexander entered the country of the negroes, who were tall, and attacked the troops in a furious onslaught, but more than a thousand of them were killed, and the rest fled. They had no better weapon than large bones with which they fought. One night a howling of wolves was heard, and a flock of them appeared, each of which was as large as an ox, but their leader had the size of an elephant, and killed many warriors ; they were however put to flight. When Alexander reached the soft-footed nation (narm-páyán) he found them to be very numerous, but possessing neither horses nor armour, neither swords nor clubs ; when however the army approached them they yelled, and received it with a shower of stones, but the troops slew many of them. Now Alexander marched till he reached a very large city, where he was received in the friendliest manner by the inhabitants, who came out to meet him with all kinds of provisions. Here he rested his army, and great rejoicings took place.⁵⁹ Marching away from this place, he reached a mountain, the abode of a terrible dragon, who allowed no one to pass beyond it. The people of the town near it were compelled daily to bring five oxen to feed the monster, for fear of being attacked by it. Alexander at once ordered the withholding of this offering, whereon the dragon, being hungry, came down and was received with a shower of arrows, the martial noise of drums, trumpets and fifes, but the fires that had been kindled all round the camp, staggered the monster so, that it retired again. The next morning, however, Alexander ordered the customary offering to be made ; it consisted, however, not of five oxen, but only of their hides stuffed with naphtha

⁵⁹ This may have been the royal palace of Gedrosia (or rather Kermán), where, says Plutarch, Alexander gave the army time to refresh themselves again, and entertained them with feasts and public spectacles. See the account of the pathetic meeting of Alexander with the Admiral of his fleet, who landed in Harmozia (Ormuz) and there learnt that the king who had marched with the army from India by land, was not far.—(*Nearchi Parapluus ex Arriano*, p. 23 seq. Edited in Greek and Latin by Hudson. Oxford : 1698.)

and poison. After a while Alexander approached the dragon, and saw it looking like a big black cloud. Its tongue was dark blue, its eyes like blood, and it vomited fire. When the dragon had swallowed the five oxen and the poison had taken effect, the monster furiously knocked its head against the rock and perished.

When Alexander with his army had advanced towards Herüm, the city of the Amazons, he despatched a letter to inform them that all who offered resistance to his prowess had been humbled to the dust ; but a reply was sent to him that the female army numbered 10,000, all virgins ; that each who had slain a man in battle is rewarded with a golden diadem, and that there were 30,000 who had been thus crowned. If Alexander desired to meet them in combat, he would have to encounter a host, obscuring the sun and moon, but if he came as a friend, he would be received hospitably. This message was borne by an Amazon dressed in royal garments, accompanied by an escort of ten others on horseback. Alexander returned an answer that he was desirous to see the city, or to receive any of the ladies who might honour him with a visit, but that he had no intention to wage war against females ; he meant to ascertain how a community of women could exist without men, since death must necessarily diminish their numbers.

After amicable arrangements had been made, Alexander put his army in motion, but when he had progressed two stages, an icy wind arose, accompanied by snow ; when he had advanced further, a cloud of black smoke presented itself, and the ground became as hot as if the troops had been marching over fire. Now the army reached a town, the inhabitants of which were black as night, all foaming at their mouths ; their eyes were bloodshot, and they spat fire. They brought elephants as presents for the army, and confessed that the storm and snow had been produced by themselves, as also that no one had ever passed over this route. Alexander rested his army during one month in this town, and then continued his march towards the city of the Amazons. Now two thousand women crossed a river, all handsome, adorned with crowns and ear-rings, bringing abundant provisions to a delightful prairie full of trees and running brooks. When Alexander entered the city of Herüm, a procession of Amazons met him with presents of costly garments, ornaments and perfumes, which he graciously accepted. There he lived for some time in pleasure,

making friends with all, and having satisfied his curiosity, departed again.³⁰

Having arrived in a country all the people of which were of strong build, with red faces and yellow hair, Alexander asked them about the remarkable things of those regions. One of them replied that at some distance there existed a water, about which no one could give any information ; when the sun arrives there, it sinks ; and beyond that spot, in the darkness, the spring called the water of life is situated, by drinking of which a human being becomes immortal. Mir-khond does not mention this spring, and Firdousy does not specify its locality, although an account, exceeding sixty distichs, of Alexander's visit to this spring is given in the Shanámah ; his guide, the prophet Khider, reached the water, drank of it and attained immortality, but Alexander himself was frustrated in his endeavour to reach the spot. He went to a mountain, where he beheld various strange things, and lastly even the angel Serafyl, sitting in an expectant posture, with inflated cheeks, his trump in the hand, waiting for the divine command to sound the blast of the resurrection and judgment day. On perceiving Alexander, the angel admonishes him to be prepared. The Greek hero then came down from the mountain, and on entering the darkness with

³⁰ According to Diodorus (L. XVII., c. xxi.), Thalestris, the queen of the Amazons, who possessed all the country between the Phasis and the Thermandon, managed to put herself in the way of Alexander, when he was in Hyrcania (which means the southern shores of the Caspián sea, and Mazanderán). She was surprisingly beautiful and strong in body, but more celebrated by her extraordinary courage. She brought 300 armed Amazons, and Alexander being struck by the beauty as well as the martial aspect of these women, asked what had procured him so magnificent a reception. Thalestris unhesitatingly told him that her ambition was to possess an infant by him, hoping that the fruit of their union would surpass in bravery all men in the world. The king, easily gained over by this proposal, amused himself thirteen days with Thalestris, whereon he sent her away with splendid presents. Plutarch also mentions the visit of the queen of the Amazons to Alexander, as having taken place before his invasion of India, when he had approached the Caspian sea, and passing beyond it attacked the King of the Scythians, but doubts of its authenticity, although it had been repeatedly narrated by many preceding historians. It is curious that at Gumuche Tepe (silver hill), a village on the Capsian coast, silver money bearing the head of Alexander is frequently found, and that immense quantities of large bricks, fragments of ancient pottery, &c., also bear witness to his presence. (See more on this subject, *Indian Antiquary*, vol. x., p. 20, 21.)

his escort, he hears a shout, to the effect, that whether any one picks up a stone from the ground or not, he would repent of it. Some gathered stones, and when they again came out into daylight, they found that they had got rubies, and repented that they had not taken more, whilst those who had taken none were sorry, because they thought they might also have obtained precious stones. The narrative comes to a conclusion abruptly, without assigning any reason why and how Alexander was frustrated in his search for the water of immortality.³¹

This subject is treated at much greater length in the Sekandernámah of Niżamy, according to which Alexander was one day discussing with his officers concerning the things most precious in the world. Some asserted that the costliest substances could be obtained in Khowárezm, others in China, others in India, &c., but one maintained, that treasures were but mud in comparison to immortality, which might be attained by drinking water from a certain spring. The spring is situated under the north-pole, and any one who drinks of it will never die. Also here the prophet Khiđer was the guide ; but he considered it unsuitable that the whole army should march to the locality, accordingly only a small party undertook the journey. After travelling one month, Alexander reached a spot near the north-pole, where the sun rose only for a moment and sank again.³² At last, however, the party entered a region without any daylight, which distresses Alexander ; he bethinks himself, however, and gives Khiđer a fleet horse with very precise instructions how to set about to discover the spring ; which appears very strange, considering that he was a prophet, and superior to ordinary mortals. Khiđer is successful in his errand, drinks of the miraculous water, and becomes immortal. He

³¹ When Alexander was in Hyrcania near the Caspian sea, he arrived near the river Stibæus, which flows underground, and may have something to do with the myth of the water of immortality, in search of which he travelled in darkness. Diodorus (L. XVII., c. xix.) states that Alexander encamped near a rock, called the big stone. At its foot there is another where the river, called Stibæus, takes its rise. This river, issuing in large waves from its source, rushes a distance of three stadia, at the end of which it meets a rock of the form of a female breast, that separates it first into two arms and at the foot whereof a deep abyss yawns, into which the river precipitates itself with great noise and much foam, then flows 300 stadia under ground, wheroon it once more comes to the ground.

چو یکم اه ره رفت سوی شمال گذریاه خورشید را کشت حال
رقطب فلک روشنای نمود برآمد فروشد بیک احظ زود

again mounts his steed, keeping in view the spring for some time and looking back. But, alas! it disappeared suddenly, and then he knew that Alexander could never find it, and enjoy the blessings conferred by a draught from it. After all, however, this is not the only account ; and the author proceeds to inform us that according to ancient Greek narratives the water of life had been discovered by Khider on another occasion ; he was namely travelling in the company of Elyas, and both these prophets having arrived near a spring, they took out their provisions for a lunch ; among these there happened to be also a dried fish, which, accidentally falling into the water, became suddenly alive, and they knew that they had discovered the water of immortality !

Contrary to Mirkhond, with several other chroniclers in prose and poetry, Firdousy appears to have taken the Building of the wall Macedonian Alexander to be one and the same person with the Alexander of the Quran against Gog and Magog. (Surah xviii. and xxi.) ; he at any rate attributes to Alexander the Great the construction of the famous rampart mentioned in that book.⁸³ According to the Shahnáma, Alexander was informed by a certain nation which had received him with great civility, that it suffered very much from the incursions of the people of Yajuj and Majuj, whose faces were like those of horses, their tongues black, their eyes red, complexion dark, and teeth like those of boars. Their bodies were hirsute, their ears like those of elephants ; when one of them wished to repose he laid down on an ear as on a bed, and used the other for a coverlet ; each of their females brought forth one thousand children at one birth. After receiving this information Alexander determined to build a wall to hinder the incursions of this savage nation, consulted his philosophers, and ordered his blacksmiths to collect great quantities of iron, copper, brass, stone, and mortar. With these materials he built two walls along two sides of a mountain ; when the walls had attained the height of it, naphtha was poured upon them, which being put on fire, consolidated the structure, by melting all its component parts into one solid mass, so that it could not be destroyed by foes. Then Alexander pays a visit to a mountain where he beholds a palace illuminated by crystal

⁸³ It has been mentioned in the beginning of this paper that this rampart may be the wall of China, built about the first century of our era ; I allude to it also in *The Indian Antiquary* for 1872, p. 370, in my description of "A Persian Map of the World," on which also the rampart of Gog and Magog is represented.

lamps, with a human body laid out in state; also a couple of miraculous trees, the one male, the other female. The body speaks, and also the trees, on the perishableness of human affairs, whereon Alexander takes his departure.

Usually in the Shahnámah all princes with whom Alexander comes in contact, e. g., Darius, Porus, the queen March to China. of Amazons, &c., are favoured by him with a preliminary interchange of letters. Accordingly, an epistle is sent to the Foghfúr³⁴ of China, who receives the messenger, and sends a reply to the effect that he has powerful armies under his command. Some more correspondence passes between the two sovereigns, and the emperor of China sends abundant, as well as magnificent presents to the camp of Alexander, who however, strangely enough, again marches away, and has not even an interview with him.³⁵

Nizámý gives a much longer account of Alexander's sojourn in China, the banquet given to him by the emperor is described at great length, and it may also be noted that the abovementioned expedition in search of the water of immortality was, according to this author, undertaken by Alexander, not before, as Firdousy has it, but after his invasion of China. Disappointed in his search, Alexander returns from the extreme north again to the inhabited earth, and endeavours to oblige the kings by beneficence. Here Nizámý seems to have either been interrupted by death, or not to have been inclined again to take up the thread of the narrative so as to bring it down to the demise of Alexander, but we shall see further on that he commits the blunder of taking him back to Greece.³⁶

³⁴ It may be observed that Foghfúr, arabized from Boghbur, is only the literal translation of the Chinese Tientseh; heaven-son, God-son, the official title of the emperor.

³⁵ This march to China, or at any rate in the direction of it, is no other than the one undertaken by Alexander before invading India, when he reached the limits of the Chinese empire on the Yaxartes, via Balkh and Samarkand, whereon he again retraced his steps to the Hindu-koh.

³⁶ Sir Gore Ouseley states on p. 48 of his "Biographical Notices," &c., that according to Gholum Ali Azad's "Memoirs," entitled "The Royal Treasury," Nizámý finished his Sékander-námah A. H. 597 (A. D. 1200), which is generally supposed to be the year of his death; this, however, Hammer Purgstall in his "Geschichte der sischen Redekünste Persiens" places A. H. 576 (A. D. 1180), whilst in the "Nefháta-úl-uns" of Jámý, Bombay lithogr. ed. p. ۱۹۷ we find the year of Nizámý's death given not in numbers, but in words A. H. 592 (A. D. 1195-96), when he was above 60 years old.

It is historically remarkable that Nizamy, an author of the twelfth century of our era, makes circumstantial mention of the Russians, whose very name appears to have been unknown to other chroniclers purporting to give the biography of Alexander. This author states that whilst Alexander was on the eastern frontiers of Asia engaged with the Chinese, he obtained information that the Russians had attacked the Queen of Borda, and had devastated her residence. Alexander had already at an early stage of his campaigns, after taking Persepolis, paid a visit to the Borda-country, which obeyed the beautiful Queen Nushabeh, and enjoyed a paradisiac climate. Desiring to become acquainted with this queen, Alexander appears in the guise of his own ambassador, but is recognized by her, and as he still persists in keeping up his incognito, is at last silenced by his portrait, which she produces to his great confusion and admiration of her wisdom.

Alexander undertakes an expedition against the Russians, and Nizamy describes his seven great battles in as many separate pieces. At last, however, Alexander makes a prisoner of Qontal, the king of the Russians, liberates Nushabeh, and sends her back to her country. Nizamy represents the Russians drawn up in lines of battle as red-faced and shining like the fire-altars of the Magi.³⁷ In the first battle a Hindu prince fighting on the side of the Greeks, distinguished himself greatly in a duel with the Russian General Pertis. The Alans are also several times mentioned, but they fight on the side of the Russians; they had in the sixth battle a singular warrior who resembled more a beast than a human being, and killed so many Greeks that Alexander surnamed him Ahriunán (devil).

The explanation given to the Macedonian king about this ferocious being, which he thought was not of the human species, was as follows:— There is a dark mountain of difficult access, and on it beings live, who have the form of men, and the strength of iron. Nothing is known of their origin, all have a red complexion and blue eyes; they entertain no dread of furious lions, and are so powerful that one of them is a host in himself. No matter whether a male or a female of them engages in fight, it is terrible; none of them have ever been seen dead, and but few alive. Each of them keeps sheep, the wool and cheese whereof he uses, and has no need of anything else. On the forehead of every

man and woman a horn, like that of a rhinoceros, grows ; in this particular they differ from the Russians, but are as wicked as they. If one of them wants to sleep, he takes up his position on a tree, fixing his horn among lofty branches. There he sleeps unconscious day and night, because sleep is the solace of ignorance. When a Russian shepherd passes near a sleeping demon of this kind, he brings other men, who fetter him with ropes, and bands of iron, which being done, fifty men haul him down from the tree. When the prisoner becomes aware of his captivity, he roars like thunder, and endeavours to burst his chains ; if he succeeds, he slays all his captors, merely by a box upon the ear of each. But if unable to escape, he is gradually deported to Russia, being carried about in every village and house ; by this means his captors obtain victuals, and make their living as showmen. If a war breaks out, the monster is a fortune to them again ; they dare not free it from its bonds, but drag it in chains to the battle, where it becomes furious, and commits great slaughter.

In the seventh battle Alexander is represented fighting personally, and the just described monster caused terrible havock in the ranks. First a shower of arrows was poured on the barbarian, which took no effect ; then three bricks of steel were successively aimed at his head, but fruitlessly, as it proved to be harder than adamant. Now a brave warrior attacked him, but was slain, and borne away in triumph to the Russian side. Lastly, an elephant was driven against him, but he grasped its trunk with his hands, whereon the animal roared with pain, and falling to the ground, expired. Alexander now concluded that if this monster, upon which arrows, steel bricks, and iron swords had taken no effect, could not be conquered, it would be a sign that his fortune had turned. Accordingly, he determined to attack it in person ; he took, however, the advice of an astrologer, who informed him that the best weapon to be used on this occasion would be a lasso. Alexander at once acted upon the information, threw the noose over the foe, and pulling the rope violently, shortened it, his own troops succouring him so effectively as to drag the monster over, to the great dismay of the Russians. After this exploit great rejoicings took place, and during the banquet, the king, flushed with wine, gave way to an impulse of generosity, and presented the captive with his liberty ; he, however, soon vanished, but reappeared afterwards with a veiled figure, who proved to be a fairylike maiden. She had groaned in captivity among the Russians, and testified her joy at her liberation to Alexander by amusing him with exquisite song and music.

After the seventh battle yet one more final contest takes place, in which Alexander vanquishes Qontál in single combat, and obtains much treasure. Nizámy does not complete the biography of Alexander till his death, but makes him embark on the Mediterranean after conquering the Russians,³⁸ and he arrives in Greece to the great joy of the whole country³⁹; but the author intended to complete the history of Alexander, if he could find the time,⁴⁰ and in case he should further be patronised by his sovereign.⁴¹

In the Shahnámah the Russians are never mentioned, and after the march to Babylon leaving China, Alexander marches to Jogh-ran, then to Sind, where he takes many prisoners, and to Yemen, where he is received with much civility. Our hero marches after that again a whole month without resting, till he arrives near a high mountain, after crossing which, the army obtains a view of a river and is greatly rejoiced; game proved to be plentiful, and hunting was carried on with zest. Here a hirsute man, with large elephantine ears, of the name of Gósh-bister (ear-couch) was discovered, and the information elicited from him that on the other side of the river a nation of ichthiophagi had its domiciles. Being ordered to bring some of them, he departed, and returned with seventy of them, who brought diadems and golden bowls; they had no sooner informed Alexander that the treasures of Kaikhosrú, which it would be worth his while to possess, were in their city, when he at once paid a visit to it, and took possession of the crown, the throne, and of the boundless treasures left by that monarch.⁴²

On his march to Babylon, Alexander had gloomy forebodings of death,⁴³ which he communicated in a letter sent to Aristotle by some

48 وز آنجا در آمده بدریای روم برو برد کشته با باد بوم
 39 همه خاک روم از راه آورده شد و بر افروخت چون شب زرخشد و ماء
 40 زمانه گرم داد خواهد زمان چنان است اندیشه را گمان
 41 که در باغ این نقش رومی نورده گل سرخ رویانم از خاک زرد
 42 گر اقبال شاه باشد دستگیر سخن زود کرد دگارش پذیر

⁴² Plutarch simply mentions that Alexander found the tomb of Cyrus open. "He put the author of that sacrilege to death, though a native of Pella, and a person of some distinction. His name was Polymachus."

43 بد ناست کش مرگ نزدیک ۴۸ برا او بر روز تاریک شد
 Also Plutarch asserts⁴⁴ omens disturbed Alexander; and Justin says (Lib. XII. cap. viii.) ne urbem introiret, testa

of his returning veterans. On that occasion he exacted homage from the nobles to set his mind at rest.⁴⁴ On the very day of Alexander's entrance into the city of Babylon, where he received a joyful welcome, a monstrous infant, with a lion's head, and hoofs on his feet, was born, but died soon after its birth. This was by some astrologers explained as a bad omen, but contradicted by others ; Alexander was however not consoled, and even wrote a letter to his mother, in which he informed her of his approaching death, of his desire to be buried in Egypt, and of the pregnancy of Rushang,⁴⁵ whose infant, if male, was to succeed him as king.

When the army learnt that the king had fallen sick, it was greatly concerned and became tumultuous⁴⁶ ; accordingly he ordered his throne to be carried out,⁴⁷ and when the soldiers beheld their sovereign in a state of weakness their sorrow was great, but when he expired it knew no bounds, and loud wailings resounded everywhere. The corpse of Alexander was embalmed⁴⁸ with camphor and dressed in gold-brocade, but we fail to understand how it could be placed in honey⁴⁹ without destroying the effect of the spectacle ; poets, however, sometimes take great licences for the mere sake of the rhyme.

۴۴ هر انکس که بود او زخم کیان بفرمود تا پیش بند میان
۴۵ رویها سوی درگه کنند زیدا کمانیش کوتاه کنند

Servile exhibitions of this kind were always ridiculed by the Macedonians, and on the present occasion Cassander manifested his scorn (according to Plutarch) by openly laughing at the ceremony.

⁴⁸ According to our classic sources, Roxane was then in the sixth month of her pregnancy.

۴۶ بتخت بزرگی نهادند روی جهان شد سراسر پراز گفتگوی
۴۷ بفرمود تا بتخت بیرون برند ز ایوان شاهی بهامون برند

"The Macedonians, by this time thinking that he was dead, came out to the gates with great clamour, and threatened the high officers in such a manner that they were forced to admit them, and suffer them to pass all unarmed by the bedside." (Plut.)—Tumultuantes deinde milites, insidiis portuissō regem suspicentes, ipso sedavit ; eosque omnes quum prolatus in editissimum urbis locum esset, ad conspectum suum admisit, osculandamque dextram suam flentibus perexit. (Justin. Lib. XII., cap. xv.)

⁴⁴ Ägyptii Chaldaique jussi corpus suo more curaro. (Q. Curt. L. X., c. x.)

۴۹ تن نا مور زیر دینای چین نهادند تا پای در انگلین

A difference arose between the Persians and the Greeks about the place of burial, the former insisting that it should be in the country, and the latter contradicting them. At last the dispute was decided by going to a mountain, said to give answers; and to the question:—"Where is to be the burial of Alexander?" the echo replied, "Alexandria"; accordingly, the body of the king was conveyed to Egypt.⁵⁰

⁵⁰ Ceterum corpus ejus a Ptolomaeo, cui Ægyptus cesserat, Memphim; et inde paucos post annos Alexandriam translatum est. *Ibid.*—Alexander expired in Babylon, on the 21st April, in the 32nd year of his age, after a reign of twelve years and eight months, in the year 322 B.C.

**AET. IV.—Specimens of pre-Islamic Arabic Poetry, selected
and translated from the *Hamasah*. By E. REHATSEK.**

[Read 17th March 1881.]

Old Arabic poetry is not to be judged according to modern standards or Western models. It was mostly the spontaneous and even extemporeaneous effusion of sentiments elicited by the events and circumstances among which those who uttered them lived. It is, unlike the poetry of later times, simple and artless, but contains, on the other hand, words and locutions no longer current in the spoken language, nor in literature, and therefore difficult of explanation, which, however, is to a certain extent facilitated by the aid of early commentaries made at a time when the difficulty of ascertaining the accurate sense of ancient poems began to increase. The poet enounces an opinion, addresses some living or dead person, describes a victory or defeat, narrates his own exploits, or bewails a hero who has fallen in battle. These are the subjects on which the poet expatiates ; as, moreover, the desert abounds neither in a great variety of landscape nor of animal or of vegetable life, and the habits of the nomadic Arabs were of the extremest simplicity, the field through which the imagination of a bard could soar was not very extensive ; his constant companions, the horse and the camel, are often alluded to, as well as the ostrich, the lizard, the serpent, and even the goblins of the desert ; he not only uses inanimate objects as similes, but personifies them and introduces them speaking ; thus, for instance, the sword agrees to fight, eats flesh, takes a morning draught, or offers the goblet of death, which in its turn scans a wounded man with its eyes, and is ready to accept him. Also wise sayings, the praises of heroism, magnanimity, and liberality, as well as the vituperation of cowardice and meanness, afford ample scope to the talents of the ancient Arab poets.

The seven suspended poems have been repeatedly published and translated into various languages. Hammer-Purgstall, Michaelis, Pococke, Rückert and Schultens have given specimens of old Arabic poetry, and Freytag has not only edited but also translated into Latin the whole of the *Hamasah*, but up to this time not much has been done to make old, especially pre-Islamic, poetry more known. As Abu Tammám, who collected the poems of the *Hamasah*, died about A. H. 228 (A. D. 842-3), the work can naturally not contain pieces later than

that date ; he is, moreover, known to have given preference to ancient ones, and to have excluded those composed during his time, so that less than a score of them occur in the *Hamasah*, which contains 834 pieces in all. Although the poems composed before may generally be distinguished from those written after the promulgation of Islám, it is mostly impossible to determine the precise time, and often even the names of the authors, whose verses are introduced by the preamble, "Some one has recited" or "A man of the Hemyár (or some other tribe) has said." Accordingly, it has been found safest to assume that the oldest Arabic poems are scarcely one century older than Islám. It can, on the other hand, not be denied that a few short pieces composed between the 2nd and 3rd century of our era also exist, so that the cradle of Arabic poetry may be said to be oscillating between the end of the 2nd and the beginning of the 3rd century.¹ Poetry however has, after attaining great perfection during the lapse of ages, together with the whole of Arabic literature, which is still represented by many thousands of authors, come to its close with the end of the 12th century of the Hijrah era (A.D. 1786, October 23).

Although the Arabs still exist as a people who have inherited the language from their ancestors, the greatness of their dominions, and with it the bloom of their literature, has passed away long ago, so that writers who at present treat on the history, the mental activity, and the literature of the Arabs as something completed and past for ever, need not fear to incur the blame of indulging in a false view, any more than a historian of the Khalifate who declares the impossibility of a resurrection thereof from its ashes, and the re-establishment of its power in three parts of the world as of yore. Should a new Arabian empire arise in Arabia, Egypt, Syria, or E'rík, which, considering the surveillance of European politics over those countries, is by no means probable, it could arise only by commingling with the elements of European civilisation, so that the future literature, unless a mere repetition of the old one, would likewise begin a new era, as a literature mixed or recast, the embryo of which is now forming by the works produced during the present century in Syria and the north African coasts. Works are indeed still written in Arabic ; they are, however, mostly compilations and repetitions of ancient productions, endless commentaries and glossaries ; and the printing offices in Constantinople, Cairo and Teherán not only spread a knowledge of older works, but publish also new ones trans-

¹ *Literaturgeschichte der Araber.* Hammer-Purgstall, vol. i., p. 4.

lated from European languages. This is especially the case in Beirut (where the Americans have produced excellent treatises on various sciencies according to their present advanced state) and also in Egypt, where the educational institutions maintained by the Government use books on modern engineering, mathematics, medicine, &c.

In the present paper more than a score of specimens, selected from pre-Islamic poets, are given, and in another the poetesses of the *Hamasa* will be taken up, who amount to more than double that number, although some of them have immortalised themselves by the recital of only one or two distichs. Certain verses allow of two or more interpretations, and those have been adopted which appeared most suitable and natural without entering into the discussions the scholiast sometimes indulges in. As far as could be done, the occasion on which the verses were recited, and the time when the poet flourished, as well as other information which appeared worthy of interest, is given. The pieces follow each other according to the Arabic alphabetical order of the poets, which was considered to be the most suitable, as a chronological one could scarcely be attempted :—I.—Al-Háreth B. Wa'lah. II.—Al-Raby' B. Zyád. III.—Al-Shansara. IV.—Alkullákh. V.—Almotalemmis. VI.—Bishr B. Obayi. VII.—Bala'á B. Kays. VIII.—Thábbet Sherra. IX.—Jahder. X.—Hazaz. XI.—Hassán. XII.—Dorayd B. Al-Çimmah. XIII.—Rajulon min Hemyar (a Hemyarite). XIV.—Tarafah B. Al-A'bd. XV.—A'árek. XVI.—A'bd-Allah B. Al-Domaymah. XVII.—A'bd. Allah Al-Kattal. XVIII.—U'rwa B. Al-Ward. XIX.—A'ntarah. XX.—Gh'ullák. XXI.—Kays B. Zubayr. XXII.—Ka'b B. Zuhyr. XXIII.—Ma'dán B. Jowás. XXIV.—Ma'dán B. Al-Mudárrab. XXV.—Hallál Razyń.

I.—Al-Háreth B. Wa'lah Alduhly

Wa'lah is an eminent inaccessible crag on the top of a mountain, it means also a water-vessel, the origin of which is referred to "Wa'l," refuge, either because it is very much in request against thirst in hot weather, or because creditors, when everything else is sold, at last take refuge with the water-pots and confiscate them also. In this sense the word is used by the poet Du Al-Rommah, who says :—

هَنْيَ إِذَا لَمْ يَجِدْ وَعَلَ وَنَجِيَهَا مَخَافَةُ الرَّمَى هَنْيَ كُلُّهَا هَيْمٌ

* p. 97. The scansion is متنعاً على twice, and متنعاً once. See Darstellung der Arab. Verskunst, Freytag, p. 214.

الضرب الثاني من العروض التي نبه

“ Until, when finding no refuge, he impedes them for fear of being shot by arrows, until all of them are very thirsty.” Here probably an onagar or other animal is meant, which for fear of hunters, keeps the females off from the watering place.

In the following verses the poet appears chiefly to address the murderer of his own brother, but concludes after all not to avenge him :—

قَوْمِي هُمْ قَذَلُوا أَمَّا يَهْبِطُنِي سَهْلِي
 فَإِنْ عَفْوتْ لَا عَفْونَ جَلَّ
 وَلَيْنَ سَطْوَتْ لَا وَهْنَ عَظَمِي
 لَا تَامِنْ قَوْمًا ظَلْمَتْهُمْ وَأَلْرَغَمِ
 وَبَدَاتِهِمْ بَاشَمِ
 اَنْ يَابِرُو نَخْلًا لَغَيْرِهِمْ وَقَدْ يَذْهِي
 وَزَعْدَمْ اَنْ لَا حَلْمَوْ لَنَا اَنْ
 وَرَطَّدَنَا وَطَاهَ عَلَى حَنْقِي
 وَتَرَكَنَا لَحْمًا عَلَى وَضْمِي مِنْ اَلْحَمِ

My people killed my brother, O Omaima ; so that if I shoot, my own arrow will hit me,

But if I pardon them, I pardon a great thing, and if I attack them, I weaken my bones.

Trust not the people whom thou hast injured, and insulted by contumely as well as resistance,

Lest they fertilise date trees of others³ ; and a thing which thou despisest will soon grow.

You supposed we had no prudence ; but the stick was knocked for a prudent man.*

³ Arabs often compare women to date-trees ; a poet addresses one as, “ O, date-tree from the place Dát I’rk,” and the scholiast observes that when they capture the women of their foes they seduce them.

* The stick was knocked for A’amer B. Alzarib to admonish him in his old age, when he erred in the administration of justice ; it was also done for A’mr B. Hummamah. Both were judges, and the following statement is by the scholiast said to refer rather to the latter, to whom the Arabs used to come for judicial decisions. He made mistakes as he was very aged, and said to his daughter

And thou hast wrathfully stamped on us, as the camel with shackled feet tramples on the plant Herm.

Thou hast left us like meat on the butcher's block ; if thou wert indeed to leave any meat.

II.—Al-Raby' B. Zyád the Absite الربيع بن زياد العبسی
Raby' was an enemy of Kays B. Zyad, who likewise recited verses

ERRATUM.

Page 68, line 7, for بَيْنِي read بَيْنِي

B. Mâlek, the brother of Sa'd B. Mâlek, to look for the state of the horses, when he delayed to return, the king became so angry that he swore he would kill the man, whether he came praising or blaming the fodder. When A'mr arrived, No'mán was sitting among the people with Sa'd near him, who was aware of the oath No'mán had made. Accordingly Sa'd asked for permission to speak to his brother, but No'mán replied :—" If thou speakest I shall cut off thy tongue." " Then," continued he, " I shall make signs to him." " If thou doest so," replied No'mán, " I shall cut off thy hands." " Then I shall wink," said Sa'd. " In that case," answered No'mán, " I shall pluck out thy eyes." Then Sa'd asked for permission to knock the stick for his brother, and on being allowed to do so, he took one from a person sitting near, and put it down. Then grasping his own stick whilst his brother was standing, he knocked it once against the other stick, whereon his brother looked at him ; but he motioned with his own stick towards him, whereby his brother understood him to have said :—" Remain in thy place." Then he struck his own cane once, lifted it heavenwards, and rubbed it with the other ; whereby his brother knew that he was to say :—" I have found no sterility ; " then he struck the other cane repeatedly with his own, and raised it a little, when his brother knew that he had to say :—" Nor any plants." Then he knocked the stick once and approached No'man, which meant :—" Speak to him." Accordingly, A'mr B. Mâlek approached until he stood in front of No'mán, who asked :—" Praisest thou fertility or blamest sterility ?" And the reply was :—" I praise neither the vegetation, as the earth is avaricious ; neither is its produce known, nor its sterility described. The seeker of fodder halts ; who denied that there was any gets informed, and who was sure of it becomes apprehensive." Accordingly, No'mán spared his life.

* p. ۱۵۱ This is the third species of Mutakáreb, seven times مُتَكَّرِبٌ and once لَسْلَسٌ p. 746. Metrorum Tabula. Ham, Freytag.

horses on account of which a sanguinary war broke out, which is said to have lasted forty years. Raby' lived in the fifth century of our era:—

حرق قيس علي آلبلاد حتى اذا اضطررت اخذ ما
جنيه حرب جناها فما تفوج عنه وما اسلما
غداة صورت باى الوباب تعجل بالركض ان تلجمها
فتذا فوارس يوم الهرير اذ هال مدرجك فما متقد ما
عطفنا وراءك افراسنا وقد اسلم الشفتان آلدمها
اذا نفترت من يياض آلسيوف قلنا لها اود مي مقدم ما

Kays fired the country against me, and when it burnt, he decamped. (He has committed the crime of war, but was neither left by it nor surrendered to the foe.)

In the morning when thou fledst over to the Rebáb tribe, the foes pursuing too swiftly, for thee to put a bridle on thy horse,
We also were riders on the day of Haryr when thy saddle swayed and slid forward

We turned our horses to follow thee, when thy lips betrayed the face,⁶
When they fled from the flash of swords, we said to them : Advance.

By the same.⁷

The poet bewails the death of Málek B. Zohayr, which to avenge he afforded his aid:—

انى ارقت فلم اغمض حار من سيني النساء الجليل الساري
من مثله نسي النساء حواسرا و تقوم معولة مع الا سمار
اني بعد مقتل مالك بن زهير ترجو النساء حواتب الاطهار
ما ان اري في قتلته لذوي النهي الا المطى تشد بالاكوار

⁶ A figure for : —You were so pleased at the approaching rescue, that you laughed.

⁷ p. ١٤٧ Second species of Kámel, six times متغا على. Tabula Metr. Ham. Frey., p. 740.

وَمُجْنِبَاتٌ مَا يَدْقُنْ عَذْوَقًا يَقْدُنْ بِالْمَهَرَاتِ وَالْأَمَهَارِ
 وَمُسَاعِرًا صَدَا الْعَدِيدَ عَلَيْهِمْ فَكَانَا طَلَيَ الْوَجْهَ بِغَارِ
 مَنْ كَانَ مَسْرُورًا بِعَقْلِ مَالِكٍ فَلِيَاتٌ نَسْوَتَنَا بِوَجْهِ نَهَارِ
 يُجَدِّدُ النِّسَاءَ حَوَاسِرًا يَنْدَبَنَهُ يَنْطَنُ أَوْجَهُهُنَّ بِالْأَسْحَارِ
 وَدَنْ كَنْ يَخْبَانَ الْوَجْهَ تَسْتَرَا فَإِيمُونَ حِينَ بُرْزَنَ لِلنَّظَارِ
 يَضْرِبُنَ حَرَّ وَجْهِهِنَّ عَلَيَ فَتَيَ عَفَ الشَّاهِيلَ طَيْبَ الْأَخْبَارِ

I marched with open eyes, O Hâreth, on account of the bad news,
 tremendous; arriving in the night

On account of such, women are unveiled when the night sets in, and
 stand lamenting till the morning dawns,

Do women after the slaughter of Mâlik B. Zuhayr hope to see the
 consequences of their pure state? *

In [the expedition to avenge] his murder I see that the prudent
 behold only camels with saddles

And horses led by their side, which taste no food and kick both the
 male and female foals.⁹

And brave warriors with iron-rust on them, as if their faces were
 smeared with pitch.¹⁰

Let him who rejoices at the death of Mâlik, meet our women at the
 break of day

He will find the women unveiled, bewailing him, beating their faces
 in the morning.

* When taking blood-vengeance the Arabs had no intercourse with their wives, neither drank wine or used perfumes, and indulged in no kind of pleasure till it was accomplished.

⁹ The two last verses show how the Arabs saved the strength of their horses and reserved it for the battle, by making them simply walk with the camels they rode, and which carried all the baggage. The presence of the foals implies that on this occasion also the mares were taken along, and that nothing was left behind.

¹⁰ This may perhaps be an allusion to the rusty visors of the knights.

They were in the habit of veiling their faces, but to-day they displayed them,

They strike their noble countenances, for a knight of pure intentions and of good report.

III.—*Alshanfara* ^{١١} الشنفاري

The above name is an epithet, and means “the thick-lipped.” The poet belonged to the Awás B. Al-Hijr, and was captured by the Beni Shabábah when yet a little boy. Afterwards the Beni Salláman captured a man of the Beni Shabábah, a subdivision of the Beni Fehm, for whom the latter gave Shanfara in exchange. Shanfara remained with the Beni Shabábah, and was accounted as one of themselves, until he quarrelled with the daughter of the man with whom he lived and who had adopted him, which happened as follows:—Shanfara said to the girl:—“ Little sister ! Wash my head ! ” But she refused to be called his sister, and slapped him on the face. He went away angrily and proceeded till he found the man who had bought him from the Beni Fehm, and who had been absent at the time. Him he asked :—“ Of what tribe am I ? ” The man replied :—“ Of the Awás B. Hijr.” Then Shanfara said :—“ I shall not leave you till I have slain one hundred men of you, because you have made a slave of me.” He actually killed ninety-nine, but the man who was to have completed the hundred, broke, before he expired, the skull of Shanfara, after the latter had cut off his foot, and shortly afterwards also himself expired. Shanfara, on being asked where he desired to be buried, recited the following verses:—

الشَّنْفَارِيُّ اَنْ قَدْرِي مَحْرُمٌ عَلَيْكُمْ وَلَا كُنْ اَبْشِرِي اَمْ عَامِرِي
اَذَا اَحْتَمَلُو رَاسِي وَفِي الرَّاسِ اَكْثَرِي وَغُورُ عَذَّبَ اَلْمَتَقِي ثُمَّ سَابِرِي
هَذَا لَكَ لَا اَرْجُو حَيَاةً تَسْرِي سَجِيسَ اَلْلَيَالِي مَبْسَلًا بَالْحَرَا يَرِي

Bury me not, for my grave is illicit to you ; but rejoice, O hyena,^{١٢}

^{١١} p. ٣٤٢ This is in the long metre, four times Tabula Metrorum, p. 736. Ham. Freytag.

^{١٢} This animal which will devour the poet is called in the text figuratively the “ mother of A’ámír.” As the soul of a man remaining unburied and unrevenged was believed to have no rest, the poet’s boldness in courting such a state was great. An owl issued from the skull of such a corpse and croaked “ give me to drink.” (See more on this subject in my paper, vol. xii., p. 163, seq. of this Journal.)

When they carry off my head, which contains the better part of me,
and my body is left on the battle-field
Now I do not expect life to gladden me in course of time, doomed as
I am to destruction for my transgressions.

IV.—Al-kallikh الْكَلْخٌ^{۱۸}

Kalakh means "the camel has brayed," hence the surname by which this poet is known would be "the brayer," but several men of this name have been known. In the following verses he bewails the death of Aryb B. A'sa's:-

مُقِيْ جَدَاً وَارِيْ ارِيْبُ بْنُ عَسْعَنْ مِنْ الْعَيْنِ خُوتْ يَسِيقِ الرَّعْدَ وَابْلَهْ
مَلَثْ اذَا الْقَيْ بَارِيْ بَاعَةَ تَهَدَّدْ سَهْلَ الْأَرْضِ مِنْهُ مَسَايِلَهْ
فَهَا مِنْ فَتَيْ كَنَّا مِنْ النَّاسِ وَاحِدَةَ بَهْ نَبْغِي مِنْهُمْ صَمِدَادْ نَبَادَهْ
لِيَوْمِ حَفَاظْ اوْ لِدَفَعْ كَوْرِيْهَ اذَا عَيْ بَالْحَمْلِ الْمَعْصِلِ حَامِلَهْ
وَذِي تَدْرَاهُ مَا الْلَّيْتُ فِي اَصْلِ غَابَهْ بَاشْجَعْ مِنْهُ عِنْدَ قَرْنِ يَنَازِلَهْ
قَبْضَتْ عَلَيْهِ الْكَفَ حَتَّىْ تَقْدَدَهْ وَهَنِيْ يَقِيْ لِلْحَقِّ اَخْضَعْ كَاهِلَهْ
فَتَيْ كَانْ يَسْتَحِيْ وَيَعْلَمْ اَنَّهُ مَسِيلُحَقْ بَالْعُوتِيْ وَيَدْكُرْ نَايِلَهْ

May the tomb which covers Aryb B. A'sa's be irrigated by the rain of the cloud whose showers precede thunder,^{۱۹}

Lasting, so that when it unburdens itself, its torrents cover the plains.

There is not one man among knights whom we would wish as a support and exchange for him.

On a day to defend honour or to ward off misfortune, when the bearer of a vexatious load fails to carry it.

Many a brave man, not surpassed in valour by a lion in his lair if a champion encounters him.

^{۱۸} p. ۵۷۶ Same metre as of iii.

^{۱۹} The word *سَهْل* designates in the text the direction between the Kiblah of E'râk and sunset, from which abundant and lasting rain comes.

Hast thou grasped with thy fist till thou madest him prisoner,
when he gave in and bent his back,

He was a modest knight who knew that he will meet with death and
that his beneficence will be remembered.

V.—*Almotalammis*¹⁵

His proper name is Jaryr B. A'bd Al-Masyh B. A'bd-Allah B. Zayd or B. A'bd-Al-U'zza ; from the names it would appear that the poet's father, " servant of the Messiah," was a Christian, and his great grandfather, " servant of U'zza," a polytheist. He flourished between A. D. 560 and 570, was the companion and a contemporary of the great poet Tarafah, author of one of the seven suspended poems. The following verses breathe a noble spirit of independence and defiance peculiar to the ancient Arabs :—

ام تر ان الور رهن مدينه صوريه لاعافي الظير او موف يرسن
فلا تقبلن ضيما مخافه مدينه وموتن بها حرا و جلدك املس
فون طلب آلا و تار ما حزانقه قصير و خاض آلهوت با لسيف يدهس
نعمامة لما صرع ال القوم رهطة نبيين في اثرايه كيف يلمس
وما آلامس الا ما راو و تحد ثور وما آمعجز الا ان يضامر فيجاسو
الم تر ان آجرون اصبح راصدا تطيف به آلا يام ما يتدايس
عمى تبعا ايام اهللت آلقري بيطان عيء باصفيف و يكس
همليها قد ايدرت زروعها و عادت عليهما آلمديتون تكدس
وذاك اوان آلغرغن حى ذبابه زنا بيرة و آلازرق آلمتمامس
يكون نذير من وراء ي جنة وينهونى منهم جلى واحدس
و جمع بني قران فآغرغن عليهم فان يقليو هاتا آلتى نحن نوبس

¹⁵ p. 322 The metre is the same as of iii. and iv.

فَان يَقْبَلُو بِالْوَدِ تَقْبِلُ بِمَثْلِهِ وَإِنْ قَاتَنَا لَنْجَنْ أَبِي وَأَشْمَسْ
وَان يَكْعَنَّا فِي حَبِيبِ تَنَاقُلٍ فَقَدْ كَانَ مَنَّا مَقْتَبٌ مَا يَعْرِسْ

Seest thou not that man is pledged to death, prostrated, a prey to noble birds or speedy burial?

Do not therefore suffer oppression for fear of death, but die a free-man whilst your skin is smooth.

To wreak vengeance Kācyr cut off his nose, and Bayhas rushed into death with his sword.¹⁶

Na'amah, when the people prostrated his family, showed by his clothes how he dresses.¹⁷

Men are only what they appear or are considered to be, and weakness is only to be insulted and sit [unavenged].

Seest thou not that Aljaun has become a strong fort, the times pass around it, but it is not softened.

¹⁶ Kācyr was the companion of Jozymah-Allabrash, king of Hyrah, whose affair with Zabbá is well known. To enable the former to wreak his vengeance on the latter, Kācyr amputated his own nose, and presenting himself to Zabbá, told her that Jozymah had thus maimed him; this so allayed her suspicions that she took him into her service, and he obtained the coveted opportunity to destroy her. Caussin de Perceval (*Hist. des Arabes*, II., p. 198), has identified Zabbá with Zenobia, who succeeded her husband Odenatus, A. D. 267. History shows Zenobia, captured by the Romans in the act of entering a boat to cross the Euphrates, whilst Zabbá is struck down on the bank of that river, trying to escape by a subterraneous passage under it. The Arabs assign the part of Aurelian to the end of this drama to A'mru B. A'dy, son of the king of Hyrah, who may have been engaged in some war against Zenobia or Zabbá, the overthrow of whose government during the time of A'mru B. A'dy seemed to the Arabian historians a sufficient warrant for this adaptation.

¹⁷ Bayhas was surnamed *Na'amah*, "ostrich," for his stupidity, which saved his life in a feud with another tribe when all his brothers were slain. He appears to have been another Bayhas than the one mentioned in the third line; perhaps also his stupidity was only simulated, and his habit of wearing his trowsers for a shirt, and the latter in the place of the former, elicited from him the following distich for a reply, when asked for the reason:—

البس اكل حالة لبوسها اما نديها واما بوسها

"Put on for every state its clothes, be it happy or unhappy."

It resisted the Tubbah kings when towns were destroyed, it is constructed of stones, cemented with lime.¹⁸

Approach it ! Its harvests sprout again, and its water-wheels revolve again.

This is the time of the Ali'rd valley ; its flies are alive, its wasps and the blue infester.¹⁹

Nadir will be a mace in my rear, and Julay with Ahmas will aid me against them !

And the Beni Karrán ! Propound the matter to them ; whether they agree to what is displeasing to us

But if they agree to amity, we shall accept them with the same, or else shall be very refractory and obstinate.

And if there be backwardness in the Beni Hubayb towards us ; we had a squadron which delays not revenge.

VI.—Bishr B. Obayi B. Humám the A'bsite.²⁰

بَشْرُ بْنُ أَبِي بْنِ حَمَّامِ الْعَبْسيِّ

In the following verses of the poet the horses of the tribe Beni Zuhayr B. Judaymah are vituperated, with reference to the celebrated war between the Beni A'bs and the Beni Ðubyán. It arose from a race ran by the stallion Dáhis and the mare Gh'abrá belonging to Kays B. Zohayr B. Jodaymah Al-A'bsy on the one side, and on the other by Khattár and Hanfá, two horses which were the property of Hudayfah B. Bedr Al-Fezáry. The stake was twenty camels, the steeds were reduced in flesh during forty days, and were to run a distance of 100 arrow-shots from Dát-Alaçád ; but some young men of the Beni Fezárah whipped away, or struck in the face the stallion and the mare at the bidding of Hudayfah, so that they left the race course. In the war ensuing after this event, Kays took Áuf, the brother of Hudayfah prisoner, and slew him ; the latter was, however, avenged by

¹⁸ Sometimes the Tubbah kings are taken to mean any kings of Yemen, but Háreth Alráyh, who lived 187 years before the Christian era, is said to have been the first who assumed the title of Kyl, and the last who used it was Tobba B. Hosan B. Kolaikarb ; he died about A. D. 297.

¹⁹ The poet obtained the nickname by which he is known, from the last word of this distich.

²⁰ p. ۲۲۲ Same metre as iii., iv. and v., but of the 3rd species ; twice فَوْلَنْ مَفَاعِلَنْ مَفَوْلَنْ مَفَا عَلَنْ Darstellung. Freyt., p. 163.

his brother Hameh, who killed Mālik, the brother of Kays, and Kays, fatigued by the long war, retired to O'mān :—

The ill-starred horses of the progeny of Dáhíš are refractory and unsuccessful on the day of battle.

They have by the permission of God brought on the murder of
Málik, and thrown Kays to further O'mán.

They were struck near Dát Allaçád; your company foreseeing the injury [which would ensue] from vileness and abasement.

Thou wilt be hindered from precedence if thou precedest, and slain
if thy feet stumble.²¹

٢٢ بلاغ بن قيس بن الكناني *VII.—Bala'á B. Kays Al-Kinány*

In the following verses the poet boasts of his own prowess:—

وَفَارِسٌ فِي غَمَارِ الْمَوْتِ مُتَّهِمٌ إِذَا تَالَى عَلَى مَكْرُوهَةٍ مَدْقَأٍ
غَشْيَنِهِ وَهُوَ فِي جَاهَوَةٍ بِأَبْلَأَةٍ عَضْبِيَّاً اصَابَ مُوَاهَ الرَّائِسِ فَانْقَلَقاً
بِفَسْرَبَةٍ لَمْ تَكُنْ مُتَنَّ مُخَالَسَةً وَلَا تَعْجِلَتْهَا جَبَنَا وَلَا فَرْقاً

**Many a knight on plunging into the vortex of death when affirming
by oath an unpleasant thing truthfully**

Have I attacked, whilst he was in a well armed and a brave squadron, with a sharp blade and split his head

With one stroke, neither wantonly nor rapidly inflicted, from cowardice and fear.

²¹ This verse is no doubt addressed to the stallion Dáhís, who was not allowed to gain the race, and who would have been killed by his own master, had he failed to do so by stumbling.

مستقلون فاعل first species of Basyt, twice Tabula Freyt, p. 738.

VIII.—*Tábbet Sharrá.*²³

تَبْطِ شَرَّاً

It is said Tábbet B. Jáber B. Sufyán was thus surnamed because he took a sword under his arm and walked out. His mother being asked, she replied :—“ I do not know, he has taken the evil under the armpit [Tábbet Sharrá].” According to others he obtained this name because he was in the habit of walking with a knife under his armpit. It is also said that whilst a boy, he wished to carry a ram home, which brayed and kicked so much, that he threw it away near the house, and that on being asked what he had carried under his arm, he replied, “evil” [Sharrá]. Whilst others again state that his mother addressed him one day as follows : “ All your brothers have brought me something except yourself;” whereon he replied :—“ I shall bring you something to-night.” Accordingly he went out, caught large serpents, and carried them home in a bag under his arm, liberating them before his mother. Others say that he had wrestled with a Gh’ul, had slain and carried him home under the armpit. Several of his verses allude to the Gh’ul, but the present ones were occasioned as follows :—

Tábbet Sharrá was in the habit of annually collecting honey in a cave belonging to the Hodaylites, who having obtained information that he had arrived, watched him when he had arrived with his companions, and had let himself down into the cave. The Hodaylites put his companions to flight, and standing near the cave shook the rope ; when he raised his head, they said to him : “ Come up ! ” He asked :—“ On what condition shall I come up ? Will you let me go on paying you a ransom ? ” They continued :—“ We have no condition for thee. ” He replied :—“ Do I not see you in my mind, catching me, killing me, and eating my honey ? By Allah, I shall not surrender. ” After that he poured out the honey from the mouth of the cave, tied the empty bag to his breast, and slid down along the sticky honey, until he arrived safely at the foot of the mountain and escaped from his foes. According to another account, he was in the habit of gathering honey, which was accessible by one road only. That road the Léhyanites occupied, giving him the option either to come to them, or to throw himself down from another place where they thought he would be killed. He poured, however, out the

فَعُولَنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولَنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ

23 p. ۲۳ Second species of Tavyl, twice Tab. Metr. Ham. Freyt., p. 736. Darstellung, p. 102.

honey he had gathered, escaped safely, and then recited the following verses. The words "I spread out my breast to it" which occur in the seventh line, allude to his manner of sliding down:—

اَذْ الْمَرءُ لَمْ يُحْتَلْ وَدَ جِدَّهُ اَصْعَادَ وَقَاسِي اَمْرَةً وَهُوَ مَدْبُرٌ
 وَلَا يَنْ اَخْرُ الْحَزْمَ اَذْذِي لِيْسَ نَازِلًا بِهِ الْخُطْبُ اِلَّا وَهُوَ لِلْقَضِيَّةِ مَبْصُرٌ
 فَذَاكَ قَرِيبُ الدَّهْرِ فِي عَاشِ حَوْلٍ اِذَا سَدَّ مِنْهُ مُنْخَرٌ جَاهِشَ مُنْخَرٌ
 اَقُولُ لِلْحَيَّانِ وَدَ صَفَرْتُ اَهْمَ وَطَابِي وَيَوْمِي ضَيْقُ الْجَهْرِ مَغْوِرٌ
 هَمَا خَطَنَا اِمَا اِسَارَ وَمَنَّةَ وَامَا دَمَ وَالْقَتْلُ بِالْجَهْرِ اَجْدَرُ
 وَأَخْرِي اَصَادِي النَّفْسَ عَذَنَا وَانْهَا لَمُورَدُ حَزْمٍ اِنْ فَعَلْتُ وَمَصْدَرُ
 فَرَثَتْ لَهَا صَدْرِي فَنَزَلَ عَنِ الصَّفَا بِهِ جَوْجُو عَبْلٍ وَمَنْ مُخْصَرٌ
 فَخَالَطَ سَهْلٌ اَلْارْضِيَّ لَمْ يَكْدِحِ الصَّفَا بِهِ كَدْحَةً وَأَلْمَوْتُ خَرْبَانَ يَنْظَرُ
 فَابَتِ اِلَى فِيمَ وَلَمْ اِكَ اَبِيَا وَكَمْ مِثْلَهَا فَارْقَتْهَا وَهِيَ تَصْفَرُ

If a man uses no cunning in emergencies he is a loser; and although he endures hardships, he retreats,

He however is a prudent man on whom no peril alights, but he sees what he is to do,

He is the stallion of the period, prudent as long as he lives. When one of his nostrils is obstructed he uses the other.²⁴

I said to the Lehyans when my water-skin appeared empty to them, and my day was narrowness of exit, exposed to calamities,

There are two cases:—Either captivity with obligation, or blood. But death is more worthy of a freeman,

²⁴ The hero is compared to a stallion camel which cannot be tamed by stopping one of its nostrils.

And another, which I consider in my mind and prefer ; if I act accordingly it will be the beginning and end of prudence.²⁵

I spread out my breast to it ; thus slid from the rock the strong breast and the tender sides

Till they commingled with the smooth plain, the rock not having even scratched them, whilst death was looking on disappointed.

I returned to the Fahmites, but had hardly returned ; and how often have I thus escaped when they whistled.²⁶

By the same poet.²⁷

The poet courted a woman of the A'bs tribe, belonging to the Beni Káreb and obtained her assent ; but when he came again he found that she had changed her mind. On asking her who had alienated her affection from him, she replied :—“ By Allah ! Your descent is noble, but my people asked me what the use of a husband could be, who may be killed any day, and leave me a widow ? ” Then he left her saying :—

وَقَالُوا لَهَا لَا تَنْكِحِيهِ فَانْهَ لَا وَلَ نَصِلُ أَنْ يَلْقَى مَيْهِ عَا
 فَلَمْ تَرِ مِنْ رَأْيِ فَتِيلَةٍ وَهَذِرَتْ تَأْيِهَا مِنْ لَابِسٍ أَلَيْلَ ارْوَعَا
 قَبِيلَ غَرَارِ النَّوْمِ أَكْبَرَ هَمَّ دَمْ أَلَثَّارَ أَوْ يَانِغَلَ كَهْيَا مَكْفَعَا
 يَوْمَاصِعَةَ كُلَّ يَشْجِعَ قَوْمَهُ وَمَا ضَرَبَهُ هَامْ أَلْعَدَى لِيَشْجِعَا
 قَلِيلَ أَدْخَارِ أَلْزَادَ إِلَّا تَعْلَمَ نَقْدَ نَشْزَ أَلْشَرْسُوفُ وَأَلْنَصَقَ أَلْعَما
 يَبِيدَتْ يَهْقَنِي أَلْوَحْشَ حَتَّى الْفَتَنَهُ وَيَصْبِعَ لَا يَحْمِي لَهَا أَلْدَهْرَ مَرْنَهَا
 هَلَيَ فَرَةَ أَوْ نَهْزَةَ مِنْ مَكَانِهِ اطَّالَ نَزَالَ أَلْقَرْمَ حَتَّى تَسْعَهَا
 وَمَنْ يَغْرِبَا لَا عَدَا لَابَدَ أَنَّهَا مَيْلَقَى بِهِمْ مِنْ مَصْرِعِ أَلْهَوْتَ مَصْرَعَا

²⁵ The simile is taken from the *Mawrid* and *Maqdar*, the spots where the camels descend to and come up from the watering place ; hence the beginning and end, the sum of prudence.

²⁶ When I escaped to my tribe, my pursuers whistled discomfited.

²⁷ Same metre as the preceding. Text p. ۲۴۴.

رَأَيْنَ فَتِي لَا صِدَدْ وَحْشَ يَهْمَةَ فَاوْ صَافَحتْ اَنْسَا لِعَافِيَةَ مَعَا^١
 وَلَا كَنْ اَرْبَابْ اَلْمَخَاضْ يَشْفَهُمْ اَذَا اَقْتَلُرُوهُ وَاحْدَاهُ اوْ مَشْيَعَاهُ^٢
 وَإِنِي وَانْ عَمِرتْ اَعْلَمْ اَنْتِي سَالَقِي سِنَانْ الْمَوْتِ يَبْرُقْ اَصْلَاعَاهُ^٣

They said to her:—Marry him not! For he will belong to the first
dart when he meets a battle.

She shows not a whit of sense, who apprehends being widowed by a
daring [“] strong man.

Who sleeps but little, whose greatest care is blood-vengeance, or to
encounter a begrimed warrior.

With whom every one fights to be considered brave by his tribe, but
who does not strike the skulls of foes in order to be considered
brave;

Who gathers food to appease hunger only, whose ribs are promi-
nent, and bowels shrunk together.

Who spends the nights in the lairs of wild beasts which get used to
him, and who prohibits them not from the meadow in the morning.

Lazy or expecting the foe from the lair, but delaying the attack un-
til weary.

But who is addicted to fight with enemies, surely meets a place
where he will be prostrated in death.

They have seen a knight who cares not for hunting beasts; could these
shake hands as friends they would certainly do so with him.

But he cares for the owners of pregnant camels which they ema-
ciate; they follow him whether he be alone or in company.

And verily I know that if I am granted life, I shall meet the bared
and flashing spear of death.

By the same poet.^٤

The following poem is by some attributed to Khalif Allaljmar; among other reasons also the circumstance is adduced that Tâbbet

^١ The expression “لا يبس ازيديل” “who puts on the night like a garment” implies one who courts danger, hence daring.

^٢ The metre is the first species of Madyd; twice فاعلن ناعلن Tab. Metr. Ham. Frey., p. 137. Text., p. ٣٨٢

Sherrú was very far from mount Sal', which is situated near Madynah ; he having been slain in the country of the Hodaylites ; but the Arabs themselves differ whether the mountain was there, or whether that near Madynah is meant. His corpse was thrown into a cave bearing the name of Rakhmán.

إِنْ بِالشَّعْبِ الَّذِي دُونَ سَلَعْ لِتَقْيَلَ دَمَهُ مَا يَطْلُبُ
 خَلْفَ أَلْعَبَةِ عَلَيْهِ وَوَلِيَ اَنَا بِالْأَلْعَبِ لَهُ مَسْتَقْلُ
 وَدَرَاءَ الْأَثَارِ مِنِيْ أَبْنَ اَخْتَ مَعِ عَقْدَتِهِ مَا تَحْلُ
 مَطْرِقَ يَرْشَحْ سَمَا كَمَا اطْرَقَ اَفْعَيْ يَنْقِتُ اَسْمَ مِلْ
 خَبِرَ مَا نَابَنَا مَهْمَئِلَ جَلَ حَتَّىْ دَقَّ فِيهِ اَلْأَجْلُ
 بَزْنِيْ اَلْدَهْرُ وَ كَانَ غَشْوَمَا يَابِيْ جَارَةَ مَا يَذْلِ
 شَامِسُ فِي الْقَرِحَتِيْ اِذَا مَا ذَكَرَتْ اَشْعَرِيْ فَنَرَدَ وَظَلَّ
 يَابِسَ اَلْجَنْبِيْنِ مِنْ فَيْرَ بُوسِ وَنَدِيْ اَلْخَنْبِيْنِ شَهْمَ مَهْدِلَ
 ظَاعِنَ يَا لَحْزَمَ حَتِيْ اِذَا مَاحَلَ حَلَ اَلَحْزَمَ حِيثَ يَحْلَ
 غَيْثَ مَزْنِيْ غَامِرَ حِيثَ يَجْدِيْ وَاِذَا يَسْطُرَ فَلِيْتَ اَبْلَ
 مَسْبِلَ فِي اَلْحَى اَحْرَوِيْ رَفْلَ وَاِذَا يَغْرُوْ فَسْعَ اَزْلَ
 وَلَهُ طَعْمَانِ اَرِيْ وَشَرِيْ وَكَلَ اَلْطَعْمَيْنِ قَدْ ذَاقَ كُلَّ
 يَرْكَبَ الْهَوْلَ وَجِيدَهَا وَلَا يَصْبِحَهُ اَلْيَمَانِيْ اَلْأَفْلَ
 وَفَتَرَ هَجَرَوْ لَمْ اَسْوِ اِلَهَمَ حَتِيْ اِذَا اَنْجَابَ حَلَّ

كُلُّ ماضٍ قدْ تُرْدِي بِمَاضٍ كَسَنَا الْبَرْقُ إِذَا مَا يَسْلُ
 فَآدَرْكَنَا أَلْمَارْ مِنْهُمْ وَلَمَّا يَنْجُ مُلْ حَيْنٌ أَلَا أَلْأَقْلُ
 فَاحْتَسَوْ اَنْفَاسُ نَوْمٍ فَلَمَّا هُوَمُ رَعَدُهُمْ فَأَشْعَلُو
 قَلْأَنْ فَلَتْ هَذِيلْ شَبَّاهُ لَبِهَا كَانْ هَذِيلْ يَقْلُ
 وَبِهَا أَبْرَكَهَا فِي صَنَاحٍ جَعْجَعٍ يَنْقَبُ فِيهِ الْأَظْلَ
 وَبِهَا صَبَحَهَا فِي ذَرَاهَا مَنْهُ بَعْدَ أَلْقَلْتُ نَهْبَ وَشَلَ
 صَلِيتْ مَنْتَ هَذِيلْ بَخْرَقٍ لَا يَمْلِ أَلْشَرْ حَتَّى يَمْلُو
 يَنْهُلْ الصَّدَّةَ حَتَّى إِذَا مَا نَهَاتْ كَانْ لَهَا مَنْهُ عَلَ
 دَاتْ أَلْخَمَرْ وَكَانَتْ حَرَامَةَ وَبَلْيَ مَا اَمْتَ تَحْلَ
 فَآمْسَنْتُهَا يَا سَوَادْ بَنْ عَمْرَ إِنْ جَسْوَيْ بَعْدَ خَالِي لَخْلَ
 نَصْحَكْ الْفَصَبَعَ لَقْتَلِي هَذِيلْ وَتَرِي أَلْذَيْبَ لَهَا يَسْتَهِلَ
 وَعَنَاقُ أَلْطَيْرَ تَغْدُو بَطَانَةَ تَحْكَطَاهُمْ فَمَا قَسْتَقْلَ

Verily there is a man slain in the defile beneath mount Sal'; his blood will not remain unavenged.

He left me the burden and departed. I shall carry the load he imposed on me.

After vengeance by me there is the sister's son, brave, whose knot is not dissolved.^{so}

With downcast eyes, exuding venom, as the silent viper exhales poison.

The terrible message we received was so great, that in comparison to it the greatest is small.

^{so} A tough fellow.

Fortune has despoiled me, it was iniquitous to deprive me of one whose neighbour is not to be despised.

He was like the sun in winter, but cool and shady when Sirius burnt.²¹
His sides were lean but not from want ; he was liberal, acute in mind, self-confident.

Firm in prudence, so that wherever he abode, prudence also dwelt.
He was the large rain from a cloud, overwhelming when spending, and a brave lion when attacking.

Trailing long black hair among his people, clad in loose garments, but in assault he was a wild beast ; the progeny of a hyena and of a wolf.

He had two flavours :—of honey and of colocynth ; both known to all.

He confronted terrors alone, accompanied only by his well notched Yemany blade.

How many youths started at noon, travelled throughout the night, and halted when the light dawned.

Each passing by, girt with a sword passing through, and resembling a flash of lightning when drawn out.

We took vengeance on them so that of the two families but few escaped

They drew the breath of sleep, and when they nodded thou hast terrified them to flee ;

And indeed if the Hodaylites broke his lances²² it was because he had broken the Hodaylites before,

And because he had made them lay down in a rough place, where the internal part of the hoof is wounded,

And because he afflicted them in the morning in their own refuge after slaughter, and pillage of animate as well as of inanimate things.

The Hodaylites were on my part afflicted by a liberal man, not tired by evil until they got tired.

Who leads the spear to the first drink, and after it has drunk, he quenches its thirst again.

²¹ Meaning :—To those who had recourse to him in winter he afforded warmth and in summer cold.

²² Literally :—Stings of scorpions.

Wine became licit but was illicit, and scarcely became licit with difficulty.

Then give me to drink of it, O Sawád, for my body is emaciated after my uncle [was slain]³³

The Hyena laughs on account of the slain Hodaylites, and thou seest the wolf rejoicing

And noble birds have big bellies in the morning, they walk on them,³⁴ and are unable to soar up.

IX.—Jahdar B. Dubya'h جَهْدَرُ بْنُ دُبْيَا'هُ³⁵

The poet obtained the name *Jahdar* on account of his dwarfish stature, and recited the following verses in a battle called *Yaum Al-Tahálék*, “the day of shearing.” In the war between the Beni Bekr B. Wáyl and the Beni Taghlib, which lasted forty years, the former assembled on a certain occasion, and Háreth B. U'bád said to Háreth B. Hummám :—“Wilt thou obey me, O Hár, in what I intend to do?” and after obtaining the assent of the latter, he continued :“Our foes are superior in numbers to our people, which emboldens them in war; therefore you must attack them also with your women as well as with your men.” Hereon Al Háreth B. Hummám asked :—“How is the fight with women?” And he continued :—“Gird every woman with a water vessel and give her a stick. Station a number of them in your rear, which will increase your numbers and importance; inform them of the signs how to distinguish between foes and friends, so that when any of the latter come near them, they may give them water to drink, but if the former do so they will strike and kill them with their sticks.” This was done, and all the Beni Bekr cut off their hair for the sake of distinction, excepting only *Jahdar*, who although short of stature was an excellent rider, and a brave warrior. He begged his long and beautiful hair to be spared, which was granted on condition of his distinguishing himself in the forthcoming battle by valour, and that in the contrary case it would be cut off, as was done when freedom was given to a slave. He promised to display such bravery as to fall in battle,

³³ On account of this verse some believe that the piece was not recited by Tabbet Sherra, but by his nephew.

³⁴ On the corpses.

³⁵ p. ۷۰۷ Rajaz metre, six times مُسْكَنٌ لِلْمُؤْمِنِينَ Tab. Metr. Ham. Freyt., p. 742.

with a view to which event he recited the following verses, considering it as already accomplished:—

وَشَعْدَتْ بَعْدَ الرِّهَانِ جَهْنَمِي
 قَدْ يَتَمَتْ بَنْتَى وَإِمْتَكْنَتِي
 رَدُّو عَلَى الْخَيْلِ إِنْ إِمْتِي
 قَدْ عَلِمْتَ وَالْيَدَةَ مَا خَمْتِ
 إِنْ الْكَمَاءَ بِالْكَمَاءِ أَلْنَفْتَ أَمْحَدْجَ فِي آلْحَرِبِ إِمْتَأْتِ

Verily my daughter has become an orphan, my wife a widow, and my hair dishevelled after anointing.

Turn on me the riders if they come ! If I fight them not cut off my hair.

Already my mother knew whom she embraced, wrapped in swaddling clothes, and whom she smelt.

Whether when warriors meet he would be accounted of short stature in war, or whether she had a perfect man.

X.—*Hazáz B. A'mr* حَازَّ بْنُ عَمْرٍ

The poet seems to have been fond of wine ; he blames his wife for bewailing a young camel the value of which he drank, and mentions several persons whose loss it would be more suitable to deplore :—

تَبْكِي عَلَى بَكْرٍ شَرِبْتُ بِهِ سَقْهَا تَبْكِيَهَا عَلَى بَكْرِ
 هَلَّا عَلَى زَيْدِ الْفَوَارِسِ زَيْدِ الْأَلَّاتِ او هَلَّا عَلَى عَمِيرِ
 تَبْكِيَنِ لَا رَقَاتَ دَمْوَعُكِ او هَلَّا عَلَى سَلْفَيِ بَنِي نَعْرِ
 خَلُو عَلَى الدَّهْرِ بَعْدَ هُمْ فَيْقِيْتَ كَالْمُصْوَبِ لِلَّدَهْرِ

She deplores a young camel for which I drank wine ; her weeping for a young camel is folly.

Why not for Zayd Al-Fawáris, Zayd Al-Lát, or why not for A'mir?

⁸⁶ p. ۵۵۵ Kámel, twice Metra. Tab. Metr. Ham. Freyt., p. 741.

Thou weepest ! May thy tears never cease ! But why not for the two ancestors of the Beni Naṣr ?

The departed left the time upon me after them, and I remained like a target set up for time !

XI.—Hassán B. Nushbah ٣٧

The poet boasts that his tribe had defeated the Hemyarites.

لَحْنَ اجْرَنَا الْحَىٰ كَلْبًا وَقَدْ اتَّا لَهَا حَمِيرٌ تَزْجِي أَلْوَشِيجَ الْمُقْرَمَا
تَرَكَنَا لَهُمْ شَقَ الشَّمَاءَ فَاصْبَحُوا جَهِيَّا بِزَجْنَ الْمَطْيَ الْمَخْزَمَا
وَامَّا دَنُو صَلَنَا فَفَرَقَ جَمِيعَهُمْ مَحَابَتَنَا تَنْدِي اسْرَرَتَهَا دَمَا
فَقَادَرُنَ قَيْلًا مِنْ مَقاوِلِ حَمِيرٍ كَانَ بَخِيدَةً مِنَ الدَّمِ عَنْدَمَا
أَمْرَ عَلَى افْوَةِ مِنْ ذَاقَ طَعْنَاهَا مَطَاعِنَنَا يُبَجِّنَنَ ما بَا وَعَلَقَمَا

We protected the Kalbites, and verily the Hemyarites had come attacking them with erect lances.

We abandoned to them the sinister side, whilst they urged in the morning the cattle having rings in their nostrils.

When they approached, we attacked them, and our cloud the centre of which dripped with blood, dispersed them.

And they left a prince of the princes of Hemyar, as if his eyelids were tinged with dragon-blood.

Bitter is our food in the mouths of those who tasted it, as when they suck colocynth and bitter fruit.

By the same on the same subject.³⁹

أَنِي وَانْ لَمْ أَفْدَ حَيَا سَوَاهِمْ فَدَامْ لَنِيمْ يَوْمَ كَلْبٍ وَ حَمِيرًا
أَبُو انْ يَبِحُّو جَارَهُمْ لِعَدِّهِمْ وَ قَدْ فَارَ نَعْ الدَّوْتَ حَتَّى تَكُونُوا

³⁷ p. 165 *Tawyl*, twice *Mefā'il* *Fu'ol* *Fu'ol* *Mfā'il* *Mfā'il* *Fu'ol*. Tab. Metr. Ham. Freyt., p. 736.

³⁸ p. 166 The metre is the same as of the preceding piece.

سُمُّوْ نَحْوَ قِيلَ الْقَوْمِ يَبْتَدِي رُونَهُ بِاَصْبَابِهِمْ حَتَّىٰ هُوَيِ فَنَفَطَرَا
وَكَانُوا كَانِفَ الْلَّيْثَ لَا شَمْ مُرْغَمًا وَلَا بَالْ قَطْ الْعَيْدَ حَتَّىٰ تَغَرَّا
Although I redeem no clan except them, there is redemption of the
Taym for the day of the Kalbites and Hemyarites ;
They refused to surrender their clients to their foes, when the dust
of death rose high till it was abundant ;
They hastened to the prince of the people, quickly attacking him
with their swords, till he fell down on his side ;
They were like the lion's nose, who snuffs no vileness, and grasps
his prey only when soiled by dust.

^{٢٩} دريد بن الصمه — *Doriyd B. Al-Činmah.*

He was a brave warrior as well as a great poet, and lived to see Islām promulgated, but refused to accept it. He marched forth with his tribe to the battle of Honeyn, as an ally of the Prophet's foes, but his presence was of no avail. His name appears to be a diminutive of *Adraad*, with the omission of the first letter to facilitate pronunciation ; it means a person whose teeth have fallen out from old age, and who chews with his gums :—

نَصَحَتْ لِغَارِغَ وَاصْحَابَ عَارِضَ وَرَهْطَبَنِي أَلْسُودَاءَ وَأَلْقَوْمَ شَهْدَىٰ
فَقَلَتْ لَهُمْ ظَنُو بِالْفَيِّ مَدْجَجٌ سَرَاطُهُمْ قِي الْفَارِسِيِّ أَلْهَسُودَ
فَلَمَّا عَصَوْنِي كَنْتُ مِنْهُمْ وَقَدْ ارَى غَوَيْدُهُمْ وَأَنْفِي غَيْرُ مَهْدِدٍ
أَعْرَتُهُمْ أَعْرِي بِمُخْرَجِ الْلَّوْيِ فَلَمْ يَسْتَدِيْنُو أَلْرَشَدَ الْأَصْحَىٰ أَلْنَدَ
وَهُلْ أَنَا إِلَّا مِنْ غَزِيَّةٍ أَنْ غَوَتْ غَوَيْتْ وَأَنْ تَرَشَدْ غَزِيَّةٍ اَرَشَدَ
تَنَادَ وَقَالَوْ اَرَدَتْ أَخْيَلَ فَارِسَا فَقَلَتْ اَعْدَدُ اللَّهَ ذَلِكَمْ أَلْرِدَىٰ
فَجَئَتْ إِلَيْهِ وَأَلْرِمَاحَ تَفَوَّشَهُ كَوْقَعْ أَصْبَاصِي فِي أَلْنَسِيجْ أَلْمَهْدَىٰ

^{٣٠} p. 377 The second species of Tawyl, twice فَعُولَنْ مَفَاعِيلَنْ فَعُولَنْ مَفَاعِيلَنْ مَفَاعِيلَنْ Tab. Metr. Ham. Freyt., p. 736.

وَكُنْتَ كَذَاتِ آلَبُرِ رَبِيعَتِي فَاقْبِلْتَ إِلَيْيَ جَلَدَ مِنْ مَسْكٍ مَقْبَ مَقْنَدَ
 فَطَاعَتْ عَنْهُ كَلْخِيلَ حَتَّى تَفَقَّسَتْ وَهَنَى عَلَانِي حَالَكَ آلَلَوْنَ اسْوَدِي
 قَنَالَ آمْرِي ءَآمْسِي أَخَاةَ بَنْقَسَهُ وَيَعْلَمُ أَنْ آلَمَرِهُ غَيْرَ مَخْلُدَ
 فَانِ يَكْ عَدَدَ اللَّهِ خَلِيْ مَكَانَهُ فَمَا كَانَ وَقَانَهُ لَا طَابَشَ آلَيْدَ
 كَهِيشَ آلَازَارِ خَارِجَ نَصْفَ مَسَاهَهُ بَعِيدَهُ مِنْ آلَافَاتِ طَلَاعَ الْجَدَدَ
 قَابِلَ التَّشْكِيِّ لِلْمَصَبِيَّاتِ حَافِظَ مِنَ الْيَوْمِ أَعْقَابَ آلَاحَادِيَّتِ فِي غَدَهَ
 قَرَاهَ خَيْصَ آلَبَطَنَ وَآلَرَادَ حَاضِرَ عَتِيدَهُ وَيَغْدُو فِي الْمَقْبِحِ آلَمَقْنَدَهُ
 وَانِ مَسَهَ آلَاقْوَاءَ وَآلَجَهَهَ زَادَهَ مَهَا حَاوَهُ وَالْتَّلَفَا لَمَا كَانَ فِي آلَيْدَهُ
 صَبَا مَا صَبَا حَتَّى عَلَى الشَّيْبِ رَاسِهِ فَلَمَّا عَلَّهَ قَالَ لِلْبَاطِلِ آبَعَهُ
 وَطَيْبَ نَفْسِي إِنَّهِ لَمْ أَقْلَ لَهُ كَذَبَتْ وَلَمْ اَنْخُلْ بِمَا مَلَكَتْ يَدِي

I advised A'árid with his companions, and the family of the Beni Alsaudá, the people being my witnesses.

And said to them :—Suppose 2,000 men perfectly armed, whose leaders are clad in Persian chain armour [present]!

But when they contradicted me I was of them ; though I saw their error and that I was not well guided.

I gave them my orders on a sandy hillside, but they knew the direction only about next noon.

Am I anything but a Gházyyah ; if the Gházyyah tribe errs I err, and if it be well directed so am I.

They shouted to each other saying :—“The riders slew a rider !” I asked :—“Is that A'bd-Allah the slain man ?”⁴⁰

Then I came to him pierced as he was by lances, as the weaver's thistles fall on the extended cloth

⁴⁰ This he asked because he supposed the slain man to be his own brother.

I being like a frightened she-camel, approaching the skin of the slaughtered foal, brought stuffed to her.⁴¹

I warded off the riders from him with my spear, till they dispersed and I was covered with black blood.

Fighting like a man who imitates his brother, and knows indeed that man is not immortal

Although A'bd-Allah is dead ⁴² he was neither dilatory nor weak in battle.

With tucked up garment, bared leg, free from blemishes, scaling heights

Caring little for difficulties, observing to-day the rumours that will ensue after what is done on the morrow.

You see him eating sparingly ⁴³ although food is present, ready. But he is in the morning covered by a ragged tunic.

If poverty and want threaten him his liberality increases, whilst he loses what he possesses.

He played whilst he was young, but when his hair became grey he bade farewell to vanities

I congratulate myself that I never accused him of lying, and that I was not avaricious in what I had.

The same poet recited. ⁴⁴

تقول الا تبكي اخاك وقد ارى مكان ابلك لاكن بنيت على اعاجز
 فقللت اعبد الله ابكي ام الذي له ايجاد آلا على قتيل ابي بكر
 وعدت يغوث تحجى الطير حوله وعز المصاب جذو قبر على قبر
 ابى القتل الا اآل صمة انهم ابو غيره ولقدر يجري الى القدر

⁴¹ This and also other devices were resorted to, in order to induce a camel to yield milk, which she refuses when her foal has been slaughtered.

⁴² Literally : Has left his place empty.

⁴³ Literally : With a slender belly.

⁴⁴ p. 380. First species of Tawyl, twice مفعلن مفعلن فرعون Metrorum Tabula. Ham. Freyt., p. 735.

فَامَّا تَرِبَّنَا لَا تَرَالْ دَمَاؤُنَا لَدِيْ وَاتَّرْ يَسْعَ بَهَا اَخْرَ اَلَادَهِ
 فَانَ الْمَحْمَنْ اَلْسِيفَ غَيْرَ نَكِيرَةٍ وَتَلْحِمَهُ حَيْنَنَا وَلِيْسَ بَذِيْ نَكِيرَ
 يَغَارَ عَلَيْنَا وَاتِّرِينَ فَيَشْتَفِي بَنَا اَنْ اصِبَّنَا اوْ تَقْيِيرَ عَلَى وِتْرِ
 قَوْنَنَا بَذِيْ اَلَادَهِرَ شَطَرِينَ بَيْنَنَا قَمَّا يَنْقُضُهُ اَلَا وَنَحْنَ عَلَى شَطِيرَ

She said :— Bewailest thou not thy brother ? There is occasion for weeping. But I am of a patient nature

And said :— Is A'bd-Allah to be deplored, or he whose tomb is high, and whom Abu Bekr slew ?

And A'bd-Al-Yagh'úth.⁴³ Around whom birds are hopping ; and a grave raised near another is a great calamity.

Slaughter beset only the Çimmah tribe which wished for no other thing, and one matter predestined will reach the other.

But if you perceive that our blood is always coveted by our foe who endeavours to take it till the end of all time,

It is because we refuse not to be fleshed by the sword, and also flesh ours which refuses not.

When we are foes we are invaded and hatred abates⁴⁴ when we are hit ; or else we attack our foe.

Thus time into two parts we divided among us, nor does it lapse but we our share receive.

XIII.—A man of the Hemyarites recited.⁴⁵

This piece was also translated into Latin by Schultens in his “ Monumenta vetustiora Arabiæ.” It relates to a battle in which the tribes A'bd-Manat and Kalb were victorious against the Hemyarites :—

⁴³ Yagh'út was much worshipped in Yemen, and men called themselves his slaves, one of whom is here represented as left unburied after the battle, so that the birds, satiated by a repast on his corpse, were not able to fly, but hopped about as if their legs were shackled.

⁴⁴ Literally :—Health is recovered.

⁴⁵ p. 143 First species of Munsarîl :— مُنْسَارِلٌ مَفْعُولَاتٌ مَسْتَفْعَلٌ مَسْتَفْعَلٌ فَرِيْجَاتٌ مَفْعُولَاتٌ مَفْعَلَانٌ Freytag, p. 744.

من راي يومنا و يوم بنى التيم اذ ^{١٠٦} ^{٥٦} ^{٥٤} ^{٥٣} ^{٥٢} ^{٥١} ^{٥٠} ^{٤١}
 صيقه بدمه
 لما راو ان يومهم اسب شدو حيازبهم على المد
 كانها الا مد في عريفهم و نحن كالليل جاش في قده
 لا يسلمون الغداة جارهم حتى ينزل الشراك عن قدمه
 ولا يخيم اللقاء فارسهم حتى يشق الصوف من كرمه
 ما برح التيم يعتزون وزرق الخط تشفي السقيم من مقدمه
 حتى تولت جموع حمير والفل سريعا يهوي الى امه
 وكم تركنا هناك من بطل تسقى هليه الرياح في لمه

Who has seen our day and the day of the Beni Taym, when his dust
was commingled with blood?

When they perceived that their day was heavy, they compressed
their breasts for grief

As if they had been lions in their dens, and we the night fretting in
the dust.⁴⁸

They surrender not in the morning their clients, until the thongs
fall from the feet.⁴⁹

Their cavalier is not timid to attack, but breaks the ranks by prowess.
The Taymites ceased not to challenge their foes while the blue lances
cured the sick of sickness.

Until all the Hemyarites were put to flight; and a fugitive quickly
proceeds to a place

And how many braves have we left there, whose hair the wind be-
grims with dust?

⁴⁸ Night chaffing in its own dust, is the darkness caused by the dust which rises in the confusion of a battle.

⁴⁹ By over-exertion and much struggling.

XIV.—*Tarafah B. Al-A'bd* ٥٠

He was the author of one of the seven celebrated poems suspended in the Ka'bah. He flourished between A.D. 560 and 570, and it appears that neither he nor his friend, Mutalammis, was able to read ; at any rate they could not read, or perhaps decipher, the letter they had received from A'mru, the king of Hyrah, as they asked another man to read it to them. This letter contained an order to the governor of Hijr to kill the bearers. Mutalammis believed the contents to be true, and warned Tarafah to return ; the latter, however, being under the impression that the king would not act in so dastardly a manner, and that his companion had been imposed upon, continued his journey, and was slain.

The poet reproaches here a man on account of whose lies three men separated themselves from their family :

فُرِقَ مِنْ بَيْتِكَ مَعَ بْنِ مَالِكٍ وَ عُمَرًا وَ عَوْفًا مَا تَشَيَّى وَ تَقَوَّلَ
 وَ انْتَ عَلَى الْأَدْنِي شَمَالَ عَرِيقَةِ شَامِيَّةِ تَزَوَّجُ الْوَجْهَةَ بَلِيلَ
 وَ انْتَ عَلَى الْأَقْصِي صَبَّا غَيْرَ قَرْيَةِ نَذَابٍ مِنْهَا مَرْزِغٌ وَ مَسِيلٌ
 وَ اعْلَمُ عَلَمًا لَيْسَ بِالظَّنِّ أَنَّهُ إِذَا ذَلِكَ مَوْلَى الْمَرْءِ فَهُوَ ذَلِيلٌ
 وَ إِنَّ لِسَانَ الْمَرْءِ مَالِمٌ تَكَنَّ لَهُ حَسَاءٌ عَلَى عُورَاتِهِ لَدَلِيلٌ

What thou hast willed and said, has separated Sa'd B. Málik, and
A'mr and A'wf from thy two houses.

Thou art towards thy next kinsman a cold Syrian wind, contracting
the faces, moist ;

To the remote thou art no cold zephyr, bringing from all sides tor-
rents of rain and mud

I know for a certainty and not by conjecture, that when the patron
of a man is vile, he is himself vile.

For verily the tongue of a man who is void of reticence indicates his
foibles.

٥٠ p. ٦٣٢ Third species of Tawyl ; twice
p. 737. Metr. Tab. Ham. Freytag.

١٤ عارق الطي *XV.—A'arek of the Tayi tribe*

The above is an epithet meaning "gnawer," which the poet is said to have obtained when he uttered the last verse of the following piece, of which it is the last word. His real name was Kays B. Jirr wah. From the following verses it appears that he paid a visit to the king of Hyrah, A'mr B. Mundir B. Má-al-samá, who was, according to Caussin de Perceval's "Histoire des Arabes," born A.D. 510, and reigned about the year 562. It also appears from these verses that although the art of writing may not have been common in those times, it was used in public documents; the character was most probably the Syriac, which gradually transformed itself during the lapse of the two next centuries into Kufic, whence the present shape of the letters originated.

الا حي قبل الابين من انت ما شتة و من انت مشتاق اليه و شايقة
 و من لا تواتي دارة غير فية و من انت تبكي كل يوم تفارقه
 تخب بصحرا اللوية ناقتي بعد و رباع قد امتحت نوا هقة
 الى الامذر الخير بن هندي تزورة و ايس من الالفوت الالذى هو ساقه
 فان نسا و غير ما قال قايل فنية مسو و سطهن مهارق
 و لونيل في عهد لذا لحم اربن وفيانا و هذا العهد انت مصالحة
 اكل خميس اخطا الگنم مرة وصادف حيا دانيا هر مساقه
 و كذا اناسا دينين بقطعة تسيل بنا تل الملا و ابارقة
 فاقسمت لا احتل الا بضوء حرام عليك رعله و شذائقه
 حلفت بهدى مشعر بكراته تخب بصحرا آلغيط درادقة
 لين لم تغير بعد ما قد صنعت لاتخين للعظم ذو انا عارقه

^{٥٢} p. 759 Second species of Tawyl, twice
p. 736. Metr. Tab. Ham. Freytag.

Wilt thou not, before separating, salute him whom thou lovest, for whom thou longest and inspirest longing,
 And him whose house thou canst approach only occasionally, and who thou deplorest every day thou art separated?
 In the desert of Al-thhawiyah my she camel gallops, like a young horse whose leg bones are full of marrow,
 To the good Al-Mundir, son of Hind, to visit him, and that can be repaired what he has done before,
 For verily, females among whom his diploma of security is, are contrary to what some one has said; bad plunder.⁵³
 Had hare's flesh been taken in our compact, we would have fulfilled it; but the keeping of this compact thou hast imposed on thyself.
 Will any army once disappointed for booty and finding a subject tribe become its persecutor?
 We were men glad to obey, floating about the piebald watercourses in security.⁵⁴
 I swore henceforth to live only on the ridge, whose sands and sandy tracts are interdicted to thee.
 I swore by the victim whose young camels are marked, when her little ones run about in the desert of Al-Ghabyt.
 Indeed, if thou changest not, after what you have done, I shall attack the bone of which I am now the gnawer.⁵⁵

By the same. ⁵⁶

When the above verses were brought to the notice of A'mr B. Mundir, Zurárah informed him that the last contained a threat of vengeance. Hereon A'mr upbraided Thurmalah that Kays B. Jirrawah,

⁵³ These two verses allude to the circumstance that Mundir had on a certain occasion, when he returned from an expedition without booty, at the instigation of a man that they were good plunder, captured some women of the Tayyi tribe, in spite of the alliance which subsisted between them. The word قهرم is Arabised from the Persian مهرک diminutive of مهر in the sense of royal diploma; it occurs thus also in the Mo'allakah of Hárith.—Ed. Sir W. Jones, Distich 42.

⁵⁴ "Deserted valleys containing water floated with us." تسلیل بنا نلاح املأ

probably intended to imply a careless, unconcerned life.

⁵⁵ This conveys the meaning that after having unburdened his mind, and merely laid it bare like a bone, the poet will, unless A'mr changes his behaviour, "chaw" him up, as the Americans would say.

⁵⁶ p. ٤٣٦ Second species of Kámel; six times مهْرَان, p. 740. Metr. Tab. Ham. Freytag.

his cousin, had thus insulted him ; this the former denied, and said the verses insinuated that if Ebn Jafnah had been in the place of A'mr he would have treated the Beni Tayyi more unjustly, and were as follows :—

والله لو كان ابن جفنة جاركم لكسا الوجوه غضافة وهو نا
وسلام يلثثين في اعتاقكم واذا لقطع منكم الاقرانا
ولكان عادته على جاراته مسكا وربطا رادعا وجفانا

By Allah ! Had Ebn Jafnah been your protector, he would have clothed your faces with abasement and vileness.⁵⁶

And chains bending round your necks, but on severing your connections

It would have been his custom to offer to the women under his protection, musk scented cloaks and salvers.

By the same.⁵⁷

In this piece the poet hurls defiance at A'mr B. Mundir, of whose intention to slay him he had obtained information :—

من صباح عمر بن هند رساله اذا استحققتها العين تنسا من ابعد
ایو عدنی والرمل بيذن وبينه وبين رويد ما امامه من هند
ومن ا جاء حولي رعائنا كانها قنابل خيل من كميت ومن ورد
غدرت باسمك ذات انت دعوتنا اليه وبقيس الشيمه الغدر بالعهد
وقد يترك الغدر الفتى وطعامه اذا هو امسى حلبة من دم الفهد

Who will convey the message to A'mr B. Hind ; though white camels bearing him on a cushioned saddle get emaciated by the distance ;

⁵⁶ Your faces may also stand as a metaphor for "your chiefs," who are often called thus.

⁵⁷ p. 445 First species of Tawyl : twice فرعون مفاسيدان فرعون مقامان p. 735. Metr. Tab. Ham. Freytag.

Does he threaten me though sandy tracts separate us? Gently! What is the difference between Omámah and Hind?⁵⁸

Whilst the summits of mount Ajá encircle me like flocks of chestnut and tawny steeds?

Thou hast betrayed us in a matter to which thou hadst called us!
And wicked is perfidy; treachery, in a covenant!

Verily a knight abstains from treachery, although his evening meal may be blood milked by venesection.⁵⁹

XVI.—A'bd-Allah B. Domaynah ^{٦٠}

The poet describes his disappointment in a love-intrigue on a journey:—

وَلَمَّا لَعِقْدَنَا بِالْحَمْوَلِ وَدُونَاهَا خَمِصَ الْحَشَانُ تُهِيَ التَّمِصُّ وَوَاتَّهُ
قَلِيلٌ قَدِيَ الْعَدَنِ يَعْلَمُ أَنَّهُ هُوَ الدَّوْتُ إِنْ لَمْ تَعْرِ عَنَّا بِوَيْتَهُ
عَرَضَنَا فَسَلَمَ كَارَهَا عَلَيْنَا وَتَرْبِيعٌ مِنَ الْغَيْظِ خَانَتَهُ
فَسَابِرَتَهُ مَقْدَارٌ مَيْلٌ وَإِيتَنِي بَكَرِهِي لَهُ مَا دَامَ حَيَا ارْأَفَتَهُ
فَلَمَّا رَأَتَهُ لَا وَصَالَ وَانَّهُ مَدِي الصَّرْمِ مَضْرُوبٌ عَيْنَاهُ سَرَادَقَهُ
رَمَذَنِي بَطْرَفٌ أَوْ كَهْيَا رَمَتْ بَهُ لَبَلَ نَجِيدَانَ نَحْرَهُ وَبَنَاقَهُ
وَلَمَّا بَعْنَيْهَا كَانَ وَمِيَضُّهُ وَمِيَضُّ الْحَيَا تَهْدِي لَنْجَدَ شَتَّائِهِ

When we reached the camel howdahs defended by a thin-bellied fellow whose shoulders however burst his tunic,

Who had no mote in his eyes, was known to be death, should his calamities not be averted from us.

We passed to the side, then saluted. He saluted us unwillingly, his throat being strangled by wrath.

⁵⁸ The mention of the king's mother would have been very offensive, but the poet's doing so in connection with his own was intended as the greatest insult.

⁵⁹ Great distress is meant, because the Arabs bled their camels for want of food in such a case, and bandaged the vein after a quantity of blood had been obtained, which was then put into an intestine, roasted and eaten.

⁶⁰ P. ٥٥٦ Second species of Tawyl; twice مفاعلن فرعون مفاعلن فرعون
p. 736. Metr. Tab. Ham. Freytag.

I travelled about a mile with him. Would that I, altho' a stranger
to him, might accompany him all his life !
When she perceived that no meeting was possible, and that as a
limit of separation, his tent was pitched against us,
She shot a glance at me ; had she cast it at a man covered with
armour, blood would have dyed his neck and collar.
And a wink with her eyes, as if their lightning had been the lightning
of the vivifying shower the streaks of which point to Najd.⁶¹

XVII.—A'bd Allah Al-Kattál ^{٦٢} عبد الله القتال

There is a difference of opinion about his name ; according to some it was A'bd-Allah, and according to others O'baid B. Mujyb. The occasion for these verses was as follows :—Kattál was conversing with his uncle's daughter, whose brother Zyád was absent. On his return he took notice of Kattál, and swore that if he saw him again with his sister he would kill him ; accordingly he took a sword when Kattál paid his next visit to the girl, and when Zyád perceived him he intended to make use of it, but Kattál ran, and being closely pursued, adjured him by Allah and by their consanguinity to spare his life ; when, however, Kattál was almost within the man's grasp, he observed a spear leaning against a house, which he snatched up and at once killed him :

شَدَّتْ زِيَادُ وَأَمْقَامَةُ بَيْنَنَا وَذَكْرَتْهُ ارْحَامُ سَعْرٍ وَهِينَمْ
فَلَمَّا رَأَيْتَ أَنَّهُ غَيْرَ مُنْذَهٍ أَمْلَأْتَ لَهُ كَفِيَّ بَلْدَنَ مُتَقْوِمَ
وَلَمَّا رَأَيْتَ الَّذِيْ قَدْ نَذَّرْتَهُ نَذَّرْتَهُ عَلَيْهِ أَمْسَاعَةً مُنْذَمَ

I adjured Zyád in the presence of the assembly, reminding him of
the kinship of S'ir and Haytham.

When I saw that he would not cease [to assault me] I bent my hand
to him with the slow straight [lance]
And when I saw that I had indeed slain him, I repented, and what
hour of repentance !

XVIII.—U'rwanah B. Al.-Ward ^{٦٣} عروة بن الوراء

U'rwanah is the name of a tree which does not wither in the cold
season, and yields food to camels in years of scarcity. He is surnamed

⁶¹ The wink may be an allusion to another meeting.

⁶² p. ٩٦ Second species of Tawyl ; twice فَعُولَنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولَنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ p. 736. Metr. Tab. Ham. Freytag.

⁶³ p. ٢٠٧ The same metre.

"U'rwah Al-Ça'alyk," the U'rwah of paupers, and lived to see Islám promulgated, but was exiled from Madynah by Muhammad :—

لَحَا اللَّهُ صَعْلُوكَا اِذَا جَنَ لِيلَةً مَصَانِي الْمَشَائِ اَلْفَالَّ كَلْ مَجِزِرٌ
 يَعْدُ اَلْغَنِي مِنْ نَفْسِهِ كُلَّ لَيْلَةً اَصَابَ قِرَاهَا مِنْ صَدِيقٍ مَبِيسِرٌ
 يَنَامُ عَشَّا وَا نَمْ يَصِحُّ نَاعِسًا بَعْثَتُ الْحَصَانَ مِنْ جَنْبِهِ الْمَعْقُورٌ
 يُعِينُ نِسَاء اَلْحَيِي مَا يَسْتَعْنِي وَ يَسِي طَلِيْعَهَا كَابِعِيرَ الْمَحْسِرٌ
 وَلَا كَنْ صَعْلُوكَا صَفِيقَةً وَجْهَهُ كَضْوَءِ شَهَابٍ اَلْقَابِسِ اَلْمَذْفُورٌ
 مَطْلَأً عَلَيْ اَعْدَائِهِ يَزْجُرُونَهُ بِسَاحِتِهِمْ زَجَرَ الْمَنْيَحَ اَلْمَشْهُرٌ
 اِذَا بَعْدَ وَ لَا يَأْمُنُونَ اَقْتَرَابَهُ تَشْرُفَ اَهْلِ اَلْقَابِبِ الْمَذْدُورِ
 نَذَلِكَ اِنْ يَلْقَى الْمَنِيْهَ يَلْقَاهُ حِمِيدًا وَ اَنْ يَسْتَغْنَى يَوْمًا فَاجِدِرٌ

Allah has debased the pauper who when the dark night sets in,
being greedy for marrow-bones frequents every butchering place.

He considers himself rich every night when he is hospitably entertained by this opulent friend.

He sleeps in the evening and gets up drowsy in the morning to rub
the gravel from his dusty side.

He aids the women of the camp in whatever they ask, and is tired
in the evening like an exhausted camel.

But he is a pauper whose face is bright, like a shining brilliant
flame.

Obtruding himself to his foes when they curse him in their vestibules,
as a gaining arrow without a portion is cursed. ⁶⁴

⁶⁴ The first of the three arrows Manyh, Safyh and Wagh'd, to which no portion belongs, is mentioned in the text. The total number of arrows amounted sometimes to 10, and sometimes to 20. This game of casting lots, called Maysir, was afterwards prohibited in the Kurán ii., 218. A camel being the stake played for, was either bought for that purpose by the players themselves, or

Those who retreat from him are not secure of his approach. The family of the absent, the expected one, are looking out.
If this man meets death, he meets it laudably, and if he gets rich one day, it will be more laudable.

XIX.—A'ntarah. منترة ^{٦٥}

He is Ántarah B. Sneddád, the author of one of the Moállakát,^{٦٦} and recited the following lines on the occasion when Ward B. Hábés slew Nadlah the Asdy in a feud he had with him:—

يَدْبَبُ وَرَدٌ عَلَى اَلْرَهْ وَاعْكَنَهْ وَقَعْ مَرْدِيْ خَشْبٍ
قَنَايَعُ لَا يَتَغَيِّرُ غَيْرَهْ بَا يَغْنِيْ كَالْقَبِسُ الْمَلَّهَبِ
فَنَ يَكُ فِي قَتْلَهْ يَقْتَرِيْ قَاتَنَ اَبَا نُوقَلَ قَدْ شَجَبَ
وَغَادِرُنْ نَضْلَةً فِي مَعْرِكَ يَجْرِيْ اَمْنَهْ كَامْحَبْطَ

presented to them by some rich man. This is mentioned also in the Moállakah of Lebid, distich 73, as follows:—

وَجَزُورٌ اِيْسَارٌ دَعَوْتُ لِحَذَفَهَا بِمَغَالِقٍ مُّذْشَابَهٍ اَجْسَامَهَا

“Oft have I invited a numerous company to the death of a camel, bought for slaughter, to be divided by lot with arrows of equal dimensions.”—(Transl. Sir W. Jones).

The arrows had no points, and were made of Naba wood of yellow colour, used also for bows. (Chadava tenex. Freytag iv., p. 232.) Above, the names of the three portionless arrows have just been given, but each of the remaining seven gaining ones had also its own, and all gave forth a peculiar sound when thrown. According to their number, from one to seven, each winning arrow had 1, 2, 3, &c., portions assigned to it, up to the last, which gained seven parts. Camels being divided into 10 shares, appear to have been gambled for only with two arrows, namely, the third gaining 3, and the seventh winning 7 shares. The arrows were kept in a bag, and a man called Mufayd, whose hand was covered by the leather called Rebábah, to hinder him from distinguishing the arrows by the touch, drew them out. The flesh gained by thus drawing lots, was distributed among the poor, for which reason it was considered an honour to participate in the game, and a man out-casted for his bad morals could not do so. The winning arrows were praised, and the losing ones cursed, hence the above simile.

^{٦٥} p. ٢٠٧ Mutákáreb, seven فَعُولَنْ and one 3rd species. Darstellung, &c., p. 281.

^{٦٦} Freytag's Hamasah, p. 305, Note 1.

Ward hastened after him, and the fall of hard hoofs overtook him, He rushed on, looking for no other man, with his bright sword shining like a flame.

Let him who doubts of his murder be aware that Abu Naufal ⁶⁷
has indeed perished.

They abandoned Nadlah on the battle field, dragging darts, ^{as} like a collector of wood.

By the same. "9

The poet boasts of an exploit :—

تركت بنى آسمانيتهم لهم داور اذا تمضى جماعاتهم تمود
تركت جريمة العري فيه شدید لا غير م Gundal مدید
فان يروا فلم انتف عليه وان يفقد حق له الافتقد
و ما يدرى جريمة ان ندللي يكون جفيفها ابطل المجيد

I left the Bani Al-Hujaym; they had an idol⁷⁰ to which one of their squadrons went when another returned.

I left Jurayyah Al-A'mryi with a hard, straight and well-directed arrow in him.

If he gets well, I have not blown on it;⁷¹ and if he perishes he gets his due.

**But Jurayyah does not know that the quiver of my arrows is brave,
strong.¹⁸**

⁶⁷ This was the cognomen of Nadish.

"Transfixed by many spears, which broke off, and left their points in his body.

٢٠٩ First species of Wafer, twice مفاعن مفاعن مفاعن Metr. Tab., p. 739.

¹⁰ The scholast observes that a slain man is hero compared to an idol, because they walked around him as if he had been one. People still walk around idols in India devotionally.

⁷¹ The Arabs bewitched an arrow with an amulet, and blew on it when they desired it to be lethal, but omitted to do so in the contrary case alluded to in the text.

¹² This unusual locution is explained by considering the whole body of a warrior who shoots the arrows to be the quiver.

XX.—*Gh'allaṣ B. Merwān.*⁷³

Gh'allaṣ means the locker-up of pledges, the celebrated pre-Islamic war arising from a horse-race between the tribes A'bs and Dubyán has already been alluded to⁷⁴; in the following piece the poet blames the former and accuses the instigators:—

هُمْ قَطَعُوا الْأَرْحَامَ بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَهُمْ وَاجْرُوا إِلَيْهَا وَمُسْتَحْلِو أَمْحَارِهَا
 فِيَا لَيْتَهُمْ كَانُوا لَا خَرَى مَكَانُهَا وَلَمْ تَلِدِي شَيْءًا مِنْ أَلْقَوْمَ فَاطِمَةً
 فَمَا تَدْعِي مِنْ خَيْرٍ عَدْوَةٌ دَاهِمٌ وَلَمْ تَنْجِ مِنْهَا يَا أَبِنَ وَبْرَةِ مَالَمَا
 شَاهَمْتُ بِهَا حَتَّى بَغَيْضَ وَغَرَبَتْ أَبَاكَ فَاوَدَى حِيثَ وَالى أَذْعَاجِهَا
 وَكَانَتْ بَنُو ذِيَّانَ عِزًا وَآخِرَةً فَطَرْتَمْ وَطَارَوْ يَضْرِبُونَ أَجْمَاجِهَا
 فَاصْحَاتْ زَهِيرَ فِي الْسَّتِينَ أَلَّتِي مَضَتْ وَمَا بَعْدَ لَا يَدْعُونَ إِلَّا لَا شَايَهَا

They burst the bonds of kinship between me and them, they persevered; and made licit illicit things.

Would that they had been kinsmen to others, and thou, O Faṭīmah,⁷⁵ hadst given birth to no one.

What good pretenderest thou to have resulted from the gallop of Dáhis? And thou O Ebn Wabrah hast not escaped from it safely. You brought misfortune by it on two of the Bagh'yād clans; it has driven thy father into exile, and he perished whilst living among barbarians.

The Banu Dubyán were noble and brothers; but you flew and they flew to break skulls.

The Zuhayr were in years past and in later times called only infamous.

⁷³ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولَنْ مَفَاعِيلُنْ فَعُولَنْ Second species of Tawyl, twice Metr. Tab., p. 736.

⁷⁴ See vi. Bisbr B. Oyayi.

⁷⁵ Faṭīmah was a celebrated woman, the mother of four sons, and a contemporary of Kays B. Zohyr, some of whose verses will be given immediately under xxii.

XXI.—*Kays B. Zohayr* فَوْسِ بْنِ زَهْرَةٍ

Fatimah, the mother of the sons of Zyád, who are addressed in this piece, has been mentioned in the preceding piece, and enjoyed the title of Munjabah, granted only to few women who had given birth to noble sons. In fact each of them became the father of a tribe. Kays B. Zohayr was not only a poet, but a celebrated chief whose stallion Dáhis had become the cause of an atrocious war during the time of No'mán B. Al-Mundir, king of Hyrah, as has already been mentioned. The poet recited the following verses to praise the sons of Zyád, but especially with reference to Rabyi', to whom he wished on a certain occasion to sell a cuirass, he being on foot, and the former riding. When Rabyi' had placed the cuirass on the saddle knob in front of him to examine it, the horse shied and ran away with him; hereon Kays B. Zohayr took hold of the bridle of Fatimah, the mother of Rabyi', intending to retain her as a pledge for his cuirass, but when she said:—"Where has your prudence gone astray, O Kays? Do you want peace between you and the sons of Zyád, after wandering with their mother to the right and left, and the people will say what they like, &c. Kays knew that she had spoken the truth; therefore he let her go, but made a raid on Rabyi's camels, and when Hudayfah Málek B. Zohayr, the brother of Kays, was slain, Kays, thought that Rabyi' would on account of the just mentioned estrangement, not aid him to avenge his brother, but when he did so, Kays said:—"Rabyi' purchased my love, &c., and the Beni Gh'áleb were a branch of the A'bs tribe to which Kays himself belonged.

لعمرك ما أضاع بنو زياد ذمار ايهم فيمن يضيع
 بنو جندية ولدت مبوفاً صوارم كلها ذكر صنيع
 شري ودي وشكري من يهد لا آخر غالب ابداً ربيع

By thy life! The sons of Zyád have not forfeited the honour of their fathers among those who lose it.

They are sons of a demoness;⁷⁶ she gave birth to sharp blades, all are cutting swords of hardened steel.

⁷⁶ p. 221, First species of Wáfir; twice مفعلن مفعلن مفعلن p. 739.
Metr. Tab. Ham. Freytag.

⁷⁷ Any very clever and remarkable woman was by the old Arabs distinguished by the name of fairy or demoness; some however think that the word

Rabyi', although estranged from me, has purchased my love and gratitude for ever till one of the Gh'ileb branch remains.

By the same. ⁷⁸

The poet deplores the death of the Tezarites Hudayfah and Hamal :—

ٌعِلْمَ اَنْ خَيْرَ الْتَّائِسِ مِيتٌ عَلَى جَفْرِ اَلْهَبَاءِ وَلَا يُرِيمُ
 وَلَوْلَا ظَلَمَهُ مَا زَلَّتْ اِبْكِي عَلَيْهِ اَلَهْرَمَ طَلْعَ اَلْجَوْمَ
 وَلَا كَنْ اَلْقَنْتَيْ حَمَلَ بْنَ بَدْرِ بَقِيْ وَ اَلْبَقِيْ مَرْتَهُ وَ خَيْمَ
 اَظَنْ اَلْحَامَ دَلَ عَلَيْ قَوْمِيْ وَ قَدْ يَسْجِهَلَ اَلْرَجَلَ اَلْحَلِيمَ
 وَمَارَسَتْ اَلْرِجَالَ وَمَا رَسُونِيْ فَمَعْرُجَ عَلَيْ وَ مَسْتَهِيمَ

Know that the best of men is dead near the well Al-Habát, he budges not.

Were it not for his injustice⁷⁹ I would never cease to weep for him as long as the stars rise.

But the knight Hamal B. Badr acted unjustly and the pasture of injustice is noxious.

I think [my] meekness instigated my people against me, and verily a meek man is considered a fool.

I dealt with men and they dealt with me; some were crooked to me, some straight.

Jinniyah ought to be altered to *Hunnayah*; these being a nation of demons of an inferior kind, to which also jet-black dogs belong, or weak demons, or their dogs, or creatures occupying an intermediate place between men and demons; the scholiast also mentions that the Hunn are a branch of the Kudásh tribe.

⁷⁸ p. 71. Same metro as the preceding.

⁷⁹ The injustice committed by Hamal, the owner of the mare Gh'abrá, was that when the race took place he stationed men to drive away the horse of Kays in case it should arrive first. He is also said to have refused to pay the stake to the victor in the race; but the worst injustice was that he slew Málík B. Zohayr for his brother A'w B. Badr after having accepted blood ransom from him.

XXII.—*Ka'b B. Zohayr*^{so}

The poet deplores the murder of Juway, and says that it will be avenged. The occasion for these verses was that Juway, who belonged to the Muzaynah, went over to the tribes Aws and Khazraj whilst they were fighting, and joined the former because an alliance subsisted between them and the Muzaynah. When he was pierced by a dart, and on the point of death, Thábet B. Al-Mondir passed by and said:—"Brother Muzaynah, who has thrown thee into this calamity. By Allah! thou belongest to a tribe which will not defend thee!" Juway, who was dying, raised his head and said:—"I swear by Allah that fifty of you will be slain, among whom there will be neither a monoculous nor a lame man." In the contest which ensued Thábet was captured, and Mokarrem swore not to release him except for a black, hornless goat, which the people of Madynah at first refused, but were afterwards compelled to do:—

لَقَدْ وَلِيَ الْيَتَمَةَ جَوِيَ مَعَاشِرَ غَيْرِ مَطْلُولٍ أَخْرَهَا
 فَانْ تَهَاكَ جَوِيَ فَكُلْ نَفْسَ مُسْبِّحِلَهَا لِذِكْرِ جَاهِلُوهَا
 وَانْ تَهَاكَ جَوِيَ فَانْ حَرَبَا كَظِنْكَ كَانْ بَعْدَكَ مُرْقَدُوهَا
 وَمَا مَسَاتْ ظَنْوَنُكَ بُومْ تُولِي بَارِمَاحَ وَفِي لَكَ مَشْرِعُوهَا
 وَلَوْ بَلَغَ التَّقِيلَ فَعَالْ قَرِيمَ لَسْرَكَ مِنْ سِيُوفِكَ مُنْتَقِسُوهَا
 لِلْذِرِيكَ وَالْذُورَ لَهَا وَفَاعُ اذَا بَلَغَ الْخِزَابَةَ بَالْغُورَهَا
 كَانْكَ كَذَتْ تَعْلَمَ يَوْمَ بَزْتَ ثِيَابَكَ مَا مُبَلْقَى سَابِلُوهَا
 قَمَا عَنْتَ الظِّبَابَهُ بَعِيْ كَعْبَ وَلَا الْخَمْسُونَ قَمَرَ طَالِبُوهَا

Verily Juway appointed by his oath a company which will not delay to avenge its brother.

^{so} p ۲۴۵ First species of Wafir; twice مفأعلنن مفأعلنن مفاغي

If thou hast perished, Juway, every soul will some time be dragged to death.
 And if thou hast perished, O Juway ! war, as thou didst believe, has verily been kindled after thee.
 Thy belief was not wrong on that day, when thou sworest by the lances ; for those who wield them have verified it.
 Could the act of the people be made known to a slain man ; thy drawn sword would have gladdened thee
 For thy vow ! And vows attain fulfilment, but those whom they concern are ashamed.
 It seems thou knewest on the day thy clothes were taken, what will befall their robbers.
 The antelopes were not slain in the camp of Káb, nor were those who wanted them satisfied with less than fifty.

XXIII.—Ma'dán B. Jawwás the Kindite. ^{٥٤١}

King No'mán desired to invade the Beni Tamim, who obtained information which the king suspected had been furnished by the poet. Hence the following verses ; the Mundir alluded to in them was the poet's brother, and Haut his son :—

اَنْ كَانَ مَا بَلَغْتُ عَنِ فَلَامِنِي مَدِيقِي وَشَلتُ مِنْ يَدِي الْأَنَاملُ
 وَبَقْتُ وَحْدِي مَنْذُرَانِي رِدَاعِيَهُ وَصَادِ حَوْطَانِي مِنْ اَعْدَادِ قَاتِلِ

If it be true what has been reported to thee concerning me, may my friend blame me, and the fingers of my hand wither.

And I alone shall shroud Mundir in his cloak, and let an assassin from among my foes attack Haut.

XXIV.—Ma'dán B. Al-Mudarrab the Kindite. ^{٥٤٢}

مَنْ وَدَ لِيَ مَا عَمِّقَتْ لَمْ نُطِعْ عَدُوا وَلَمْ نُسْعِ بَهُ قَوْلِ صَاحِبِ
 فَلَمَا تَوَلَّ وَدَ لِيَ لِجَانِبِ وَقَوْمٍ تَوَلَّنَا لِقَوْمٍ وَ جَانِبِ
 وَكُلُّ خَلِيلٍ بَعْدَ لِبْلِي بِخَافِنِي عَلَى الْفَدَارِ او بِرَضِي بِوَدِ مَتَارِبِ

نَعْوَلُ مَفَاعِدَنْ فَعَوْلُنْ مَفَاعِلَنْ ^{٦٩} Second species of Tawyl; twice

^{٥٤٢} Same as the preceding.

Whilst the love of Layla was pure, we obeyed no foe and listened
to no friend concerning one,
But when Layla's love turned to one side and to one people, we
turned to another side and to another people,
And every friend after Layla either dreads me for my treachery or
is content with moderate love.

XXV.—Hallâl B. Razyn. هَلَلُ بْنُ رَازِينٍ^{۲۸}

The record of a battle between the Hemyarites and the Kalbites
was also translated by Schultens in his “Monumenta Vetustiora
Arabicae,” which I have not seen:—

وَبِالْبَيْدَاءِ لَمَا انْتَلَقْتِ بِهَا كَلْبٌ وَحَلَّ بِهَا الظُّورُ
فَحَانَتْ حَمِيرٌ لَمَا التَّقَيْنَا وَكَانَ لَهُمْ يَوْمٌ عَسِيرٌ
وَابْتَقَتْ الْقَبَائِيلُ مِنْ جَنَابٍ وَمَاءِرًا مَسِيقَةً نَصِيرٌ
اَجَادَتْ وَبَلْ مَدِيجَةً نَدَرَتْ عَلَيْهِمْ صَوْبٌ مَسَارِيَّةُ دَرَرٍ
فَوَلَوْ تَحْتَ قَطْقَطَاهَا سِرَاعًا تَبَوَّمُ الْمَهْنَدَةُ الْذُورُ

And in Albaydâ where the Kalbites met their foes and where the
vows were paid,

Then the Hemyarites perished when we met, and they had there an
arduous day.

Also the tribes Jenâb and A'âmer knew for certain that a helper
will defend them

Torrents [of warriors] poured, rushing from a dark cloud, shedding
on them copiously the nocturnal rain [of death]

They turned under the hail [of darts] quickly, but were prostrated
on their faces by hard Indian scimitars.

After this battle however the Hemyarites again rallied and vanquished the Taymites, whom they partly slew and partly captured; of the latter some they made slaves and some they castrated. Jaryr commemorates this bondage of the Taymites among the Hemyarites in the following lines (Básit metre) :—

يَدْعُوكَ تَيْمٌ وَتَيْمٌ فِي تَرَى سَبَا، قَدْ عَفَ اعْنَاقُهُمْ جَلَدُ الْجَرَامِيسِ
سَبَا

The Taym tribe calls thee, but the Taym are [captive] in the villages of Saba, and verily collars of buffalo-leather have bitten their necks.

ART. V.—*Emporia, chiefly ports of Arab and Indian international commerce, before the Christian era.* (With a small map.) By E. REHATSEK.

[Read 20th May 1881.]

The geographical configuration of Arabia is such that it favours navigation not only by its large extent of coast—because it is, roughly speaking, a quadrangle, three sides of which are bounded by the sea—but also by the proximity of the shores of Africa across the Red Sea, and of Persia across the gulf of that name, so that in very early times intercourse with the adjacent countries took place; that intercourse extended to India as soon as the nature of the monsoons became known, which enabled the Arabs to undertake voyages to it without venturing into the open ocean, and if we are to believe the tales of the “Thousand and One Nights,” they sailed from port to port, along the coasts, and from island to island, as far as China. “Before 1500 b. c. the commerce of the Arabs brought the products and manufactures of India, especially their silks, to Babylon. The Babylonians required the perfumes of Arabia and India to prepare their ointments.”—(Duncker’s *Hist. of Ant.*, v. i., p. 305.) The Arabs were the first navigators of the Indian Ocean and carriers of Indian produce, which then found its way to Europe through Egypt and Syria; they traded with the Phoenicians, the Assyrians, the Greeks, and the Romans; lost their monopoly, but again recovered it when the power of the latter declined, and retained it till the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope route by Vasco da Gama, since which time the Arabs have ceased to be the chief carriers between India and Europe, and their ports lost all their importance.

The products of India became known in Europe long before the country itself had been discovered, and philological researches have abundantly proved the great antiquity of the commerce of the East with the West, by demonstrating that the Sanskrit names of certain articles of trade had in the remotest times found their way into the most ancient Hebrew and Greek writings. Thus, for instance, the Hebrew or Phœnician name for cotton is taken from Sanskrit (Heb. *Karpas*,

Sansk. *Karpasa*, Gr. *Karpasos*), and has with a somewhat altered signification passed also into Latin ; thus Q. Curtius viii., 9, says that the Indians veil their bodies down to the feet, “ *corpora usque pedes carbaso velant.* ” Although no direct testimony on the subject exists, it is probable that the Phœnicians were the first who brought cotton cloths to the west ; Herodot knew that they came from India (iii., 106), as well as that they were in use among the Persians and Egyptians (vii., 181). The mummies of Egypt were in the most ancient times wrapped in cotton bandages, but the plant itself was not known, as Herodot, when he travelled there, did not mention it, although he knew it to be indigenous in India by the name of *Sindon byssina* as coming from the river Sindus or Indus. Hence it appears that cotton which was cultivated only in Pliny's time had been imported very early into Egypt, although it is not known in what manner. The silk-worm and silk had in Alexander's time become known from India to Aristotle (*Histor. Animal.* lib. v., cap. 19), but a more accurate knowledge of the insect and of its product was obtained in Constantinople not earlier than the reign of Justinian, A. D. 530. Although since the period of the Middle Ages silk had been exported to Europe principally from China, where it had begun to be cultivated 2500 years before the Christian era, it can be shown that silk weaving dates also in India from high antiquity. The great mart of Nilcunda (Νελκύνδα) in Mangalore was remarkable for its trade in *silk textures* (*othonia serica* Οδονια Σηρικὰ—Arr. *Peripl.*, p. 32, ed. Hudson), in the time of Ptolemy and Pliny it sent probably much more Indian than Chinese silk to Babylon, Media, Tyrus, Ethiopia, Arabia, Egypt and Rome, where its weight was paid in gold (*Procopius de bello Persico*, Venet. 1729, L. i., c. 20, p. 254; *apud Ritter*; p. 438; *Erdk. Ind. Welt*, B. iv. Abt. i.)

It is also remarkable that tin, *Kassiteros* (Homer ii., xviii., 474, 612, xx. 271, &c., and Hesiod's *Theogon.* v. 862) is well known to have been a monopoly of the Phœnicians, who brought it from the tin-islands of Britain (Cornwall, Scilly islands,) as a precious metal to other nations, bears in India the Sanskrit name कस्तीरं (Kastiram), as well as in Arabic (جَسْطِير). Although tin was imported also from Egypt into the celebrated emporium of Cana on the south-coast of Arabia, as also into Muza,¹ the truly Indian origin of its name and of its export re-

¹ In illam vehitur ex Ægypto.....aes, stannum et reliqua quæ etiam in Muzam.—Arr. *Perip.*, pp. 15, 16.

mained unknown to Europeans, because they knew nothing about the tin-island of Jung, Ceylon or Salung (from $7^{\circ} 46'$ to $8^{\circ} 9'$ N. lat., and $98^{\circ} 20'$ E. long., Greenw.), which belongs now to Siam, but where in ancient times the Sanskrit language was current. When the mercantile Phœnicians found the metal which had become well known to them in the East, also in the West, they called it by the same name. That the Phœnicians or Arabs exported oriental tin already in early times from India, appears also from another Sanskrit name of this metal, namely, *Yavaneshta*, i.e., tin *coveted by Yavanas*. (Lassen. Comm. de Pentapotamia Indica. Bonnæ, 1827, p. 57.)

Pepper, from the Sanskrit *Pippali*, had through the Greek πίπερι already before the Christian era penetrated into Latin,⁸ and afterwards into all the European languages. According to Hippocrates, the Greeks obtained the name and the article from Persia. As the Arabs imported it from the Malabar Coast, they called it the *pepper country* بلاد الفلفل Beled-ul-fulful; the native term on the coast is pimpilim.⁹ Thus two names came in very early times from India to the west.

Sugar (Sansk. *Sarkara*), although known to Pliny only as a medicinal drug, was an article of export from Broach to the Red Sea.¹⁰ The just mentioned articles were exported from India probably in the remotest times, and to them also rice, medicines, rhubarb, betel-nuts, opium, and rose-oil must be added. Arrian mentions even collyrium as an article of Indian export.

In his translation of the Çatrunjaya Mahatmyam, Prof. A. Weber has in Ch. xiv., v. 191—201, pointed out that Javada, the king of Saurashtra-mandala was during the last portion of the second century of the Christian era sending ships with cargoes to Mahâcina, Cina and Bhota. (Ueber das Çatrunjaya Mahatmyam. Abhandl. D. M. G. 1858, Band i., Nr. 4, p. 43.)

In ancient as in our times the trade of the west with India was chiefly carried on by foreigners, although not exclusively. They brought goods to India, which they exchanged for others, and again returned. Indians, however, also travelled, and even settled in foreign

⁸ *Arr. Per.*, p. 29, *supra*:—"Piper longam," a kind of *long pepper* mentioned among the articles of export from Barygaza (Broach).

⁹ Dr. Vincent's Paripl., Part. ii., Appendix, p. 70.

¹⁰ καλύμπινον τὸ λεγομένον σάκχαρι mel arundineum quod saccharum dicitur.—*Arr. Per.*, p. 9.

countries. In the Code of Manu (viii., 157.) persons acquainted with sea-voyages are alluded to ; there is no doubt that many Indians were settled in the commercial ports of Arabia, to which they brought muslims with other textile fabrics, spices, rice, &c., and even tortoise-shells. At that time Socotra, which is at present chiefly known for its guano, was from its vicinity to the frankincense-coast, an island of some importance, and more in communication with the mainland, by the foreign merchants settled in it, there being no native inhabitants.⁵ When Vasco da Gama circumnavigated Africa for the first time in 1498, he found at Melinde, not very far from Socotra, Indian merchants whom he called Banicani (J. de Barros, Asia Dec. i., L. iv., c. 6) ; they were Banians from Cambay, whom he assumed to be Pythagoreans, because they abstained from animal food ; they had brought cloves, pepper with all kinds of spices for sale. On paying a visit to the ship, they perceived an image of the Madonna, which they respectfully saluted, no doubt believing her to be a representation of Krishna's mother with the infant in her arms.

Herodotus (iii., 98-106) gave 460 years before the Christian era the first information about India to the Greeks, and after him (in 404 B.C.) Ktesias, who had for 17 years been physician to Artaxerxes Mnemon, the king of Persia ; but the expedition of the great Macedonian conqueror himself made India more known, although the original accounts of that gigantic undertaking have been lost. Arrian's history of the expedition (he flourished about A. D. 140), compiled from the accounts of Ptolomæus Lagus and Aristobulus, two companions of Alexander, and his Historia Indica, according to the statements of Onesicritus and Nearchus, are valuable, as well as the information scattered in the writings of Strabo, Diodorus, Pliny, &c., and even the exaggerating accounts of Q. Curtius Rufus. The just mentioned authors utilised the information of Agatharchides, who flourished in the second century before the Christian era, but the references made in this paper to him, to the Periplus of the Erythrean sea, and to the Paraplus of Nearchus, are taken from Dodwell's edition of these authors, which was published A. D. 1698 in Oxford, under the title of "Geographiæ veteris scriptores" in Greek, with the ancient Latin translation. It is not certain who the author of the Periplus was ; he also bears the name of Arrian, but is quite different from the above named Arrian

⁵ *Habitantes advenae sunt ex Arabibus, Indis, Gracis quoque nonnullis mercatura faciente causa eo confluentibus conflat.*

of Nicomedia, who wrote the history of Alexander and left us the Paraplus of Nearchus ; he must have written 30 or 40 years before the Nicomedian.⁶ The most valuable aid and information was obtained from Ritter's " Erdkunde" ; although, of course, our older classical knowledge of India terminates with the second century of our era ; because even Kosmas Indicopleustes (who wrote about A. D. 530), who might have given valuable information, narrates, besides some good details, also many absurdities.

Canals uniting the Nile, and therefore the Mediterranean with the Red Sea, existed in the remotest times, and, according to Herodot, 120,000 Egyptians perished in the reign of Nero when digging one of them. Both Diodorus and Pliny mention a canal in the reign of Ptolemy II., and when our lamented friend, Dr. Wilson, was in Suez in 1843, Mr. Davidson, the Agent of the P. and O. Steam Navigation Company, pointed out to him the site of the ancient canal leading from the Nile to the gulf of Suez, which runs north of the town for about 10 or 12 miles, and then turned to the north-west, and at last reached the Nile.⁷ During the time of the Ptolemies and of the Romans, the chief merchants resided in the celebrated Mediterranean port of Alexandria, whence communication was kept up with Myoshormos and Berenice, two harbours on the Egyptian, i. e., western coast of the Red Sea, by means of the Nile, on which goods were forwarded to Coptus (now Koft), whence caravan roads branched out to Myoshormos—founded 274 B. C. by Ptolemy Philadepos, who selected it as the chief port of Indian trade in preference to Arsinoe, near Suez—and Berenice, in lat. 24°, much less than the 225 English miles south of it given in the Periplus. Ships sailed from these two great emporia along the coasts to Arabia and India. Further to the south, Aduli, (Azule or Zula, the modern Thulla, in lat. 15° 12' and 39° 36' E. long., Greenw.,) is also mentioned in the Periplus as an emporium, but could on account of the shallow harbour probably never attain any great importance. It is remarkable that Indian iron as well as muslins, cotton and other textile fabrics, gum, lac, &c., were imported to this coast, although only indirectly from Arabia.⁸

⁶ Dr. Vincent gives a long article in his Preliminary Disquisitions on the "Age of the author of the Periplus," p. 46—57.—*Peripl. Part. i.*

⁷ *Lands of the Bible*, vol. i., p. 47, *seq.*

⁸ *Præterea ex penitioribus Arabicis locis affertur ferrum Indicum, et acie temperatum, othonium Indicum latius, quod nonache appellatur, &c.—Arr. Peripl., p. 5.*

Ailah (Elath, Deut. ii. 8), in the northernmost corner of the gulf of Aqabah, near the pilgrim station of that name, although a thousand years before our era the celebrated port of Solomon, is at present only a heap of rubbish. He allied himself with Tyre for the purpose of maritime commerce, which he carried on from Elath and Eziongeber to Ophir (1 Kings ix. 26, *seq.* x. 11, 22), where the "Tarshish ships" are to be taken in the sense of the now obsolete expression "East-Indiamen" in English, but according to Duncker (Hist. of Ant., v. ii., p. 85) Ezekiel meant by "ships of Tarshish" (xxvii. 25,) those which came to Tyre from the valley of the Guadalquivir, named by the Phœnicians Tarsis. These commercial voyages ceased again immediately after Solomon, and Josaphat (B. c. 914—899) endeavoured in vain to revive them (1 Kings xxii. 48; 2 Kings xiv. 22; xvi. 6). Commerce must, however, have greatly flourished in the kingdom of Israel under Jeroboam II. (B. c. 825 till 784—1Ios. xii. 8 *seq.*). Strabo xvi., 759, 768, mentions this place, and it was known to Edrisi (transl. Jaubert, t. i., p. 332,) who wrote A. D. 1150, and before his time to Istakhri, who wrote A. D. 950, but as a very small town.

This is the *Makna Mákva* of Ptolemy, given by him under lat. 28° 45', but situated 28° 30' N. lat. according to the British Survey. Rüppel found here a numerous permanent colony of Beni Ogba Arabs. Quite near to their habitations, on a hill to the south, scanty ruins of walls with cut stones occur, which Rüppel considered to be the remnants of a convent of the 6th Christian century; also a tradition has survived that this place is the ancient Midian, which appeared to Rüppel to be only a monkish legend, but yielded a title to a recent book by Capt. R. Burton (The Gold Mines of Midian, 1878), who found scoræ and extensive traces of smelting works, overlooked by former travellers. Nearly 10 years after Rüppel, in 1833, Capt. Moresby surveyed the gulf of Aqabah. Excursions to Magna are generally undertaken by travellers from Qala't Moilah, which is, according to the English Survey, in 27° 40' N. lat.

At present no longer any doubts are entertained that Hauara (see Leukekome. Col. Chesney's or Kiepert's map of Arabia) is the ancient Leukekome ($\lambda\epsilon\kappa\eta\ \kappa\omega\mu\eta$ i. e., Albus pagus) of Ælius Gallus. It was the southernmost emporium and port of the Nabatæans, whose caravans travelled constantly between it and Petra. Strabo, however, speaks only in a general manner

of the riches and great commerce in wares of India and Arabia passing through Petra. He adds, that his friend, the philosopher Athenodorus, who had visited Petra, was surprised to find there Romans and other strangers (Strabo xv., 779).

The island Hassanieh, 25° N. lat., conspicuous by its *white* appearance, according to Wellsted, is just opposite the port of Hauara, which is a pilgrim station on the Egyptian Haj route, called Dár-ul-a'shryn, i. e., 20th station. The Haura of Ptolemy ($29^{\circ} 40'$ lat., $66^{\circ} 10'$ long.) in the gulf of A'qabah is not called Leukekome, or *white town*, which also the word Hauara means, and is a different locality. The present seats of the Thamudites, whose ancestors are mentioned in the Qorán as having been destroyed (xxix. 36, and vii. 76), are the same as in the time of Ptolemy and Diodorus; also Agatharchides mentions on this coast no other tribe than the Thamud (p. 59), so that we can draw no line of demarcation between the Arab and the Nabatæan possessions to which Leukekome, i.e., Hauara, belonged. There is however no doubt that Madayn Çáleh was a Nabatæan town, although it is in the territory of the most primitive Arab tribe of Thamud; for Mr. C. Doughty, the first European traveller who visited it, declares that the sepulchral chambers, which alone remained, were "formed after one Petra fashion." (See Journ. Bombay Br. R. As. Soc., vol. xiv., p. 162.) Also Ritter has collected some imperfect notices about this once mysterious town, now known as a paltry thoroughfare, see his Erdkunde; West Asien iv. Abth., § 79, i. e., vol. xii., p. 442 seq. The supposition of some that the port El-U'yún in the gulf of A'qabah marks the site of ancient Leukekome is of course no longer tenable. Our site is pretty well defined also by Arrian.*

Yambo was not known to Istakhri as the port of Medinah; he mentions it only as a castle (Mordtmann, p. 11). He knew only *Djar*, three stations south of Yambo, as the port of Medinah, but much smaller than *Jeddah*, the port of Mekkah. The *Iambo Vicus* of Ptolemy ($24^{\circ} 0'$ lat., $68^{\circ} 22'$ long. *'Ιαμβία κώμη*) means very likely the inland Yambo-en-nakhl, not far from the present harbour.

* A sinistris Berenicis post muris portum (i.e., the mouse-harbour Myoshormos already mentioned above) duorum aut trium dierum intervallo ad ortum, finitimum sinum navigantibus aliis occurrit portus, atque castrum quod Albus vicus (namely white town Leukekome) nominatur, per quem in Petram ad Melicham (ملح) Nabataeorum regem aditus patet. Atque hoc ipsum castrum emporii loco est in qui ex Arabia in magnis navibus in illud deferuntur.—*Atr. Per.*, p. 11.

Zabid, an inland mart, which became important only after the time of Istakhri, is not mentioned by him, but extolled by Abulfeda, who wrote A. D. 1331. Edrisi (Jaubert's transl., t. i., p. 49,) praises the surrounding country as well populated and full of villages, which are not big, but much frequented by merchants. The town was very large, populous and rich, a rendezvous of foreigners of all kinds, especially merchants from the Hejáz, from Abyssinia and Upper Egypt, who arrived there with ships from Jeddah to purchase in Zabid *spices from India* and *Chinese goods*. Zabid is, according to Niebuhr's observation, situated in $14^{\circ} 12'$ N. lat.

Mokha ($13^{\circ} 19'$ N. lat., according to Niebuhr) had during the past century become to Europeans the best known port in Yemen, because it was the largest coffee-mart. Arab geographers do not mention it among the towns of Arabia before the time of Abulfeda, and even Ebn Batuta, who wrote in 1354, knows nothing about Mokha, although he embarks from Aden, the largest emporium of his period, for India. Also in 1513, during the time of Albuquerque, it is mentioned only once incidentally among other unimportant harbours, by the name of Meca (De Barros, Asia Dec. ii., Lib. viii., cap. 1). Mokha acquired some importance only after Aden had been desolated by the attacks of the Portuguese, and transmuted into a solitude by the conquest of the Turks.

There is no doubt that Mokha is the *Muza emporium* of Ptolemy (placed by him in 14° N. lat.) and of the Periplus, according to which it was about 12,000 stadia south of Berenice. It was inhabited by Arabs acquainted with navigation, and full of merchants, who traded not only in the Indian wares that arrived from Barygaza, but also in the products of their own country. On Kiepert's map Muza appears inland of the present port of Mokha, from which it is about 20 miles distant. Niebuhr, who visited and identified the place, ascribes its present position to the accretion of the coast. The *imports* of Muza were, according to Arrian, as follows:—Purple cloth, and other kinds; saffron, cyperus, an aromatic rush, muslins (*Ὀθόνιον*), cloaks, quilts, perfumes, specie for the market, all in considerable quantity; wine and corn, not much, as the country produced both. *Exports*:—Myrrh of the best quality, stacte or gum; white stones, alabaster, &c. According to some, Mokha may have been only the port of Muza, the famous emporium of the Hemyarite and Sabæan kingdom of which Agathar-

chides entertained somewhat exaggerated notions, and to which he attributed even the production of cinnamon and other products of India, which the Greeks received from Arabia, and erroneously believed to be indigenous to it.¹⁰

The author of the *Periplus* mentions Okelis ('Οκηλίς) within the straits of Bab-el-Mandeb, which, he says, is not so much an emporium as a harbour, a watering station, and the first meeting place of traders.¹¹ After Okelis, where the sea is again opened out towards the east, at a distance of about 1200 stadia, comes *Arabia Felix*, a maritime town subject to the kingdom of the same Charibael. This town was called *Felix*, because when voyages were not yet made from India to Egypt, nor anybody dared to sail from Egypt to the interior of India [*i.e.*, before the discovery of the monsoons by Hippalus], all proceeded only as far as this town, which received the merchandize both of the Indians and the Egyptians, in the same way as Alexandria receives foreign goods as well as those which come from Egypt. "But Cæsar destroyed it [*i. e.*, *Arabia Felix*] shortly before our times." Concerning the account of the *Periplus* just given, Dr. Vincent (ii., p. 294) says:— "Every circumstance in this minute description directs us to Aden, the distance, the harbour, and the name, all correspond;" he continues:—"The capture also and destruction of this village by the Romans, a short time previous to the author's age, would be a natural

¹⁰ Sabaxorum doineops gens adhaeret per Arabiam omnium maxima, et nullius non generis felicitatem in potestate et arbitrio habens. Namque tellus omnia fert quo ad commoda vita apud nos provenient: et corpora sunt spectabiliora quam alibi: pecorum multitudo innumerabilis suspetit: amoenitas et fragrantia totam hanc oram obtinens, voluptatem præbet visu et dictu majorem. Nam ad ipsas littora crepidines largum nascitur balsamum et casia: longo alia quam alibi habetur, reccus nimirum: ideoquo jucundissimam oculis voluptatem exhibens, qua postea longinquitate temporis prorsus exolescit, dum stirpis usus hebetatur, priusquam vis ejus ad nos transmitatur. In mediterraneis frequentes et magnas se attollunt sylvæ. Nam arbores præcepsæ, myrræ ac thuris, neenon cinnamoni et palmarum, et calami, et id genus aliorum exsurgunt. Adeo ut nulla ratione explicari queat voluptas illorum qui sensibus suis periculum de his fecerunt.—(Ex. Agatharchide de Rubro Mari. Oxon. 1698, p. 61.)

¹¹ Okelis cannot be identified with any place existing in our times, but Capt. Haines discovered about Jebel Manhalli ($12^{\circ} 41' 10''$ N. lat., $43^{\circ} 32' 14''$ E. long., Greenw.) several shallow bays, still used as landing places by boatmen crossing over from Abyssinia; near to the east is Jebel Ileika, and the dark mountain Turbah, with some ruins on the top of it.

consequence of the progress and extension of the Roman commerce from the Red Sea to India ; and, as Claudius collected a tribute from the maritime towns of Arabia, it is natural to suppose that he was the Cæsar mentioned in the Periplus, who ordered this place to be destroyed," &c. The campaign of *Elius Gallus*, the first Roman who invaded Arabia, took place 24 years before the Christian era. In course of time the number of Roman merchants increased so much that the emperor Constantine (reigned A. D. 337 till 369) sent an embassy to the mighty king of the Hemyarites or Sabæans, to request permission for the free exercise of the Christian religion by the Roman merchants, and the building of churches in Arabia Felix (Yemen), which being granted, Bishop Theophilus, the head of the embassy, remained in the country and preached the gospel to the Hemyarites likewise.¹² The ancient fame of Aden as an emporium of the world-trade survived also during the Muhammadan period, for although Istakhri mentions it only as a small town, he says that no other in Yemen is so celebrated as a port where many ships call, and that pearl-fisheries exist in its vicinity. According to Edrisi, the port of Aden was frequented by ships from Sind, Ind, and Chin, the latter brought from China iron, damascened blades, prepared hides, musk, aloe-wood, saddles, crockery (porcelain), fragrant and not fragrant pepper, cocoanuts, the Harnouf (perfuming grain), cardamoms, cinnamon, galanga (an aromatic herb), mirobolans, ebony, tortoise shells, camphor, cloves, cubeb (fragrant grains from Java), cloths plaited from plants, velvet, ivory, tin, rattangs and other kinds of bamboos, and the greatest portion of the bitter aloes which reach the trade. The information added to these important data by Abulfeda concerning the time when the whole India trade necessarily passed through the Red Sea, till the discovery of the Cape route by the Portuguese, is not of any moment.

The remark in the Periplus at the conclusion of the notice of Leuke-kome that a centurion with troops is stationed there and that duty is levied on goods¹³ certainly implies that it was a Roman possession, especially if it be taken into consideration that the Nabatean kingdom was destroyed in the time of Trajan, A. D. 105. Although no express statement to that effect occurs anywhere, and the Romans are not named

¹² See Journ. Bomb. Br. B. As. Soc., vol. xii., p. 195, seq., where this embassy to the Hemyarite king Marsad A'bd Kellâl is mentioned, as well as the building of a church in Zafar, another in Aden, and a third in the Persian Gulf.

¹³ *Arr. Peripl., p. 11, infra.*

till we come to the abovementioned destruction of Aden during the reign of the emperor Claudius, which means that their influence had penetrated also to the southern ports of Arabia; especially as Pliny informs us (*H. N.* vi., 24,) that Annius Plocanus had farmed the custom-house duties on the Red Sea from the government; his *Libertus*, who was collecting them, must very likely have gone out of the Red Sea, also to Aden, because adverse winds actually carried him to Ceylon, which he discovered, described, and even brought four Indian ambassadors from it to Rome.¹⁴ This direct intercourse of the Romans with the Indians, in connection with the discovery of the south-west monsoon by the steersman Hippalus, whose name was transferred to it to commemorate the event (*Arr. Peripl.*, p. 32), afforded to the Romans—to whom it must have been of the highest importance to gain as much as possible from Indian commerce—the next opportunity for monopolising the trade of Aden and asserting their supremacy, and in the jealous rivalry with Arab merchants, which no doubt often resulted in hostilities, the Romans found an easy pretext for destroying the friendly port of Aden. As Charibael, the king of the Hemyarites and of the adjoining Sabæans, was a friend of the Roman emperors, to whom he often sent embassies and presents (*ibid.*, p. 13), the blow was not aimed at him, but probably at some Sheikhs of the coast of Aden, at whose humiliation by the Romans he may even have connived.

The only passage occurring in Pomponius Mela about southern Arabia,¹⁵ but more particularly the towns of the Sabæans, makes no mention of Aden, unless we consider the Arabia of the last line to de-

¹⁴ Some deny that Aden had been destroyed by the Romans, on the ground that ΚΑΙΣΑΡ may be a corruption of ΕΛΙΣΑΡ, the name of a king of the country; as well the correctness of Pliny's assertion that Plocanus farmed the revenues due to the Roman treasury, which they call a mere conjecture. (See *Indian Antiquary*, vol. viii., p. 108.) Be that however as it may, the early Roman intercourse with India and Ceylon is also proved by discoveries of coins. (*Ibid.*, vol. ii., p. 241-2.)

¹⁵ Alterum latus ambit plagam quin inter utrumque pelagus [namely, the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf,] excurrit. Arabia dicitur cognomen Eudæmon, angusta verum cinnami [*sic*] er thuris aliorumquo odorum maximo ferax. Majorem Sabæi tenent partem ostio proximam et Caramanis contrariam Macæ Frontem quæ inter ostia ostenditur, silvæ cautesque exasperant. Aliquot sunt in medio insule sitæ. Ogyris, quod in ea Erythræ regis monumentum est, magis clara quam cæteræ. Ab ea parte quæ intrecountibus dextra est, urbes sunt, Canæ, et Arabia, et Gandamus.—(*Pomp. Mela. Lib. iii., cap. 8.*)

signate it, as Arrian did, by calling it Arabia Felix. Ogyris is evidently the Okelis of the Periplus, and Canæ will be described further on. We have already alluded to the exaggerated ideas of Agatharchides about the Sabæans (see footnote 1¹¹), but he also does not mention Aden, although he points out a locality where the sea is white like a river, and speaks of the fortunate islands in the vicinity, with snow-white hornless cows, where the merchant ships of the country arriving from the river Indus and not a few from Persia and Caramania land.¹² Agatharchides represents the country of the Sabæans as a terrestrial paradise, and admires its fertility. He mentions *Saba* as the capital which gave the name to the whole nation, as one of the handsomest towns of the country. He knew the Sabæans as skilled navigators, brave warriors, dexterous agriculturists and merchants, who sent out colonies. No nation, says he, appears to be more wealthy than the Sabæans and Gerhaeans (*Ex. Agath.*, p. 64, 65), who dispose of every thing by trade which can be transported from Asia and Europe. They enriched the Syria of Ptolemy with an immense quantity of gold, and provided the industrious Phœnicians with most lucrative commercial business, not to mention other things. They themselves spend large sums not only on works of art and admirable sculptures, but on a variety of drinking vessels, tripods and other things usually displayed also in our edifices, and testifying to great magnificence : indeed, many private individuals make royal expenses. Hereto is to be added that they possess gilded columns, and entirely of silver ; they moreover adorn their doors and the ceilings of their houses with numerous phials composed of gems and precious stones. Their halls with colonnades likewise presented a fine aspect. The principal thing however is, that whatever may be considered wealth in other countries, is here displayed in great variety.

The Sabæans sent out colonies (*colonias deducunt*). *Ex. Agath.*, p. 64), and unwieldy, large Indiamen, as well as Chinese junks, loaded with foreign goods, frequented their ports, even as late as the fifth cen-

¹¹ *Praeter hanc regionem mare conspicitur album ad flavii speciem, ita ut effectus hujus causam quis non sine stupore demiratur. Adjacentem autem sunt insulae fortissimæ, in quibus niveo sunt edere pecora universa, nec ulli semiaridum cornu adhuc extiterat. In his mercatorias acclaram naves stationem habere videas, plerasque in de prefectas, ubi fixta Indianum annuum navale instituit Alexander : nec pacas e Perside et Caramania, et tota continentie finitima—*(*Ex. Agath.*, p. 65-66.) The white cattle alluded to may be the cows which Indian Banians still import and cherish in their Arab homes.

tury of our era, when *Cosmos Indicopleustes* wrote, who states that ships from Ceylon sailed to the Hemyarites and to Adule (Erdk. v., p. 30), and still later in the ninth, and according to *Masudi* (*ibid.* viii., p. 774-776), large junks with decks sailed as far as Siraf in the Persian Gulf with their cargoes, and even to the mouths of the Euphrates, where they had brought them for the king of Hira (*ibid.* x., p. 64); but the colonies of mercantile agents sent to India in the time of Agatharchides plainly imply that a close intercourse must have existed between the Arabs and the Hindus in early times, but even a thousand years before our era, in the time of Solomon, the port of Aden must, on account of the frankincense trade, probably have played an important part; and Lassen (Alterth. B. ii., p. 729), who observes that among the Hindus the word *Yavana*, which designates the remotest nations, meant at first very likely only *Arabia*, because the frankincense coming from it is also called *Yavans*; in his investigations about Ophir, he has identified it with Abhira, i. e., the mouth of the Indus, and has derived a number of Hebrew words, denoting Indian products, from Sanskrit, e. g., *Kopi*, ape, from *Kapi*; *Shenhabbin*, ivory, is the tooth of the elephant *Ibha*; *Tukhi-im*, peacock, from *cikhim*; *Algumin*, sandal-wood, from *valgum*; the derivations of the Hebrew names for *nard*, *bdellium*, *cotton*, &c., are similar.

At present there are several places called Zafar; the one is situated, according to Niebuhr, to the east of mount Zafar.

Sumara on the road to Çana'á, half a day's journey to the south-west of the town of Yerim ($14^{\circ} 17'$ N. lat., according to the Obs. of Nieb.) and about 30 or 40 German miles distant to the north from Aden, in the interior. The other Zafar, a sea-port in the district of Mahra, is situated north of the island of Socotra, and 30 marches distant from Aden, which is to the south-west of it. It is doubtful whether in this second Zafar the Christian church was built (see foot-note 12), because there are yet three more places of the same name in Southern Arabia, one of which it might be, e. g., the *Saphar regia* (Pliny vi., 3), the same as the *Saphar* of Ptolemy ($14^{\circ} 30'$ lat., 88° long., Lib. vi., fol. 156), and the *Aphar Metropolis* of Arrian (Peripl., p. 13). In the time of Ptolemy the three capitals of the Yoktamides, namely *Sapphar Metropolis* (88° long.), *Mariaba Metropolis* (76° long., $18\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ lat.), and *Sabe Regia* had yet retained their separate names, although also several Mariabas already existed.

Nevertheless the existence of the sea-port Zafar in Mahrah reaches up to high antiquity, since it is mentioned after the enumeration of the

seats of the sons of Yuktan, thus :—"And their dwelling was from Mesha, as thou goest unto *Sephar*, a mount of the east."—(Gen. x., 30.) By this expression the celebrated *frankincense mountain* is designated, which every author mentions who describes the frankincense coast. This Zafar no longer exists in our days as a port, although it is generally found on maps ; the district, however, from Mirbat till Ras-el-Ahmer and Bandar Resut is called Zafar.¹⁷ Ebn Batuta (p. 59) says :—" Only half a day's journey from Zafar, El-Ahkaf, the home of the people of Aad, is situated. In this place there are many gardens with the great sweet plaintain-fruit, which weighs ten ounces, as well as the betel and the cocoanut, which are generally found only in India. The betel-nut-tree is planted by the side of the cocoa, only for the sake of its leaves," &c. There appears to be no doubt that the plaintain, the betel, and the cocoa tree were all brought from India.

The capital of the Sabæans, the present Mareb, the *Mariaba Metropolis* of Strabo, and *Regia omnium Mariaba* of Pliny, is known ; but the site of the capital of the Minæans, in the district of which also the large town *Mariaba Birmaleum*, which had 14 Roman miles in circumference according to Pliny, is not yet ascertained. On the position of Mareb in Yemen, and its identity with Saba in the country of the Sabæans, all oriental authors agree. Its climate is said to be most excellent, and the assertion is confirmed by Cruttenden's measurement, who found the adjoining town of Çana'a to be 4,000 feet above the level of the sea. (Journ. Bom. Geogr. Soc., vol. viii., 1837, p. 284.)

Niebuhr, Cruttenden and Seetzen reached Çana'a, the present residence of the Emâim of Yemen, from which ancient Mareb was said to be only two or three days distant : they actually collected information about the ancient ruins of Mareb, but could not reach them, and a great deal of what they heard from the Arabs concerning the brilliant epoch of their ancient civilisation, appeared to be fabulous. Arnaud was the first who actually visited Mareb in 1843, and sent copies of 60 Hemyanic inscriptions to the Asiatic Society of Paris, but recently Halévy went to Southern Arabia, copied, published and translated nearly 700 of them.

¹⁷ J. Cruttenden's Excursion from Morebat to Dyreez.—(Bomb. Geogr. Soc. 1837, p. 70-74.)

To judge from its remnants, the ancient town of Saba occupied a circular space, measuring a quarter of an hour's walk in diameter. The surrounding wall consisted of cut square stones, but its dimensions could, on account of the surrounding heaps of rubbish, which also filled out depressions, not be ascertained. The square stones of these walls, as well as of all the other ruins, were of unequal size. In some parts yet two or three courses of the wall could be seen above the rubbish, and covered with inscriptions. Nothing else can be seen on the ruins as they now appear, but excavation might no doubt lead to important results. Nothing meets the eye except heaps of rubbish, broken cut stones, and baked bricks, which however fall to pieces at the least touch. On isolated spots, especially on the south side of the town, fragments of sculptured prismatic columns, from 3 to 4 feet above the rubbish, and sometimes also entire columns, from 12 to 15 feet long, which are monoliths, may be seen. They are calcareous, and the Arabs asserted that they had belonged to an old mosque. Among the ruins great quantities of yellowish white small pieces of polished marble are scattered about. In the old town walls, towards the east and west, the remnants of two ancient gates are yet distinctly recognizable. The modern village on the site of the ancient town has retained the name *Mareb* for its eighty houses, which cover an entire hill of rubbish, situated against the eastern gate. Between this village and the just named gate there is a very deep well, the only one which still contains water at the present time. The ancient citadel was certainly on this spot. Several houses of the village, though built of bricks, are erected on ancient foundations of square stones, from 3 to 4 feet high above the masses of *débris*. These modern buildings have a conic shape, as similar ones in Egypt, and from their tops a magnificent view, not only of the ruins of the ancient town, and of the remnants of the broken dam, but also of an immense plain, appearing to be covered with sepulchral monuments, may be enjoyed. This perspective view appears just as beautiful also from another direction, namely, on issuing from the Dana valley and turning a few minutes afterwards to the north-east, when a mountain of *débris* is soon reached, from which at the same time the ancient town of *Saba* and the modern village *Mareb* are perceived in the centre of a desolate and almost boundless plain. This aspect of a desert, says Arnaud, the end of which is unknown, impresses the mind with a feeling of awe which cannot be described in words.

Arnaud's account of Saba
from his dictation to Fresnel
in Jeddah as communicated
to and published by J. Mohl.

The present Mareb is enclosed only by a bad wall, consisting mostly of burnt bricks ; in some places the backs of the houses themselves do duty for the town-walls, which have two gates, the one to the west and the other to the north-east. To the north of the western gate, on the declivity of the hill, there is a building almost quadrangular, of cut-stones, covered by a terrace, and at present called the mosque of Solomon, because he is said to have prayed there, but it is certainly a modern construction. But five minutes beyond the bed of the torrent which laves the ancient enclosing wall during the rainy season, the ancient hippodrome *Meydán-ul-Khayl* of the Sabaeans may be seen.

Half an hour towards the E.N.E. stands a building called by the inhabitants *Harem Balkis*, the gynæceum and palace of Queen Bilkis or Balkis. It is of an elliptical form, and according to Arnaud's estimate, about 300 paces in circumference. The axis minor of the ellipse is about one-third of the major ; at both ends of the axis minor are two portals facing north and south. The half of this elliptic wall, which alone is yet standing, presents outwards a perfectly uninjured form as far as the cornice ; it is the half facing the west. Of the west side scarcely one-third is yet standing. Everything within is demolished, and the area so filled with sand that absolutely nothing can be ascertained concerning the interior arrangements of the building. On the exterior wall five inscriptions occur, the characters of which are a span high ; many others are covered with sand, and even of those just mentioned, two could not be copied because they were concealed by sand.

To the left of the north gate of this building, at a distance of about ten paces from it, eight pilasters are yet standing, from east to west, each a monolith, but without a capital. Each side of a pilaster is about four spans broad, and so is each interval between them. Arnaud believed that he had, among the accumulations of sand, found in the same direction, traces of several more pilasters of the same series, which fronted the north side.

Not far from this building the *bone mountain*, said to have been heaped up from the remnants of the monthly sacrifices offered in the temple in ancient times, was situated. If this tradition of the Arabs is to be believed, observes Arnaud, the above building would not have been a gynæceum, but a temple, which the word *Harem* may likewise designate, as it simply means a place set apart, and is applied even to Mekkah, where it designates the *sanctuary* ; nothing, however, without nor within the elliptical structure allows of a conclusion

concerning the destination of it. At a distance of a quarter of an hour from the *Harem*, the *columns of Bilkis* may be seen ; they are five monoliths, but with square capitals ; they stand in the same direction as those from east to west. Whether the capitals have also been hewed from the same block of stone, Arnaud was unable to ascertain ; their proportions are the same as those of the pilasters which stand nearer to the *Harem* or temple. They appeared to him to be 28 spans high. The intervals between them are the same as their own thickness. Two square stones are in the same line, one still erect, but the other prostrate. Both have inscriptions, which Arnaud copied, except one which was illegible. Here the description of these ruins ends, because Arnaud's sickness interrupted his dictation to Fresnel.

The celebrated dam called Al-A'rem, or Sadd Mareb, in its ruined state may yet be seen between the two mountains called Balak, which it connected in order to form with them an immense reservoir ; it had thirty apertures, one above another, a cubit in diameter, which were one by one opened to let out the water for irrigation, according to demand. The mountains are 600 paces distant from each other, and give passage to the torrent Dana, which is generally dry, but impassable during the rainy season. The remnants of this enormous dam, which fertilised the country around Saba, are yet 300 paces long and 175 broad. According to tradition the dam was built 2361 years before the Christian era by Loqman, but its destruction took place in the second century after it,¹⁸ and the catastrophe is alluded to also in the Qurán.¹⁹

According to Agatharchides, Saba was a most beautiful town ; but the king, who was elected by a popular assembly and presided over it, is absurdly stated to have had no permission to come out of the palace in spite of all his authority, and that if he did so, he was stoned by the people, such being the injunction of the ancient oracle.²⁰

The *Kuriba* of Kiepert's map, west of Mareb, is no doubt the *Caripeta* of Pliny, where the expedition of Ælius Gallius came to an end in 24 B. C.²¹ It is only a day's journey from Mareb, and the ruins of it, named Kharibah, were discovered by Arnaud, probably in the same

¹⁸ *Essai sur l'Hist. des Arabes*, par C. Perceval, t. i., p. 18.

¹⁹ xxxiv., 14 and 15.

²⁰ Ex. Agatharchide, p. 63 and 64. In the *Periplus* no mention is made of Saba, except on p. 15, after the description of Cana, thus : *Supra hanc Sabbathæ metropolis mediterranea sita est, in qua rex sedem suam habet.*

²¹ VI., 32. Item Caripeta quo longissime processit.

condition in which the Romans had left them. He saw colossal remnants of enclosures or ramparts, and copied some Hemyaritic inscriptions. As is usual in many parts of the East, so also here, the buildings were by the Arabs attributed to magic and to giants. Immediately to the north of Kharibah, the Bedouins pointed out another locality full of ruins and inscriptions, but Arnaud could not visit it.

Although Çana'á is believed (Duncker's Hist. of Ant., v. i., p. 313,) to

Çana'á.
be the ancient Uzal (Gen. x. 27), always con-
tained and still contains among its inhabi-

tants some thousands of Jews, we cannot find any clue either to its ancient or its present name in classic authors; but it became remarkable as the capital of Yemen during the Abyssinian occupation, especially during the time of Abrahah Allashram, who had been appointed governor of it by the Najáshy or Negus of Abyssinia, and who reigned from A. D. 537 to 570. At that time Christianity was dominant, and Abrahah so powerful that he actually marched to Mekkah with an army of 160,000 men for the purpose of destroying the sanctuary of it, which attracted as many pilgrims from other parts of Arabia before the time of Islám as it does at present. The episode of Abrahah's defeat by the miraculous *Ababil* birds, which dropped stones from their claws upon the bodies of the Christian army, is alluded to in Surah cv. of the Quran, and is a collateral evidence to the reality of this expedition, although the miracle is set aside by those who explain it on the historical ground that the small-pox, which committed great ravages, was the real cause of Abrahah's retreat. But although the classics do not mention Çana'á, both Istakhri (Mordtmann's Transl., p. 13) and Edrisi (Jaubert's Transl. t. i., p. 50) praise its beautiful climate, site and buildings. According to Cruttenden's observation, who had visited Çana'a in 1836, its position is $15^{\circ}22' N.$ lat., $44^{\circ}31'4'' E.$ long., Greenw. He saw in a walk through the town several tablets of white marble, which had been brought a distance of two days' journey from Mareb, and contained Hemyaritic inscriptions; they had been utilised in new buildings, as the stones of Babylon are used in the houses of Baghdad. In the Emám's garden, where Cruttenden had been quartered, there was a marble-head from Mareb, the fragment of a statue three feet high, which had been broken by order of the Emam as the remnant of the ancient idolatry. This marble head Cruttenden took to England as a unique specimen of Sabæan sculpture. His project of visiting Mareb could not be carried out on account of the jealousy of the Emam, who kept his guests like prisoners and feared disturbances.

The position of Çana'á is on the west side of mount Nikkom, the top of which is crowned by the ruins of a castle said to have been built by the patriarch Sem, but the modern fort is situated in front of the said mountain, on the celebrated lower hill Ghomdán, about the ancient palace of which many traditions are current, although not a trace of it is left. Niebuhr had not been favourably impressed by the appearance of the town, nor Cruttenden; but Seetzen, who was there in 1810, perhaps yielded to the charms of the favourable season of the year, and declared Çana'á to be the handsomest town he had seen in the east. The houses, says he, are indeed very much crowded together, but are massive, high, whitewashed, or coloured with various pigments. If the streets were paved and clean, and if the people had the taste of enclosing the thirty large gardens in the town with nice railings, Çana'á would even in Europe pass for a handsome town. The three larger gates, guarded by cannons, and many small towers, are intended for the defence of the town. Niebuhr counted in Çana'á 10 minarets, with many mosques, 12 public large baths; numerous caravanserais, among which the high Simseréh el Mahádi was the handsomest; he describes, moreover, several other large buildings and some palaces, the architecture of which however he could praise as little as the generally prevalent one. He could perceive no remnants of ancient edifices; the town being thickly populated and closely built, the ground as well as the stones expensive, the materials of ancient structures were constantly used in the erection of modern ones.

The emporium Cana κανη (Arr. Per., p. 15.) east of Arabia Felix, and 2,000 stadia distant from it, was situated in the frankincense region; above Hisn Ghoráb. It in the interior was *Sabbatha metropolis*, where the king held his court (coll. footnote 20). To Cana the frankincense ($\lambda\beta\alpha\sigma\omega\sigma$) which grows in that region was conveyed as to a general mart, partly on camels, partly on rafts made of inflated skins, and partly in other vessels, in order thence to be shipped to the more distant emporia of O'mán, and the adjacent Persian ports. From Egypt corn and wine were imported to Cana, although but sparingly as to Muza; but also garments for the Arab market, and other clothes; also brass, tin, koralion (? corals), styrax and other things as to Muza. To the kings chased silver vessels, statues, robes of honour, &c., were brought. Indigenous products, such as frankincense, aloe, and other articles of trade were exported. Cana is mentioned by Ptolemy

(vi., 7, fol. 153,) as situated in $12^{\circ} 30'$ lat. and 84° long.; it traded with India, but especially with Barygaza, and its name occurs even in Ezek. xxvii. 23 (παρ), which chapter is worth perusing also in other respects, but particularly as exhibiting a most curious account of a number of localities with which the Phœnicians of Tyre maintained commercial intercourse in those early times.

Immediately after the discovery of Hisn Ghorab by Capt. Haines and Wellsted,²² the examination of that extraordinary locality suggested the idea that it must have been suitable for a large emporium, wherefore Wellsted declared it to be the *Cana* of the Periplus. The fort, accessible only on one side, and almost iusular in its position, made strong by its site, and fortified by art, offered a secure magazine for wares on a coast always infested by pirates. The two harbours on the sides presenting a favourable anchorage in all seasons, the extensive view commanded from the mountain of the fort along the distant coasts and the open sea, with the whole dominating position, all concurred to point the locality out as the *chief emporium* of the international trade between India and Egypt, where ships from both these countries met and traded.

Wellsted says²³ :—“ On the morning of the 6th of May 1834, we anchored in a short and narrow channel, joined on the one hand by a low rocky islet, and on the other by a lofty black-looking cliff, to which our pilots applied the designation of *Hisn Ghorab*.” As some ruins were perceived on the top of the mountain, the decision was come to to climb it. To avoid the violence of the surf a landing was effected in a little bay to the north, where the water was calm. On stepping out upon a sandy tongue of land, the ruins of many houses, walls and towers were perceived immediately on the shore. The houses were only small, one-storeyed, and generally consisting of four rooms; the wall however ran in several parallel lines and of various heights, along the front-side of the gently sloping hill, and was provided with towers at equal intervals. The entire lower space of the hill was covered with ruins of buildings, but of no large size, and without any columns, arches or ornaments. The walls were of rubble-masonry, cemented with mortar, probably of calcined corals, as is still customary. The castle-mountain, which is 500 feet high (according to Capt. Haines only 464 feet, and situated in $13^{\circ} 59' 20''$ N. lat. and $48^{\circ} 24' 30''$ E. long., Greenw.,)

²² *Mémoire, &c.*, Roy. Geogr. Soc., London, vol. ix., 1839, p. 146.

²³ *Travels*, vol. ii., p. 421.

has a base of dark-grey firm lime-stone, and appears formerly to have been an island, which was afterwards connected with the mainland by an isthmus of conglomerated sand; some rocks with caves scooped out by the sea, and formerly laved by it, are at present too distant to be reached by it. In the rear of two dilapidated towers, which must once have guarded the entrance, an artificial zigzag road, hewn into the rock, presented itself (meandering along steep precipices, and allowing often only two persons to pass side by side) and led up to the mountain. The trouble of climbing was amply rewarded by the discovery of inscriptions on the smooth surface of the rocky wall on the right side, when about two-thirds of the whole ascent had been accomplished. To avoid the possibility of omission or error, three separate copies were taken by different individuals, all of which have been subsequently examined and compared.²⁴ Further on the top of the mountain almost as many houses could be seen as below; walls and other works of defence were scattered at various distances from each other on the side of the mountain, and on the uppermost brim of the slope there was a massive quadrangular tower, which may have done excellent service as a look-out or lighthouse, as it could be perceived at a distance of many miles from the sea. The steps leading up are partly very roomy, but the windows and doors simple, without any arches. At a distance of a few hundred feet from this tower the water-reservoirs, cut with great trouble in the rock, and internally lined with cement, may be seen. The whole aspect bespeaks the importance of a place so strongly fortified, and a locality so favourable for oceanic navigation and extensive commerce with India.

²⁴ The largest inscription consisted of ten lines, and was printed also in the Bengal Asiatic Society's Journal for 1834. It was translated by Rödiger, but Müninger afterwards again made a copy, from which Lévy produced the following translation in the Z. & M. G., xxvi., p. 436 :—" Samaiqa' Aswa und seine Söhne u. s. w. haben geschrieben dieses Denkmal in dieser Festung, als ein Denkzeichen dass hierhin zusammenkamen ihre Umgebungen und ihre Bevölkerung und ihre Thalschluchten und ihre Bergwege, dass sie sich in ihr verschanzten, dass sie fest behaupteten dieses Land Abessinion, und dass die Abessinier Truppen zu Hülfę sandten in das Land von Himjar, dass sie töteten den König von Himjar und seine Vasallenfürsten, die von Himjar und die von Rahb. Der Monat hier ist von Du-Higgat des Jahres 640." To what era the year here given belongs has not been ascertained; but the year must be one in which the Abyssinians were struggling for supremacy in Yemen. Mr. Reinaud was of opinion that the era is the Seleukidan, therefore 640 = A.D. 328. —(See *Ind. Antiquary*, vol. viii., p. 333.)

The extensive fortifications of the castle mountain, planned on a grand scale for the protection of the town lying to the east, and the excellent harbour, bear sufficient witness to the former importance of this emporium, which appears to have been perfectly protected by them. No traditions reaching to ancient times exist among the Arabs, and the tales narrated by them to Wellsted about a tribe called Beni Ghoráb, are not deserving of much reliance. It may be that this *fort-crow* was so named from its being perched high, and of a black colour.

At the distance of a couple of days inland, to the north-west from Hisn Ghoráb, Wellsted discovered the ^{Monumental ruins of Na-}
_{kab-ul-Hajar.} ruins of Nakab-ul-Hajar, concerning which he says²⁵ :—“ Nakab-ul-Hajar is situated north-west, and is distant 48 miles from the village of A'in [on the sea-shore], which is marked on the chart 14° 2' N. lat. and 46° 30' E. long., nearly. It stands in the centre of a most extensive valley, called by the natives Wadi Meifah, which, whether we regard its fertility, population, or extent, is the most interesting geographical feature we have yet discovered on the southern coast of Arabia. Taking its length from where it opens out on the sea-coast to the town of Abbán, it is four days' journey, or 75 miles.”

Although Nakab-ul-Hajar does not stand on the shore, it was, on account of its proximity to the coast which was formerly so noted for its flourishing trade with India, closely connected therewith, and an investigation of the locality naturally induces a lively perception of the early state of this coast, which had hitherto attracted no interest, and had been considered almost deserted. The monuments and inscriptions of Nakab-ul-Hajar also present many analogies to those of Hisn Ghoráb, so that they may be considered as having flourished at the same time, and formerly aided each other in promoting the great commerce of the world; the one as a sea-port for oceanic trade, and the other as the nearest inland emporium or dépôt for caravans, by which the wares of the east were forwarded by the overland route through the countries of the Yotkanites, Himyarites, Minaeans, Ismaelites, and Israelites up to the Euphrates, and the emporia of Tadmor, Tyre, and Sidon. The ancient designation of Nakab-ul-Hajar has been totally lost, as this name is only a general one, meaning mountain-pass, or a

²⁵ Travels in Arabia, vol. i., p. 435-6.

cut through stones ; it may, however, be the *Mephat vicos* of Ptolemy, 13° lat., 84° 20' long.

The hill on which the ruins are situated is 800 yards long by 350 broad ; it is encircled at about one-third of its height by a massive wall, in some parts well preserved, from 30 to 40 feet high, with quadrangular towers at equal intervals. This enclosure shows only two entrances opposite to each other, north and south, situated on the boundary of the upper flat valley, but no traces whatever of gates could be perceived on them, although the fortifications are visible enough, at any rate, at the northern entrance, where the wall has yet remained in perfect preservation ; on both sides of it a hollow quadrangular tower rises, having each side 14 feet long, and the base greatly prominent beyond the other portions of the wall. Between the towers, about 20 feet above the adjoining plain, there is an oblong platform, passing about 18 feet over the adjoining plain, and as many over the interior of the town-wall ; to this platform no doubt flights of steps were once leading. These have however altogether disappeared, although the platform itself is still paved by its large stone flags. Within this entrance, and ten feet above the platform, Wellsted discovered on the smooth surface of the wall an inscription of two lines. The entire enclosing wall, together with the towers and several of the edifices within, have all been built of the same strong greyish marble. The square stones are very carefully cut, and are in the lower strata of the wall from five to seven feet long, two to three high, and from three to four feet thick. The thickness of the wall decreases as it rises ; it amounts below to ten but above only to four feet. The layers of stone are perfectly horizontal, and the mortar which cemented them has become as hard as the stones themselves, as may be seen from the blocks of wall which have remained compact even after tumbling down. The wall has no apertures nor crenulations whatever, which is a sign of high antiquity, but here and there buttresses occur to resist torrents of rain-water.

Within the inner enclosure there is an oblong quadrangular edifice, facing the four cardinal points, measuring 27 yards from south to north and 17 from west to east. Also this is built of square stones, all of equal size, very beautiful, accurately joined, and yet bearing chisel-marks on the outside, which the Bedouins pretended to be inscriptions. This edifice, which Wellsted considered to be a temple, has fallen to pieces within, but no marks pointing to religious observances could be discovered on it, and many other buildings stand round it.

In the centre of the town between the two entrances there is a circular well, ten feet in diameter, sixty feet deep, lined with rubble masonry, and surrounded by a parapet wall fifteen feet high. On the southern hill only a confused mass of débris could be seen. At the south entrance there is on the same level with the platform a gallery fifty yards long and four feet broad, with a strong parapet wall towards the outside, no doubt intended as a special defence of the gate. In these ruins no traces of columns, arches, or other ornaments could be seen, and not even fragments of crockery, glass, or metals, which occur everywhere in the ruins of Egypt and about the Euphrates. Neither could any traces of violence be discovered, and the stones were so well preserved that they had the appearance of being new. The Arabs could say nothing about the ancient inhabitants of this locality, except that they were unbelievers, who had legions of demons at their service; the hopes of the Arabs to partake of the treasures which the English strangers were, according to their opinion, expecting to find, were disappointed. The art, perfection, and dimensions of these structures made not the least impression upon the Arabs, but Wellsted was surprised at their analogy with those of Hīsn Ghorab, with which he had shortly before become acquainted. The inscription showed sufficiently that the place had been in the occupation of the Hemyarites as an emporium from which merchandize was forwarded to the interior by caravans, and transported by sea to other countries after being conveyed to Hīsn Ghoráb, to which this *Mæphat vicus* of Ptolemy, or whatever else its name may have been, appears to have stood in the relation of an inland emporium to a sea-port town, just as Mareb formerly stood to Aden, Çana'á to Muza, &c., and in our times Medinah to Yambo, Mekkah to Jeddah, &c.

The name of Makkala has not undergone any change since almost 2,000 years; it is the Μάκκαλα of Ptolemy
 Makkala. in 14° 29' 40" N. lat. and 49° 14' 20" E.
 long. of Greenwich. And Shehr (Σάχλη) to the north-east of it, at a short distance, likewise still exists.

Mirbat (Morebat) on the frankincense coast, and formerly the sea-port of an inland emporium Zafar, has at present so little commercial importance, that its whole trade is in the hands of two or three merchants, who have to pay duty to the Bedouins for their exports, and have only 3 bughlas in the harbour for trading with India. They export frankincense, myrrh and hides, as in the time of Agatharchides and Ptolemy.

The Greek corruption in Ptolemy and in the Periplus of the bay of Syagros. Sawkirah, Saugra, and the cape of that name—according to Captain Owen's observation in $18^{\circ} 9'$ N. lat., and $55^{\circ} 18\frac{1}{4}'$ E. long.—is *Syagros*. According to the Periplus (p. 17) the largest cape of the bay of Syagros fronts the east, and is crowned by a fort ; this is undoubtedly *Ras Fartak*, $15^{\circ} 39'$ N. lat., $52^{\circ} 15'$ E. long., Greenwich. It has also a port which is the depository of all the frankincense collected in those regions. Between this cape and the promontorium Aromatum (Cape Guardafui) there is an island opposite (*i. e.*, to the south), named *Dioscorides* (corrupted from Sokotora, Sanskr. *Sukhādāra* the fortunate), which is very large, but deserted and marshy ; the inhabitants are all strangers (see footnote 5). This island formed in the 2nd century B.C. the centre of trade between Egypt, Arabia and India.—(Duncker's Hist. of Ant., vol. i., p. 319.)

The *Moscha portus* of Ptolemy in 14° lat., $88^{\circ} 30'$ long., on the Moscha. frankincense coast, is mentioned also in the Periplus as a dépôt of that article of commerce (p. 18) called *Sachalitic* frankincense—حل سا simply means coast in Arabic—which is carried away in ships arriving from Limyrica and Barygaza (Canara and Broach), the merchants giving for it to the officers of the king in exchange cotton, corn and oil ; when the season has too far advanced (*i. e.*, if the counter-monsoon has set in) they spend the winter there.

The entrance into no gulf awakens memories of classic times and stupendous undertakings, like that from Entrance into the Persian Gulf. the Indian into the Persian sea ; these memories lead us back to the navigation of this part of the ocean by the first Macedonian fleet under the command of Nearchus and Onesicritus, but, above all, to the march of Alexander the Great by land to Hormozia on the shores of this entrance, after he had discovered a new world,—the world of India.

When Wellsted entered this gulf in a British vessel on the 11th June in 1840,²⁶ he was seized by these memories, and recorded that few spots on the globe can excite a higher interest than these. In front, to the north, rose the mountains of Karamania, their tops still covered with snow, at their feet was the celebrated Ormuz ; by its side, to the

²⁶ Travels to the City of the Caliphs, vol. i., p. 59.

west, Gambrun (*i. e.*, Bandar A'bbás) as grand as ever, and on the other side, to the east, the present Minan on the river, where formerly Hormozia stood, where Alexander with his land-army met Nearchus, the admiral of his fleet, again. The Persian and Arabian shores, the passage between which can be accomplished in three hours, present a desolate aspect, without forests, but rise high. A fresh wind carried the ship soon to the two rocky islands, in front of the immense promontory called by Nearchus Maketa, whence, he says, cinnamon and similar aromatic substances were shipped to the Assyrians (*Nearchi Parapluus*, p. 22). When the Macedonian fleet reached this locality and cast anchor, Onesicritus, who perceived the unknown entrance, desired, in order to avoid its dangers, to sail further along the external side of Arabia, which would have led to the circumnavigation of the Sabæan country, to the Red Sea, and to the discovery of Egypt from that direction. Nearchus however, faithful to the injunction of Alexander, to investigate the coasts, opposed this intention in the consultation held on the subject, steered the fleet courageously through the dangerous and tempestuous straits, sailing close to the Persian shore, and landed at Neoptana (*ibidem*, p. 23), which Kemphorne considers to be the present fishing village Karrun.

The next morning the fleet left Neoptana, sailed 100 stadia, and reached the river Anamis. The place itself was called *Harmozia*. This region was fertile in everything except olives, and the people leaving the ships rested from their labours. Some who had gone further from the sea-shore, met to their surprise a straggler from Alexander's army, who informed them that he himself was encamped with it at no great distance; this news was received with the greatest joy, and led to the meeting of Nearchus and Alexander, which is described at some length. The people of this country were the Armozei of Pliny (H. N. vi., 28), and the locality became afterwards the seat of a flourishing kingdom. The Sultans, however, transferred their residence from the mainland to the adjoining island, which was in Ebn Batuta's time still in their possession. Edrisi, who has so much to say of the pirate dominions of the master of Keish, against whose depredations it had become necessary to build forts even on the coast of India, *e.g.*, at Cambay, mentions only this old Ormuz on the coast of Kermán as a large well-built town, to which ships were conveyed by a canal. It had many date-groves, and especially important indigo plantations, which, as well as its sugar-manufactories, the produce whereof was exported to foreign

countries, had become a source of considerable wealth. It is the present Bandar A'bbás, *i. e.*, Gambrun, which began to flourish only after the expulsion of the Portuguese (1622) from the island of Ormuz, their great emporium since the victories of Albuquerque, but it again decayed with the rise of Abushehr (Bushire).

In Nearch's time the island of Ormuz, which he calls *Organa*, had no inhabitants (p. 30), and also Ptolemy The island Ormuz, Organa. (vi., 7) calls it by the same name. Once the brilliant emporium of a commercial and maritime state, this island has long been a bone of contention between Persia and the Emám of Maskat, and may be considered to belong more to Arabia than to Persia. After the fall of the Sasanian dynasty, a number of Zoroastrians had found a refuge in this island, where they remained 15 years; then they departed to the island of Diu, where they dwelt during 19, but increased so much in numbers, that they again sought another home, and found it in Guzerat, in the town of Sanján (20° N. lat.), called by the English St. John, where they became the subjects of the Hindu prince Jadv Rana.

The Oaracta of Nearchus, the largest island in the Persian gulf, 800 Kishm, Oaracta. stadia in length, is the present Kishm (Jishm), the chief or sheikh of which Mazenes (? Mazdiasna) received him in a very friendly manner, and offered to become a companion to Nearchus, as well as the leader of the navigation as far as Susa. The island was fertile in corn, dates and vines. According to the statement of the natives, the tomb of Erythras, the first chief of the island, still existed in the island. It is not certain whether Ormuz or Kishm is meant by the Ogyris of Strabo (xvi., 766), but Pomponius Mela has the bare name only (see footnote 14).

The mountain Tcharak ($26^{\circ} 25'$ N. lat., $51^{\circ} 50'$ E. long., Paris,) Siraf. presents the best landmark to seamen, and the place of the same name at its foot was by Dr. Vincent and Kinneir considered to be the identical *Siraf*, the most important emporium of those shores during the ninth century. Opposite to this celebrated Siraf, the small island of Keis, Keish, or Kem, the Kataia of the ancients, is situated, which however is mentioned as deserted (Arr. Hist. Ind., c. 37, καταιη, νῆσον ἐρήμην). This island is said to have obtained its name from a youth named *Keis*, the son of a poor widow at Siraf, who went with his only property, a cat,

to India, whence he returned with great treasures, which he had obtained from a king of that country for the services of his cat in the extirpation of mice, so that we have here the counterpart of the story of Richard Whittington.

Ebn Haukal bears testimony to the great prosperity of Siraf in the 10th century, for he says (Orient. Geogr., pp. 104, 115, 133,) that this place has abundance of merchandise brought by sea, such as aloë, ambergris, camphor, pearls, ivory, and ebony. On the other hand, pepper, sandal-wood, all kinds of spices and medicines, were exported from Siraf, which was as large as Shiraz, to all parts of the world. We moreover know that Chinese junks frequented the now deserted Siraf in the 11th century, but did not proceed further west. (Reinaud's *Anciennes Relations*. Paris. 1718, pp. 10, 142. Pref., p. vii.) In Ebn Batuta's time Siraf was still known, although deserted as an emporium, and he sailed from it over to Bahrain on the Arabian coast, which has till our days kept up its reputation for its pearl fishery. Unfortunately Ebn Batuta gives no data by which the position of Siraf might be ascertained, and the locality near mount Tcharak, pointed out by Dr. Vincent and Kinneir, contains no ancient remains whatever. Morier looked a little further north at *Tahrieh*, for the site ; and as his assumption has been confirmed by the researches of Kempthorne (Bombay Geogr. Soc., 1837, p. 11-12), it would be better to look in this locality for the position of the ancient Siraf. Tahrieh is ten miles distant from the very populous town Konkun, immediately under the Barn-hill of the charts, which the natives call *Jebel-serai*. Here Kempthorne discovered, at a good half hour's journey from the town, the ground to be covered for some distance with shapeless heaps of demolished walls and house foundations, consisting of large square cut stones. The extent of these ruins, two miles in length and one in breadth, points to the existence of a large town. On the top of the mountain the ruins of a modern building may be seen, the walls of which are well preserved. The entrance from the north leads through a portal, with a pointed arch, into a great hall, and then by flights of steps into subterraneous passages, giving admittance to vaulted chambers in the rocks, which appear to have served as water-cisterns. Numerous tomb-stones with Kufic inscriptions are scattered about. Apertures and shafts lead into the mountain ; they were the orifices of aqueducts conveying the water from it to the buildings. On the west side of the perpendicular rocks there are as yet inaccessible catacombs,

grottoes, and excavations of all kinds, which Kempthorne compares to those of Petra in the country of the Nabataeans as described by Irby and Mangles.

The Oman of Ptolemy ('Ομανος ε'μπόριον, 19° 45' lat., 77° 40' long.) was by some considered to be Zohár, and by others Maskat. The Portuguese called it *Soar*. In Istakhri's time it was the chief emporium of O'mán, had 40 bughlas (native ships) of its own for trade with Persia and India ; its commerce with China, however, had already ceased.

The peninsula jutting out with the promontory of Ras Rekkam from the mainland of Arabia to the east of Zabarra. Bahrain, contains the ruins of the large town *Zabarra*, which cover the ground for several English miles, and are said to have been those of an old emporium, which was formerly the sea-port of El-Ahsa (Lahsa), from which the interior of Arabia was provided with the merchandize of India and Persia. This was no doubt also a mart of the pearl fisheries of Bahrain.

Taoke, situated on the peninsula of Mesambria (Nearch., p. 33), the harbour of Persis, of which no traces exist, Taoke, Bushire. was near Abushehr, Bushehr, Bushire (29° N. lat., 48° 36' E. long., Paris). It would at present be impossible to point out the exact site of Taoke (*Taokη*, Hist. Ind. xxxix., 3; Ptol. vi., 4), although it could scarcely be another than that of the present Bushire. W. Ouseley was of opinion that the name is the Arabic Táq قَبْ, which may then, as now, have designated a dome or palace. On the peninsula and on the entirely deserted shore, vestiges of a former thick population, and of civilization, such as numerous wells, aqueducts, and subterraneous chambers have been discovered, as well as bricks, vases, gems and ancient coins. (W. Ouseley's Travels i., 94.) Such vestiges have been discovered also at Abadah, a day's journey from Abushehr. (See Transact. Lit. Soc. of Bombay, vol. i., p. 206, seq. of Mandlik's new edition, *Observations on Two Sepulchral Urns found at Bushire.*)

Nearchus, the admiral of Alexander's Indian fleet, had sailed as far Diridotis, Teredon. as the frontier-river of Persia and Susiana, the Arosis (Oroatis), which is on our maps the Hindyan and Tab river. After this place Nearchus writes that he can no longer give any great details, because the sea had become shallow and rocky, so that no harbour could be entered from the sea

without danger (Nearchi Parapulus, p. 35, *infra*). After coasting two days he reached the mouths of the Euphrates, where he cast anchor at a certain town of Babylonia, called *Diridotis* (*ibid.*, p. 37; Teredon of Strabo ii., 80; Ptol. v., c. 20, f. 145; and Pliny vi., 32), where merchants bring frankincense and other aromatic substances produced in Arabia, for sale.

How very ancient Teredon actually was appears from a fragment of the Babylonian author Abydenus and disciple of Berossus,⁸⁷ who says:—“Nebuchadnezzar [about 600 years B. C., preceding the establishment of the Persian empire by Cyrus] executed a construction on the mouth of the Tigris, to dam up its water; he built the town of *Teredon* to ward off the incursions of the Arabs, and opened the *Naharmulkha*, a canal of the Euphrates, which united this river with the Tigris.” Thus we observe that Herodotus (i., 93) could justly speak of a *royal canal* of the most ancient times.

The building of Teredon as a *port on the Euphrates*, which remained so considerable a commercial town till the time of Alexander, shows, in connection with the above quotation, that already three centuries before his time, Nebuchadnezzar had been desirous to open a route to the trade of the world through his dominions by the Euphrates. As neither the Egyptians, nor the Persians, nor the Indians appear to have been great voyagers, the most ancient navigators and merchants who forwarded the merchandize of India and Arabia from the east to the west could only have been the Arabs (Idumæans) and their kinsmen the Phoenicians, who were since the highest antiquity domesticated on the Persian gulf (according to Herodotus i. 1 and vii. 89), in the gulf of Aqabah, and in Petra, and lastly from Hieropolis in Egypt, as far as Tyre, Sidon, and Aradus in Phoenicia. The Babylonians were yet after their subjugation by the Persians provided with their spices and aromatic substances by the Arabs from India, as appears from the above quoted remark of Nearchus who saw those merchants in Teredon. But even before their subjugation by Cyrus, the Babylonians, although not a seafaring nation—they had not even timber for building ships—must nevertheless have navigated their rivers and profited by the commerce with foreign traders, who had perhaps become powerful enough to induce Nebuchadnezzar to counteract their influence by building Teredon. After the conquest of the Assyro-Babylonian empire by

⁸⁷ Bitter's *Erdkunde*, B. vii. Abth. i., p. 49, *seq.* Scaliger Emend. *temp. fragm.*, p. 13 in Dr. Vincent's *Commerce and Navig.*, vol. ii., p. 271, Note 44.

Cyrus, the cities along the Euphrates and Tigris, such as Babylon, Niniveh, Opis, &c., lost their importance because the Persians of the continent were never navigators. The Gerrhaeans, reinforced by a sect of Chaldean fugitives, being encouraged and protected by Persian supremacy, returned to the mart of Teredon, which appears to have maintained itself down to the time of the Macedonian conquest, and even after it till the period of Augustus, because the protégé of that emperor, the poet Dyonisus Periegetes, who had himself pretended to have been born at the mouth of the Tigris, in Charax Pasinus (Pliny H. N. vi., 31), had sung of this place as situated on the foamy embouchure of the Euphrates into the Persian sea. Charax Pasinus took as an emporium the place of Teredon just as Bosrah (below which it was situated) took the place of Obollah.

When Alexander, who had in India itself been made aware of a possible connection of it with Europe, returned to the Euphrates-country, he perceived its commercial importance, and initiated various works on the Euphrates and Tigris, projected an expedition to Arabia, &c.; all of which plans would have been realized within a brief period of time, if his premature death had not put a stop to them. The gain which he had intended should enrich Alexandria on the mouth of the Tigris was enjoyed by the city of that name on the Nile, where the Ptolemies continued the work he had begun. Thus it happened that neither Teredon, nor the two Alexandrias, the one near the Pallacopas marshes, and the other at the mouth of the Tigris, could attain the prosperity for which the great conqueror had destined them, because after his death the struggle for dominion was far too great and too passionate in that part of the world to allow the rival combatants to pay the least attention to the well-being of nations and to the prosperity of commerce. Teredon, which could not flourish under such circumstances, although it remained for a few centuries an emporium of the Arabs, appears to have been entirely abandoned, when the mouth of the Euphrates was neglected, and the ancient embouchure on the Khor Abdullah became entirely sanded up; but instead of Teredon, another emporium further up the river, on the new mouth, which had shifted itself towards the east, the Bosrah river of our times, rose to considerable importance, namely, Apologos.

In the *Periplus of the Erythræan Sea*, written in the 2nd century
Apologos, Obollah. of the Christian era, Apologos is mentioned
as a celebrated emporium on the Euphrates,

opposite to the Pasinus district (p. 20), *i. e.*, to Alexandria on the Tigris, where purple and cloths were manufactured, where wine, gold, and slaves in great numbers were sold. Apologos became in the mouths of Persians and Arabs Obollah, by which name it was yet known A. H. 12 (A. D. 633), when Khâled Ben Walid conquered it, since which time it has remained under Moslem dominion.²⁹ It is mentioned by Masudi in the 11th century as a flourishing emporium, with a canal, *Nahr Obollah*.

INDIA.

When the Periplus was written, the wide tract watered by the river Indus in the lower parts of its course, was Minnagara and Barbarikon. Minnagara and Barbarikon, called Indoskythia ; the Skythian tribes namely, passed after the overthrow of the Græco-Baktrian empire, gradually southwards to the coast, where they established themselves about 120 years before our era, and occupied all the region between the Indus and the Nerbudda. They were however driven out by the Parthians after an occupation of nearly two and a half centuries. Hence it is not surprising that according to the Periplus *Minnagara*, the metropolis of Skythia, was governed by Parthian princes perpetually at strife among themselves and expelling each other. The river Indus had seven mouths, all of which were shallow, except only the middle stream, on which *Barbarikon*, a trading harbour, was situated ; there the ships anchored, and the cargoes were conveyed up to the metropolis, where the king resided. According to Reinaud *Minnagara* is only a contracted form of Bahmanagara, the Bahmana near Tatta.

Cambay is situated 22° 21' N. lat., 72° 48' E. long., Greenwich, due west of Baroda, in the innermost corner of Cambay.

the narrow but long gulf from which the town receives its name. The river called Mais in the Periplus is the Mhai (Mhye), and the Namnadios, which leads to Barygaza, the Nerbudda. Cambay was formerly a large emporium, and the flourishing sea-port of Ahmedabad, which however is itself not yet five centuries old, as it was founded in 1426 by Ahmed Shah, who made it his capital, but in more ancient times Naharwarah, *i. e.*, Patan, was the capital of Guzerat, which, says Edrisi, was the residence of a great prince, who took the title of Belhara, wore a golden crown on his head, and was

²⁹ According to some Obollah was taken from the Persians only two years afterwards, A. H. 14, during the Khalifate of O'mar. (See Journ. Bombay Br. R. As. Soc., vol. xi., p. 151, *Moslem Conquest of Persia.*)

called king of kings. *Baroda*, north-east of Broach, in $22^{\circ} 21'$ N. lat. and $73^{\circ} 23'$ E. long., Greenwich, is a rich and ancient commercial town on the Nerbudda.

Barigosha became with Arrian and Ptolemy *Barygaza*; it was originally called *Bhrigu-gacha*, *Bhrigu-pura*, or *Barygaza*, *Broach*.

Bhrigu-kshetra, after the ancient Rishi of that name, it being the capital of the district of Guzerat which bore it. Greek drachms of Apollodotos and Menander were current in *Barygaza* when the *Periplus* was written; and the proper time for sailing from Egypt to this port was the month of July. The *imports* into *Barygaza* were:—Wine, principally Italian; brass, copper, tin and lead; coral and yellow stone; cloth of all sorts, storax, sweet clover, melilot; white glass, gum sandarach; collyrium for the eyes; gold and silver coins exchanged with profit for native money; cheap perfumes, as presents for the king; also costly silver vases, musical instruments, handsome young women, superior wine and costly apparel. The *exports* were:—Spikenard, costus, bdellium, ivory, onyx-stones, porcelain, box-thora (probably for tooth-picks), cottons of all sorts, silk and silk thread, long pepper, and articles supplied by the neighboring ports. *Barygaza* received its goods not only from the interior, and the Nerbudda, at the mouth of which it was situated (in $21^{\circ} 4'$ N. lat., $73^{\circ} 14'$ E. long., Greenwich), but also from the coast-ports which the Arabs called as far down as Cape Comorin by the name of *Maa'ber* (*Trajectus*), not to be confounded with the native designation *Malabar* (*Malayala*), as it applies only to the southern portion.²⁹ According to the *Periplus*, the country from *Barygaza* stretches to the south, and is called *Dakhinabades*, because *Dakhan* means south in the language of the country.

The westernmost group of spurs of the Satapura range between the Tapti and the south banks of the Nerbudda, a wild mountain region, called the Cornelian mines in the Turkasir district, belonged to the Rajah of Rajpipli mountains, and the gem-trade of *Barygaza*.
Rajpipli, which gave its name also to the

²⁹ The strictly so-called *Malayala* or *Malabar* coast begins only in $12^{\circ} 30'$ N. lat., at the *Chamraghiri* mountain and river, with the port of the same name, but is sometimes considered to extend also several degrees further north. *Ebu Batuta*, who travelled after A. D. 1340 from Delhi to Cochin, always calls the whole western coast of India *Malabar*, which is a corruption of the Sanskrit *Malayavara*, mountain-country, originally applied to it, but at present only to the southern portion.

group of mountain-spurs. They have not been very closely examined, but their surroundings towards Broach have often been visited as a hunting ground, because the Bhágdungur, *i.e.*, Tiger-mountain, is very rich in game. On the western slopes of these mountains, towards the Nerbudda, the cornelian mines are situated, from which already in the most ancient times onyx and murrhina stones (*lapides onychini et murrhini, Arr. Per.*, p. 28,) were carried to Barygaza, whence they were exported to the west, to the marts of Egypt and Rome. At present these stones are polished and set in Cambay ; they come from several districts of the frontier mountains of Guzerat, but the best from the Rajpipli mountains. Sailing five hours up the Nerbudda with the tide, the island Kubir Bur, near the village of Nimudra, is reached, which is situated only a good hour's distance from the southern bank of the river ; and a few miles further on, the cornelian mines may be seen, the workers of which dwell in Nimudra.³⁰

According to Arrian, Ozene (Ujjain) was formerly the capital where Ozene, Ujjain. the king resided. It must have been a great manufacturing town, because it sent to Barygaza every commodity for the supply of the country as well as for export to Arabia, Egypt and Italy ; especially onyx-stones, porcelain, fine muslins, mallow-coloured muslins, and no small quantity of ordinary cottons. From the upper country Ozene received for exportation to Barygaza and to the coast, several kinds of spikenard, costus and bdellium.

Mentioning the inland portion of Skythia, named Aberia (the coast Another Minnagara. of it being called Surastrene), Arrian informs us that it produced in abundance corn, rice, and oil of sesamum ; it also manufactured muslins as well as coarse cotton-cloth, had numerous herds of cattle, and produced butter. The metropolis of this district was *Minnagara*, from which a great deal of cotton was exported to Barygaza. This metropolis was situated to the south of Ujjain, probably very near the present Indore ; but we are at a loss to understand how, according to the *Periplus*, memorials of the expedition of Alexander, such as old temples, foundations of camps, and large wells, could be seen in this part of the country, which the Macedonian conqueror had certainly not even passed through in his march down to the mouths of the Indus from the Punjab.

³⁰ Bom. Lit. Soc., vol. i., p. 313, seq. *Account of the Cornelian Mines in the neighbourhood of Baroach.*

According to the *Periplus* (p. 29), two most excellent and celebrated emporia in the Dekkan were situated towards the south at a distance of a journey of 20 days from Barygaza. From one of these, at an interval of nearly ten days, was the very large town Tagara. From these emporia goods were conveyed to Barygaza on carts, through pathless and very difficult localities ; from *Plithana*, namely, very many onyx-stones, and from Tagara a great deal of ordinary cotton-cloth, all kinds of muslins, and similar wares which were brought there from the coasts. *Plithana*, spelt *Paithana* in C. Müller's *Paris* edition, is *Baithana*, i. e., *Pyton* on the Godavery, nearly due south of Aurungabad ; and *Tagara*, a corruption of *Deogur*, abode of the gods, was near the famous caves of Ellora, making allowance for a little inaccuracy of Arrian ; others would however place it at Junner as likewise having been an *abode of gods* with caves and inscriptions.

The district around the gulf of Surat—Sanskrit *Beauty*—was already by Ptolemy called Larike in the west, and Surat. he adduces the Sanskrit *Surashtra*, i. e., beautiful country, as *Συράστρη*, which is in the *Periplus* called *Synras-trena*. Ptolemy's name of the district is confirmed by the *Lar* dynasty, mentioned on coins and inscriptions. At Surat, near the mouth of the Tapti, in 21° 11' N. lat. and 73° 7' E. long., Greenwich, ships of all nations, from India, Arabia and Persia cast anchor, loaded and unloaded all kinds of goods of the east and of the west. It attracted in course of time the whole commerce of Broach, and became the capital of the British settlements in India ; but its period of glory has long passed away, although at the end of the last century the number of its population is said to have still amounted to 600,000 or 800,000 souls.

Calliena was, according to the *Periplus*, a celebrated and much frequented emporium during the time of Calliena, Kallian. Saraganes the elder ; its trade suffered however greatly and long when Sandanes got possession of it. If perchance any Greek ships entered one of those ports, they were conveyed to Barygaza in the custody of a guard. Calliena is now Kallian, near Bombay, and was an important place ; it is named in the Kanheri Baudha Cave inscriptions, and *Kaliani* (*καλλιάνη*) means in Sanskrit *the beautiful one*. There were several places of this name in India.—(*Ind. Ant.*, vol. iii., p. 310.)

Pliny, Ptolemy, and the Periplus all agree that the pirate coast was between Bombay and Goa, but none of Heptanesia, Bombay. them mention these places, or allude to them in such a way that they may be recognized with certainty. The kingdom of *Mumbaros* is indeed alluded to, but it was evidently north of Bombay, the true name of which is even now *Mumba*,³¹ in the vernacular Marathi, after the goddess of that name. It is situated in 18° 56' N. lat., 72° 57' E. long., Greenwich ; its splendid harbour well fitted it for a great emporium, but its importance was inferior even to Surat before it became a British possession. The expression Heptanesia (Ptol. vii., 195,) but vaguely designates the locality. Lassen, however, was of opinion that it applied to Bombay, the harbour of which may be said to be formed by seven islands, namely, Colaba, Bombay itself, Salsette, Butcher's Island, Elephanta (Gharipuri, grotto-town), Caranja, and lastly a sandbank to the west of the latter. It would appear that Bombay was, in spite of its magnificent harbour, not an emporium, and isolated.

After Calliena some emporia are mentioned which cannot have been of much importance, as merely their names *Naura*, *Tyndis*, *Muziris* and *Nelkynda*. are given, and they are called local(τοπικά) ; of these Semylla has been identified with Chaul,³² Aigidion with Goa, &c. *Naura* and *Tyndis* are however of more consequence, as they are called the first marts of Limyrica (λιμυρικη, Ptol. vii., 1), the former is the present Honalwar or Onore, and the latter Tundi. *Muziris* and *Nelkynda* are however still more important, because they were the seats of government ; in the Hebrew translation of the Tamil document, granted A. D. 774 to the Jewish colony of Cochin, the Tamil *Muyiri* (*Muyirikoddú*) is rendered by *Cranganore*, which is the *Muziris* of Ptolemy and of the Periplus.³³ Dr. Vincent was of opinion (ii., p. 404,) that *Muziris* occupied the site of Mangalore, which however was in the 6th century called *Mangaruth* by Cosmas. *Nelkinda* (Sansk. *Nelakhanda*, blue country) was about twelve miles distant from the coast, on the banks of small river, and its harbour was *Barake* or *Bakare*, which is, according to

³¹ Dr. J. G. da Cunha's " Words and Places in and about Bombay."—*Ind. Antiquary*, iii., p. 247, seq.

³² *Idem.* " Notes on the History and Antiquities of Chaul and Bassein," *Bombay*, 1876.

³³ *Indian Antiquary*, vol. iii., p. 333, seq., where Dr. A. C. Burnell's trans. of the document is given.

Müller, *Markari* (12° N. lat.) ; the chief imports to this emporium were :—Great quantities of specie, topazes (chrysoliths, gold-stones), cloth, collyrium, coral, glass, brass, tin, lead, some wine, cinnabar, orpiment (arsenic). Exports :—Large quantities of pepper, growing only in one place and called pepper of Canara (*λεγομένον Κόττοναρικόν*), superior pearls, ivory, fine silks, Gangetic spikenard, betel, all sorts of transparent stones, diamonds, hyacinths, amethysts, tortoise shell from the golden islands, and another sort from the islands off the coast of Limyrica.

Calicut did not exist as a sea-port before the commencement of the ninth or tenth century of our era, and is therefore not mentioned by the ancients. It rose very quickly to such importance that it became and remained the chief emporium of India till the arrival of the Portuguese. Sheikh Ebn Batuta speaks of Calicut as a great emporium, where he waited for three months for the season to set sail to China, from which country, says he, vessels of three descriptions arrived, “the greatest is called *junk*, the middling size *zaw*, and the least *kakam*. The sails of these vessels are made of cane-reeds woven together like a mat, which when they put into port they leave standing in the wind. In some of these vessels there will be employed 1,000 men, 600 of these sailors and 400 soldiers.”^{**} Soon after the Portuguese made their appearance, the Chinese vessels ceased to visit Indian ports, as they could in no way compete with their rivals.

Comari, which is still the Tamil pronunciation, designates the cape Comari, Cape Comorin. of the southernmost extremity of India, so called from the Sanskrit *Kumārī*, a virgin, one of the names of the goddess Durga, the presiding divinity of the place, which is in $8^{\circ} 4'$ N. lat. and $77^{\circ} 45'$ E. long., Greenwich. This goddess is said to have bathed once a month in the place (Arr. Per., p. 33), which was not only celebrated for its sacredness, but also as an emporium importing all the commodities which reached Limyrica for commercial purposes, and absorbing nearly every species of goods brought from Egypt. The capital of Pandion, to whose kingdom Nelkynda belonged according to the Periplus, is by Pliny and Ptol. vii. 1, fol. 175, called *Modura*, and scarcely differing from its modern name, was likewise a sacred city and an emporium like Comari. The island of *Ramisseram* is also considered to pertain to the continent of India ; it is a celebrated place of pilgrimage, and from it Rama (an

^{**} Travels of Ebn Batuta, p. 172.

incarnation of Vishnu) embarked to conquer the island of Ceylon (Lanka). Romissarem Kori is mentioned by Pliny as a *sanctuary of the sun*, and he called the island of it, *solis insula*. All these regions belonged in remote times to the empire of Pandion.

The existence of Ceylon was not known in Europe much earlier than the times of Alexander the Great, Taprobane, Ceylon.

whose companions called it Ταπροβάνη, *Taprobane*. Although the words of Pliny (*Taprobanem alterum orbem terrarum esse diu existimatum es antichitonum*, vi., 24) would imply that Ceylon had long been considered as another southern world and therefore known, he nevertheless also says that Onesicritus, the ship captain of Alexander, and Megasthenes, were the first to recognize that country to be an island, probably to refute Hipparchus (lived in 150 B. C.), who, being fond of criticising the statements of Eratosthenes, was still inclined to consider Taprobane to be the beginning of another part of the world,³⁵ because its circumnavigation had not yet been effected by any one. Although Ptolemy, who lived in the 2nd century of our era, would make the area of Taprobane about ten times larger than it is (from $12^{\frac{1}{2}}$ N. lat. to $2^{\frac{1}{2}}$ S. lat.), he gives very accurate and valuable information about many ancient localities, some of which only we shall now proceed to mention, although he gives the names and positions of not less than 7 distinguished promontories, 13 littoral towns, 5 ports, 2 large emporia, a so-called royal residence, besides a metropolis, with 6 localities of the interior, and several on the shore :—

Anurogrammum Regia (now Anarajapura), the grand ruins of which are well known, and have been described by various authors, is placed by Ptolemy in $8^{\circ} 40'$ N. lat., which is only $20'$ more than the actual position. *Mordulamne Portus* is very probably the present harbour Batacola, in $7^{\circ} 4'$ N. lat., and *Spatana Portus* Trincomale, given under 8° N. lat., but in reality $8^{\circ} 3'$.

After *Spatana Portus* comes *Nagidica Ciritus*, the *Pati Sinus*, *Anubingara Ciritus* and *Moduti Emporium*, whereon the mouth of the river *Phasis* is mentioned. A river of greater importance, flowing like the Phasis on the coast of Ptolemy towards the north, cannot be found on our present maps of Ceylon, and probably never existed. The name

³⁵ We have also of the time of the emperor Claudius, *Pomponius Me'a*, "De Situ orbis, &c., iii., 7 Ed. Gronovius, 1696 :—*Taprobane aut grandis admodum insula aut prima pars orbis alterius Hipparcho dicitur*," &c.

Phasis, designating a sacred water, coming from a sanctuary of *Helios* in the east, leading to another, namely, Ramisseram Kori (*Solis insula* of Pliny), and at the mouth of which a third Kori Emporium, namely, *Talakori*, is situated, might after all not be a river, but the straits which there separate the northern extremity, the present *Jaffnapatam*, from the main island in the south. That two emporia so near to each other are mentioned at the mouth of the Phasis, must be considered as an evidence how important that coast was in early times to the commercial nations which traded there. The name *Talakori* has entirely disappeared, but Mannert was of opinion that the present Maladive, or Moletivo, in $9^{\circ} 10'$ N. lat., is on the site of *Moduti*. We may however observe that on the western side of Ceylon—opposite to Maladive, which is on the eastern coast—near to the island Manaar, a little modern town, *Mantotte*, is situated, in the vicinity of which an extensive tract is covered with the ruins of an old town of this name, in which great quantities of Roman coins have been dug out. In fact, the whole province where the ruins are bears this name, and in Ptolemy's time the whole of northern Ceylon was no doubt inhabited by Modutis, i. e., Mantotis.

Cosmas, a merchant who afterwards became a monk and wrote his book A. D. 560, was surnamed Indicopleustes, or Indian traveller, although he had never reached that country, but obtained his information about Ceylon from his kinsman, Sopater. He states³⁶ that many ships from the whole of India, Persia and Ethiopia congregate in the island of Ceylon ($\Sigma\epsilon\lambda\epsilon\delta\bar{\iota}\beta\alpha$), because it is situated in the centre of all countries, and likewise despatches vessels in several directions. They bring from the *further* waters, as well as from Sina, and from other emporia, silk, aloe, cloves and Tzandana³⁷ for barter. Also yet other goods which they send to the nations of the *anterior* seas, namely, to Male (Malabar), where the pepper grows, to Caliani (near Bombay), where brass is procured and sesam (no doubt sandal) wood.

But Sind is the commencement of India, because the Indus separates this country from Persia. The more celebrated emporia, continues Cosmas, are Sindus (the mouth of the Indus), Orrhota (Surat), Calliana (near Bombay), Sibor (?) and Male (Malabar), wherein 5 empo-

³⁶ Cosmo AEgyptii Monachi Christiana Topographia, &c.; in Montfaucon's Collectio nova Patrum et scriptorum Graecorum. Paris 1707. Vol. ii., fol. 336, 338.

³⁷ Probably Agila-wood, usually considered to be sandal.

ria :—Parti, Mangaruth (Mangalore), Salopatana, Nalopatana, Pudapatana. Beyond these, at a distance of a journey of five days and of as many nights, is Salediba, that is, Taprobane. Then further on the mainland is Marvallo (Manaar), where the (pearl) shells are fished, and further Caber (Cavery), where the Alabanden (a gem ?) is found. In the rear of it the region which produces cloves, and lastly Sina, which furnishes silk ; but further on there is no more any land, only the ocean surrounds the east there.

The population of Ceylon was governed by two kings. The sovereign of the central mountainous country, where cinnamon was cultivated and precious stones came from, waged war with the other king, or probably several princes who held sway over the shores with the ports and emporia. Sopater mentions a Christian colony from Persia, with an ordained presbyter as well as a deacon ; these were no doubt Persian, Nestorians and merchants, but in those parts also other foreigners, chiefly Arabs, sojourned. Also Ethiopian merchants from Adule bartered their gold for Indian goods, as well as the Hemyarites from Aden in Yemen, who sailed like the Persian merchants along the shores as far as Sind, and thence to Ceylon, where also Chinese arrived in their junks.

It is certain that the original home of the cinnamon tree was Ceylon, whence it was in course of time introduced into some other tropical countries, but the most perfect cinnamon is still grown in that island. As coming from the south of the inhabited earth, from Arabia, Herodotus adduces frankincense, myrrh, cassia, and with other spices also *Kinnamomon* as the most precious article which the Arabs brought, but knew not in what country it grew, supposing it however most probably to come from the country where Dionysius had spent his youth. Accordingly he had obtained from the far East also the name with the article, which we however do not know of having been the present cinnamon of Ceylon, or whether his so-called cassia was the coarser sort of cinnamon produced from the *Laurus cassia* on the continent of India. The name however, as well as the article itself, may have arrived from the country of Indian nations.

The conch or chank-shell—*concha* of the Romans, and *sangala* of Sanskrit writers—has been from the earliest times one of the chief products of Ceylon, and probably a source of revenue. When the island was in the possession of the Dutch, they organized a fishery of

this shell at Jaffnapatam, which has been considerably neglected. At present the most important chank-banks are on the north side of the island Manaar, at the north-western extremity of Ceylon. Chank fishing differs however from that of the pearl-oyster. When the sea is calm, and the fisherman perceives in the limpid water such a chank moving in the depth, he follows its track, and is sure to be led to a large chank-bank, where he can obtain a rich find. Not only the farming out of this fishery was a considerable source of revenue to the government of Ceylon, but the export-duty placed on the shells yielded another. The shell is exported in great quantities from Jaffnapatam to India, where it is sawn up into rings of all sizes to form bracelets, anklets and toelets for Hindu women; the chief market however is in Bengal, where many thousands of whole shells are purchased, and play a part in funeral ceremonies. The chank—spelt شنق by Albyrany and شنك by Persian authors—is one of the attributes of Vishnu, and the blowing of it is one of the chief features of temple-music, but more particularly among Buddhists.

Fishing for the pearl-oyster (*Mytilus marginiferus*, or *Meleagrina marginifera*,) takes place now, as in ancient times, in the gulf of Manaar, on the banks of the Condatchi, as far as Aripo, near Tuticorin, and is a great source of revenue as well as of trade.

In the *Periplus*, *Kolkhoi*, i. e., Tuticorin, is mentioned where the fishing for pearls is carried on, but condemned criminals are employed in this service; another place where this industry was carried on is *Angalou*, now Palk Bay; and another, *Palaisimoundou*, the former name of which was Taprobane; this is *Tamraparni*, the name of the spot where the Magadha colonists first landed in Ceylon, and which was afterwards extended to the whole island.

AET. VI.—Dharmasindhu, or the Ocean of Religious Rites, by the Priest Kashinatha. Translated from the Sanscrit and commented upon by the Rev. A. BOURQUIN. (Art. 2nd.)

[Read 15th July 1881.]

CHAPTER IV.

COMMON DEFINITION OF TITHIS (OR DATES).⁶⁴

There are two kinds of Tithis, viz., the Complete Tithi and the Defective Tithi.

Counting from sunrise, that Tithi which includes fully 60 Ghatikas is a Complete Tithi; that differing from it is a Defective Tithi.

The Defective Tithi is itself also of two kinds, viz., the Pure Tithi and the Encroached Tithi.

The Tithi which stretches from sunrise to sunset or, at (holy) times like Shivarátra⁶⁵ and others,⁶⁶ up to midnight, is a Pure Tithi; that differing from it is an Encroached Tithi.

The Encroachment is also of two kinds: the Morning Encroachment and the Evening Encroachment.

When the point of contact of one Tithi with the next occurs within 6 ghatikas measured from sunrise, then this (encroachment of the

⁶⁴ Cf. note 20 on the origin of Tithis, where we have shown them to be, in spite of the shine of astronomical reality lent to them by their relative inequalities following the law of the inequality of the moon's motion, but of an astrological character, resting, as they do, on a merely arbitrary division of the moon's orbit into 30 parts.

⁶⁵ Shivarátra or "Night of Shiva" is the day of vigil and fasting held in honour of Shiva and falling on the 14th Tithi of every month, but especially the 14th of the month Māgha and stretching up to midnight, after which time only cooked food may be taken. The ground of this vigil is the legend that a hunter obtained Moksha or final deliverance from active life and the awful course of transmigration, by his shaking down from a Bilva tree, upon which he had climbed to observe a deer, throughout the night, leaves upon a Lingam, Shiva's Phallus, and thus, though unintentionally, propitiated that god and gained his good-will.

⁶⁶ Like, for instance, Gokuláshtami and others which will be described further on in the translation, and the fasting of which lasts also up to midnight.

first Tithi upon the solar day of the following Tithi) is the Morning Encroachment; but when the point of contact occurs within the 6 ghaṭikas preceding sunset, then this (encroachment of the second Tithi upon the solar day of the first Tithi) is the Evening Encroachment (*cf.* note 67).

This Encroachment will be further explained in connection with the sacrificial vow of the eleventh Tithi. With certain peculiar Tithis the Encroachment is of greater length; the 5th Tithi, for instance, encroaches upon the 6th by 12 ghaṭikas, the 10th encroaches upon the 11th by 15 ghaṭikas and the 14th upon the 15th by 18 ghaṭikas.⁶⁷ Now, these Encroached Tithis may be taken for the performance of some rites, while they must be rejected for some others.

There being no doubt concerning the Complete Tithi and the Pure Tithi, a special definition of them is not necessary.

In connection with prohibitions a definition of the Defective Tithi is also unnecessary, for, according to the text "The prohibition concerns only the (settled) time of the abstention,"⁶⁸ the Tithi only must be considered which includes that very time in which something is prohibited, like, for instance, the eating of cocoanuts and other edibles on the 8th and other Tithis.

Here follows a definition of the Appointed (times for the performance of) sacrificial vows and other rites.

Concerning this point, that Tithi must be taken which includes the time appointed for each rite. For instance, the worship and other rites connected with the sacrificial vow of Vināyakachaturthi⁶⁹ being appointed for the middle of the day, that Tithi must be taken which includes the middle of the day. When a Tithi stretching over (parts of) two days either includes or does not include, or nearly includes the time appointed for a rite, then may, according to the text on "Pairs,"

⁶⁷ The term "Encroachment of one Tithi upon the next" is properly speaking a slip of language, for a Tithi does not encroach upon the other but upon the solar day in which the other Tithi occurs.

⁶⁸ The author does not say from which of the works named in note 19 he quotes here.

⁶⁹ Vināyaka is another name of Ganésha or Ganapati described in note 6; Chaturthi is the 4th Tithi of the month. Vināyakachaturthi, more commonly called Ganéshachaturthi, is therefore the 4th Tithi of every light half month, and is called so because it is dedicated to that god. The word "chaturthi" after Vināyaka is not in the text, but has been put into the translation by me for the sake of clearness, as this passage clearly refers to that holy Tithi.

either the preceding Encroached Tithi or the following Encroached Tithi be taken. The text on "Pairs" is as follows : "The Pairs of Two and the Fires ; of the Ages and the Elements ; of Six and the Sages ; of the Vasus and the Holes ; of the Rudras and the 12th ; of the 14th and the Full Moon Date ; of the Last Date of the Dark Moon and the First Date of the Light Moon, are very propitious."⁷⁰ Now here "Two" stands for the 2nd Tithi or date, "Fires" for the 3rd Tithi (&c.), and the 2nd Tithi is to be taken which is encroached by the 3rd Tithi, and the 3rd is to be taken which is encroached by the 2nd. Thus is made the Pair of the 2nd and the 3rd Tithi, the Pair of the 4th and the 5th, of the 6th and the 7th, of the 8th and the 9th, of the 11th and the 12th, of the 14th and the 15th or full moon date, and of the 15th of the dark moon and the 1st of the (following) bright moon.

In some cases the definition given by special texts such as the following "For the sacrificial vow of Ganapati of the 4th Tithi the third broken Tithi of his mother"⁷¹ is commended," should be observed. Should the Tithi which, according to a special text, is to be taken, be found not to include the exact time ordered for a (certain) rite,⁷² then should the regulation of general texts be followed. Now these

⁷⁰ To understand this passage one must remember that there are three Fires (*cf.* note 30) and that therefore the word "Fires" means three or the 3rd Tithi; that there are four Ages or Yugas (*cf.* note 60), and therefore the word "Ages" stands for the 4th Tithi; that there are five elements, and this word therefore stands for the 5th Tithi; that there are seven Sages corresponding with the seven stars of Ursa Major, and the word "Sages" therefore means 7th Tithi; that the Vasus, a kind of heavenly beings, are eight, viz., Apa, Dhruva, Soma, Dhava, Anila, Pávaka, Prafyúsha, and Prabhásá, and therefore the word "Vásus" stands for the 8th Tithi; that there are nine bodily holes, viz., the ears, the eyes, the nostrils, the mouth, the urethra and the anus, and the word "Holes" therefore stands for the 9th Tithi; that there are ten Rudras, a kind of celestial creatures, whose names, according to the Váyu Purána are Ajuikapád, Ahvibradhra, Hara, Nirrita, Ishvara, Bhuvana, Angíraka, Ardhaketu, Mrityu, Sarpa and Kápalin, and that therefore the word "Rudras" stands for the 11th Tithi; that finally "the Full Moon Date" is the 15th Tithi of the light half month, and the "Last Date of the Dark Moon" the 15th of the dark half month.

⁷¹ The mother of Ganesha or Ganapati (*cf.* note 6) is Párvati, the wife of Shiva. She is the tutelary divinity of the 3rd Tithi, while her son is that of the 4th (*cf.* note 60).

⁷² There are some sacrificial rites or ceremonies for the performance of which certain hours of the day are specified as absolutely necessary, like, for instance, the One-Meal-a-Day-Rite described in the next chapter, and many others, in connection with which the middle hours of the day only can be used.

(general) texts rule that, "The Tithi which includes a sunrise should be known as a complete Tithi for the performance of rites like ablutions, gifts and incantations (muttered and counted on a rozary)."

Thus is the common definition (of Tithis), the fourth chapter.

CHAPTER V.

DESCRIPTION OF SPECIAL RITES.

There are two kinds of rites, viz., those for the Gods and those for one's ancestors' manes.

The rites for the Gods are of six kinds, viz., the One-Meal-a-Day-Rite,⁷³ the Night-Meal-Rite, the Non-begging Meal-Rite, the Fast, the Sacrificial Vow⁷⁴ and the Donation-Rite.

Eating once only in the middle of the day and but one kind of food is the One-Meal-a-Day-Rite.

Eating in the night at the time of evening-tide is the Night-Meal-Rite. Eating the food which is received on the same day and without begging is the Non-begging-Meal-Rite, yet some say, that eating the food which has been received on previous days and prepared by one's wife, son, &c., without begging it from them, is the Non-begging-Meal-Rite.

Eating neither by day or by night is the Fast.⁷⁵

Special rites as, for instance, sacrificial worship⁷⁶ and such like, are Sacrificial Vows. Renouncing one's right to one's property and giving it to others is the Donation-Rite.⁷⁷

⁷³ Quite literally translated the word "Ekabhukta" means only "One Meal" (*scil.*, a day). However, though this meal is usually not connected with special religious ceremonies and sacrificial offerings others than those performed in connection with ordinary daily meals, it is itself a penitential observance prescribed to those who have come under God's displeasure like the widow, the widower, the sonless, &c., bears thus a special religious character, and may very properly be called a "Rite." The use of the word "Rite" in translating the following observances needs no explanation, as our author calls them Naktavrata, Dánavrata, &c.

⁷⁴ The word we translate thus is "Vrata," cf. note 63.

⁷⁵ One must not imagine, however, that this fast is necessarily very rigid, as, according to the teaching of next chapter, a whole series of different kinds of food may be eaten without detriment to the fast.

⁷⁶ The word we translate thus is "Púja," which cannot be translated by "worship" alone, as it is always accompanied by a sacrificial offering.

⁷⁷ The word thus translated is "Dána," which some erroneously render by "Charity" or "Almsgiving-Rite," for the gifts, as will appear throughout the book, are not made to the poor but to Brahmins, and not to them as poor, but to them as priests.

The above rites of One-Meal-a-Day, &c., are of three kinds ; sometimes they are to be performed as complement-parts of the Sacrificial Vows, sometimes they are to be performed instead of the fast of the 11th Tithi, and sometimes they are self-depending. Those which are performed as complement-parts (of other rites) and those which are substitutes for other rites will be described in connection with those chief rites (to which they are thus related).

Here follows a description of the self-depending Rites.

In connection with them is the day divided into five parts.⁷⁸ The first part is called "early morning," the second is called "forenoon," the third "mid-day," the fourth "afternoon" and the fifth "late afternoon." The six ghatikas following sunset constitute the Evening Tide.⁷⁹ For the One-Meal-a-Day-Rite the Tithi which among these times stretches over the mid-day time should be taken. Here, again, disregarding the first half of this Tithi's day,⁸⁰ which has 30 ghatikas, and beginning with the 16th ghatika, one should count 3 ghatikas as the best time for the meal. The time following thereon up to evening is of an inferior nature.

As to the extension of the Tithi on to the mid-day time, it is of six kinds, viz., when the Tithi reaches that chief time on the previous day, when the Tithi reaches it on the following day, when it reaches it on both days, when it does not reach it on either day, when with exact equality it reaches it nearly on both days, and when it reaches it nearly on both days but not equally. Now there can be no doubt as to this, that, when the Tithi reaches the chief time (of midday) on the previous day, the previous day should be taken (for the performance of such rites),⁸¹ and when it reaches it on the following day, then should the following day be taken. When the Tithi reaches it on both days, then should the text on "Pairs"⁸² be followed ; when it does not reach it on either day, but extends only to the inferior time of both days, then should

⁷⁸ "Day" means here of course the time from 6 o'clock in the morning to 6 o'clock in the evening, and as such a day consists of 30 ghatikas (*cf.* the text to note 31) every one of these 5 times is equal to 6 ghatikas.

⁷⁹ The word we translate thus is "pradosha." It implies something unholy, and its time is considered unpropitious to the reading of the Vedas and other most holy rites.

⁸⁰ We must never forget that a Tithi is very different from a day (*cf.* note 20 on Tithis).

⁸¹ *Scil.* such rites to the performance of which the time of mid-day is prescribed.

⁸² *Cf.* on this point the text of note 70, Chapter IV.

the previous day be taken ; when it reaches it nearly on both days equally, then should the previous day be taken ; when it reaches it nearly on both days though not equally, and there is sufficient time for the performance of a rite on both days, then should the text on " Pairs" be followed ; but if there is not sufficient time for the performance of the rite on either day,⁸³ then should the first day be taken.

Description of the Night-Meal-Rite.

For the Night-Meal-Rite the Tithi which includes the Evening Tide of the six ghaṭikas following sunset should be taken. If from the two days of a Tithi, the Tithi on the first day includes that Evening Tide and on the second only nearly reaches it, then should that day in which the Tithi includes it be taken.

A usual meal also should not be taken, but after the evening twilight of three ghaṭikas after sunset is passed, as eating, sleeping, sexual intercourse and study are forbidden during the time of twilight. The ascetic, the sonless, the widower, and the widow, to whom eating in the night is forbidden, ought on Tithis which include the " Late Afternoon," to eat the Night Meal at the time of the eighth division⁸⁴ of the day. Thus also should the Night-Meal-Rite performed to the honour of the sun, on a Tithi which includes the Late Afternoon, take place at daytime. When the Tithi includes the Evening Tide on both days, then should the second day be taken ; when it does not include it on either day, then should likewise the second day, the Late Afternoon, the eighth division of the day, be taken for the performance of the Night

⁸³ The word I translate in this sentence by " day" is Tithi, which is an irregularity, but it can bear in this place no other meaning. It will be now and then seen that the author of our work confounds the two, though they differ so widely (*cf.* note 20). The meaning of the text is of course that a rite which requires four ghaṭikas for its performance, having to be done on a certain Tithi, the 4th Tithi for instance, and at a specified time, the chief time described above for instance, which lasts from the 16th to the 18th ghaṭika, if that 4th Tithi should begin with the 17th ghaṭika of the previous day and end just with the 18th ghaṭika of the following day, including thus only two ghaṭikas of the " chief time" on the first day and but one ghaṭika of the " chief time" on the second day, both times being insufficient for the rite, which should last four ghaṭikas, then should the first day be taken.

These rules are of course quite arbitrary.

⁸⁴ According to some the day of 80 ghaṭikas is to be divided into eight parts of $3\frac{1}{4}$ ghaṭikas each. The eighth division would thus correspond with the time between half-past four and six o'clock in the evening. This time is kept up to this present day on the occasions and by the persons named above, for whom there is a general rule that they should not eat oftener than once a day.

Meal-Rite, but not night time. When the Tithi nearly includes the Evening Tide on both days equally, then should the second day be taken. When it includes it nearly on both days, but not equally, then should the first day, in which the Evening Tide included by the Tithi is longer, be taken ; that is, if that included longer time is sufficient for the worship and the meal ; if it is insufficient, then should not the first day, though it includes somewhat more of it, but the second day, be taken, following the rule (given above) concerning the Tithi which nearly includes the Evening Tide on both days equally. The meal of this Night-Meal-Rite being ordered by scriptural texts, must be eaten at night time even on Sundays, and at times of the sun's entrance into the mansions or of any other solar occasions ; for the prohibition to eat at night on Sundays, or at the time of any other solar occasion, concerns meals eaten according to one's own wish (and not meals ordered by Scripture). The Night-Meal-Rite as ordered by the Scriptures to be performed instead of the fast of the 11th and other Tithis, must take place during that day-time which is ordered for the fast.

The Non-begging-Meal-Rite, which can be performed either by day or by night, follows the rule on fasts.

The definition of the rites for the ancestors' manes, which are to be performed on the day in which the Tithi includes the afternoon, will be given further on in connection with the explanation of each of them.

When the One-Meal-a-Day-Rite, the Night-Meal-rite, the Non-begging-Meal-Rite and the Fast are performed on the first day of the Tithi, then must on the following day, at the end of the Tithi, their completing break-fast⁵⁵ take place ; but when the Tithi reaches over the third watch of the day, then, according to Madhava, must the completing break-fast take place in the morning.

Thus is the definition of rites such as the One-Meal-a-Day, &c., the fifth chapter.

CHAPTER VI.

Description of Sacrificial Vows.

Women and Shudras are not allowed to fast more than two nights. Without the permission of their husbands women should not perform fasts, sacrificial vows, &c. On fasting days and days on which the

⁵⁵ This break-fast constitutes the end of full fasts or of partial fasts like the One-Meal-a-Day, the Night-Meal, &c., and consists generally in choice food and, at least now, unspirituous drink. It is a kind of revenge-taking feast, much after the manner of the Romish carnival.

ancestors' commemorative funeral rites are performed, one should not cleanse his teeth with a stick,⁸⁶ but with leaves, or with twelve mouthfuls of water. Holding a copper vessel filled with water, and the face turned towards the north, one should in the morning resolve upon sacrificial vows, like fasts and others.⁸⁷ Sacrificial vows should not begin or end in the intercalary month, during the setting of Jupiter and other planets, at the time of the inauspicious (astrological) conjunctions of Vaidhrīti and Vyatipāta,⁸⁸ and of the Karāṇa called Vishti,⁸⁹ on

⁸⁶ This stick is usually a small twig of the Bābhul tree (a sort of Acacia Arabica), the end of which is beaten until its fibres form a sort of small brush, with which each tooth is rubbed in turn, and which must then at once be torn into pieces and thrown away. Bundles of such twigs are sold at all Indian bazaars.

⁸⁷ This act of resolving is performed in the manner described in note 27. The sight of multitudes of Brahmins and other orthodox Hindus coming out in the morning each holding a waterpot and murmuring this resolution is quite amazing to a newly-arrived European spectator.

⁸⁸ There are 27 such conjunctions, the above Vyatipāta being the 17th, and Vaidhrīti the 27th. Their names in due order are as follows:—Vishkambha, Pṛiti, Āyushmān, Saubhāgīa, Shobhana, Atiganda, Tukarmā, Dhṛiti, Shula, Gāndā, Vṛidhi, Dhruva, Vyāghata, Harshana, Vajra, Sidhi, Vyatipāta, Varyāna, Parigha, Shiva, Sidha, Sādhyā, Shubha, Shukla, Brahmā, Aindra and Vaidhrīti. Some, as for instance the two above named, are entirely unholy, while others are holy in their beginning and unholy in their end, or *vice versa*, their auspiciousness or ominousness being already implied in their etymological meaning. They are of course entirely astrological and are adjoined to the Thitis in regular order, and lend to them their own character of sacredness or desacredness. To find which of these astrological conjunctions is to be adjoined to each Tithi, the Jyotishasāra gives the following rule: “Mark the asterism (*cf.* note 25) of the sun on that Tithi, and count the number of asterisms which are between it and the preceding asterism of Pushya, both included; then, again, mark the asterism of the moon on that Tithi, count the number of asterisms which are between it and the preceding asterism of Shravana, add both numbers, subtract from the sum 27 (being the number of astrological conjunctions), and the rest will give you the number in due order of the yoga of that Tithi.” The Grahalāgava gives a more complicated rule to find the yoga or astrological conjunction of a Tithi, but we have said enough to show the unreality of its character, and a further description would be useless.

⁸⁹ This is the 7th of the astrological half Thitis called Karāṇas, of which there are eleven, viz., Bava, Bālava, Kaulava, Taitila, Garaja, Vanija, Vishti (called also Bhadra and Kalgāni), Shakuni, Chatushpad, Naga and Kimstughna. Each of the 30 Thitis of the month is divided into two parts, making 60 Half Thitis, to each of which a Karāṇa is adjoined; but as there are only 11 Karāṇas, the first 7, from Bava to Vishti, are repeated eight times over, covering thus 56 Half Thitis, wherefore they are called constant Karāṇas, leaving the 4 last of the 60 Half Thitis to be covered by the 4 last of the 11 Karāṇas.

rejectable days⁹⁰ and on the last Tithi of the dark half month. Thus also should on Defective Tithis no sacrificial vow be begun or finished according to the precept of Satyavrata,⁹¹ "The Tithi which includes a sunrise but does not stretch on to mid-day is a Defective Tithi, and on such a date no sacrificial vow should be begun or finished." Patience, truth, pity, donations, purity, restraining the senses, worship of the gods, oblations, pleasure and abstaining from theft are binding during the time of sacrificial vows.⁹²

Herein should the peculiarity of the voluntary sacrificial vows be known, that the burnt-offering (connected with it) should be performed with the Holy Sounds.⁹³ When the sacrificial vow of a fast

⁹⁰ Tuesday and Saturday chiefly.

⁹¹ The author of Dharmashastra.

⁹² Such a precept confining virtuous actions within certain limits may be surprising to a Western mind, not to a modern orthodox Hindu however, for in the two following verses,

भेदानृतस्त्वेयविषाभिशब्दवध्याभिघाताहवशास्यादंभान्
सेनानिवेशाकरथातुहेमप्रवालरक्तानि कुजे विदध्यात्
लोहाश्मसीसत्रपुशब्ददासपापानृतस्त्वेयविषासवाद्यां
प्रवेशद्विपञ्चदीक्षा स्थिरं च कर्मकंसुतेऽहि कुर्यात्

the Jyotishasara teaches that on Tuesdays and Saturdays one may cheat, provoke, betray, steal, lie, poison, murder, destroy, sin and commit other heinous crimes, though this probably does not mean that one *must*, or even that *every one may* perpetrate them, but rather that those who are in a special manner under the influence of Badness, the third of the three natural qualities which are the components of this universe, being compelled by their own nature to commit such acts, may do so impunily only on Tuesdays and Saturdays, which days thus become a kind of safety-valve to the overstrained evil propensities of Badness, from the influence of which as little as from the influence of the two other natural qualities of Goodness and Indifference no one within this universe, not even Brahm himself, as far as a fourth part of him has been developed into this universe, can save himself.

⁹³ The word translated here by Holy Sounds is *Vyāhṛī*, which refers chiefly to the three words *Bhur*, *Bhuvar*, *Svar*, which are pronounced at the beginning of nearly all incantations, prayers and rites. *Bhur* is the earth, *Bhuvar* the space between the earth and the sun, *Svar* the space between the sun and the Polar star. Beside these 3 worlds there are other 4, making in all 7 supramundane worlds, every next being higher and better than the preceding. The names of the last four are *Mahar*, *Janar*, *Tapar* and *Satya loka*. The souls that reach this last one are said to be exempted from further transmigration. Often is the name of the fourth, *Mahar*, and seldom the names of the last three used in connection with rites in the same manner as *Bhur*, *Bhuvar*, *Svar*.

is performed to the honour of a certain deity, then must one worship that deity, spiritually contemplate it, listen to recitations of its deeds, praise and glorify it by repeating its (numerous) names,⁹⁴ &c. During a fast one should forsake the look and smell of food, the anointing oneself with oil, the chewing of pan-supári,⁹⁵ and the besmearing of one's body with fragrant unguents.⁹⁶ Married women in performing vows during the happy time of their wife-hood should not forsake the oil-ointment, the pan-supari, &c.

The following eight things do not impair a vow (with its fasts) : Water, roots, fruits, milk, clarified butter (*cf* note 75), the (satisfaction of a) Brahmin's desires, the command of the family priest-teacher, and medicine. Should through neglect or other causes the vow be broken, then must a new vow with a three days' fast and shaving be observed. When one is too weak to perform a fast, then he should instead of it and as a penance give a repast to a Brahmin,⁹⁷ or the equivalent in money, or repeat 1,000 Gáyatri-incantations,⁹⁸ or perform

⁹⁴ Vishnu, for instance, has 1,000 names which to repeat in due order is highly meritorious.

⁹⁵ The renowned leaf of the Piper Betel tree, with a piece of the Areca nut, lime, cardamoms, tobacco, and other ingredients which are chewed by natives after meals and presented to guests and visitors.

⁹⁶ The most used is powdered sandalwood mixed with sweet oil, also turmeric, aloë wood and saffron. It is rubbed on the forehead, arms, breast or sometimes on the whole body.

⁹⁷ If the giver is a Brahmin, the repast may be given in a cooked form, but if he is of another caste, then must the food be given in kind.

⁹⁸ The word Gáyatri means song or hymn. This name is given to that kind of hymns of the Rig Veda, the metre of which consists of a triplet of three divisions, with eight syllables each, but especially to that peculiar hymn contained in Rig Veda iii., 62, 10, which accompanies every religious rite, is considered as the most holy incantation of the Brahmins and other twice-born, and is so sacred that it is a great crime to any other but that privileged caste to pronounce it. It is usually preceded by the following four words :

ॐ भूर्भुवः स्वः

Om, bhur, bhuvas, svah,

" Om" being the mystic monosyllable placed at the commencement of Hindu works, and uttered at the beginning and end of the reading of the Vedas and of prayers, so as not to be heard by profane ears. In latter Hinduism this word is said to be a compound of the three letters a, u, m, which stand respectively for Vishnu, Shiva and Brahma. But in the pantheistical Vedic Upanisads the word " Om" stands for Akshara, the Indivisible All. For the meaning of Bhur, Bhuvas, Svah, compare note 98. The Gáyatri itself is composed of 24 syllables,

12 times the breathing ceremony.⁹⁹ If one having made a vow is not able to perform it, then he should have it done by a substitute. One's son, wife, husband, brother, priest, friend, &c., may be one's substitutes. If the son or any other of the above named acts as a substitute for his father or for any other (friend or relative), he has a part in the recompense of the vow. The fast is broken by drinking water repeatedly, by chewing pan-supari once only, by sleeping at day-time, and by sexual intercourse, which is of eight kinds, viz., reflecting on it, singing about it, flirting, wanton looking on to it, concealed conversation in a secret place, the resolving to do it, the setting about doing it, and finally the committing it.¹⁰⁰ However if one is in danger of death there is no harm in drinking water repeatedly. Water contained in skins, other milk than that of the cow, lentils, limes and lime made from shells (*cf.* note 95) are reckoned as meat, and should be avoided at the time of a vow. Shedding tears or getting angry breaks the vow at once. If one during the time of his sacrificial vow eats food given by another, then does he who gives the food get the benefit of the vow. Sesamum seed and kidney beans excepted, all kinds of pulse, as peas, &c., the spotted bean (*Phaseolus Radiatus*), roots (like radishes, yams, &c.), all that is acid, salt sweet, as also animal food, should be avoided during the performance of vows. The *Panicum Colonum* grain, wild rice and wheat are not detrimental to a sacrificial fast. Rice, kidney-beans, barley, sesamum and *Panicum Italicum* seed, *Pisum*

and runs as follows :—

तत्सवितुर्वरेण्यं भर्गो द्वे वस्त्रं धीमहि
धियो यौ नः पञ्चादयात्

Tat savitur varenyam bhargo devasya dhimahi dhiyo yo nah prachodayat, the t of the last word being counted as a full syllable, and its literal and sole meaning is as follows :—

“ We meditate on the glorious splendour of the divine Sun. May he enlighten our understandings.”

The word translated by “ Sun” is “ Savitri,” and we follow herein the great Commentator Sāyana when he says that Savitri is always the sun, but often the not yet risen Sun. Hindu scholiasts spin the meaning of the Gāyatri into a length which its grammar does not permit.

⁹⁹ This breathing-ceremony is performed in the following manner :—one must close one's right nostril with the thumb and inhale the air through the left nostril only, then close both nostrils, and keep in the inhaled air as long as possible, then open the right nostril for exhalation, keeping the air out as long as possible, then again close with the thumb as before the right nostril to inhale through the left, and so on, repeating the process time after time up to the number prescribed.

¹⁰⁰ It is circumstanced here as it is with the text to note 92, that bad actions are to be avoided only at the holy times of vows, &c.

Sativum, peas and other grains; red radishes, the Arum Campanulatum root and other bulbs; rock-salt from Sindh,¹⁰¹ marine salts; the produce of the cow, such as coagulated milk, clarified butter and milk; the fruit of the Jacka-fruit tree, of the mango tree and of the cocoanut tree; pot-herbs, the Piper Longum berry, cumin seed, dry ginger, tamarind, plantains, the Anona Reticulata fruit, myrobalans, sugar and all kinds of molasses, are all fit for oblations cooked without oil. Thus also are, say some, the cow's buttermilk and the buffalo's clarified butter.

Where the manner of the sacrificial vow is not specified, should an image of silver or gold of the weight of one Māsha (about 17 grains troy) be made and worshipped.

When the ingredients for the sacrificial vows are not specified, should an oblation of clarified butter be given. When the deity is not specified, should Prajapati¹⁰² be taken. When the incantation is not specially named, should that called Vyāhriti¹⁰³ be used everywhere. When the number of burnt offerings to be given is not specified, then should either 108 or 28 or 8 be taken.

In connection with (the performance of) a sacrificial vow when the fast is finished, should a repast be made to a Brahmin. When the concluding part of a vow is not specified, should one give a cow or gold to a Brahmin. The (incantation) word of a Brahmin is also a fitting component of a sacrificial vow, but everywhere must the Brahmin's word be requited by a present. A man who, having once resolved upon a sacrificial vow, gives it up, is like even unto the Chandala.¹⁰⁴ Widows during vows and other rites should not wear gay or red coloured but only white clothes. Women at the time of delivery, menstruation, fever, or during an undertaken vow, should perform the rites of the body (as for instance fasting) themselves, but should have the other rites, as for instance the sacrificial worship (of the gods), performed by a substitute. But a rite which has not yet been begun should not be performed during delivery and such like times. Sub-

¹⁰¹ The country near the Indus river.

¹⁰² Prajāpati in the Vedas is the epithet often given to the following gods : Sun, Moon, Ether, Fire, Winds, &c; at a later time it was made to a separate deity, and invoked as the creator and the bestower of progeny and cattle; sometimes even identified with Brahm, the Universal Essence. In Purānic mythology the name Prajāpati is given to the ten lords of created beings, or great progenitors, the names of which are, according to Manu, 1-34, Marichi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vasishta, Prachetas or Daksha, Bhṛigu and Narada.

¹⁰³ Compare note 93 and also 98.

¹⁰⁴ The lowest and most despised caste.

stitutes are not allowed for rites to be performed in view of a special blessing, for a substitute may be taken only for obligatory constant rites,¹⁰⁵ or for occasional rites which are bound with special times¹⁰⁶; yet some say that a substitute is permissible even for rites performed in view of a special blessing, if the rite had already been begun (when the preventing sickness, &c., set in). No substitute is allowed for repeating the holy incantations, or to the householder (who is the leading person in the sacrificial vow), or for performing rites to the tutelary divinities (of certain days) and oblations to Fire.¹⁰⁷

Nothing prohibited should be taken as a substitute, say some. When several sacrificial vows or other rites fall on the same day, should those which are not contrary to each other, as, for instance, donations to Brahmins and (daily) burnt-offerings be performed one after the other; but when they are opposed to each other, as, for instance, the Night-Meal-Rite and fasting, then one of them should be performed by oneself, and the other by one's son, wife, &c. When the concluding part¹⁰⁸ of a sacrificial vow falls on the 14th and on the 8th Tithi, on which dates (according to the rule) no meal should be eaten during day-time, is the meal of that concluding part nevertheless allowed (at day time) according to the rule on concluding rites; for the above prohibition of the 14th and the 8th Tithi concerns only the usual meal one takes according to one's own pleasure daily. Thus also when unauspicious Tithis, like the 4th and others, on which meals should be eaten at night, fall on a Sunday, on which day meals should be eaten at day time, should the meal nevertheless be eaten at night. When a day happens to be both the 8th Tithi, on which eating by day is prohibited, and a Sunday, on which eating by night is prohibited, then should, taking both prohibitions, a fast be kept. When on the same day occur both an entrance of the sun into one of the mansions, at which time a householder who has a son should not fast, and the 8th or any other Tithis, on which meals are prohibited, then should one eat but very little, and thus keep the fast.¹⁰⁹ If during the performance of the

¹⁰⁵ Like, for instance, the three daily worships.

¹⁰⁶ As for instance the rites for the ancestors' manes (*cf.* note 47), or in connection with the birth of a child, or at the time of solar conjunctions, &c.

¹⁰⁷ Though Fire does not seem to be personified by modern Hindus in the same manner as it was in Vedic times, yet oblations to Fire are still obligatorily performed every day.

¹⁰⁸ The concluding part of nearly every rite and fast is a festive meal.

¹⁰⁹ We have already seen in note 75 how a fast is not necessarily broken by enjoying certain kinds of food.

rite called "the penitential vow of the lunar course,"¹¹⁰ the 11th Tithi (with its fast) occurs, should one nevertheless eat the number of mouthfuls falling on that day.¹¹⁰ Thus also should it be held when the fast called Kritchra¹¹¹ occurs (during the penitential vow of the lunar course). In the same manner, too, if the concluding part (*cf.* note 108) of an "intermediate fast"¹¹² falls on the 11th Tithi (with its fast) should one drink water only and thus keep the fast. When the concluding part of the one month's fast,¹¹³ or of the ancestors' funeral rite, or of the Pradosha-rite¹¹⁴ fall on the 12th Tithi with its fast, should the concluding meal rite be made of water. When a solar entrance into a sign, at which time a householder who has a son should not fast, occurs on the 11th Tithi with its fast, then should he drink but very little water and eat some roots, fruits and milk (and thus keep the fast, *cf.* note 75). If two fasts, or two Night-Meal-Rites or two One-Meal-a-Day-Rites fall on the same day, then should the following resolution be declared (*cf.* notes 27 and 87): "By means of this one ceremony shall I perform this (naming it) and that (naming it) fast," and thus the fast, the worship and the burnt offering be performed together. When a fast and a One-Meal-a-Day-Rite fall on the same day, and that day includes parts of two Tithis, then having recourse even to the inferior time of the day,¹¹⁵ the one rite should be performed during the time of the first Tithi and the other

¹¹⁰ The word thus translated is "Chandrāyanam," which is a religious penance regulated by the moon's age. It consists in eating but 15 mouthfuls of rice on the full-moon date, and then decreasing the amount daily by one in accordance with the decreasing moon, in reducing it to 0 on the new moon date, then again in increasing it by one in accordance with the increasing moon until it comes again to 15 on the full moon date. This vow may begin either with 0 at the new moon, or with 15 at the full moon.

¹¹¹ It consists in taking no sustenance but water for a period of three or six or nine or twelve or twenty-one days. Hindus teach with their Shastras that taking but water no one can live more than 21 days; they were therefore much surprised last year to hear that the now famous American, Dr. Tanner, had lived on water for forty days.

¹¹² It consists in fasting on the first day, eating on the second, fasting on the third, and so on during the days fixed for the rite.

¹¹³ *Cf.* note 75.

¹¹⁴ A fasting rite performed to the honour of Shiva on the 13th Tithi. The word "Pradosha" used here differs in its meaning from the use made of it in the text to note 79.

¹¹⁵ This inferior time is usually the latter afternoon, when as a rule no rite ought to be performed.

rite during the time of the second Tithi ; but if that day consists of a single Complete Tithi (cf. Chapter iv.), then one of these rites should be performed by a substitute, such as one's son, &c. Following texts like this, " The rite performed in view of a special blessing is contrary to the constant rite " ¹¹⁶ (cf. note 105) one should investigate which (of two rites falling on one day) should be performed, duly considering whether the one rite is voluntary and in view of a special blessing, and the other obligatorily constant, whether the one has a strong and the other a weak claim, whether they are opposed to each other or not, or whether they may be combined or not.

Thus is the general definition of sacrificial rites, the sixth chapter.

CHAPTER VII.

Description of the First Tithi.

For the worship, the sacrificial vow and other rites of the 1st Tithi of the light half-month (cf. note 20) should the first day of that Tithi be taken, if that day's afternoon is included in the Tithi. According to Madhaváchárya¹¹⁷ that first day should be taken even when its late afternoon only is included in the 1st Tithi. But if the Tithi does not include those portions of the first day, should the second day be taken. In the dark half-month should for the rites of the 1st Tithi always the second day be taken. For fasts also connected with the 1st Tithi of both half-months should the first day encroached by that Tithi be taken (cf. note 67). The declaration of one's resolve (cf. notes 27 and 87) to perform fasts and other rites on the 1st Tithi, including the afternoon of the preceding day, should be made on the morning (of that preceding day). Though the 1st Tithi may not reach back to the (morning) time when that declaration is made, nevertheless should the name of the 1st Tithi and not the name of the previous Tithi, in this case, for instance, the 15th Tithi of the preceding half month, be pronounced (cf. note 27). This rule should be followed also for the declaration of the sacrificial vow, the sacrificial worship or other rites of the 11th Tithi, when they are performed at the time of

¹¹⁶ The author does not say from which of the works named in note 19 he quotes.

¹¹⁷ Often called only Mádhava. He is regarded, together with the renowned Sáyana, as author of the celebrated commentary of the Rig Veda, is the author of the Kálanirnaya, a treatise on times, and of several other works.

the fasting 12th Tithi of the light half-month, that is, the name of the 11th Tithi should be pronounced and not that of the 12th Tithi. But I think that in connection with other rites, such as the three daily worships, the oblation to fire, &c., the name of that Tithi, be it the 12th or another, should be pronounced, which includes the time (in which those rites are performed).

The declaration of rites may take place at dawn before sunrise, or in the morning after sunrise during the two Muhúrtas¹¹⁸ immediately preceding the third Muhúrta (which is forbidden).

Thus is the description of the 1st Tithi, the seventh chapter.

CHAPTER VIII.

Description of the Second Tithi.

For rites connected with the 2nd Tithi of the light half month, the second day encroached upon by that Tithi should be taken. As to the 2nd Tithi of the dark half month one should divide the (first) day on which it falls into two parts, if then the 2nd Tithi stretches on the first part, that first day should be taken, but if it be not the case, then should also here the second day encroached upon by that Tithi be taken.

Thus is the description of the 2nd Tithi, the eighth chapter.

CHAPTER IX.

Description of the Third Tithi.

In connection with the sacrificial vow to Rambhá¹¹⁹ should the first day encroached upon by the 3rd Tithi be taken. For all other rites of the 3rd Tithi except that of Rambhá, when the first day of the 3rd Tithi is encroached upon by the 2nd Tithi by three Muhúrtas (cf. note 118) this first day should be rejected and the second day on which the 3rd Tithi stretches with three Muhúrtas should be taken. If the first day (of the 3rd Tithi) is encroached upon by less than three Muhúrtas by the 2nd Tithi, and the second day is encroached upon also

¹¹⁸ A Muhúrta is equal to two ghaṭikas or 48 minutes (cf. note 31).

¹¹⁹ Rambha is the name usually given to one of the most beautiful of the harlot nymphs called Apsaras, who inhabit the paradise of the god Indra. She is also often identified with Lakshmi (cf. note 9) and is then a kind of popular Venus. The 3rd Tithi of the month Jyoshta is called Rambhá-tritiya, because it is dedicated to that beautiful nymph, and Hindu women bathe and perform other ceremonies to her honour.

by less than three Muhúrtas by the 3rd Tithi, then should the first day be taken. When the first day is encroached upon by the 2nd Tithi by three Muhúrtas, and the second day is encroached upon by the 3rd Tithi by less than three Muhúrtas, should nevertheless this last be taken.

For the sacrificial vow of the 3rd Tithi to Gauri,¹²⁰ the first day of the 3rd Tithi, if it is the least encroached upon by the 2nd Tithi, were it but by one minute of the gnomon's stick,¹²¹ must be rejected, and the second day must be taken even if it includes but a very small part of the 3rd Tithi. But when on account of the shortness of the day¹²² no part of the 3rd Tithi whatsoever stretches on the following day of the 4th Tithi, then must the previous day be taken, even though it were encroached upon by the 2nd Tithi.

When at the time the days are long the 3rd Tithi covers over a first day with 60 ghaṭikas, and stretches on the second day with but a remnant of a ghatika,¹²³ should for the sacrificial vow to Gauri (*cf. notes 120 and 71*) that first full day be rejected and this second day in which the 3rd Tithi comes into contact with the fourth be taken.¹²⁴

Thus is the description of the 3rd Tithi, the ninth chapter.

CHAPTER X.

Description of the Fourth Tithi.

For all rites connected with this 4th Tithi, except the sacrificial vow to Ganeshá, should the day on which this 4th Tithi meets with the 5th be taken.

For the sacrificial vows to Gauri and Ganésha (*cf. notes 69 and 71*) should that day on whose mid-day time the 4th Tithi stretches be taken ;

¹²⁰ Gauri is one of the epithets of Parvati (*cf. note 71*), to whom the 3rd Tithi of every month is dedicated.

¹²¹ Concerning the gnomon's stick, compare note 35.

¹²² That is, when the days being short the 3rd Tithi ends before sunrise. As an instance take the following example : The sun rises, say on a Monday, at 6h. 15m. o'clock ; the third Tithi which began on Sunday stretches on to Monday morning, but ends before sunrise, say at 6h. 10m., then must the Sunday and not the Monday be taken for the rites of the 3rd Tithi.

¹²³ Preference is given to this day because the 3rd Tithi is dedicated to Parváti and the 4th to her son Ganésha, and the day on which both Tithis meet is particularly holy. To understand this passage one must remember that some of the Tithis have more than 66 ghaṭikas, and can include two sunrises.

if it is on its second day that the Tithi includes the mid-day time, then should this second day be taken ; if the Tithi stretching over both days includes the mid-day time of both, or does not include the mid-day or either, or includes it nearly on both days equally, or nearly includes it on both days, but not equally, then should the first day be taken, the day on which the 3rd and the 4th Tithis meet having the preference.

For the sacrificial vows to the Serpentine Demons¹²⁶ should the first day be taken if its mid-day time is included in the 4th Tithi. If on both its days the 4th Tithi includes the mid-day time, or does not include it on either day, or nearly includes it on both days equally, or nearly includes it on both days but not equally, then must the second day, namely, that on which the 4th and the 5th Tithis meet, be taken.

For the rites of the insuspicious 4th Tithi (of the dark-half-month¹²⁸) should that of both days of the Tithi be taken which includes a moon-rise. If it is on the second day that the Tithi includes a moon-rise, then should the second day be taken. If this 4th Tithi includes a moon-rise on both days, then should the first day, namely, that on which the 3rd and the 4th Tithis meet be taken, but if it does not include a moon-rise on either day, should the second be taken.

Thus is the description of the 4th Tithi, the tenth chapter.

CHAPTER XI.

Description of the Fifth Tithi.

For all rites performed on the 5th Tithi of both the light and the dark half-months should the day on which the 4th and the 5th Tithis meet be taken ; except the fast to Skanda,¹²⁹ however, for which rite the day on which the 5th and the 6th Tithis meet must be taken. For the rites to the Serpentine Demons also (*cf.* note 124) the following rule should be followed : that day on which the 5th is encroached upon by the 6th Tithi should be taken ; or when the 5th Tithi encroaches on the 6th Tithi by less than three Muhúrtas (*cf.* note 118) and the 4th Tithi on the 5th also by less than three Muhúrtas, then must this day

¹²⁶ The Nágas are a kind of demons with a human head and a serpent tail. They inhabit Pátála, the lowest of the seven infernal worlds described in note 11, the names of which are : Atala, Vitala, Sutala, Rasátala, Jalátala, Mahátala and Pátála.

¹²⁸ In contradistinction to the 4th Tithi of the light half-month, which is auspicious.

¹²⁹ For Skanda, the son of Shiva, compare note 11.

on which the 4th and the 5th Tithis meet be taken ; but when the 4th Tithi breaks up the 5th by more than three Muhúrtas, then must the other day (that is the day on which the 5th and the 6th Tithis meet) be taken, even though it had only two Muhúrtas of the 5th Tithi.

Thus is the description of the 5th Tithi, the eleventh chapter.

CHAPTER XII.

Description of the Sixth Tithi.

For the sacrificial vow of the 6th Tithi to Skanda (*cf. note 11*) should the previous day which is encroached upon by the 5th Tithi be taken. For all other rites of the 6th Tithi should its second day which is encroached upon by the 7th Tithi be taken ; yet if the first day of the 6th Tithi is encroached upon by the 5th Tithi by less than six Muhúrtas (*cf. note 118*) then should that first day be taken.

When the day on which the 6th and the 7th Tithis meet is a Sunday, it is called "the Lotus-conjunction."¹²⁷

Thus is the description of the 6th Tithi, the twelfth chapter.

CHAPTER XIII.

Description of the Seventh Tithi.

For all the rites of the 7th Tithi that day should be taken on which the 6th and the 7th Tithis meet. If however the 6th Tithi should last until sunset, and thus no part of the 7th can be got on that day (during day time), then must the following day, that on which the 7th and the 8th Tithis meet, be taken. This rule holds good also for all other Tithis.

Thus is the description of the 7th Tithi, the thirteenth chapter.

¹²⁷ Sunday being considered as a very auspicious day, and the lotus flower as the most beautiful flower, the meaning is self-evident.

ART. VII.—Contributions to the Study of Indo-Portuguese Numismatics. [Part 3rd.] By J. GERSON DA CUNHA, M.R.C.S.

[Read April 8th 1881.]

I.

Following in chronological sequence the vicissitudes of the numismatic history of Portuguese India, I must begin with the year 1580, when the sovereignty of Portugal passed from Cardinal D. Henrique to D. Philippe II. of Spain, the Viceroy of India being D. Luiz de Athayde, Conde de Athouguia, who came out a second time, and continued in office from 1578 to the 9th March 1581. During his first viceroyalty, from the 10th of September 1568 to the 6th of the same month in 1571, he issued, amongst other useful measures, important resolutions relating to the Portuguese coinage in India. By a provision dated the 15th of November 1568, he commanded the issue of gold and silver coinage at Cochin, of which no specimen has unfortunately been preserved. The minting of this money was however met with considerable opposition from the people, the causes of which will hereafter be inquired into, when the viceroy gave a new regulation to the Mint on the 27th of August 1569. This new code of rules for the minting of money at Goa established that the future issue of the gold coinage should be entitled S. Thomás, each piece weighing 68·8 Portuguese grains, of the fineness of 43 points, or 20 $\frac{1}{4}$ carats, while the silver currency was to consist of *bastiões*, in substitution for the debased *patacões*, with its divisions of *meio bastião*, *tanga*, &c.

The coins extant of this coinage are the following :—

I. *Obverse*—P. R. (*Portugalie Rex*), the effigy of S. Sebastian standing to the right, pierced by four arrows. Round the margin a dotted rim, or *gronetis*.

Reverse—The coat-of-arms of the kingdom; on the left G and on the right A, the initial and final letters of Goa.

II. *Obverse*—Two arrows placed crosswise in the field, tied together in the form of the letter X, surmounted by a royal crown.

Reverse—The arms of the kingdom, having on the sides the letters G and A. The dotted rim, as in No. I. (See Plate III., fig. 1.)

All the coins are represented of the exact size.

Both the above coins are described by Mr. Teixeira de Aragão in his *Descripção Geral e Historica das Moedas Cunhadas em nome dos Reis, &c.*, Tome III., Lisbon, 1880, p. 154, and illustrated at Pl. I., figs. 10 and 11. Both coins are of silver. The weight of the first is given by the above-cited writer as 381 Portuguese grains, and the coin is said to be preserved in the collection of the late F. N. Xavier of Goa, while that of the second is 184 Portuguese grains. They are, moreover, called *bastião* or *pardo* and *meio bastião* or *meio pardo*, respectively. An example of the latter piece is also in the collection of Mr. J. M. de Sousa e Brito of Goa, who kindly lent it for illustrating this paper. Its weight is 147 grains troy. It is however supposed by some *connoisseurs* that this coin was struck during the reign of Cardinal Henrique.

The code of regulations given to the Mint of Goa by D. Luiz de Athayde in 1569 was put into execution not only during the first term of his viceroyalty, which ended in 1571, but also in the subsequent period filled up by the viceroys D. Antonio de Noronha, Antonio Moniz Barreto and D. Diogo de Menezes, who did nothing more than sign some provisions relative to the copper coinage, called *bazaruccos*, to be referred to further on, and to some other insignificant monetary matters. On his return to India in 1578, D. Luiz found his mint regulations in full force, which he completed by adding to the former issues of money that of a coin called *xerafim*, of the value of five *tangas*, of an alloy of silver and copper, in the proportion of one *larin* of copper to two and a half *larins* of silver.

Before proceeding on with the record of successive coinages struck under the rule of each viceroy in consecutive order, it may not perhaps be inopportune to consider here, for the clearer elucidation of the subject, the origin and meanings of each of these terms—viz., *xerafim*, *tanga*, and *larim*.

II.

The word “*xerafim*” is evidently derived from the Persian اشرفی (*ashrafi*), which was a gold coin, weighing about fifty grains, and being equal in this respect, if not in fineness, to the Venetian sequin or Dutch ducat.

Although originally Persian money, it became in course of time current in the Gulf of Cambay and in the countries along the Malabar Coast. The Portuguese were the first to adopt this designation for one of their

coins, and the East India Company applied it also to the gold *muhr* (مُهْر muhr, 'a seal,') struck at Mûrshedabâd, to distinguish it from the *muhr* issued in 1819, in which the absolute quantity of pure metal was reduced by adding $\frac{1}{5}$ th of alloy, in order to adjust the ratio of its value to that of silver, while the *ashrafi* always maintained a high degree of purity (99½ touch), and weighed, by the regulations of May 1793, a little more than 190 grains troy.¹

Filippo Sassetti, an Italian traveller of the sixteenth century, writing to his friend, Alessandro Rinuccini, of Florence, about 1585, refers to these *zerafins*, struck at Goa, which he writes *xaraffi*, connecting the word with *sarraf*, 'a money-changer,' which he writes elsewhere *zaraffo*, and derives from the latter the term *xarafaggio*, which he defines as the rate of exchange. As the passage is an interesting one, and relates to the period under discussion, I shall quote it here:—"Ora, sì come costà tra noi," he writes, "sono qua i banchieri, e fra essi ha d' uomini molto ricchi, e altri che per mantenere il banco loro aperto non hanno se non tanti basalucchi quanti bastano a cambiare una moneta d' oro e d' argento, pigliandone l' aggio, d' onde si sostentano; ch' è ora più ora meno, secondo l' abbondanza dell' oro o della moneta. Chiamansi questi banchieri *xaraffi*, servendo l' x alla spagnuola per s. Di qui potrete riconoscere questo nome, facendosi menzione no so se nel Boccaccio o nel Novellino di tanti saraffi che furono dati, credo da Saladino, a non so chi, che per questo nome veniva anticamente a chiamarsi la moneta, sì come oggi si chiama ancora certa molto trista che battono qui i Portoghesi in Goa, detti *xurafini*, che la piglierebbero da' Gentili."²

The connection between *zerafins* and *shroffs*, *i. e.*, between *ashrafi* and *sarraf* is entirely an imaginary one; for while *ashrafi* is derived, as it seems, from the Arabic شريف (sherif) 'noble,' اشرف (ashraf) its comparative, gold being the noble metal *par excellence*, the word *shroff*, common enough in our Indian bazârs, is derived from the Persian صراف (sarrâf), a money-changer, exchanger, or 'cambist,' from صرف (sarif), ' changing,' ' turning,' &c.

¹ Prinsep's *Ind. Ant.* Lond. 1858. Vol. II., U. T., p. 5.

² To the above quotation my learned friend, Count De Gubernatis, of Florence, adds this footnote—" Nulla di più servile che la moneta, la quale muta nome ad ogni mutar di padrone," which is true enough, but not in the case of our shroffs, who, instead of being masters, are servants of money.

³ *Storia dei Viaggiatori Italiani nelle Indie Orientali.* By Angelo De Gubernatis. Livorno, 1875, p. 301.

Now with regard to the word *tanga*, this is, unlike the *xerfim*, derived from an Indian source. When the Portuguese conquered Goa, they found the revenue accounts computed, amongst other coins, by what the natives called *tunké*, with their divisions and sub-divisions of *barganis* and *zoitolés*.⁴ It was but natural for the conqueror to adapt the old monetary nomenclature to the new currency, as he did, with some phonetic alterations. Thus he changed *tunké* into *tanga*, which was in those days divided into two kinds—viz., *tanga branca*, or 'white *tanga*', which was but an imaginary coin, or money of account, not unlike the *mark* of the Anglo-Saxon kings, the *mancus*, *ora* or *thrimis*, both of them being nominal sums rather than actual coins, and the *tanga* proper.

The *tanga branca* expressed a value equal to four *barganis*, which latter term was also of mere computation, introduced most probably by the Muhammadan predecessors of the Portuguese into Goa, and although variable, the average value could perhaps be fixed for all commercial purposes by taking one *barganim* as equal to twenty-four *leaes* or *bazaruccos*, while twenty-three *barganis* went to a pagoda of 360 reis.

These *bazaruccos* or *leaes* were copper coins struck by command of d'Albuquerque in 1510. They bore on the obverse a sphere, and on the reverse the royal coat-of-arms with A, the initial of Asia, or of Alburquerque, as others say.

Although the Portuguese borrowed the word from the natives of the country, which word was, moreover, used in the neighbouring principalities, being *tankam* where Telegu is spoken, and *taka* in the Dakhan, to signify a copper coin equal to 16 *paisas* or *dabbs*, it seems still to be of a far remoter antiquity. We may, perhaps, trace the origin of this word to the Sanskrit तङ्क (tank), its other form being तङ्ग (tang), which approaches more closely the Portuguese *tanga*. Now *tank* or *tang*, in Sanskrit, means not only a weight equal to four *mashas*, but also a stamped coin, especially of silver. Then we have the Sanskrit compounds of *Tanka-sáldá*, 'a mint,' and *Tanka-pati*, the master of the mint; while the old Tamil name for a mint is *kambattam*.⁵ The Muhammadan rulers of India did eventually Persianize, so to speak, the word *tank* into تانک (tánke), and this name *tánke* we find applied to coins struck from the time of Mahmud of Ghazni. There were both silver and copper *tánkes* then, just as the Portuguese had their silver

⁴ *Memoria sobre as Moedas Cunhadas em Goa*. By F. N. Xavier. Nova-Goa, 1866, p. 55, et seq.

⁵ *Madras Journal of Literature and Science*. 1858. Vol. XIX., p. 231.

and copper *tangas* some centuries after. But the *tánkes* of Sikandar Lodi were mere mixtures of both silver and copper, and from their extremely variable character were not used in revenue returns. Sikandar Lodi did perhaps in this respect more than pursue the monetary policy of Muhammad bin Tughlak, who deteriorated the currency, and resorted to the extreme measure of forced currency. He attempted to introduce brass medals instead of money, imitating the paper-currency of China, but after a futile trial, he aimed at restoration of the ancient purity of the metal. It was this debasement of his coin which gave rise to the denominations of *tanka nükra* and *tanka siáh*, i. e., 'white or real tankah of silver,' and 'black tankah.' It appears that there were in the mediæval times, when the great unit was the *taka* of not less than 145 grains (*sataka* or *ser* being *sat-taka* or 100 takas), both gold and silver tankahs, the orthography of which has been preserved by Ibn Batuta as *तंका*, while the weight of the copper tankah was a little higher. But Baber, in his memoirs, gives a tank as a weight equal to 58.95 grains, whereas the Delhi tankah contained absolutely 173 grains, and the theoretical issue weight of 175 grains, and a touch of nearly pure silver. There was then the *kani*, a fraction, a mere weight of the tankah, i. e., $\frac{1}{4}$ of 175 grains, which is said to be of Drâviñian source, and pronounced *canny*, but in the Koïkaṇ the word *kono* is used for 'a grain,' while *do-kani*, or '2 kanis,' is a well-known copper coin. Lastly, there was a coin of half a tankah. The authorized tankah of the Pathán dynasty is by Arabs called *dinar* of silver. Such was the extremely inconvenient diversity in the name, value, and weight of a coin, which was a common currency of a considerable part of India in the middle ages. It was but natural for the Portuguese, under those circumstances, to adopt a name familiar to the people, but in the design they of course furnished their own prototypes. The Emperor Akbar appears to have been the first to fix a standard for this coin by means of his *yak tânke-i-Akbar Sháhi*, and, as we are informed by the *Ain-i-Akbarí*, 5 *tánkes* made one *dám*, and 40 *dáms* one rupee. But before this time, the value of the *tanga*, from Ormuz in the Persian Gulf to Cambay and the Malabar Coast, was as variable as the weight *tola* (Sk. तोलक *tolaku*, Hind. तोला, *tolá*) in different parts of India, as witnessed by the Portuguese chroniclers of the period.⁶

Nikitin, who travelled in India in the 14th century, mentions tenka, described by his editor as *tankha*, represented by the rupee of Akbar,

⁶ *Subsidios para a Historia da India Portugueza*. By R. J. de L. Fehrer. Lisbou, 1868. Pt. I., 25, 32; Pt. II., 20, 46; and Pt. III., 36, 51.

which remained unaltered from his time to the middle of the last century.⁷

Larim, described by Meninski as “*larinus, monetæ Persicæ genus, ex argento,*” was a Persian silver coin, originally current on the coasts of the Persian Gulf, but the use of which was propagated, and its manufacture imitated, in India. Its name is derived from the place where the original Larim was struck—viz., Lar or Laristan, the capital city of Caramania Deserta, a petty principality, which was finally reduced by Shah Abbas the Great, and which, by its possession of Gombrun, the chief emporium on the Gulf, had commercial relations with Cambay, the Malabar Coast and Ceylon. Camões mentions the place in his poem thus:—

“Aqui de Dom Philippe de Menezes
 Se mostrará a virtude em armas clara,
 Quando com muito poucos Portuguezes
 Os muitos Párseos vencerá de Lara :
 Virão provar or golpes e revezes
 De Dom Pedro de Souza, que provára
 Ja seu braço em Ampaza, que deixada
 Terá por terra á fôrça só de espada.”

Canto x., estancia civ.⁸

⁷ *Major's India in the 15th Century.* Lond. 1857, p. 20.

⁸ *Obras de Luiz de Camões.* Lisboa. 1852. Tome I., p. 356.

With regard to the translation of the above stanza, although there are several translations of the *Lusiadas* in English, I have not yet seen one to equal that of my friend, Captain Richard F. Burton, in the faithful rendering of the great Portuguese epic. His translation of the above passage runs thus:—

Here Dom Philippe de Menézès view
 approved a doughty valiant man-at-arms,
 who with his Portugheze exceeding few
 shall quell the Lára Parsi's potent swarms :
 Pedro de Souza too shall make them rue
 reversèd Fortunes, Warfare's deadliest harms,
 who had his prowess in Ampáza shown,
 and took the land by sweep of sword alone.”

Burton's Lusiads. Lond. 1881. Vol. II., p. 898.

Lara is a paragoge for Lar, which was well known to the Portuguese from its neighbourhood to their once rich settlement of Ormuz. But the early Portuguese authors write it Lara or Larah, and describe it as an island in the Persian Gulf. Pietro della Valle distinguished Lar from Larek, the former of which he describes as a city half way between Schiras and Mina (*Viaggi.*, Pt. II. Venetia. 1667, p. 405), capital of a great province,

Lary or *Larym*, although the earliest description of the coin is ascribed by modern numismatists to Sir John Chardin, the period of whose travels in Persia does not go before 1657, is mentioned by Felner, in a document dated 1525, describing it in the Index, thus :—"Larym, palavra que, só de per si, significa a tanga larym ou de Larah," while the document divides the coin into two kinds, old and new *larym*, the former being one dynar less than the latter. The coins of Lar are enumerated thus :—Two falus are equal to one dynar, twelve dynars equal to one tanga, and three tangas and ten dynars are equal to one new larym. But at somewhat later date the larym is generally called "tanga larym."

Chardin describes it thus :—" Il y a une monnoye tout le long du Golphe Persique, nommée *Larins*, qui est celle dont on s'y sert le plus dans le commerce.....Cette monnoye est d'argent fin et vaut deux *ch'ye* (shâhi) et demi, qui font onze sols trois deniers de notre monnoye. Elle est d'une figure tout extraordinaire, car c'est un fil rond, gros comme une plume à écrire, plié à deux, de la longueur d'un travers de pouce, avec une petite marque dessus qui est le coin du Prince.....On dit qu'elle avoit cours autrefois dans tout l'Orient." ⁹ But about this time the coin had ceased to be current in Persia, or perhaps since the

owned formerly by a prince, who was dispossessed of it about twenty-three years before the visit of Della Valle, which took place in 1622, by Abbas, king of Persia (p. 433), and inhabited by learned men (p. 439). Larek he calls an island, in the middle of the Persian Gulf, not far from Ormuz. It is probably the Larah of the Portuguese. With regard to the city of Lar, a modern writer says :—" The town is estimated to contain 1,200 inhabited houses, and the people reckon ten souls to a house; but it is hard to believe, looking down on Lar from the limestone hills, that its population can exceed 7,000. Almost all the houses are mud, the exception being a few stone or brick houses belonging to traders, and, of course, the residence of the governor; but even these are mud-plastered outside, and not distinguishable by height from the crowd of inferior buildings around them. There is a poor bazaar, roofed only for some 60 yards, and this again has been built within the last three years. Great plenty of *abambars* raise their domes all over the town. There has been a mud wall, but it was never strong, and has now vanished for the most part. The town is in good repair, and fairly clean, and some of its merchants trading with Bombay and Lingah, Bandar Abbas, and Tahir are in very comfortable circumstances. Imperfect Hindustani is spoken by a few travelled individuals."—The *Pioneer*, Jane 1881.

⁹ *Voy. de Chardin en Perse, &c.* Amsterdam. 1711. 4to T. II., p. 92, or 12mo. T. IV., p. 279.

conquest of the country by Abbas the Great, for Chardin adds: "Comme on n'en bat plus depuis la conquête du royaume, on n'en voit plus guères, mais on ne laisse pas de compter par cette monnoye en tout ce pais là, et aux Indes, le long du Golfe de Cambay, et dans le pais qui en sont proche. On dit qu'elle avoit cours autrefois dans tout l'Orient."¹⁰ In India the larym was struck by the Adil Shahi dynasty of Bijapur; several of whose specimens are preserved in different museums. One of these coins bears a distinct date, which is 1071 of Hejira, which is equivalent to 1659 A.D. The following legends, which are stamped upon these pieces of money, being incomplete, can be rendered legible or entire only by collation. They are on one side ﷺ عادل شاہ سلطان علی (Sultan Ali Adil Shah), and on the other زرب لاری دانگھ سکہ (Zarb Lari Dangh Sikka).¹¹ Here the word *dangh* is evidently *tanga*, whose origin has already been explained, while *sikka* only means "a coining die," and also a certain weight, or a standard for other weights in India. It is supposed that this coin is an imitation of the Arab طوپلا (toryla) from طوپل (toryl) 'long,' originally confined to the province of Hasa, where they are still seen, although of copper, mentioned by Palgrave and others.

The *larim* consisted of a piece of thick silver wire, something more than three inches in length, a round thread as thick as a writing quill, bent double in its length to the breadth of from one to three inches, and then slightly flattened to receive an impression. Tavernier is the only writer who mentions a *larin* and its half (which seems to be a broken piece), the division taking place at the angle, giving at the same time engravings of both the *larin* and *demi-larin*.¹² Other writers speak of the unit alone, but of two forms, viz., straight and bent. This latter variety is doubled into the shape of a fish-hook, hence known by the name of 'hook-money' or 'fish-hook money.' It has a small mark, or a chequered pattern of the prince who issued it, stamped upon it. These pattern-stamps are supposed to have some mythological meaning, and are not merely a chance ornamental device, especially those of Ceylon, where they are known by the name of *Dudu-massu*, or in the low country

¹⁰ *Ibid.* Amsterdam edition of 1711. 12mo. T. IV., p. 279. Cf. Harris's Collection, Vol. II., p. 479.

¹¹ Cf. *The Numismatic Chronicle*. Lond. 1854. Vol. XVI., pp. 179 *et seq.*

¹² *Les Six Voyages de J. B. Tavernier*, between 1625 and 1664. A. la Haye, 1718. Vol. II., p. 589.

dialect *coco-ridi*, meaning 'hook-money.'¹³ Ribeiro, in his *History of Ceylon*, informs us that the Portuguese, who first obtained a footing in Ceylon as early as 1517, introduced into the island the use of pagodas, pardaos, and *larins*, besides striking there their own *tangas* with the royal coat-of-arms on one side, and the image of a friar on the other, of the value of 9d., half-tangas and fanams.

As the description given by Tavernier of the *Larin* and the circumstances under which it was used are interesting, I insert here the following extracts :—

"Quoy qu'à Ormus et en d'autres ports du Golfe qui sont au Roy de Perse, comme l'isle de Bahren ou se fait la pesche et la vente des perles on fasse les payments en Abassis, on n'y parle toutefois que de *Larins*.

"Le *Larin* est une ancienne monnoye de Balsare et d'Arabie, et qui a cours jusqu'à l'isle de Ceylan, où l'on ne parle que de *Larins*. Cette monnoye est un fil d'argent plié en deux, de la grosseur d'un tuyau de plume ordinaire, et long de deux travers de doigt ou environ. Sur ce fil d'argent ainsi plié on voit le nom du Prince dans les pays duquel cette monnaie a été fabriquée. Le huit *Larins* font un *or*, et les quatre-vint *Larins* un *toman*."¹⁴

With regard to the antiquity of this coinage nothing certain is yet known. In the absence of authentic information on this subject, the following extract from a writer who had occasion to observe the currency and note its peculiarities may be of some interest. Tavernier says :— "Au reste, le *Larin* est une des anciennes monnaies de l'Asie, et bien qu'aujourd'hui elle n'ait cours que dans les Arabies et à Balsara ; néanmoins, depuis Bagdat jusques dans l'Isle de Ceylan tout le commerce se fait par *Larins*, et surtout le long du Golfe Persique, où l'on prend 80 *Larins* pour un *toman* qui est 50 *Abassis*."¹⁵

This coin seems, indeed, to have originally been struck at a remote era, as the type and simplicity of the style testify. All attachable pieces of money are an irrefragable proof of the comparatively rude state of society of the people who use it as a medium of exchange. The *lari*, then, not unlike the penannular ring of the ancient Celtic tribes, the Pharaohnic perfect ring in Egypt, the Chinese perforated money, and the monetary system of a simple and homely character prevailing even

¹³ Harris's Collection, *ut supra*.

¹⁴ *Les Six Voyages*, *ut supra*, Vol. I., pp. 135-136.

¹⁵ *Loc. Cit.* Vol. II., p. 590.

at the present day for the purpose of exchange or barter, or as a representative of property in all transactions of traffic and payment among some African races, bespeak an origin of a remote antiquity, or else of a currency in a low uncivilized condition. They are a connecting link in the ancient fabric of money, or a low stage of progress towards a full development of the beautiful medal money. But even when the minting of that particular coin has ceased, the new currency still continues, from attachment to old habits and traditions, to maintain and preserve the ancient shape or form, as is the case with the Chinese, who, though arrived at a higher stage of monetary progress, when metallic form of round discs of metal with a stamped and inscribed surface is used, still they have it perforated in the centre with a square hole, to be threaded or strung upon a cord, or slid upon a square rod of wood, or made with a suspensory ring or loop at the top of it, to suspend it from the owner's girdle for convenient carriage and safe custody.¹⁶

It appears that although the larim had ceased to be current in Persia for some time antecedent to the conquest of Laristan by Shah Abbas the Great, still the people used to reckon by it, so established was this coin in their estimation. In India it was mentioned, if not as a currency in use, at least as money of account as late as 1711 A.D.¹⁷ The larim was always of pure silver, and to prove its fineness it was the custom to heat it red-hot in the fire and put it into water. If it was not pure white, it ceased to be current money. Some of the specimens of this silver-wire money, especially of the hook-variety, bore one or two notches on the edge, which seem to have been made to test the standard of the metal. The weight of the larim varied from 68½ to 72 troy grains. The Portuguese chroniclers of the 16th century attached a high degree of value to the purity or fineness of this coin, its silver being then sold at nine pardaos the mark or 8 ounces. It was originally minted without any alloy. The Portuguese made use of the word *larim*, not unlike the Muhamadans of the word *tangah* or *tanké*, for two purposes, both as a metrical and a monetary expression.

¹⁶ For more information on this subject, see *Numismatic Chronicle*, Vol. XI., p. 170; Vol. XII., 1849-50, pp. 89 *et seq.*; Vol. XIII., 1850-51.

¹⁷ *Numismatic Chronicle*, 1854, Vol. XVI., p. 181. Also pp. 181, 159 and 165. The Portuguese chroniclers segregate *larym de Persia* from *larym simple*, the difference between the two implying that the latter was struck in India.

When they wrote one *larim* of copper and two and a half of silver, a weight of nearly 72 grains was meant, but the *tanga larim* was the coin itself. At a somewhat later date, when the coin ceased to be struck, *larim* became, like the *tanga branca*, a term of computation, or money of account.

Among other travellers of the 17th century, François Pyrard de Laval, who was at Goa for a couple of years from June 1608, describes the *larim* as current (see *Viagem*, translated by J. H. da Cunha Rivara. New Goa, 1858, Vol. I., p. 193,) at the Maldivian Islands and at Goa, saying of the former that the king commands its issue, inscribing his name in Arabic letters; and Pietro della Valle, who travelled in the course of the years 1622 to 1624 along the Western Coast, speaks at length of the coin *lari*, describing its shape as *bizzarra* or 'whimsical' (see *Viaggi*, Venetia 1667, Part II., page 577). His description of the coin is worth consulting, and, in spite of my reluctance to give a long string of quotations, which render the reading generally tedious, it is so interesting that I shall close the subject of the *larim* with it. He describes it as a "verghetta di argento, di peso determinato, addoppiata inequalmente, e nella piegatura dove si adoppia, segnata sopra con un tantino d'impronto. Si chiama Lari, perchè era moneta propria de' Principi di Lar, da loro inventata, quando eran separati dal Regno della Persia. Ma per la sua bontà, e per la difficoltà del falsificarsi: consistendo il suo valore solamente nel peso, e nella purità incorrotta dell' argento; è riuscita moneta, in tutto l'Oriente, tanto accetta, che nō solo i Chani di Lar, che ne furono gli autori, ma l'hanno battuta poi, la batton continuamente, tutti i Principi dell' Asia, e Turchi, e Persiani, e Mogholi, e altri, con ritenerne sempre, in ogni luogo, il suo vero eprimero nome: nè vi è moneta, in somma, in tutte queste parti, che corra più di questa: valendo a punto, ogni cinque Lari, una Piastra, o Patacca di Reali di Spagna, o Pezza da otto."¹⁸

Before dismissing the subject of what may be called the philology of numismatics, I may refer here in short to two other terms, one of which, though current even at the present time amongst the British, was originally Portuguese. It is the word *pagoda*. That eminent numismatologist, Mr. Thomas, of London, speaking of this coin, says:— "The name of this coin among Europeans is 'pagoda'; a Portuguese

¹⁸ Opus Cit., pp. 577-78. For the hook-money of Ceylon, see the International Numismata Orientalia. Lond. 1879. Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon. By Mr. Rhys Davids, pp. 33 et seq.

appellation derived from the pyramidal temple depicted on one side of it."¹⁹ Now there are several varieties of this gold coin, differing in type and module, their weight, assay and value being also variable. Thus the old pieces vary in weight from 60 to 120 grains troy, which is supposed to show some connection with the drachma and diadrachma of gold of the ancient Greeks, while the device and symbols of many of the old Hindū coins are said to confirm the testimony of a direct descent from a Bactrian prototype. I refrain from entering on the discussion of such a subject, which is beyond the scope of this paper.

And with regard to the origin of the word *pagoda*, it must be observed that the Portuguese on their arrival in India found here several kinds of this coin in use in the country, each under a special denomination, some of them belonging to the former rulers of the places they had conquered, and others issued from the mints of the petty rājas or chieftains of the Malabar and Carnatic. The former were by them called *gadianacas* and *dramos*, and the latter *pagodes*. The term *dramo* may perhaps be traced to *dharan*, one of the divisions of the Hindū metrical system, equal to 3200 ratis or 10 nishkās, while *gadianaca* is certainly derived from *gadhyanam*, a weight stated in the *Līlāvatī* (an Indian work on mathematics) to be equal to 48 gunjas or red *abrus precatorius* seed, each gunja averaging about two grains troy.²⁰ Amidst so many denominations, which the Portuguese were averse to employ in their monetary transactions, they adopted the

¹⁹ Prinsep's *Ind. Ant.*, *ut supra*. Vol. II., U. T., p. 17.

²⁰ The metrical system in use in Southern India is as follows :—

2 gunjas are equal to... 1 dugala.

1 dugala is „ ... 1 fanam.

2 fanams are „ ... 1 dharana.

2 dharanas „ ... 1 hoṇa, such as māda or pratāpa.

2 hoṇas „ ... 1 varaha or hān or pagoda.

The chronicles of the first two centuries of the Portuguese dominion in India mention only pagodes and pardaos, but not *madas*, a Telugu term for half-pagodes. Mention is made of *son-toco* (*Suvarṇa-tanka*), and *Rām-toco* (*Bāma-tanka*), 'the stamped gold coin of Rāma,' with various symbols ; amongst others those of *padma* or 'lotus' and *śāṅkha* or 'sacred conch-shell' are not uncommon. They were probably introduced into the country from the neighbouring princes of Banavāsi first and of Vijayanagara afterwards.

In the *New Conquests*, or provinces annexed to the Goa territory only about a hundred years ago; the accounts were kept until lately in *sanvoy* and *nixany* pagodes, each of them being divided into 2 *pratāps*, one *pratāp* into 5 *damos*, a *damo* into 4 *pagos*, a *pago* into 4 *visvos*, and a *visvo* into 4 *cannos*. The value of these pagodes was nearly 6 xerasins.

simple plan of designating all the gold coins of the Hindu princes by the generic name of *pagode*, having regard to the Hindu religious symbols on their obverse, which were either the figures of Śiva and Pārvatī and a device of the varāha (वराह), a wild boar, one of the avatārs of Vishṇu, or a representation of a temple, of an elephant, &c. Now *pagode* in Portuguese means a Hindu temple, and it was most probably the representation of a temple or an idol on the coins that induced the early Portuguese to name them in this fashion. This word may be traced to the Pāli *dagoba* (Sk. *dāthu-garbhā*, 'receptacle of relics,' or *dāthu-gopa*, 'hole of relics'), the Buddhist shrine, which instead of being pyramidal, is an arched, dome-like monument.

The Muhammadans on their side appear to have simplified the process of monetary nomenclature by coining a generic term of their own to apply to the whole series of gold coins bearing on one side the effigies of Durgā, Vishṇū, the Swāmis, and other saints, to avoid the inconvenience of especial designations which the natives of Southern India were in the habit of employing in their trade accounts. They used the term *hūn* (හුන), which is derived from the Kanarese ಹುನ (honna), and simply means 'gold.' To this source may now be traced not only the modern Kanarese *honnu*, the designation of half a pagoda, but also, perhaps, the word *hundi*, generally used for a bill of exchange.

One other word the Portuguese adopted from the natives of the country was *pardao*, to which they attached a value different from that of the original coin, called *pratāpa* (ಪ್ರತಾಪ), the latter being the name of the king in the legend in Devanāgarī characters on one kind of these coins. The Muhammadans had already mangled the word, calling it *partab* (පರ್ತಬ್), which the Portuguese made pardao, adding *d'ouro* to mean a golden pardao, in contradistinction to the silver coin of the same designation. Although the original *pratāpa* was but the half of a pagoda, the Portuguese golden pardao was equivalent to the unit. The Portuguese eventually extended the designation of *pagodes* even to the gold mohurs issued from the mints of the Moghul emperors, calling them "pagodes de Agra," or "Agra pagodas," as distinctly mentioned in a document dated the 29th of October 1597.²¹

²¹ *Arch. Port. Oriental*, Fase. III., Pt. II., p. 782. By comparing the works of Abder-Bazzak, who travelled in India in 1443, with those of Ludovico de Varthema, between 1504-5, the difference in the spelling of the original *pratāpa* becomes palpable. What the former writes 'partab' is by the latter called 'pardao.'

In conclusion, it must be mentioned that the Portuguese never issued any pagoda of their own, as far as I am aware, and the so-called *Firingi* or *Porto-Novo hüns*, bearing on one side three figures, one male and two females, and on the other a merely granulated surface, as described by Marsden in his *Numismata Orientalia*, Lond. 1823, Pt. II., p. 741, were not coined under the influence of the Portuguese, but under that of the Dutch, who were their successors in the establishment at Porto Novo, up to the period of its cession to the English.

III.

I shall now pass on to consider the subject of copper and tin or tutenag coinage, issued during the sixteenth century in Goa and other mint towns of the Portuguese settlements in India. But the theme is so vast in both its historical and commercial aspects, that in contemplating such a numismatic survey one is deterred at the very outset by the meagre materials whereon to build up even the bare outline of the subject. To enter into a discussion of the successive epochs, or of the serial order of mintages of the different viceroys, most of whom were in the habit of repeatedly regulating the currency, either by recalling the old coinages, supposed to have been much debased by their predecessors, which were then consigned to the crucible, and recoined

This writer says, moreover, of Goa, which he calls Goga, that it paid "annually to the king of Decan ten thousand golden ducats, called by them *pardai*. These *pardai* are smaller than the seraphim of Cairo, but thicker, and have two devils stamped upon one side of them, and certain letters on the other."—(*The Travels, &c.*, edited by G. P. Badger, Lond. 1863, pp. 115-116.) It is evident from the above that prior to the Portuguese conquest of Goa the current coin of the country was the pagoda, bearing on one side the "two devils" of Varthema, which are the effigies of Śiva and Pārvatī, and the legend of Śrī Krishna or Sadasiva and other kings of Vijayanagara on the other.

Barbosa, writing of Vijayanagara in 1514, says:—"The money is of gold and is called *parda* and is coined in certain cities of this kingdom of Narsinga, and throughout all India they use this money..... This coin is round, and made in a mould. Some of them have some Indian letters on one side, and two figures on the other, of a man and woman, and others have nothing but the lettering on one side."—(*Descrip. of the Coasts of East Africa and Malabar*, Lond. 1866, pp. 81 and 86.)

In conclusion I must refer in short to the kind of pagoda called *varaśha mudrā*, or 'boar-stamped' gold coin, the boar being the badge of the ancient Chālukya families, as well as of the Cholars and others who issued these coins. The generic term *ora* in Koṅkaṇī for pagodas may be traced to this source.

into a new type and different standard; or else by altering, often without any justifiable motive, the rate of proportion between the monetised and the unwrought metals. To enter into such a discussion is, I say, easy enough from printed chronicles and even unedited official papers; but the absolute want of numismatic documents, from the extremely heedless fashion of the viceroys enforcing changes in the monetary system without even preserving in a Government cabinet the superseded specimens *ad futuram rei memoriam*, render the treatment and illustration of this part of the subject immensely difficult. However, with the aid of only a few examples, which chance has thrown in my way, having been somehow saved from the melting pot, I shall now endeavour to record in chronological order the vicissitudes this coinage has undergone, referring to historical facts embodied in the proclamations, edicts, provisions, resolutions, decrees, &c., preserved in the archives of the Government.

I have already described the copper coinage of Affonso d'Albuquerque struck in Goa and in Malacca; but only three specimens of this early mintage, viz. *leal* or *bazarucco*, *cepayqua* or *dinheiro*, and one other type of the latter, are described by Mr. Aragão at p. 113 of his work, quoting the *Lendas* of Gaspar Correa, *Decadas* of João de Barros, and *Livro dos Pezos*, &c., of Antonio Nunes, as well as the *Commentarios* of Braz d'Albuquerque, the natural son of the great Portuguese hero. Of this first Portuguese coinage in India, the only specimen I have hitherto seen in India is the *cepayqua* or *dinheiro* belonging to the collection of Mr. J. M. de Sousa e Brito of Goa (see Plate III., fig. 2).

Obverse—The royal coat-of-arms, having to the left a letter resembling I.

Reverse—A sphere with a trefoil on the top. The rims are dotted.

This specimen is considerably worn out. Its weight is 50 grains troy, while the *cepayqua* described by Mr. Aragão weighs 60 Portuguese grains. The letter 'I' may be the numeral one, indicative of the value of the coin, meaning 'one cepayqua,' as conjectured by Mr. Aragão in reference to his *leal*, or it may be the initial of *India*, just as the Greek A mentioned by Gaspar Correa as inscribed on Albuquerque's *esperas* and *leaes* I supposed to be the initial of Asia; but Mr. Aragão believes it to be the initial of Albuquerque's name. It seems, moreover, from statements of chroniclers, that the type of Albuquerque's coins was changed even during the short period of his governorship, which did not exceed five years.

D'Albuquerque's successor, Lopo Soares de Albergaria, was probably a party to a regulation left by Fernão de Alcaçova in 1517 for copper coinage, which left an enormous profit to the Government.²² A quintal of copper was coined into 3,774 *reales*, or 23 $\frac{1}{4}$ pardaos, a fact worth recording for comparison with subsequent issues. Diogo Lopes de Sequeira, seeing the benefit this coinage yielded to the royal treasury, decreed in 1518, and advised his successor in 1519, that the copper pieces should be freely exported, while gold and silver coinages should at first be not only forbidden to be exported, but even stopped from being struck, subsequently, in the new capital city of Goa.²³ Some reduction in the value of the copper coinage appears to have taken place during the government of Lopo Vaz de Sampaio, which ended in 1529, being succeeded by Nuno da Cunha, who ordered the issue of copper pieces, at the rate of 4 pardaos per one arroba of the metal, or one-fourth of a quintal. No specimen of this coinage has unfortunately been preserved for us.

Nuno da Cunha's successor, D. Garcia de Noronha, whose rule extended from 1538 to 1540, commanded the issue of copper *reales* or *bazaruccos* at the rate of 18 pardaos a quintal, on account of the rise in the price of copper in the market, increasing at the same time the military pay of soldiers from four to six tangas; for tangas went in those days of frugality of living as far as rupees, just as in the Saxon period shillings went to pounds.

Mr. Aragão attributes, on account of its weight of 180 Portuguese grains, a copper real or bazarucco, having on one side the letter R. or B., and on the other I, which he supposes to be either the initial of King D. João III., or the numeral one indicative of its value, to this period. But his specimen is considerably worn out, while two well-preserved specimens in my collection, apparently similar, bear the letter R on the obverse and F on the reverse, which would carry them later to the reign of one or all of the three Fillipps, who sat from 1580 to 1640 on the throne of Portugal. (See Plate III., fig. 3.) Its weight is 166 grains troy, equal to 200 Portuguese grains nearly. The second specimen, which is considerably clipped, weighs only 125 grains troy. It was Martim Affonso de Sousa, who governed from 1542 to 1545, that raised for the first time the copper coinage to the exorbitant value of 36

²² *Arch. Port. Oriental.* Fasc. V., p. 8.

²³ *Ibid.*, p. 31 and p. 19. *Ibid.*, Fasc. II., pp. 174 *et seq.*

pardaos the quintal, the market price being between 18 to 20 pardaos.²⁴ This was the source of all future fluctuations and troubles in the then not unimportant commercial circle of Goa.²⁵ We do not hear of any complaint in other settlements, although in 1544, as Gaspar Correa tells us, even the Cochin mint issued *bazaruccos* similar to those of Goa, of which fifty pieces went to one tanga.²⁶ Each piece weighed about 84 grains.

Such a state of things gave cause to no little discontent among the people, which found expression in representations and memorials to the Government, indicating the inconvenience and unreasonableness of the measure. A similar outcry was also raised with respect to the silver coinage a quarter of a century later. The monetary history of this period is, indeed, under an economic and financial point of view, of considerable interest even at the present day. It is extremely curious, for instance, to study by original documents the troubled state of the little commercial world, when during the viceroyalty of D. Pedro Mascarenhas, between 1554-55, the silver *patacões* were issued, the value of which were not only in entire disproportion to the market price of the bullion, but even the coinage was debased by reducing it to the standard of billon. Such a defalcating policy of the Government gave very naturally origin to no little amount of quarrels and contentions between the Senate of Goa and the Government, resulting at the end in the Viceroy D. Antão de Noronha, between 1564 and 1568, suspending the coinage, and that extant circulating for its intrinsic worth.

But to return to the copper coinage. D. João de Castro, a man of clear intellect and fair play, reduced the abnormal rate of the copper coin of his predecessor from 36 to 25 pardaos the quintal.²⁷ The enthusiastic biographer of D. João de Castro, whose government extended from 1545 to 1548, gives a sensational narrative of how people came with tears in their eyes to beseech the Governor to remedy the evil by reducing the high standard of the coinage, which had enhanced the price of food, copper pieces, struck from the metal imported as merchandise from Portugal, being the currency most in use amongst Christians, Muhammadans, and Hindûs in the country.²⁸

²⁴ See Mr. Aragão's *Descripção*, &c. Lisbon, 1880, p. 130.

²⁵ *Ibid.* Fasc. II., pp. 174—187.

²⁶ *Lendas da India*, Tome IV., p. 429.

²⁷ *Vida de D. João de Castro*. By Jacinto Freire de Andrade. Paris, 1869, pp. 27-28.

²⁸ *Arch. Port. Oriental*. Fasc. I. Pt. I. (Second edition of 1877), p. 29.

Mr. Aragão describes the S. Thomé and pardao S. Thomé, two gold coins already mentioned by me in Part II., and a copper *bazarucco* weighing 114 Portuguese grains, all struck during the government of D. João de Castro ; while a pardao S. Thomé, different from the former both in type and in weight, is attributed to his successor, Garcia de Sá.²⁹

The redress of grievances about this copper question did not however last long. D. Constantino de Bragança, whose rule extended from 1558 to 1561, issued a proclamation on the 22nd of October 1559, directing that the copper coin called *tanga*, of the value of 60 reis, should be struck at the rate of 42 pardaos the quintal, the market value of the unwrought metal being only 25 pardaos.³⁰ The frequent fluctuations the copper coinage underwent in the course of a few years are indeed a test of the loose and unsystematic manner in which the Government treated this affair, expecting to derive from it as much profit to the treasury as was possible with the evident injury to the interests of the people. It was plainly a short-sighted policy. The rate of the copper coinage fixed by D. Constantino at 42 pardaos was by his successor, Conde de Redondo, reduced to 35, besides establishing a determined value for the whole currency of the country. But D. Antão de Noronha, who governed from 1564 to 1568, raised it again to 42, while the price of the metal was only its half. This anomaly went on for some years yet, when D. Luiz de Athayde first reduced it to 35, and then raised it again to 42 pardaos the quintal.³¹ Skipping over about a decade, which is otherwise full of interest from the mass of memorials addressed by the Senate of Goa to the Government, proclamations of the viceroys, and royal letters from King D. Sebastião and Cardinal Infante, all of which throw considerable light on the subject of the gold and silver currency

²⁹ *Opus Cit.*, p. 140.

³⁰ *Arch. Port. Oriental*. Fasc. V., Pt. I., pp. 419-420.

³¹ It would be extremely tedious to relate in detail all these monetary alterations, and the inconvenience resulting from them to the people. The code of regulations of the mint of Goa, by D. Luiz de Athayde, already referred to, is a valuable document to the numismatic history of Goa at this period. But I refrain from quoting here its extracts, from their great length. The whole document is published in the *Annaes Maritimos e Coloniaes*, Lisbon, 1844, No. 2. Cf. also *Memoria das Moedas*, &c., by Mr. M. B. Lopes Fernandes, Lisbon, 1858, pp. 335 *et seq.*, the work often referred to of Mr. A. C. Teixeira de Aragão, from p. 148, and the *Arch. Port. Oriental*, Fasc. I., p. 61; II., pp. 66-67. There are several other documents worth quoting, relative to the numismatic period under consideration, but they are much too long for our limits.

of the period, and especially the copper coinages which are said to have been minted by Albuquerque in 1510 at 13 pardaos the quintal, and now raised to the enormous rate of 42, I shall pass on to describe the issue of *bazaruccos*, which are, as far as I am aware, inedited. These are the copper coins described in Part II. as having on the obverse a sheaf of arrows and a bow, and on the reverse the usual coat-of-arms of the kingdom. I have already illustrated this specimen at Plate II., fig. 3, its weight being 155 grains troy. I have now to add another specimen of the same type, but weighing nearly the double of that of the former, being 305 grains troy (see Plate III., fig. 4). Now these *bazaruccos* having been issued some time prior to 1577, are probably those attributed to the viceroy Antonio Moniz Barreto, who ruled between 1573 and 1577.

Next to this type of the copper *bazarucco* one may perhaps place, without incurring the risk of an anachronism, the copper *bazaruccos* illustrated at Plate II., figs 4 and 5; the former bearing on the obverse the letters BCCO, and the latter the numeral 15. Now these coins weigh 305 and 200 grains troy, respectively. They belong to my cabinet, as well as those of the sheaf of arrows type. I have to add now one other, also pertaining to the same collection. It bears the coat-of-arms on the obverse, and the figure 5 on the reverse (see Plate III., fig. 5). It weighs 285 troy grains. Then come the other copper *bazaruccos*, bearing letters, which are initials of the names of kings. The little copper *bazarucco* having on one side the letter S and on the other a cross, was apparently struck during the reign of King D. Sebastião, while the *bazarucco* bearing the letter F, already described, was issued during the time the Filippes of Spain were kings of Portugal. (See Plate III., fig. 3.) The little *bazarucco* of the S type weighs 45 grains troy, but it is much clipped and worn out. (See Plate III., fig. 6.) All these coins are unpublished. The arrow type *bazaruccos* were evidently struck during the reign of King D. Sebastião, from 1557 to 1578.

To pass on now to record the alterations subsequent to the year 1577 of the copper coinage, which was for many years the financial topic of the day, we find that among the successors of the viceroy Antonio Moniz Barreto, from 1577 to 1584, D. Francisco Mascarenhas is the only viceroy whose *bazaruccos*, described by Mr. Aragão at p. 168 of his work, have been preserved, and to whom the Senate of Goa presented that remarkable document containing the numismatic history of Goa

from the time of Albuquerque.²² During his government the copper coinage was minted at the rate of 57 pardaos the quintal, while its market value was only 22, and he reduced it to 47 on hearing the representation of the Senate. From 1584 to 1600 we find no innovation in the type or standard of the copper pieces, the weight of the *bazarucco* being then 123 Portuguese grains, except the issue of tin *bazaruccos*, five of which were equivalent to four of copper. From 1600 to the middle of the century we hear of constant fluctuations in the value of the copper and tin coinages, two and even three old pieces being exchanged for one new piece, on account of the low standard and introduction of false coin from the neighbouring countries into Goa, the process of fabrication being facilitated by the abundance of the metals and the ease with which the rude colonial type of the Portuguese coinage could be imitated.

Before closing this chapter I must describe in short the prevalent types of the copper *bazaruccos*, the emission of the earliest of which has been attributed to the time of D. Filipe II. The specimen figured at Pl. III., fig. 7, has on one side the royal coat-of-arms between the letters G and A for Goa ; and on the other a wheel, allusive to St. Catherine's wheel, the patron saint of Goa. This specimen belongs to the collection of Mr. J. M. de Sousa e Brito. Its weight is 50 grains troy.

Two other *bazaruccos* in my cabinet (Pl. III., figs. 8 and 9) have one the coat-of-arms between rather indistinct G and A on the obverse, and a wheel and a cross on the reverse ; and the other the coat-of-arms between the letters B or R, the initials of *bazarucco* or *roda*, and another letter, which is almost invisible, on the obverse ; and a cross with stars in each angle on the reverse. Their weight is 35 grains troy. Of the latter kind there are two specimens in my collection, one of them weighing 40 grains troy. None of the copper *bazaruccos* bears any date, but Mr. Aragão, at p. 273 of his work, describes a *bazarucco* bearing the year 1698, belonging to the collection of Mr. Roberto of Lisbon, and weighing 94 Port. grs. It is attributed to the time of the Viceroy Camara Coutinho, who governed India from 1698 to 1701.

IV.

I shall now proceed to enumerate from authentic documents the issues of money in chronological succession under the heading of each sovereign and his viceroys in India, and to describe the coins hitherto

²² *Arch. Port. Oriental.* Fasc. II., pp. 216-221.

preserved or known to be existing in India and elsewhere, in both public and private collections.

KING D. FILIPPE I. 1580—1598.

During the rule of this monarch, the Viceroy Fernão Telles de Menezes, who held the reins of the government of Portuguese India for a short period of only seven months, from the 10th March to the 17th September 1581, caused the mintage of *xeralfins*, first issued during the sway of his predecessor, to cease altogether, as prejudicial both to the State and people.³³ His successor, D. Francisco Mascarenhas, whose rule extended until November 1584, being enlightened by the Senate of the city of Goa with a lengthy and lucid statement, already referred to, on the inconvenience resulting from frequent alterations in the standard of money, struck there from the time of D. Alburquerque onwards, confirmed the cessation of the issue of the *xeralfins* of five tangas, and commanded the coinage of copper pieces with the abatement of ten pardaos in the price stipulated for on one quintal or 58,752 *kil.* of the metal. Mr. Aragão describes at page 168 of his work a *bazarucoo* with the numeral 74, weighing 134 Portuguese grains, belonging to this viceroyalty. He was followed by D. Duarte de Menezes, Conde de Tarouca, who governed until the 4th May 1588, on which date he died. His share in the monetary history of Goa is confined to the reissue of the silver *xeralfins*, of which no specimen is now available.³⁴ His successors in a series of years from 1588 to 1617 appear to have avoided interfering with the currency then in vogue, the only exception being Manuel de Sousa Coutinho, whose rule ended in 1591, and who is said to have decreed the issue of silver *xeralfins* with a considerable amount of the alloy³⁵; Mathias d'Albuquerque, whose sway extended up to 1597, commanded the issue of coins in four metals, although, with the exception of his silver tanga, described at page 177 by Mr. Aragão in his work, no specimen of his coinage has been preserved. He also attempted to fix the price of gold S. Thomés at eight tangas and a half each³⁶; and D. Francisco da Gama, Conde da Vidigueira, the grand-

³³ *Arch. Port. Oriental. Nova Goa*, 1857. Fasc. II., p. 219.

³⁴ Fasc. I., p. 2.

³⁵ *Livro de Mon.*, MS., fol. 346.

³⁶ Fasc. III., Pt. II., p. 783. With regard to the first issue of S. Thomés, which F. N. Xavier and others attribute to Garcia de Sú's rule, Aragão places in the period of the government of D. João de Castro. See *Opus Cit.*, p. 137.

son of the great navigator, Vasco da Gama, who returned to Lisbon in 1600, did nothing more than to forbid the circulation of the pagodas of less than 43 *pontas*, or 20½ carats, in the country.³⁷ In the meantime King D. Filipe I. died, and was succeeded by D. Filipe II.

D. FILIPPE II. 1598—1621.

The circulation of the pagodas, which had by the former viceroy been suspended, was now, in the year 1598, resumed by the Conde da Vidigueira. Of his successors, Ayres de Saldanha, D. Martim Affonso de Castro, D. Fr. Aleixo de Menezes, André Furtado de Mendonça and D. Jeronymo de Azevedo, from 1600 to 1617; we have only specimens of coinage struck during the government of the last, all the other viceroys having left us but some dry written documents relating to that interminable question of copper and tin *bazaruccos*, and their enhanced circulating value in relation to the price of the corresponding metals in the market. The last viceroy appears, moreover, to have nearly put an end to this affair by his provision, dated the 11th of June 1616, enforcing the issue of tutenag *bazaruccos* at the actual price of that amalgam, with the addition of six pardaos for the cost of mintage.³⁸ Of the coins struck during the government of D. Jeronymo de Azevedo, there were silver tangas, its multiples and divisions, besides the copper and tutenag *bazaruccos*. A contemporary writer, Manoel Barboza, in his work entitled *Remissiones Doctorum, &c.*, printed at Lisbon in 1618, describes the coins current in Portuguese India, thus:—"Gold Coins:—*Gold pardao* of 18 carats, value from 820 to 340 reis. *Gold S. Thomás* of 18 carats, weighing 1250 (?). Those struck by the order of viceroys in India are worth 10 tangas or 600 reis. The *Venetians* (sequins) are current in India, being introduced from Venice to Ormuz and other eastern countries. They are worth from 11½ to 12 tangas, or from 690 to 720 reis. Then the *pagodes*, of the value of 9½ to 10 tangas, or from 570 to 600 reis. Silver Coins:—*Leal*, worth 12 reis, but no document is yet found relating to the issue of this kind of coin. *Tanga* is worth 60 reis. *Salares*, Persian coin brought from Ormuz, the value of each being about 90 reis. *Xerafins* or *bastiões* are coins struck in India by the command of viceroys, of the

³⁷ Fasc. III., Pt. II., p. 782.

³⁸ *Livro de Alvarás*. MS. II., fol. 21. *Arch. Port. Oriental.*, Fasc. I., Pt. II., pp. 218, 224, 228.

value of 300 reis.”³⁹ It is apparent from the enumeration of coins above that the writer alludes to the currency of the country some years prior to the publication of his book, for in 1618 the *bastiões* had ceased to pass current. Pyrard, in 1608, says :—“First, there are the so-called *bazaruccos*, of which 75 go to a *tanga*. Then there are old *bazaruccos*, of which 115 are equal to one *tanga*. Lower than this coin are small unstamped copper pieces, called *Arco*, of which 240 go to a *tanga*. Of these coins one is of iron and the other of *calaim*, a metal from China.”⁴⁰ In 1611 *bazaruccos* were struck at Bassein and Damaun.⁴¹

Of silver *tangas*, coined during the viceroyalty of D. Jeronymo de Azevedo, and which are by some writers attributed to that of the Conde de Linhares, only three specimens have been preserved, one at Lisbon and the others at Goa. The former is described in the *Hist. Gen.* Tome VI., p. 346, where also the law of 20th March 1617 for the city of Goa to cease striking the *tutenag* and tin *bazaruccos*, but to coin only, in case of need, those of copper, as was decreed in 1605, and still earlier in 1583, is given in full.⁴² The latter are described in the above quoted *Memoria* of Mr. F. N. Xavier, p. 80 (see Plate III., fig. 10).

Obverse—In the field the royal coat-of-arms, with the monetary mark M. T., one letter on each side, the marginal inscription being F. II., R. P., i.e., *Filippus II., Rex Portugaliæ*.

Reverse—A cross on Calvary, the legend around being I. H. S. V., i. e., *In Hoc Signo Vinces*, a motto, in reference to the cross, adopted by the Portuguese on their coinage of the kingdom, years before. Its weight is 30 Portuguese grains.

The mint mark M. T. means, according to Mr. F. N. Xavier, Malacca *Tanga*, which, in conformity with the Government resolution dated the 27th August 1631, was ordered to be struck. Although it bears the name of D. Filipe II., it was in reality coined in the reign of his successor, the resolution above referred to determining that the type should be similar to that of the preceding years. The example in the cabinet of the late Mr. Xavier bears on one side the legend *in extenso*, and the letters I. T., or ‘one *tanga*.’ Its weight

³⁹ *Fasc. V., Pt. I., p. 327.*

⁴⁰ *Opus Citt. Vol. II., pp. 55 et seq.*

⁴¹ *Fasc. VI., pp. 870, 976.*

⁴² *Memoria das Moedas Correntes em Portugal, &c. By M. P. Lopes Fernandes. Lisbon. 1856. Vol. I., p. 176.*

is Port. 30 grains, equal to 25 troy grains. I may mention here once for all that the relation of these two kinds of weight to the metrico-decimal system is as follows :—One gramme = Port. grains 20.07843, and English troy grains 15.

Mr. Aragão at pp. 196—198 of his work describes a *tanga* and *meia tanga*, struck during this government, explaining the letters M. T. to mean *meia tanga*. He also describes two copper pieces of one and five *bazaruccos*. Silver specimens weigh 60 and 29 Portuguese grains respectively, while of the copper coins, that of five *bazaruccos* weighs 289 grains, and of one *bazarucco* 58.

De Azevedo's successor, D. João Coutinho, Conde de Redondo, whose rule extended from November 1617 to November 1619, had a great deal to do with the rate of exchange of the tin, tutenag and copper coinage of *bazaruccos*. He also decreed the issue of silver *bazaruccos*, of which only two specimens have been preserved, of 30 and 10 *bazaruccos*, the latter described by Mr. Aragão at p. 201 of his work, from the collection of the late Mr. F. N. Xavier. For a specimen of the *bazarucco* 30, see Pl. IV., fig. 11. It belongs to the collection of Mr. Sousa e Brito. No specimen of 20 *bazaruccos* has been hitherto found. The 30 *bazaruccos* has on the obverse the coat-of-arms of the kingdom, and on the reverse the numeral 30, indicative of its value of 30 *bazaruccos*, the rim being beaded all round. Its silver is 11 dinheiros in fineness, and weight 15 grains troy.⁴³

On the death of the Conde de Redondo, Fernão de Albuquerque, who governed up to December 1622, ordered the minting of *bazaruccos* at a more reasonable rate. It was during his rule that King D. Filipe II. died, being succeeded by D. Filipe III. on the 8th of April 1621.

D. FILIPPE III. 1621—1640.

The successors of Fernão de Albuquerque, D. Francisco da Gama and D. Fr. Luis de Brito, have left no new type of coinage. The former, however, issued several provisions regulating the value of coins in circulation, which documents have fortunately been preserved. It was however reserved for their successor, and one of the most distinguished viceroys Portuguese India ever had, to cause considerable

⁴³ For documents relating to this coinage, see *Arch. Port. Oriental*, Fasc. VI., pp. 1180 *et seq.*

alteration in the coinage of the country. This was D. Miguel de Noronha, Conde de Linhares, whose beneficent rule extended from October 1629 to December 1635. On the 13th November 1630, he commanded the issue of the new silver coinage of the standard of *reales* or dollars, under the designation of *patacões* of the value of six tangas, *meios* or half *patacões*, *tangas*, and *half tangas*, the weight of the *patacão* being fixed at 345 Portuguese grains, and value at 360 reis, that of the remaining coins being regulated in proportion to this, the fundamental unity of the new monetary scheme.⁴⁴ Then on the 5th November 1631, gold S. Thomés, of the standard of 39½ points, and value of three xerafins and twelve reis, were struck, having on one side a cross and on the other the numeral 912, their value in reis ; while the pagodas of 38 points, weight 66½ Portuguese grains, were allowed to circulate at the value of 14 tangas and 12 reis.⁴⁵ The issue of the gold S. Thomés gave rise to a new denomination and to a controversy. As they bore no effigy of the saint in whose honour they were first struck, the two varieties were known by the name of *Santomés velhos* and *Santomés novos*, or 'old' and 'new' S. Thomés. The controversy arose with the Court of Portugal from the suppression of the figure of the saint, and stamping instead a cross, which was of the order of S. Bento, the viceroy being one of its knights. The viceroy explained that it was not personal vanity that had induced him to stamp the cross of the Order to which he belonged, but only the desire to produce a new type, and in accordance with the practice prevailing during former viceroyalties, when pieces of money bearing new designs, such as the images of S. Sebastian and S. Philip were coined. The new coinage was however forbidden, a royal edict ordaining that S. Thomés should in the future bear the impress of the saint on the obverse, having on the reverse the Cross of the Order of Christ, of which the king was Grand Master, and to which allegiance in the form of a certain amount of pecuniary tribute was paid in the country. His silver coinage was also suspended, his gold coinage only remaining, struck in 1634, and styled *xerafim* and *half xerafim*, of the standard of old S. Thomés, their value being 300 and 150 reis, respectively. They were admitted into circulation at Goa, Cochin, and Malacca.⁴⁶

⁴⁴ *Livro de M.* IV., fol. 125.

⁴⁵ *L. de M.* No. 104, p. 242.

⁴⁶ See *Memoria, &c.*, *ut supra*, pp. 80-82. Navarrete, writing about the middle of the seventeenth century, says :—" The coin that passed at Colombo

Of the silver money issued by the viceroy, Conde de Linhares, only two specimens have been preserved, belonging to the collection of the University of Leyden. They are described and illustrated by Mr. Aragão at pp. 218 *et seq.* of his already mentioned work.

His successor, Pedro da Silva, whose rule extended from December 1635 to the 24th of June 1639, decreed by a resolution, dated the 16th of January 1637, that silver money of the standard of the *tostão*, struck in Portugal, should be issued, consisting of *xeralfins*, weighing 312½ Portuguese grains, *meio xerafin*, *tanga* of the weight of 62½ grains, and *meia tanga*.⁴⁷

But now a new era dawned for Portugal and her dependencies. The Portuguese had long borne with inimitable patience the weight of the Spanish yoke, which had, by depriving them of their former glorious conquests, atoned in part at least for their past guilty career in the Eastern land and sea. A plot long formed now broke out; and the Spanish ruler being driven away, the grandson of the Duke of Bragança, who had been deprived of his right by Philip II. of Spain, was in 1640 proclaimed king, under the title of D. João IV. But on ascending the throne, the sovereign of Portugal, now become once more independent, found his vast ultramarine empire a mere wreck. Such a retribution for an egoistical and overbearing policy in India, barring of course some brilliant acts of valour and heroism, was indeed far above the wages of their misdeeds. But to return to numismatics.

Although the dynastic change took place in 1640, it would seem that in those days of slow navigation the news was not known in India, or else a party favorable to Philip of Spain continued to govern India; for as late as the following year coins were struck bearing the effigy of S. Philip, in honor of the king of that name. Reference will be made to the coinage struck in this year in the sequel, but it is time to describe here the two following specimens of silver coins struck in 1640. (See Plate IV., figs. 12 and 13.)

Obverse—The effigy of S. Philippe with a long cross in the right hand between the letters S. F. (S. Philippe), and below the year 1640.

Reverse—The coat-of-arms of the kingdom, with the monetary mark G. A. The former of these specimens weighs 65 grs. troy, and the latter 32½ grs. They belong to the collection of Mr. Sousa e Brito.

was vize-dollars, rupees, and S. Thomas's, pagodes, pieces of eight, and a particular coin for the country like that they had at Malaca."—Churchill's *Collection of Voyages*. Lond. 1732, Vol. I., p. 272.

⁴⁷ *Liv. V.*, p. 219.

D. JOÃO IV. 1640—1656.

The last viceroy of the late monarch of the dynasty of the Philips of Spain, Antonio Telles de Menezes, who governed from 1639 to 1640, issued silver *xeralfins* and *tangas* with their halves, described by Mr. Aragão at pp. 225-226 of his book. The first viceroy of the new reign of D. João IV., João da Silva Tello de Menezes, whose rule ended in December 1645, appears to have retained, without any considerable alteration, the monetary system in vogue during the viceroyalty of his immediate predecessors, changing, however, the effigy of S. Philip for that of S. John, a childish flattery keenly appreciated by kings rather than by saints, whose figures the coins bore. His successor, D. Filipe Mascarenhas, in the government of India from 1645 to 1651, by the deliberation of the Council of the State Treasury, issued on the 14th of January 1646 a new silver coinage for circulation at Mozambique, called *crusados*, of the value of 400 reis, of the standard and fineness of the *xeralfins* current in the country, and of the weight of the *patacões* struck in 1630,⁴⁸ while all gold bullion from China and Mozambique imported into Goa was ordered to be taken over to the mint for coining S. Thomés of the standard of old S. Thomés, of the value of 4 *xeralfins* and half *tanga* apiece.⁴⁹ In 1649, by the decree dated the 15th June, more silver *xeralfins* of the standard of those current were struck,⁵⁰ and in 1650, by the resolution of the 18th February, silver *xeralfins* with a new type, consisting of, instead of the figure of S. John, which was impressed in honour of the reigning monarch, the Cross of the Order of Christ on one side, and the royal coat-of-arms on the other, its weight being 211 Portuguese grains, while that of the *pardao* hitherto current was 220 grains, and 25 *vintens* in value, each *vintem* of 12 *reis*.⁵¹

One of these pieces, bearing date 1654, is in my cabinet.

Obverse—The royal coat-of-arms.

Reverse—The Cross of the Order of Christ, with the date 1654 in its angles. (Plate IV., fig. 14.) Weight 78 grains troy.

Of the successors of the viceroy, Dom Filipe Mascarenhas, D. Rodrigo Lobo da Silveira, Conde de Sarzedas, was the only one, in the

⁴⁸ *Liv. VI.*, fol. 153. The silver used in the manufacture of this coinage was obtained from Japan, and from 100,000 dollars paid by the Dutch in satisfaction of one of the stipulations of the peace treaty.

⁴⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 120.

⁵⁰ *Ibid.*, VIII., folio 76.

⁵¹ *Liv. de Moncões*, 22, fol. 14.

course of ten years, from 1650 to 1660, to issue the tin coinage of *bazaruceos*, which was continued by the succeeding governors. Mr. Aragão also informs us that during his government were issued three silver coins—viz., *xerafins*, *meios xerafins*, and *tangas*, two of which he describes at p. 238 of his work. In this interval King D. João died, on the 6th of November 1656, and was succeeded by D. Affonso VI.

D. AFFONSO VI. 1656—1667.

In 1660 was issued, according to Tavernier, the gold S. Thomé, of the value of four rupees, of which he gives an illustration in his book of travels.

Obverse—Area is occupied by the figure of S. Thomas, with a nimbus round the head, and club on left shoulder, and the year 1660. In the margin S. TOME.

Reverse—The area contains the royal coat-of-arms with the mint mark G—A (Goa), and the margin has the words *Rex Portugaliæ*. (Plate IV., fig. 15.)

This engraving has also been copied by both Mr. Lopes Fernandes, Vol. I., p. 208, of his work before mentioned, on the coins current in Portugal from the time of the Romans to 1856, and by Mr. Aragão at Pl. II., fig. 10. Now among the documents existing in the archives of the Goa Secretariat, there is no mention made of this type, and as Tavernier is known to have been one of those travellers endued with a powerful imagination, one may perhaps be justified in doubting of such a coin having ever been in circulation. The engravings furnished, for instance, by this writer of the zodiacal series of coins of the Emperor Jahângîr, are not merely ill-designed and incorrect, but have little analogy to the originals, as Marsden has demonstrated in his *Numismata Orientalia*, Lond. 1823, Pt. II., p. 612. But as the description given of the Portuguese currency in India by the author has some historical interest, I append it here below:—

“ La monnoye d'or que les Portugais font batre à Goa est à meilleur titre que nos Louys d'or, et pese un grain plus que notre demi-pistole. Du temps que j'étois à Goa cette piece valoit quatre roupies, ou six francs de nostre monnoye. Ils la tiennent ainsi haute afin que les marchands qui viennent de tous les costez des Indes leur apporter des marchandises, ne transportent point hors du pais leur monnoye d'or, et ils appellent cette piece *Saint Thomé*..... Ils ont aussi des pièces d'argent, qu'ils appellent *Pardos* (*pardaos*) et qui passent pour la valeur

de 27 sols de notre monnoye ; comme aussi quantité de petite monnoye de cuivre et d'estain."^{**}

The next 10 years, from 1660 to 1670, do not show us any considerable alteration in the coinages above referred to, except a silver *tanga*, struck during the government of Antonio de Mello de Castro, and described by Mr. Aragão at p. 247 of his book.

During the viceroyalty of João Nunes da Cunha, Conde de S. Vicente, whose rule extended from October 1666 to November 1668, it was forbidden, by a decree dated the 9th July 1667, to admit any foreign coinage of copper, tin, or tutenag, into the dependencies of Chaul, Bassein, and Damaun, only the ancient and modern *bazaruccos* struck at Goa being allowed to circulate, and silver *xerafins* were issued on the 28th November 1668, weighing 211 Portuguese grains apiece, the value of a mark of silver being coined into 21 *pardaos*, 4 *tangas*, and 12 *reis*. He also forbade the use of debased pagodes, except those of Barcelor, called *saxagaris patars* and the *agramutes* (?Agra muhrs). In the meantime D. Affonso was succeeded by King D. Pedro, who ruled from 1667 to 1706.

D. PEDRO II. 1667—1706.

The Viceroy Conde de Lavradio commanded in 1672 the issue of silver *xerafins* from old dollars of the same weight and standard as those coined on the 21st November 1668, and fixed the standard of both gold and silver coinages, which were fluctuating for some years, from the intrinsic value of the metals not being equal to their conventional or legal values, and from the officers of the mint being extremely arbitrary in their mint regulations, while D. Fr. Antonio Brandão and Antonio Paes de Sande restored in 1670 the value of the gold S. Thomé, slightly altered by their predecessors, to that of five *xerafins*, caused the mintage of tin money to cease from the 11th January 1680, and ordered all the silver *abbássis* and *mahmúdis* brought from Persia to be taken as so much bullion over to the mint to be coined into *xerafins*, weighing 211 Port. grains apiece, *tangas*, and half *tangas*, from February 1681.^{**} Mr. Aragão describes at p. 255 of his work a silver S. Thomé, bearing the date 1672, and at p. 258 *meia tanga* and five *bazaruccos* struck during the years 1678 and 1679. The

^{**} *Les Six Voyages, &c.*, 1718. Tome II., pp. 614-615.

^{**} *Liv. de Mon. XIV.*, fol. 103.

specimens of the silver coinage of this period are extremely rare. The following are, as far as I am aware, unique—

Obverse—The coat-of-arms of the kingdom.

Reverse—Area, the cross of the Order of Christ, with the year 1664, rather indistinct, in the angles. On the margin the letter S, the T being invisible, the two letters being initials of S. Thomé. Then there are two countermarks round the edge resembling an O and a star, made probably at the readjustment of the coin. This specimen is in my collection. Weight 156 grains troy. (Plate IV., fig 16.)

Mr. Aragão, at p. 247 of his work, describes a silver tanga bearing the date 1665, supposed to have been struck for the province of Bassein.

A piece of two *tangas* in silver :—

Reverse—The Cross of the Order of Christ in the field, and within a beaded rim, having the year 1663 in the angles.

Obverse—The royal coat-of-arms within a similar circle, with the mint mark G—A (Goa). Weight 30 grains troy. (Plate IV., fig. 17.)

Then there is the silver tanga :—

Reverse—The Cross of the Order of Christ within the border, as in the above specimen, with four stars in the angles of the cross.

Obverse—The royal coat-of-arms. Weight 18 grains troy. (Plate IV., fig. 18.) The two tangas above described belong also to my collection.

From 1670 to 1680 we have no document reporting any alteration in the monetary system in vogue. As for the specimens of the coins struck between 1678 and 1880, Mr. Aragão describes, as already mentioned, a silver tanga, bearing the date 1678, belonging to the collection of the late Mr. F. N. Xavier of Goa, and a copper coin of the value of five *bazaruccos*. It was during the rule of the Viceroy Conde de Alvôr, from 1681 to 1686, that both gold and silver coins were issued, called St. Thomé, xerafim, meio xerafim, and tanga, all of which are described at pp. 262-263 of Mr. Aragão's book. A peculiarity worth noting about the type of the silver xerafim and tanga is the substitution of the Cross of the Order of Christ, which was prevalent in former issues, by that of St. George. (See Plate IV., fig. 19.)

Obverse—The coat-of-arms of the kingdom.

Reverse—The Cross of St. George, with various ornaments all round. Weight 232 Port. grains. In my collection.

A tanga of the same type is described by Mr. Aragão at p. 253 of his work.

About this time Goa was visited by a considerably larger number of visitors than in the time of Pyrard, some of whom have noted down in their travels the coinage current in Goa. One of these seems to be Mr. William Barret, who, writing in 1684, gives of the Goa coinage a detailed account, to which I may well add the description of currencies in other Portuguese settlements at that time. But before doing so, I must allude, in short, to a silver coin which has borne the varying denomination of silver St. Thomé, xerafim and rupia, the last being the name now prevailing for a silver coin of that standard. There are several specimens of it bearing the date from 1682 to 1689. (See Plate IV., fig. 20.)

Obverse—The coat-of-arms of the kingdom between the letters G. A., its monetary mark.

Reverse—The Cross of the Order of Christ, with the year 1682, the numerals in the angle of the cross. Its weight is 212 Port. grains.

"For the mony of Goa," says Mr. William Barret, "there is a kind of mony made of lead and tin mingled, being thicke and round, and stamped on the one side with the sphere or globe of the world, and on the other side two arrows and 5 rounds : and this kind of mony is called Basaruchi, and 15 of these make a vinton of naughty mony, and 5 vintons make a tanga, and 4 vintennas make a tanga of base mony ; so that the tanga of base mony is 60 basaruchies, and the tanga of good mony 75 basaruchies, and 5 tangas make a seraphine of gold, which in merchandize is worth 5 tangas good mony : but if one would change them into Basaruchies, he may have 5 tangas and 16 basaruchies, which overplus they cal cerafagio, and when they bargain of the pardaw of gold, each pardaw is ment to be 6 tangas good money, but in merchandize they use not to demand pardawes of gold in Goa, except it be for jewels and horses, for all the rest they take of seraphins of silver *per adviso*.

"The roials of plate, I say, the roial of 8 are worth per custom and commandment of the King of Portugall 400 reies, and every rey is one basaruchie and one-fourth part, which maketh tangas 6 and 53 basaruchies as their just value, but for that the said roials are excellent silver and currant in divers places of India and chiefly in Malacca, when the ships are to depart at the in due times (called Monsuns) every one to have the said roials pay more

than they are worth, and the overplus, as is above said, they call serafagio. And first they give the just value of the 100 roials of 8, at 5 tangas 50 basaruchies apiece, which done, they give seraphins 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 15 until 22 by the 100, according as they are in request.

"The duckat of gold is worth 9 tangas and a halfe good mony, and yet not stable in price, for that when the ships depart from Goa to Cochin, they pay them at 9 tangas and three-fourth partes and 10 tangas, and that is the most that they are worth.

"The larines are worth by just value basaruchies 93 and three-fourth parts, and 4 larines make a seraphine of silver, which is 5 tangas of good mony, and these also have serafagion of 6, 7, 8, 10, untill 16, by the 100, for when the ships depart for the north, to say, for Chaul, Diu, Cambaia, or Bassaim, all carry of the same, because it is mony more currant than any other.

"There is also a sort of seraphins of gold of the stampe of Ormuz, whereof there are but fewe in Goa, but being there, they are woorth five larines and somewhat more, according as they are in request.

"There is also another litle sort of mony, round, having on the one side a crosse, and on the other side a crowne, which is woorth one halfe a tanga of good mony, and another of the same stampe lesse than that which they call Imitino de buona moneda, which is worth 18 basaruchies three-fourth parts a piece.

"Note that if a man bargaine in merchandize, it behooveth to demaund tangas of good mony : for by nominating tangas onely, is understood to be base mony of 60 basaruchies, which wanteth of the good mony *ut supra.*" ¹¹

Writing of Cochin, he says :—"The mony of Cochin are all the same sorts which are currant in Goa, but the duckat of gold in value is 10 tangas of good mony."—*Ibid.*, p. 411.

Of Malacca he writes :—"For the mony of Malacca, the least mony currant is of tinne stamped with the armes of Portugall, and 12 of these make a chazza. The chazza is also of tinne with the said armes, and 2 of these make a challaine.

"The challaine is of tinne with the said armes, and 40 of these make a tanga of Goa good mony, but not stamped in Malacca.

"There is also a sort of silver mony which they call Patachines, and is worth 6 tangas of good mony, which is 360 reyes, and is stamped

¹¹ Hakluyt's Collection of the Early Travels, &c. Lond. 1810. Vol. II., p. 410.

with two letters S. T., which is S. Thomas, on one side, and the arms of Portugall on the other side.

"There is also a kind of mony called cruzados, stamped with the armes of Portugall, and is worth 6 tangas good mony, the larines are every 9 of them worth 2 cruzados, which is 12 tangas good mony, and these larines be of those which are stamped in Balsara and Ormuz. The roials of 8 they call Pardaos de Reales, and are worth 7 tangas of good mony."—*Ibid.*, p. 411.

Of Ormuz he says:—"Touching the mony of Ormuz, the bargaine in merchandize at so many leches by the barre, which lech is 100 Asaries, and maketh larines 100 and a halfe, which maketh pardaos 38, and larines one-halfe, at larines 5 by the pardao. One asarie is sadines 10, and every sadine is 100 danarie.

"The larine is worth 5 sadines and one-fourth part, so that the sadine is worth of Aleppo money 1 medine and one-fourth part, and the larine is in Balsara worth of All eppo money 6 medines and a half.

"The pardao is 5 larines of Balsara.

"There is also stamped in Ormuz a seraphine of gold which is little and round, and is worth 24 sadines, which maketh 30 medines of Aleppo.

"The Venetian money is worth in Ormuz larines 88 per 100 meticals, and the roials are worth larines 86 lesse one sadine, which is every thousand meticals 382 asures; but those that will not sel them, use to melt them, and make them so many larines in the King of Ormuz his mint, whereby they cleare 2 per 100, and somewhat more: and this they doe because neither Venetian money nor roials were as currant in Ormuz, *per adviso*."—*Ibid.*, p. 408.

Passing on now to describe the coinage struck subsequent to 1690, we find that from that year to 1706 there was little or no change in the type or standard of the currency in use, except in readjusting copper and tutenag coins, whereby two old pieces were made equivalent to a new one, and even three to one, to which allusion has already been made.

In the meantime King D. Pedro II. died in 1706, being succeeded by D. João V., whose reign continued till 1750, and it covers by twenty years more, the rest of the period allotted to this paper.

D. JOÃO V. 1706—1750.

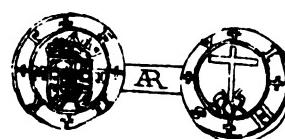
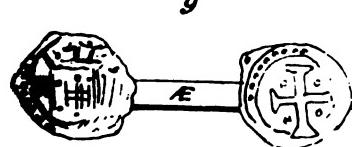
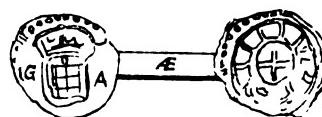
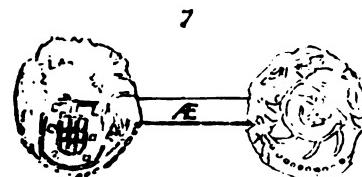
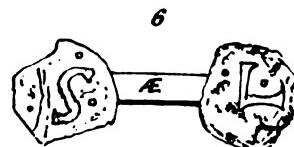
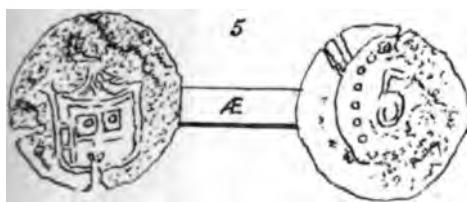
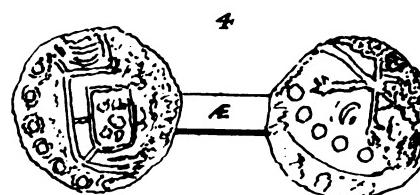
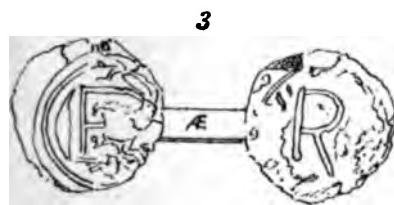
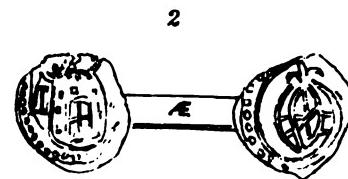
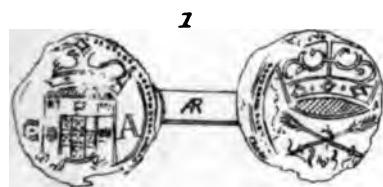
The first viceroy of this reign, D. Rodrigo da Costa, from 1707 to 1712, does not appear to have made any alteration in the currency,

which was considerably modified by his successor, Vasco Fernandes Cesar de Menezes, who allowed, besides, private parties to send gold to the mint for coining money, a concession not apparently the first of its kind, and to receive 96 S. Thomés, of 5 xerafins each, per one mark of gold, after paying the seignorage, cost of mintage, &c.

This new issue of S. Thomés gave again rise to the denomination of *velhos e novos*, or old and new S. Thomés. He also decreed the minting of tin *bazaruccos* with an alloy of tutenag and lead in certain proportions in two distinct series of coins. To this time may perhaps be attributed the tutenag *bazarucco* illustrated at Plate V., fig. 21.

The originals of this and the following coins are in my collection. They all, with the exception of the first, the attribution of which by Mr. Aragão to the reign of D. Pedro II. is worth recording (see p. 258 of his work), weighing 130 Portuguese grains, bear dates as well as the mint mark G. A. The other specimen, fig. 22, bears the coat-of-arms on one side, and the initial of the name of D. João V. and the numeral 15, indicative of the value of the coin in *bazaruccos*. The specimens, figs. 23 and 24, bear the date 1722, and also their value in $7\frac{1}{2}$ and 5 *bazaruccos*. They weigh 180 and 152 Portuguese grains respectively. But the most curious, and hitherto inedited coin, is the tutenag specimen, discovered at Tanna some years ago while laying the foundation of a house. (See Plate V., fig. 25.) It is partly broken at the edge, but the type is fortunately entire. It bears the coat-of-arms of the kingdom, with the mint mark D. and B., which seem to stand for Damaun and Bassein, on the obverse, and the Cross of the Order of Christ on the reverse, with the year 1723 in the angles.

In conclusion, it remains to describe the silver coin bearing the portrait of King D. João V., which is so uncouth as to be styled a libel on the physiognomy of that not otherwise handsome person. It is known by the name of rupia, having its division of meia rupia or pardao, meio pardao, tanga, e meia tanga (see Plate V., figs. 26 and 27, for the specimens of the first and second coins); but as the subject of the silver coinage of D. João V. is an extensive one, I reserve it for further consideration in the next and concluding paper of this series.



showed how much there remained "to be done in the long-hunted field of British India."

The authors of the *Bombay Flora* themselves acknowledge that their catalogue of Bombay plants is not complete, and that "new species had been found whilst the last sheets (of the *Flora*) were passing through the press," so much so that the Cryptogamic portion of the catalogue had, to meet the wants of the readers, "to be literally transcribed" from the work of Mr. Graham. And there is, indeed, a great blank to be filled up in this department. On our hills, and especially on that of Mahableshwar, grow numerous species of ferns, many of which still await identification.

Before attempting, then, to discuss questions of scientific interest such as those we have referred to, it becomes necessary, in the first place, to examine and describe accurately all the species of plants which grow in our Presidency, for from the presence of some plants, as well as the absence of others, as also from the irregular distribution of various species, many important lessons may be learnt.

It is well known that an intestine war is continuously going on amongst plants, the vigorous or fittest to live gradually crowding out or destroying such as are not; the climate, soil, and other circumstances which make the former grow vigorously and extend themselves operating injuriously on the latter. Various experiments, conducted some years ago at Chiswick and Rothamsted, by Mr. Lawes and Dr. Gilbert, have satisfactorily established this fact.

A correspondent, whose letter appeared in the *Times of India* of 9th ultimo, says:—"Another disappearance from this neighbourhood (Ramghaut, Matheran), is that of a very beautiful fern (*Acrophorus immersus*), which about five years ago used to be found in great quantities growing on the trees. One in particular, which was then covered with them, fell down, and was removed about two years ago, and now very few specimens of this fern are to be found in the neighbourhood. It is to be feared, too, that they will not increase, for this fern is surprisingly local in its habit. For instance, I know of three rocks in three different places at Mahableshwar, each of which is covered with a splendid growth of *Acrophorus immersus*, but not a single specimen is to be found on any of the thousand of similar rocks within a few feet, and apparently subject exactly to the same influences." The same correspondent has the following in to-day's (6th August 1881) *Times of India*:—"The wood below the fort on Parbut Hill contains two sorts of climbing fern (*Lygodium scandens* and

Lygodium flexuosum), which have of late years become rarer and rarer at Matheran, and are now to be found there, so far as I know, only near the bottom of the track below Elphinstone Spring, by which the descent is made in Long Walk, and in the water-course below Harrison's Spring."

Dr. J. G. Smith (*Matheran Hill*, first edition) says:—"Near the Malet Spring *Nephobolus adnascens* was seen before the tank was built, but has disappeared of late. . . . The barren frond of an *Athyrium* found on Garbut many years ago has led to the most careful search being made for a fruitful specimen of the same, but without success; and a small *Ophioglossum*, reported to be on the trees, has hitherto eluded observation on the hill top."

This destruction is due to the law of the survival of the fittest. Every one who has visited Mahableshwar must have been struck with the little variety of the vegetation of the hill as compared with that of the Konkan, or even of Matheran. *Jambul*, *Pishas* and *Ghelas* are the commonest plants seen everywhere. If these in propagating themselves so abundantly and gregariously have displaced other plants of less vigorous growth, we have no record or means of ascertaining. It is not unreasonable to suppose that if this propagation continues unchecked as hitherto, it will result in the extirpation of the herbaceous and shrubby plants which now exist along with them.

The hand of man is also busy in the same work. The demand for timber for machinery, building purposes, fuel, packing cases, &c., made in consequence of the several new industries which have of late sprung up amongst us, has led to the denudation of our forests, and the almost complete extinction of some of the species. Col. Beddome (*Flora Sylatica*), in the notes appended to the figure of *Calophyllum tomentosum*, says:—"Thousands of these trees have lately been destroyed by the axe of the coffee-planters in Malabar, Coorg and Travancore; large quantities still remain, but chiefly in very inaccessible places. In the ghat forests of South Canara they are felled by the Forest Department, and floated down the rivers to the coast depots." Dr. Birdwood (*Veg. Prod. of Bombay*) says that "*Calophyllum angustifolium* is everywhere becoming scarce and calls for a strict conservation." *Pterocarpus marsupium*, highly esteemed on account of its strong, close-grained, reddish brown wood, and of the true kino which it yields, was "common formerly in South and Central India, though now in many places rare or nearly extirpated."—(See Brandis' *Forest Flora*.) It has been remarked that some of the most handsome and sweet-scented orchids which

grow at Mahableshwar are getting scarce there. It will be no wonder if in a few years they are completely extinguished, if no check is put on the indiscriminate uprooting and selling them in cart-loads for a trifle, as is done at present by the hill-men.

Though great are the advantages of a general flora descriptive of all the plants of this Presidency, still no one can deny the utility, in a scientific point of view, of a manual or catalogue of the plants of a hill like Mahableshwar, of which the climate, altitude and excessive moisture during four months of the year have a considerable influence on the habits and distribution of some species. Such a catalogue will be subsidiary to the general flora, and very serviceable to many gentlemen who, whilst in the plains, have no leisure to devote themselves to the study of Botany, but who, whilst at the hills, do not like to remain idle nor strangers amongst the beautiful works of God.

The list given below was written towards the end of the last hot season, in consequence of an observation which fell from a friend about the paucity of plant species on the hill, and with no intention of laying it before the Society. It is now brought forward rather reluctantly, with the sole desire that it might serve the purpose of inducing all those who are engaged in botanical pursuits to direct their attention to the subject. The present is but a small contribution towards a more thorough exploration of the botany of the hill, which can only be effected by several persons coöoperating and visiting the hill during the hot and cold seasons, and if possible during the rains, for I am afraid that some of the herbaceous annuals and bulbous plants flower and die away before the end of September.

The investigation of the botany of Mahableshwar will be much facilitated if the Superintendent, who is fortunately a medical officer, be allowed to spend a small sum from the station fund to form a herbarium, depositing part in the Frere Hall, and sending duplicates to that of Poona for comparison with similar forms of the plains. I feel certain many visitors would come forward to voluntarily take part in this work.

As the list given below is incomplete and imperfect, it would be premature to offer any general remarks regarding the distribution, habits, &c., of the vegetation.

Curcuma caulina, *Micromeria Malcolmiana* and *Ophelia multiflora* appear to be confined to the hill so far as my limited observation goes, and from an examination of an imperfect specimen of a flower, I am

of opinion that *Crinum brachymena* is pretty common midway between Mahableshwar and Panchgunny. The place is arid and devoid of vegetation. This handsome *crinum* flowers at the beginning of June, when no vestige of the leaves is to be seen. These appear about a month later, and completely wither and disappear in the hot season. The plant is not described in any Indian Flora, neither does Hooker mention the locality in the Bombay Presidency from which Mr. Woodrow collected the bulb which he sent to Kew.*

Turraea villosa is common to Mahableshwar and the Anamallay hills only, for it is not described as existing anywhere else. *Ficus virgata* is not mentioned in the Catalogue and the Flora of the Bombay Presidency; it however thrives well, and appears to me to have been planted.

A visitor to the hill is struck at once by the fact that the vegetation there consists chiefly, almost exclusively, of the trees *Eugenia jambolana*, *Actinodaphne lanceolata*, *Randia dumetorum*, *Lasiosiphon eriocephalus*, and in some places of *Terminalia chebula*, and of bushes and herbs *Pavetta Indica*, *Colebrookia ternifolia*, *Euphorbia Rothiana*, *Allophylus Cobbe*, *Scutia Indica* and *Pteris quadriaurita*. It will be seen that these and many other plants have a large geographical range, and that a few are restricted to high ghats, but their distribution and associations are different. Though the temperature of Lingmala, a valley about three miles east of Frere Hall, is suitable, the Cinchona plantation has failed there. This failure is attributed to canker which attacked the young plants four years after they were laid out, said to be induced by the long dry weather followed by excessive rain. It is premature to discuss the causes of the decay of the trees, which did well for about four years. We have no data before us respecting the condition and habits of the vegetation of the valley. Speaking generally it is of stunted growth. *Eugenia jambolana* does not grow at Mahableshwar to be so tall a tree as in the Konkan, and on the slopes of the valley it becomes smaller, almost shrubby. *Meme-cylon edule* does not appear to attain such a goodly size as here below. And it is a well observed fact that the species of *Hymenodictyon*, a genus closely allied to *Cinchona*, which in the plains grow to a good height, assume at Mahableshwar and Matheran a shrubby habit. Now may the causes which produce this change have had an influence

* I have learnt on further inquiry made since the above was written, that the specimen referred to was obtained at Rotunda Ghaut, Mahableshwar.

on the cinchona trees, which we see even at the present day at Lingmalla of a shrubby habit, after having been planted so many years ago?

It will be observed, also, that in the list given below there are no species representing Anonaceæ and Guttiferæ, which love moisture and heat, and are common in the Konkan. We do not see in it also *Briedelia montana*, *Cocculus macrocarpus* and other plants which are common even at Matheran. But nothing can be concluded from this, because, as I have stated above, my list is incomplete, and such plants may yet be detected. In the list there is also an absence of grasses, but these and the ferns can best be studied only after the rains and in the cold season.

RANUNCULACEÆ.

Clematis triloba : D.C. Prod. I., 8 ; W. and A. Prod. II. ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 1. *Moriel* or *ranjai*.

Seen in leaves and fruits; exists also in Mawal districts, and successfully cultivated in some of the Poona gardens. Flowers large, pure white, sweet-scented. Appear September—October.*

MAGNOLIACEÆ.

Mischelia champaca : D. C. Prod. I., 79 ; Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 656 ; W. and A. Prod. 6.

Champa or *sonachampa*.

PAPAVERACEÆ.

Argemone Mexicana : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 571 ; W. and A. Prod. 18 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 6 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 3. *Daruri* or *Kantedhotra*, yellow flowering Mexican thistle. *Fico del Inferno* of the Spaniards.

Common everywhere. From its seeds an oil is obtained by the poor inhabitants of the Konkan.

Is in flower all the year round.

CAPPARIDÆ.

Capparis divaricata : D. C. Prod. I., 252 ; W. and A. Prod. 27 ; W. Ic. t. 889 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 174 ; *C. stylosa*, W. and A. Prod. 25 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 10.

Common at the foot of the Mahableshwar hill, between the Beema and Krishna. It is a desert plant, found also in S. Mahratta Country in dry rocky places.

Flowers greenish white. Appear April—May.

* I have given the flowering season of some plants, though I did not see them in flower. In such cases the periods have been inferred from what I have observed of the plants elsewhere.

C. tener : Dalz. in Hook. Kew Journ. Bot. II., 41 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 9.

It has a long range, on hills extending from Assam to Burmah and Tenasserim, Konkan, Canara and Ceylon.

It appears to be rare at Mahableshwar.

C. spinosa, var. *Murrayana* : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 9 ; W. Ic. t. 379 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 9 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 173. *Kabbar* Arab., *Kalvary*, Scind.

In ravines at Mahableshwar ; also found along the Ghauts as far north as Malsej.

Flowers large, white, handsome.

Cleome speciosissima : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 5.

Probably run out of cultivation.

BIXINÆ.

Flacourtie Ramontchi : W. and A. Prod. 29 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 10 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 10 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 193. *Tāmbāt*.

The fruit is eaten.

Flowers November—March. Fruit ripens May—June.

TERNSTRÆMIACEÆ.

Camelia thea. A specimen brought to me from a garden formerly cultivated by Chinese appeared to be of vigorous growth.

MALVACEÆ.

Sida spinosa : D. C. Prod. I., 460 ; *S. alba* ; D. C. Prod. l. c. ; W. and A. Prod. 158 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 17 ; Roxb. Fl. Ind. III., 174 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 323.

Flowers small, white ; appear in the rainy and cold seasons.

Malva sylvestris var. *Mauritiana* : D. C. Prod. I., 432 ; Roxb. Fl. Ind. III., 181 ; W. and A. Prod. 45 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 6 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 12. Cultivated.

STERCULIACEÆ.

Eriolæna Candolii : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 24 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 370.

Flowers yellow, large and showy ; appear in the hot season.

TIKIACEÆ.

Elæocarpus ganitrus : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II. 592 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 27 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 22 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 400. *Rādrāk*.

Flowers in the cold season.

The tuberculated nuts are used as necklaces by fakirs.

E. oblongus : W. and A. Prod. 82 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 27 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 21. *Kas* or *Kasso*.

A very handsome tree when in flower ; found at Wai and Lingmalla, below the Cinchona plantations.

Flowers in the hot season.

GERANIACEÆ.

Oxalis corniculata : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 42 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 35 ; D. C. Prod. I., 692. *Ambuti, amrūl*.

Common everywhere.

RUTACEÆ.

Evodia Roxburghiana : Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 487 ; *Xanthoxylon triphyllum*, Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 36 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 46.

A rare shrub or small tree. I saw only one (male) specimen on the road from Mahableshwar to Panchgunny.

Flowers—white—towards the end of the hot season.

Murraya Koenigii : Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 503 ; *Bergera Koenigii*, W. and A. Prod. 94 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 29 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 24.

Kadhinim (*Kudianim*).

Flowers in the hot season ; ripens its fruit in the rainy season.

The flowers white. The leaves are used in chutneys.

Atalantia monophylla : D. C. Prod. I., 535 ; W. and A. Prod. 91 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 28 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 22. *Makur limbū* or *rhan limbū*.

Seen at Sydney Point.

Flowers October—November ; fruits in February.

Strong walking-sticks are made of it.

MELIACEÆ.

Turraea villosa : Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 542 ; Bedd. Fl. Sylv. An. Gen. 64.

Not seen by me.

OLACINEÆ.

Mappia fætida : Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 589 ; *M. oblonga*, Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 28. *Gura, Naruk* (?)

Common. Seen in fruit.

CELASTRINÆ.

Celastrus Rothiana : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 47. *Yeklo*.

A small unarmed shrub ; not common.

RHAMNACEÆ.

Zizyphus rugosa : W. and A. Prod. 162.; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 49; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 39; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 636. *Z. glabra* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. I., 614. *Turun*.

Common.

Flowers small, greenish—February—April; fruit in May.

Scutia Indica : W. and A. Prod. 165; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 50; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 39; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 640. *Chimat*.

Common.

Flowers yellowish green or whitish—March—April; fruit in May.

AMPELIDÆ.

Vitis lanceolaria : W. and A. Prod. 128.

Sisecus lanceolaria : D. C. Prod. I., 632; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 33; *S. muricata* : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 40.

Very common.

Flowers in the hot season.

Leea sambucina : Roxb. Fl. Ind. I., 657; D. C. Prod. I., 635;

L. staphylea : Roxb. Fl. Ind. I., 658; W. and A. Prod. 132; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 41; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 33. *Dinda*.

Flowers small, greenish white, generally appearing in March; the fruit ripens in May.

SAPINDACEÆ.

Allophylus Cobbe : Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. I., 673; Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 268; *Schmiedelia Cobbe* : D. C. Prod. I., 610; W. and A. Prod. 109; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 29. *Tipin, Mendri*.

Very common shrub.

Flowers—small, whitish—in May.

Cardiospermum canescens (?)

My specimen is very imperfect.

ANACARDIACEÆ.

Mangifera Indica.

On the top of the hill it does not thrive well; even the grafted trees do not produce good fruit.

LEGUMINOSÆ.

Crotalaria Leschenaultii : D. C. Prod. II., 125; W. and A. Prod. 186; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 54; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 44. *Dingallá*.

Common at Mahableshwar.

Flowers after the rains.

Indigofera pulchella : Roxb. Fl. Ind. III., 382 ; W. and A. Prod. 203 ; Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 60 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 46. *Chinnatti*.

Not uncommon.

This shrub flowers in the hot season. Flowers are large, bluish purple, handsome.

Atylosia (Lawii) lineata : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 74.

Common. At Lingmalla.

Bauhinia racemosa : W. and A. Prod. 295 ; Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 82 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 64 ; *B. parviflora* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 373. *Aptah*.

The leaves are used in making native cigarettes; also given as a precious present in the *Dussera* festival days.

Flowers white or yellowish white, rather small for the genus ; May—June.

Pongamia glabra : D. C. Prod. II., 416 ; W. and A. Prod. 262 ; Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 77 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 55 ; *Galedupa Indica* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. III., 239. *Karunj*.

Flowers white, mixed with a slight tint of blue and purple ; appear during the hot season. Oil is extracted from the seeds, and used in skin diseases and for lamps.

Casalpinia sepiaria : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 360 ; Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 80. *Chillur, Mysore thorn* by the English.

Common at Wai.

Flower yellow—February, March and April ; fruit in May.

Cassia fistula : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 333 ; Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 80 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 62 ; W. and A. Prod. 285. *Bhawa*.

Flowers in the hot season, in long pendulous racemes ; large, of a bright yellow colour. The pulp of the long cylindric pods is officinal in the British and Indian Pharmacopœias ; used as a purgative.

Tamarindus Indica : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 82.

At Wai.

Albizzia Lebbek : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 88 ; *Mimosa sirissa* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 544 ; *A. speciosa* : W. and A. Prod. 275 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 58. *Sirus, siris*.

Flowers—white, fragrant—towards the end of the hot season.

A. stipulata : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 88 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. II., 300 ; *Acacia stipulata* : D. C. Prod. II., 469 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 58. *Shirsha*. Large tree. Flowers April, May and June, of a pinkish colour.

A. odoratissima (?)

The specimen received was imperfect for identification.

ROSACEÆ.

Rubus lasiocarpus : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 89.

Common.

Flowers—white—in the cold season; ripens its fruit in the hot season.

R. rugosus : Dalz. and Gibs. 89.

Said to exist at Mahableshwar, but not seen by me.

The roses thrive very well. I have seen some pear trees at Lingmalla and in private gardens in fruit, but these were small. Strawberries and raspberries are cultivated and produce tolerably good fruit.

CRASSULACEÆ.

Bryophyllum Calycinum : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 82 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. II., 413.

Kalanchoe pinnata : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 105.

Ahiravánamahídrávana in Mah. and *Zakhamhayát* in Hind.

Common.

COMBRETACEÆ.

Terminalia chebula : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 91 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 69 ; Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 433. *Hirda*.

Does not appear to grow so tall as in the plains.

T. arjuna : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 91 ; *Pentaptera arjuna* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 438 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 69. *Arjūn, Sidra*.

Calycopteryx floribunda : Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. II., 449 ; *Getonia floribunda*, Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 91 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 70.

Uksey, Baguli.

Common everywhere, on hills up to 2,500 feet.

Flowers numerous and greenish white.

MYRTACEÆ.

Eugenia jambolana : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 484 ; *Syzygium jambolanum* : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 73 ; Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 93. *Jambul*.

Commonest tree on the hill; but does not produce such large fruits as in the Konkan.

E. jambos : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 494 ; *Jambosa vulgaris* : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 74 ; Dalz. and Gibs. B. Pl. Suppl. 35. *Jambli or gulab jam*.

Saw only one tree cultivated in a private garden.

Careya arborea : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 95 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 74 ; W. and A. Prod. 334 ; *Kumba*.

Flowers—large—in March and April.

Psidium guyava : Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. II., 468 ; *P. pyriferum* and *P. pomiferum* : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 72 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 34 ; *Perū, Guara*.

Cultivated, but does not thrive well. Fruit small.

MELASTOMACEÆ.

Memecylon edule : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 260 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 93 ; *M. tinctorium* : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 71. *Unjun or unjunt*.

Very common.

Flowers of a pretty purple colour ; in February, March and April.

LYTHRACEÆ.

Lagerstroemia parviflora : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 505 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 67 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 98. *Naneh, Bondareh*.

Common in some places on the Ghauts. Looks beautiful when covered with small white flowers ; they appear in May.

Woodfordia floribunda : Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. II., 572 ; *Grislea tomentosa* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 233 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 67 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 97. *Dhauri*.

Not uncommon on the Ghauts.

Flowers pretty, red ; appear from December till April.

SAMYDACEÆ.

Casearia graveolens : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 11 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. II., 592.

Seen in fruit in May.

CUCURBITACEÆ.

Trichosanthes palmata : Roxb. Fl. Ind. III., 704 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 79 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 103. *Mükal, Koundal*.

Common.

Flowers in the hot season ; fruit globose, size of an orange.

Zehneria umbellata : Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. II., 625 ; *Bryonia umbellata* : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 78 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 101. *Gometta*.

Not uncommon.

Fruit bright red, about 1— $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch diameter, smooth or shortly silky.

Citrullus vulgaris : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 102 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. II., 261 ; *Cucurbita citrullus* : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 79. *Turbooj, water-melon*. Cultivated.

UMBELLIFERÆ.

Hydrocotyle Asiatica : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 88 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 84 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 105. *Bhamni*.

Common near the banks of rivers. Official in the Ind. Pharmacopeia ; used in leprosy.

RUBIACEÆ.

Anthocephalus cadamba : Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. III., 23; *Nauclea cadamba* : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 87; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 43; Roxb. Fl. Ind. I., 512. *Nhev, Cadumba.* Near the Dhobie's Waterfall ; probably planted.

The fruit is about the size of a small orange ; eaten by the natives.

Randia dumetorum : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 89 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 119 ; Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. III., 110. *Ghela.*

Very common.

Fruit employed for intoxicating fish ; used also as an emetic.

Vangueria spinosa : Roxb. Fl. Ind. I., 536 ; Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 90 ; *V. edulis*, Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 114. *Ajū.*

Fruit round, size of an apple ; appear in the hot season. Eaten both raw and roasted ; but it is not palatable.

Pavetta Indica : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 92 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 112 ; *Ixora pavetta* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. I., 385. *Paput.*

One of the commonest shrubs at Mahableshwar.

Covered with corymbs of white flowers in April and May.

Psychotria vaginans W. and A. Prod. 434 ; *Grumilia congesta* : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 92 ; *G. Vaginnans* : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 111 ; *Psychotria truncata* (?) Hook. Fl. Brit. Ind. III., 163.

Not uncommon at Mahableshwar. Flowers small, white ; appear in the hot season.

Rubia cordifolia : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 93 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 121 ; *R. munjista* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. I., 374. *Munjit, Indian madder.*

Common.

Flower in the hot season.

Coffea arabica : Cultivated, one seen at Lingmalli appeared to thrive well.

Cinchona cordifolia, C. condimenia. A few plants of stunted growth are still to be found at the Lingmalli Cinchona plantations and in Carvalho's garden.

COMPOSITÆ.

Ageratum conyzoides : D. C. Prod. V., 108 ; *A. cordifolium* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. III., 415 ; common.

Flowers almost throughout the year. This plant is of poor growth.

Vernonia Indica (?) Clarke Comp. Ind. 16 ; *Decaneuron dendigulense* : D. C. Prod. V., 67.

Specimens seen were imperfect ; were out of flower.

V. divergens : Clarke Comp. Ind. 14 ; *Decaneuron divergens* : D. C. Prod. V., 68 ; *Eupatorium divergens* : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 123.

Bündar.

Common.

Flowers November—April.

Blumea holosericea : D. C. Prod. V., 442 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 125 ; *B. fasciculata. Bombarti* (at Matheran), *Bāmbūrdha* (?)

It is well known by its soft white leaves and the aroma with which it fills the air.

Lactuca Heyneana : D. C. VII., 140 ; *Brachyramphus Heyneanus* : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 132 ; *B. sonchifolius* : D. C. Prod. VII., 177 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 132.

Not common.

CAMPANULACEÆ.

Lobelia nicotianæfolia : D. C. Prod. VII., 381 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 133. *Dawul, Donul, Bokenul.*

Common.

Terminal racemes of showy white flowers ; appear January—April.

MYRSINACEÆ.

Mæsa Indica : D. C. Prod. VIII., 80 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 136.

Atki. Very common.

Fruit size of a small pea, appear in April and May, used by natives to intoxicate fish. Flowers small, white ; appear January—March.

OLEACEÆ.

Olea dioica : Roxb. Fl. Ind. I., 106 ; D. C. Prod. VIII., 286 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 159.

Parrjamb, Karamba.

Common.

Flowers white, February—March. Fruit ripens at the end of the hot season.

Jasminum latifolium : D. C. Prod. VIII., 308 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 138 ; Roxb. Fl. Ind. I., 93. *Küsur.*

Common.

Flowers large, white, fragrant ; appear March—April.

STYRACEÆ.

Symplocos racemosa : D. C. Prod. VIII., 255 ; *Hopea racemosa* : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 140. *Lendá, Lodhrá, Käolá* (?)

This small tree is common at Mahableshwar.

SAPOTACEÆ.

Achras tomentosa : Bedd. Fl. Sylv. An. Gen. 141 ; *Sapota tomentosa* : D. C. Prod. VIII., 175 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 139.

Kanta-Kümbla, Kümbul.

Common.

Seen in fruit in May. It is ovoid, size of an olive. Flowers of a dull white ; February—March.

APOCYNACEÆ.

Careya carandas : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 523 ; D. C. Prod. VIII., 332 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 143. *Kárändá.*

Common on the lower hills towards Satara. Fruit ripens in May. Flowers white ; February—April.

Wrightia tinctoria : D. C. Prod. VIII., 406 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 145. *Kallah-Küdhá.*

Not uncommon.

Flowers in the hot season.

Plumeria acutifolia : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 52 ; Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 20. *Khairchampád.* Cultivated.

Flowers fragrant, white, pale yellow in the centre ; appear in the hot and cold seasons.

ASCLEPIADACEÆ.

Calotropis gigantea : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 149 ; *Asclepias gigantea* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 30. *Arkari, Arká, Rowi.*

Flowers all the year round.

Gymnema sylvestre : D. C. Prod. VIII., 621 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 151. *Asclepias geminata* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 45.

This twining plant is not uncommon at Mahableshwar, where it is known as *Lamtani* or *Kowli*.

Flowers yellow, small, appearing towards the end of the hot season.

Hoya viridiflora : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 153 ; *Asclepias volubilis* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 36. *Dhori.*

Not uncommon.

Green flowers ; appear in March—June. The follicles 3—4 in. long.

Sarcostemma brristigma : D. C. Prod. VIII., 538 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 149. *Somá, Some.*

At the foot of Mahableshwar.

Flowers white, in the hot season.

LOGANIACEÆ.

Buddleia Asiatica : D. C. Prod. X., 446 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. F. 180. Rare. At Lingmalla.

A very ornamental plant ; underside of the leaves covered with a white tomentum, and the white flowers form a long terminal panicle.

GENTIANACEÆ.

Canscora diffusa : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 158 ; *Pladera virgata* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. I., 401.

Common in the ravines and over the rocks at Mahableshwar.

An annual, with small pale red flowers, which appear November—April.

Ophelia multiflora : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 156. *Korū*.

Common.

Small plant about a foot high ; sold in the bazaar in a dry state in bundles, each containing about 20 plants ; used in dyspepsia.

Flowers white.

BORAGINÆ.

Coldenia procumbens (?) D. C. Prod. IX., 558 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. 171.

A small annual spreading plant, with white flowers.

Cynoglossum caelestinum : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 173. *Misardhi*.

Common.

SOLANACEÆ.

Datura alba : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 174. *Dathura, thorn-apple*.

Common. Thrives well.

Flowers large, white and long.

Solanum giganteum : D. C. Prod. XIII., 258 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 175.

A very common prickly shrub named *Kutri* at Mahableshwar, also *chinah* or *chunah-jhar*.

Flowers purplish violet ; February—April. Fruit round, red, size of a pea ; in May.

S. Indicum : D. C. Prod. XIII., Pars. I., 309 ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 174.

Common.

Flowers all the year round. Berry size of a cherry, yellow when ripe.

S. lycopersicum : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 61. *Tomato, Wel-wangi.*

Common in gardens. Thrives well.

Physalis Peruviana : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 61. *Phohti, Cape gooseberry, Winter cherry.*

Common.

Wild and cultivated. It differs from the species found in the plains in its being covered with white tomentum.

S. tuberosum : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 61. *Bátátá, alá, potato.*

Cultivated ; but of late the quality is said to deteriorate.

Nicotiana tabacum :

Growing wild near Mahableshwar village, perhaps run out of cultivation.

BIGNONIACEÆ

Heterophragma Roxburghii : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 160. *Warus.*

Very common.

Flowers March and April ; fruits at the end of May.

ACANTHACEÆ

Strobilanthes callosus : Dalz. and Gibbs. 188. *Karw.*

Common.

Flowers deep blue, large, handsome ; appear in August—September every five or seven years.

S. Neesiana (?) *Wakti.*

The smell of the glutinous bracts and leaves is very strong ; used as fuel, and in building *tatties* or huts.

Lepidagathis prostrata : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 190.

Common.

A small prostrate plant. Leaves spinously pointed.

Æthéilema reniformis : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 192. *Wayott.*

Common.

Calyx bracts covered with clammy, strongly aromatic hairs.

Flowers whitish, with a bluish tinge ; February—April.

Rungia repens, R. parviflora, Pittapapadd.

These two plants are also to be found at Mahableshwar ; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 195-6

Blepharis asperrima : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 192. *Akrá.*

Common.

Flowers blue.

VERBENACEÆ.

Callicarpa cana : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 200. *Eisur*.

Very common.

Flowers pale red ; February—April.

Vitex negunda : Roxb. Fl. Ind III., 70 ; *V. bicolor* : Grah. Cat. B. Pl. 201. *Nirgunda*.

Common.

Flowers light blue, throughout the year ; fruit black, size of a pea.

Lantana aculeata. Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. Suppl. 68.

LABIATEÆ.

Ocimum sanctum : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 204. *Tulsi*.

In gardens.

Flower pale purple.

Pogostemon purpuricaulis : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 207. *Pangli*.

Very common.

The leaves smell of black currants when bruised. Flowers minute, red coloured.

Colebrookia ternifolia : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 209. *Bamni, Dus-sai, Dussari-ka-jhar*.

Very common.

Flowers white, numerous in dense spikes like a squirrel's tail ; appear February—March.

Micromeria Malcolmiana : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 209.

On the banks of the Yenna, and in the valley in which Carvalho's garden is situated. It possesses a far stronger smell than peppermint.

Flowers minute, reddish coloured.

Leucas stelligera : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 211. *Bürmbi*.

Common.

Flowers white, in verticels an inch in diameter.

PLANTAGINEÆ.

Plantago minus : Cultivated. Thrives well.

CHENOPODIACEÆ.

Atriplex ambrosioides : Mentioned by Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. Suppl. 73, under the name of *Chenopodium ambrosioides*. Flowers greenish.

The whole plant when bruised emits a strong fragrant camphoraceous smell.

AMARANTHACE.E.

Erua lanata : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 217.

A common weed.

Flowers white.

POLYGONACE.E.

Polygonum glabrum : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 214. *Ruktrāra*.

Common near Yenna and ditches.

Stem reddish and flowers numerous, rose-coloured ; appear in the hot season.

P. chinense : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 214. *Parell, Parull*.

Common.

A scandent flexuous plant with white flowers in globular heads, These appear in February—April.

P. elegans : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 214.

Common.

Flowers reddish ; appear in the hot season.

P. rivulare : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 214. Seen near water-courses, close to a Chinese garden near the lake.

LAURACE.E.

Actinodaphne lanceolata : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 312 ; *Tetranthera lanceololia*, Grah. Cat. B. Pl. *Pisa*.

The commonest tree at Mahableshwar next to the *Jambūl*.

Flowers of a pale yellow colour, in the cold season ; ripens its fruit in May—red when ripe.

Machilus Mucrantha : D. C. Prod. XV., 40 ; *M. glaucescens*, Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 221. *Gūlūnt*.

Common.

Flowers small, white ; appear January—February ; fruit globose, size of a plum—black when ripe.

THYMELACE.E.

Lasiosiphon eriocephalus. Described in Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 221 under the name of *L. speciosus*. *Rametta*.

One of the commonest shrubs in Mahableshwar, covered from October—April with yellow flowers in terminal heads surrounded by an involucre of oblong hoary leaflets.

The bark is employed in intoxicating fish.

ELEAGNACE.E.

Eleagnus latifolius : Brand. For. Fl. 390 ; *E. kologa* Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 224. *Ambyūl, Nurgi*.

Very common.

A very large climbing shrub, easily known by its leaves, which are green above and silvery shining beneath. Fruit oblong, size of a small date, red when ripe; eaten by the natives. Flower January—February.

SALICACEÆ.

Salix tetrasperma: Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 220. *Walunj, Bücha, Indian Willow.*

Very common.

A very handsome tree, with lanceolate leaves, covered with white tomentum beneath.

Flowers in the cold season.

LORANTHACEÆ.

Loranthus longiflorus: Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 110.

A very common plant with honeysuckle-looking flowers; these appear in March and April.

L. cuneatus: Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 110. Flowers yellow; appear in the hot season.

L. obtusatus: Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 109.

Common on trees at Mahableshwar.

Flowers red, pedicelled; appear in May; berry nearly globose.

EUPHORBIACEÆ.

Euphorbia neriifolia; Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 226. *Thor.*

Not common.

Flowers February—March. Leaves fall off in the cold season and reappear towards the end of hot season.

E. Rothiana: Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 226.

Very common.

Flowers February—April.

In Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. an error is made in describing *E. Rothiana* and *E. glauca* as if they were one and the same species.

Jatropha curcas: Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 77. *Jampal, Erundi.*

Planted at Wai.

Flowers in the rainy season; fruits in the hot season.

Homonoya riparia: Brand. For. Fl. 445; *Adelia neriifolia*, Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 231. *Taniki (?)*

Flowers of a reddish colour; November—March; seen in fruit in May.

Ricinus communis : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 78. *Erendi*.
Planted.

Glochidion lanceolarium : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 235. *Bomāk*.
Common.

Flowers January—April ; ripens its fruits in the rainy season.

Phyllanthus emblica : Roxb. Fl. Ind. III., 671; *Emblica officinalis*,
Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 235. *Āola, auñli*.

Flowers March—May ; fruit ripens October—February.

The fruit is used as medicine and also as pickle ; employed more-
over in dyeing and tanning.

P. reticulatus : Brand. For. Fl. 453 ; *Anisonema multiflora*, Dalz.
and Gibbs. B. Fl. 234.

Not common.

Flowers nearly throughout the year.

A small shrub.

P. polypyllus : D. C. Prod. XV., 352 ; Bedd. Fl. Sylv. An. Gen.
190.

Was brought from one of the valleys ; it resembles *P. emblica*.

URTICACEÆ.

Ficus glomerata : Brand. For. Fl. 422 ; *Cocellia glomerata*, Dalz.
and Gibbs. B. Fl. 243. *Umbar*.

Common.

Fruit ripens April—July ; eaten by the natives of the place ; does not
grow to be a high tree as in the Konkan.

F. cordyfolia : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 242. *Pair*.

Seen near the temples at the village of Mahableshwar.

Fruit smooth, black, size of a cherry ; ripens May—June ; resembles
F. religiosa.

F. virgata : Roxb. Fl. Ind. III., 530 ; Brand. For. Fl. 419.
Unjir.

Common, appears to be cultivated.

• *Cannabis sativa* : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. Suppl. 79. *Bhang*,
Ganjah, *Hemp*.

Seen only in gardens ; thrives well.

Artocarpus integrifolia : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 241. *Phunnus*,
Jack-fruit tree.

AROIDÆ.

Arisaëma Murrayii : Dalz. and Gibbs. B. Fl. 258. *Nág, snake-lily of
Europeans*.

Very common.

Scape 4-6 in. long ; appears soon after the first shower of rain, before the leaves.

SCITAMINEÆ.

Curcuma orulina : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 275. Wild Arrowroot.
Chowur.

Common, especially on the flat land between Elphinstone Point and Arthur Seat.

Formerly sago was manufactured from the tuberous roots of this plant.

ORCHIDACEÆ.

Ærides Lindleyana : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 265.

This beautiful orchid is very common.

Flower pinkish lilac, sweetly fragrant, the smell lasting for days.

Dendrobion chlorops (?), *D. barbatum* (?).

Seen without flowers.

AMARYLLIDEÆ.

Agave cantula : Dalz. and Gibs. Suppl. 93 ; *Aloe Americana* : Roxb. Fl. Ind. II., 167. Planted.

Thrives as well as on the plains.

Crinum brachynema : Flowers white, sweet scented—appear in June, before the leaves.

GRAMINEÆ.

Arundinaria Wightiana : Bedd. Fl. Sylv. An. Gen. 230 ; *Bambusa, arundo* : Dalz. and Gibs. B. Fl. 299. *Chiwari*.

I believe it is common.

A small bamboo, 8-9 ft. high ; walking-sticks made of this are sold in the bazars.

FILICES.

Cheilanthes farinosa : Bedd. Ferns S. Ind. p. 65, t. 190. *Silver fern*.

Rather stunted in its growth ; common, but not so abundant as at Matheran.

Pteris quadriaurita, Bedd. Ferns S. Ind., p. 11, t. 31.

Very common.

Of various heights, attaining sometimes under shade, 1-8 ft. ; the lowest pair or sometimes two lowest pair of pinnae bipartite.

Pleopeltis Wightiana : Bedd. Ferns S. Ind. p. 60, t. 130.

Fronds 3-5 in. long, coriaceous, opaque, lanceolate.

Seen growing in the decayed trunk of a tree in the compound of the "Albania."

**ART. IX.—Dharmasindhu, or the Ocean of Religious Rites,
by the Priest Kashinatha. Translated from the Sanscrit and
commented upon by the REV. A. BOURQUIN. (Art. III.)**

[Read 8th Nov. 1882.]

CHAPTER XIV.

Description of the Eighth Tithi.

For the rites of the 8th Tithi of the Light half Month should its second day, but for those of the 8th of the Dark half Month its first day be taken. When the festival of Shiva and that of his wife (Párvati¹²⁹) meet on that Tithi, should, even in the Dark half Month, its second day be taken. For the rite of the 8th which falls on a Wednesday of the Light half Month that (of its two days) should be taken on which at least two Ghatikas of the Wednesday are included in the time between the morning and the afternoon. But if the 8th falls on a Wednesday in the Late Afternoon in the Dark half of the Month of Chaitra and in that of Shravana and the three following, it should not be observed. Some people fast to the honour of Kála Bhairava¹³⁰ on all the 8th Tithis of the Dark half Months.

For the rite of the 8th of the Dark half of the Month of Márgashirsha, as the birth of Bhairava (cf. preceding note) falls on it, the rule for that festival should be followed, and that day (of the two) be taken on which the Tithi includes a Mid-day. When the Tithi includes a Mid-day on both its days, the first is to be taken; the Kaustubha, however, teaches that that day should be taken, on which the Tithi includes an Evening Tide (cf. note 79). If it includes an Evening Tide on both its days, the second is to be taken, as there is thus no clashing of rules. When it includes an Evening Tide on its first day

¹²⁹ The word of the original is Shakti, a personification of the female energy. Besides these two names she is also called Durgá. Her day is regularly the 8th of each half month; but I cannot make out to which festival of Shiva the text refers here, unless it is just the festival of Kála Bhairava, mentioned in note 129.

¹³⁰ Kála Bhairava, or the Black Awful One, is one of the names of Shiva.

and a Mid-day on its second day, then, according to the custom of the learned, that first day should be taken on which the Tithi includes an Evening Tide.

The prohibition in connection with the 8th concerns only Day-Meals and not other rites, according to the text: "On Sundays and on Full Moon and New Moon days Night Meals, and on the 14th and the 8th *Day-Meals*" (*scil.* are prohibited). Following the text: "The prohibition concerns only that time in which something is prohibited," my opinion is, that one should fast on the 8th only and eat during the 7th or the 9th Tithi. Learned men, however, should see whether I am right or wrong.

Thus is the fourteenth chapter, a description of the 8th Tithi.

CHAPTER XV.

Description of the Ninth Tithi.

For rites of the 9th Tithi that day should be taken on which the 9th is encroached upon by the 8th. Thus is the fifteenth chapter, a description of the 9th Tithi.

CHAPTER XVI.

Description of the Tenth Tithi.

For rites of the 10th Tithi, like fasts and others, that day should be taken on which the 10th meets with the 9th; but if the first day of the 10th is not thus encroached upon by the 9th, its second day, on which it meets with the 11th, is to be taken.

Thus is the sixteenth chapter, a description of the 10th Tithi.

CHAPTER XVII.

Description of the Eleventh Tithi.

There are two kinds of fasts connected with the 11th Tithi, viz., merely abstaining from prohibited food; and fasting in connection with sacrificial vows. The first is to be performed in the Dark half Month by such persons as householders who have a son, &c.; the fast connected with a vow should not be performed in the Dark half Month by householders who have sons, yet though they do not resolve upon a vow with holy incantations, nevertheless they should abstain from food following in that the rule of the Fast-according-to-Strength (cf

the rule given further on in this chapter). Thus also should it be held with the 11th Tithi of the Light half Month when there is a decrease of the Tithi (that is, when the Tithi has no sunrise). But on the 11th Tithis of the Dark half of all the months from the light 11th of Ashádha to the Light 11th of Kárttika, beginning with householders who have a son, all may perform the sacrificial vow of the 11th. Those who are desirous of being absorbed into Vishnu, or of obtaining long age or posterity may perform their Desiring rite at both the half months, for concerning them there is no prohibition. To Vishnu-vite householders the fast of the 11th of the Dark half Month is obligatory. This rite of the 11th is obligatory to all Shivaite-Vishnuvites, Sun-worshippers and others, for it is said that to fail to perform it is a sin. Yet as by performing it one gets riches (sons), &c. this rite of the 11th is also a Desiring one (that is, one performed with a desire for a certain blessing).

Some writers say that if the 11th Tithi is encroached upon by two Ghatikas of the 10th, one ought to eat on the 10th, and then if the 12th begins before the next Sunrise, and is thus a very Pure Tithi, one must fast twice uninterruptedly, (*viz.*, once throughout the 11th Tithi and once) throughout the 12th Tithi. Thus do they keep it with the 11th Tithi, but it is not lawful.

People between eight and eighty years of age should perform the fasting vow of the 11th Tithi. People over eighty who have the strength ought also to fast.

If married women perform fasts, vows, &c., without the permission of their husband, or father, their vows are fruitless, the life of their husband is thereby shortened, and they shall go to hell.

People who are weak may according to their strength choose one of the next ways of fasting, of which each following is better than the preceding : Eating once only, at night, eating only food fried in butter, unboiled grain food (*i.e.*, prepared without salt, and by baking, roasting, &c.), or fruits, or sesamum seed, or milk, or water, or ghee, or the Five Products-of-the-Cow,¹²⁰ or the air ; but the fast of the 11th must on no account be altogether omitted.

If one has forgotten to fast on the 11th, he should perform a sacrificial vow on the 12th Tithi. If he fails to do so on the 12th, let him

¹²⁰ Namely pure milk, coagulated milk, butter, urine, and cow-dung.

perform the propitiatory rite of the Mouthfuls after the shape of Barley.¹³¹ But if one has omitted the fast on account of infidelity, let him perform the rite of the Mouthfuls after the form of an Ant.¹³² A wife, a son, a brother, a sister, &c., may perform the sacrificial fast of the 11th in lieu of a weak husband, father, &c., gaining thereby the merit of hundred sacrifices.

Description of the Day of the Fasting Vow of the Eleventh Tithi.

Two kinds of people perform this rite, viz., the Vishnuvites and the Shivaites.

Rule for Vishnuvites specially.

Though great writers say that those who wear the sign of consecration to Vishnu (cf. note 178) are Vishnuvites, and those who do not are Shivaites, yet the Nirnayasindhu says that the ancient sages teach that one is a Vishnuvite or a Shivaite according to what his ancestors have through many generations been. This last opinion has been received and is followed by the learned of all countries.

The encroachment on this Tithi is also of two kinds, viz., 1st, when the 10th breaks upon the 11th at the time of dawn, and 2nd, when it breaks upon it at the time of sunrise. The dawn is constituted by the 4 Ghatikas that precede sunrise. Sunrise is evident. If the 10th Tithi is somewhat longer than 56 Ghatikas, and thus stretches over the dawn of the 11th, were it only with one minute, it is a Dawn-Encroachment, and is to be observed by the Vishnuvites; if it has more than 60 Ghatikas and thus oversteps the sunrise of the 11th Tithi, were it only with one minute, it is a Sunrise-Encroachment, and must be observed by the Shivaites.

When there is some doubt about these Encroachments caused by the want of agreement of astrologers, or by the disputes of Brahmins

¹³¹ Cf. for Mouthfuls note 110; "after the form of barley" means that very little must be eaten at the beginning and the end of the fast, while more food is allowed at the middle, barley being stout at the middle and thin at the ends. This fast, which lasts one month, begins with eating but one rice ball on the first day, then the number increasing by ball every day, it runs up to 15 balls in the middle of the month, veers then towards its completion with a daily decrease of one ball until its last day with one ball only.

¹³² Here more food is allowed at the beginning and end of the fast, while little should be taken in the middle, after the form of an ant, which is stout at both ends but thin in the middle. For the amount of daily mouthfuls and their decrease or increase during the fast, which lasts a month, cf. note 110.

about conflicting rules, the 11th should be disregarded and the 12th taken for the fast.

The 11th Tithi is of two kinds, viz., the Encroached and the Pure Tithi.

The Vishnuvites should disregard the 11th, which is encroached upon by the 10th at dawn, and fast on the 12th Tithi.

The Pure 11th Tithi, whose dawn is not encroached upon, is itself of four kinds, viz., 1st, when the 11th only is Overstepping; 2nd, when the 12th only is Overstepping; 3rd, when both (the 11th and 12th) are Overstepping; and 4th, when none is Overstepping. The expression "Overstepping" refers to the Tithi stretching over part of the sunrise of the next day.¹²³

The following are illustrations of these four cases:—

1st. The 10th lasts 55 Ghatikas (after sunrise), the 11th 60 Ghatikas and 1 Pala, the 12th again less, viz., 58 Ghatikas: this is the Pure 11th Tithi which alone is Overstepping, and in connection with it should the Vishnuvites fast on its second day, but the Shivaite on its first day.

2nd. The 10th has 55 Ghatikas, the 11th has 58, and the 12th has 60 Ghatikas and 1 Pala. This is the Pure 11th Tithi with an Overstepping of the 12th alone, and in connection with it should the Vishnuvites fast on the 12th, and the Shivaite on the preceding day.

3rd. The 10th has 55 Ghatikas, the 11th 60 Ghatikas and 1 Pala, and the 12th has (a whole day less the above 1 Pala plus) 5 Ghatikas: This is the Pure 11th Tithi with an Overstepping of both the 11th and the 12th, and in connection with it should all Vishnuvites and Shivaite fast on the second day.

4th. The 10th Tithi has 55 Ghatikas, the 11th has 57, the 12th has 58. This is the Pure 11th Tithi with no Overstepping, and in connection with it should the Vishnuvites as well as the Shivaite fast on its first day.

Thus is, in abridgment, the rule especially for the Vishnuvites.

Rules for Shivaite.

Here it must be observed that the 11th Tithi is of two kinds, viz., when its sunrise is encroached upon and it is then an Encroached

¹²³ And having thus more than 60 Ghatikas, the number of Ghatikas which constitutes a complete Tithi.

Tithi, and when it is not thus encroached upon and is then a Pure Tithi.

Each of these two again has a fourfold subdivision, viz., when the 11th only is Overstepping, when there is a Double-Overstepping, when the 12th only is Overstepping, and when there is no Overstepping on either day. Accordingly there are in all eight kinds of 11th Tithis, and the following examples are their illustrations :—

1st. The 10th has 58 Ghatikas, the 11th has 60 Ghatikas and 1 Pala, the 12th Tithi is a subtractive Tithi with 58 Ghatikas : this is the Pure 11th Tithi which alone is Overstepping.

2nd. The 10th has 4 Ghatikas, the 11th 2 Ghatikas, and the 12th is a subtractive Tithi¹³⁴ with 58 Ghatikas. This is the Encroached 11th Tithi which alone is Overstepping. In connection with these two Tithis Shivaite householders should fast on the previous day ; but ascetic wanderers, non-desiring¹³⁵ householders, hermits of the forest, widows, and Vishnuvites should fast on the following day. Some writers say that Shivaites who desire to please Vishnu should fast on both days.

3rd. The following is an example of the Pure 11th Tithi with a Double-Overstepping : The 10th has 58 Ghatikas, the 11th 60 Ghatikas and 1 Pala, and the 12th has (the rest of that whole day, less the above 1 Pala plus) 4 Ghatikas.

4th. The following is an Encroached 11th Tithi with a Double-Overstepping : The 10th has 2 Ghatikas, the 11th has (the rest of that day plus) 3 Ghatikas of the following day, the 12th has (the rest of this day of the 11th plus) 4 Ghatikas.

In both of these last cases ought the Vishnuvites as well as the Shivaites to fast on that day which contains the last part of the 11th Tithi.

5th. The following is a Pure 11th Tithi with an Overstepping of the 12th Tithi : The 10th has 58 Ghatikas, the 11th has 59, and the 12th has 60 Ghatikas plus 1 Pala. In connection with it Mādhaba says that, on account of its being a Pure Tithi, Shivaites ought to fast on

¹³⁴ The subtractive Tithi is that which is less than 60 Ghatikas, does not include a sunrise, and is therefore not numbered as a Date in the Calendar. Ghatikas are added to those of the preceding Tithi.

only, such householders who, having sons, riches, &c., do not per-

the 11th Tithi and not on the 12th ; but the Hemádri says that all should fast on the 12th, while some other writers say that those Shivaites should fast on the 12th who long after final emancipation from personality.

6th. The following is an Encroached 11th Tithi with an Overstepping of the 12th : The 10th has 1 Ghatika after sunrise, the 11th has 58 Ghatikas and is a Subtractive Tithi, the 12th is an Additive Tithi, and has 60 Ghatikas and 1 Pala. Here the 11th being an Encroached Tithi, the Shivaites should fast on the 12th.

Thus Shivaites should disregard the 11th Encroached Tithi when it has a Double-Overstepping, or when the following 12th is Overstepping.

On the above six kinds of 11th Tithis with Oversteppings should the Vishnuvites reject the 11th and fast on the 12th.

7th. The following is a Pure 11th Tithi with no Overstepping on either day : The 10th has 57 Ghatikas, the 11th has 58, the 12th has 59. Here should Shivaites fast on the 11th and not on the 12th, but Vishnuvites, who regard it as an Encroached Tithi, should fast on the 12th.

8th. The following is an Encroached 11th Tithi with no Overstepping on either day : The 10th has 2 Ghatikas, the 11th has 56 Ghatikas, and is thus a Subtractive Tithi, the 12th has 55 Ghatikas. Here also should Shivaites fast on the 11th and Vishnuvites on the 12th. With this last case of the 11th Tithi with no Overstepping, it must be held as it was with the two first of these eight cases, namely, that ascetics, widows, and people who desire emancipation from personality, should fast on its second day. As to those Shivaites who desire to please also Vishnu, it seems to me that according to analogous cases they ought to fast on both days.¹²⁶ The learned men of our times disregard the rules of the Hemádri and what it teaches about the 11th being a Non-Desiring Tithi, i.e., a Tithi on which Desiring Rites [cf. note 168] cannot be performed, and follow Mádhava in establishing general rules for the Shivaites. Nowhere do they say that two fasts ought to be kept, or that on a Pure 11th Tithi with an Overstepping of the 12th all should fast on its second day. Let it thus be known that in all countries the rules given by Mádhava generally prevail.

¹²⁶ One fast to Shiva and the other to Vishnu.

Thus have eighteen kinds of the 11th Tithi for the Vishnuvites and eighteen kinds for the Shivaitez been described and carefully illustrated. More details are given in large works. Now if I gave here a more detailed description with more illustrations of every one of the times or the rules of the 11th Tithi, it would only confuse the ignorant. I have therefore written a separate list of them (at the end of this work), which can be consulted.

When the 10th Tithi stretches over midnight, it is called the Skull-Encroachment;¹⁸⁷ when it has 52 Ghatikas it is called the Shadow-Encroachment; when it has 53 Ghatikas it is called the Swallowing-Encroachment; when it has 54 Ghatikas it is called the Full-Encroachment; when it has 55 Ghatikas it is called the Over-Encroachment; when it has 56 Ghatikas it is called the Great-Encroachment; when it has 57, the Destructive-Encroachment; when it has 58, the Greatly-Destructive-Encroachment; when it has 59, the Terrible-Encroachment; and when it has 60, the Monster-Encroachment. These distinctions of the Encroachment are given by Nárađa, and some of them are followed by many of the followers of the system of Madhu and others. Madhváchárya, as well as all other writers, agree that when the 10th Tithi has 56 Ghatikas it is an Encroachment. When the 10th encroaches upon the 11th with 15 Ghatikas, the sacrificial vow must be performed without fast. Yet it should be noted that the accompanying rites of the sacrificial fast, like the Resolving¹⁸⁸ and the worship, ought not, in spite of the 11th being encroached upon, to be quite rejected, but they ought to be performed at the mid-day time instead of the morning.

Manner of the Sacrificial Fast.

In the morning of the day preceding the fast, after having performed the obligatory rites, one should pronounce the following Resolution : " Beginning with the 10th Tithi shall I perform a sacrificial fast of three days. O God ! O Lord of Gods ! O Krishna ! remove all hindrances." Then should one eat the One-Meal-a-day-Meal at mid-day time. In connection with this meal one should avoid eating in brass vessels, meat, Cicer lentils, sleeping by day, eating much, drinking

¹⁸⁷ Midnight being considered the highest part of the night as the skull is of the human body. All the following names of the Encroachments are descriptive of the magnitude of number of the Tithis' Ghatikas.

¹⁸⁸ Concerning this Resolving, compare notes 27 and 87.

much water, eating more than once in a day, sexual intercourse, honey, telling lies, pease, Paspalum grain, green vegetables, another man's food, gambling, oily sesamum cakes, Pan-Supari, &c. During the time of this rite (of the 10th) one must cleanse one's teeth with a twig (cf. note 86), at night sleep on the ground ; but on the morning of the 11th Tithi one must wash one's teeth with leaves and not with a twig. Thereafter, having bathed and performed the usual obligatory rites, one must take Darbha grass in one's hand, turn one's face northwards, hold a copper vessel filled with water, express the following resolution : " Having fasted on the 10th I shall eat to-morrow, O Lotus-eyed Vishnu ! Protect me, O Imperishable !" and bestow a two-handsful of flowers on the idol of Vishnu.

People who are not strong may, according to their strength, pronounce the following resolution : " On the 11th I shall take only water "; or, " On the 11th I shall take only fruits "; or, " On the 11th I shall eat only once," &c. Shivaites should pronounce the resolution with the incantation of Rudra,¹³⁹ Sun-Worshippers with the usual Gayatri incantation.¹⁴⁰

When the 10th Tithi stretches over sunrise, Shivaites should pronounce this Resolution in the night of the 11th Tithi. If the 10th stretches over midnight, then should all sects pronounce it after the Midday-time of the 11th Tithi. After having pronounced the Resolution one must consecrate some water by repeating thrice the incantation called " the Gayatri of eight syllables,"¹⁴¹ and drink it. Thereupon making a tent of flowers (for the idol) one should worship Vishnu by means of flowers, fragrant spices, ghee, burning lights, offerings of superior eatables, nice songs, divine hymns and beautiful music, flat prostrations and great exclamations, and by keeping awake during the night ordered by the law.

¹³⁹ The Rudra incantation runs as follows :—

ओ तत्पुरुषाय विद्महे महादेवाय धीमहि ।

तत्रो रुद्रः प्रचोदयात् ।

Om tatpurushāya vidmahe, mahadevāyadhimahi,

tan no Rudra prachodayāt.

Let us know that Supreme Person, meditate on that Great God !

Let him, Rudra, enlighten us !

¹⁴⁰ Compare note 98.

¹⁴¹ The Eight-syllables Incantation runs as follows :

ॐ नमः वासुदेवाय=Om Namo Vasudevaya ! Praise be to Vasudeva.

Rules to be observed in connection with the Eleventh Tithi.

One should not speak to, look on, or touch a heretic, should abstain from sexual intercourse, speak the truth, abstain from day sleep, and keep the rules given in the foregoing definitions. If one has by chance seen a heretic, let him look at the sun and be pure ! If a grown up man has knowingly touched a heretic, let him bathe, look at the sun and be pure ! If he has talked with him, let him meditate on the purifying Vishnu, or perform other rites and be pure !

If the sacrificial rites for dead ancestors fall on a fasting day, the food which remains after the rite is performed must be gathered in a vessel, smelt at, and thus given to cows and other (cattle). If one by way of substitution keeps the fast nominally by eating only bulbs, roots, fruits, &c., let him first distribute those bulbs, roots and fruits upon the plates of the Brahmins who sit there in the place of his ancestors, and eat then what remains. The following text : "O king, when the sacrificial rites for dead ancestors fall on the 11th Tithi, that day should be omitted and the rite performed on the 12th Tithi," concerns the Vishnuites, and is in accordance with their custom. At the time of the half Month in which the 16 Mahalaya¹⁴² rites for dead ancestors are to be performed, the Vishnuites should pronounce the following Resolution : "I shall perform the Mahalaya of the 11th and that of the 12th (on one day) by means of an expedient," and then perform both of them on the 12th.

When the rite of purification from the uncleanness of child-birth or death occurs during the time of a Desiring-fast, one ought to perform oneself the bodily rites (like fasting, for instance), and at the end of the purifying rite to perform worship, the Donation rite to a Brahman and to give him a meal.

When the rite of purification from the uncleanness of child-birth or death occurs during the time of a usual obligatory fast, one ought to bathe, to adore Vishnu, and to fast oneself, but the sacrificial worship, &c., may be performed by a Brahmin substitute. The Donation rite may be omitted, and may not be performed at the end of the purifying rite.

The same rule holds good for the rite of purification from menstruation.

¹⁴² These sixteen rites take place in the second half of the month Bhádrapada, and begin with the Full Moon.

On the morning of the 12th, having performed the usual obligatory worship, one must perform the sacrificial rite to Vishnu, pronouncing the following incantation : " For the sake of this sacrificial rite, O Vishnu! be gracious to him who is blinded with the darkness of ignorance, give him the sight of knowledge, O Thou of the handsome face ! "

If the rules concerning the 10th and following two Tithis have been broken, if one has slept by day, or drunk much water, or told a lie, one must declare (and confess) the transgressed rule, and repeat 108 times the incantation of Eight Letters (cf. note 141) to Vishnu. If the transgression is small, one must repeat 300 times the name of a god.

If one during the time of performing a sacrificial rite hears the voice of one who is impure from menstruation, or that of a low caste man, of a washerman, of one who is impure on account of child-birth or death, one should repeat 1008 Gáyatri incantations (cf. note 98), after which a Completing-Meal consisting of offered eatables mixed with leaves of the Tulasi shrub should be eaten. Eating Myrabolams in the Completion-Meal-Rite destroys the sin which occurs from talking (to people to whom one should not speak, or at times when one should not speak). This fast Completing-Meal-Rite must be performed on the 12th, as it is a great sin to omit doing so on that Tithi.

When the 12th Tithi stretches only a little after sunrise, (and there is thus not time enough) for the rites of that Tithi which ought to be performed up to Midday, then should one anticipate and perform those rites during the latter part of the night. Some say, however, that the morning oblation to the Fire should not be preponed. The sacrificial rites for dead ancestors being forbidden by night, they cannot thus be anticipated. At a time of great trouble, or of the rites to dead ancestors, or of Pradosha-rite (cf. note 114), the Completing-Meal-Rite (of the 12th) should be performed by drinking water only. When much remains of the 12th Tithi after sunrise, then should the first part of the day, which is called Harivasara, be rejected and the Completing-Meal-Rite be performed afterwards.

When the 12th does not stretch—even with one Pala—over sunrise, then must the Completing-Meal-Rite be performed on the 13th.

Several writers say that when the 12th stretches over the Mid-day-time, then the Completing-Meal-Rite must take place during the 6 first Ghatikas of the morning, and not at the time of mid-day or in the afternoon ; but others say that when there is a difficulty of time for the many rites, it may be performed in the afternoon.

When the moon is in conjunction with the sidereal mansion Shravana (cf. note 25) on the 12th Tithi of either the Light or the Dark half Month, one who is strong enough must fast both on the 11th and on the 12th Tithi ; one who is not strong may nominally keep the fast of the 11th by eating only fruits (bulbs), &c., and fast on the 12th, which is in conjunction with Shravana.

When the conjunction called the Shrinkhala of Vishnu¹⁴⁸ occurs on the 11th Tithi, then must the fast which is ordered for the 12th Tithi when it is in conjunction with Shravana be observed on the 11th, and the Completing-Meal-Rite must take place on that day of the 12th on which the moon is no more in conjunction with Shravana. But if the conjunction of the moon with Shravana lasts only a very short time (on the first day) of the 12th, then the Completing-Meal-Rite may be performed on that day, as it is a sin to fail to perform that rite on the 12th Tithi.

Here is the rule concerning the conjunction called the Shrinkhala of Vishnu, in the month of Bhádrapada on the 12th Tithi : One must during the 12th Tithi abstain from the following eight things : Sleep by day, eating the food of another man, eating more than once, sexual intercourse, honey, eating in brass vessels, meat, and oily things. Then the following also should be abstained from : Gambling, anger, peas, Paspalum grain, Phaseolus pulse, sesamum seed, flour, the Ervum lentil, Collyrium, lying, coveting, fatigue, travelling, burdens, study, Pan-supári, &c.

All these rules should be kept in connection with the Desiring rites.

In connection with usual obligatory rites these special rules must be observed by people who are strong enough to do so. If one is not strong enough to keep the special rules, let him fast one day and night only, for there is no doubt that he who keeps his senses in subjection, who is a believer and trusts in Vishnu, gets rid of his sins by fasting on the 12th Tithi only.

Both he who says to another " Eat" ! and he who himself eats on a fast day, will go to hell, but by performing the sacrificial fast of the 11th Tithi one is assimilated to Vishnu and gets riches.

¹⁴⁸ This conjunction consists in the 11th Tithi being encroached upon by the 12th Tithi, which itself continues for some Ghatikas after the sunrise of the following day, and in these two days being in conjunction with Shravana.

That is the description of the sacrificial fast of the 11th.

For other rites of the 11th Tithi, that day should be taken on which the 11th and the 12th meet.

Thus is the seventeenth chapter, a description of the 11th Tithi.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Description of the Twelfth Tithi.

For the rites of the 12th Tithi, that of its days should be taken which is encroached upon by the 11th Tithi.

The glorious 12th Tithi is of eight kinds :

1. The 12th which meets with a Pure Overstepping 11th Tithi, and is called the "Expanding."

2. The 12th which is itself a Pure Overstepping Tithi, and is called the "Abounding."

3. The 12th which is called the "Three Tithis' Touch," when, namely, the 11th lasts somewhat over sunrise, then cometh a subtractive 12th on that same day, and finally the 13th at the time of next sunrise; a day and a night thus touching three Tithis.

4. The 12th, which is called "Increase at the half Month," and occurs when the Dark Moon Date or the Full Moon Date are Additive Tithis.

5. The 12th, which is called the "Victorious," from its being in conjunction with the Sidereal Mansion of Pushya (which is said to grant victory).

6. The 12th Tithi which is called "Triumphing," and is in conjunction with Shravana.

7. The 12th which is called "Conquering," and is in conjunction with the mansion of Punervasu

8. The 12th, which is called the "Sin destroying Tithi," and is in conjunction with the Mansion of Rohini.

At the time of these eight kinds of Tithi, everyone who wishes to get rid of his sins and to be finally emancipated from personality should fast. The keeping of the 12th Tithi which is in conjunction with Shravana is as obligatory as that of the 11th Tithi. When the fast of the 11th and that of one of the above eight 12th Tithis meet on one day, one fast only instead of two, is to be observed. When they fall on two days people who are strong enough must fast on

both days. When one begins to perform two rites but then (sees that he) is not strong enough to perform the two accompanying fasts, let him fast on the 12th Tithi only and get thereby the benefit of the two fasts. For that fast even that 12th Tithi is to be taken which is in conjunction with Shravana only for two Ghatikas; but when it is in conjunction with Pushya, (Punervasu), &c., the fast ought to be performed only if those conjunctions last from sunrise to sunset.

As to the Completing-Meal-Rite of the fast of the 12th Tithi on which there is such a conjunction, all agree that it ought to be performed either at the end of both the Tithi and the conjunction, or at the end of either of them.

Thus is the eighteenth chapter, a description of the 12th Tithi.

CHAPTER XIX.

Description of the Thirteenth Tithi.

For the rites of the 13th Tithi of the Light half Month its first day should be taken, but for those of the 13th of the Dark half Month the second.

The rite of Pradosha (cf. note 114), which is accompanied by the worship of Shiva and the Night-Meal-Rite, must be begun on a 13th Tithi which falls on a Saturday and be performed either on every 13th Tithi which falls on a Saturday during a whole year, or on twenty-four 13th Tithis of the Light half Month. For it should that day of the 13th be taken, which includes the Evening Tide of 6 Ghatikas after sunset. If on both its days the 13th includes or equally nearly includes the Evening Tide, then the second day should be taken. If it includes it nearly on both days but not equally, then should the first be taken, namely if it includes more of the Evening Tide and there is sufficient time for the worship of the Gods and the meal; if not, one should follow the previous rule and take the second day. If the 13th does not include the Evening Tide on either of its two days should the second be taken.

Thus is the nineteenth chapter, a description of the 13th Tithi.

CHAPTER XX.

Description of the Fourteenth Tithi.

For the rites of the 14th of the Light half Month its second day should be taken, for those of the 14th of the Dark half Month its first day.

It is in connection with this Tithi that the fruit-desiring Rite of the Night of Shiva occurs on every 14th of every Dark half Month. For this rite that day should be taken on which the Tithi includes midnight, following therein the manner of the Great Night of Shiva (cf. note 65). If the 14th includes midnight on both its days, the second should be taken as it includes more of the Evening Tide. Some sects observe the 14th Tithi when it does include an Evening Tide, but concerning this the original rules should be followed. As the prohibition to eat by day on the 14th is a usual obligatory one, so far as eating is concerned, the 14th is to be disregarded and the Meal to be taken either on the 13th or on the 15th Tithi. Yet those who perform the rite of the Night-of-Shiva must eat the Completing Meal on the 14th, for as a prohibition cannot affect a settled precept, the rule that "food is prohibited during the daytime of the eight and of the 14th Tithi," does not apply here.

Thus is the twentieth chapter, a description of the 14th Tithi.

CHAPTER XXI.

Description of the two Fifteenth Tithis, viz., of the Full Moon and of the Dark Moon Dates.

The sacrificial vow of Savitri ¹⁴⁴ excepted, one must for the rite of the Full Moon and of the Dark Moon Dates take their second day. It being said by some writers that for the family traditional rites of the Full Moon Date of the months of Shrāvana and Phalgunā their first day (though) encroached upon should be taken, some people take the first day of the Full Moon Date in all the months; but one ought herein to follow the original rules. If the 14th breaks upon the first day of the 15th by less than 18 Ghatikas, then, according to the text "18 Ghatikas of the 14th constitute an encroachment," no harm is done to the first day of the 15th and it can be taken for the performance of traditional family rites. But if the 14th breaks upon the first day of the 15th by more than 18 Ghatikas, it seems to me that it ought not to be taken.

When the 14th falls on a Tuesday or on a Monday it is very propitious for donations (to Brahmins), for bathing and other ceremonies. So also is the 7th that falls on a Sunday and the 4th that falls on a Tuesday.

¹⁴⁴ A sacrificial fast performed in the second half of the month of Vaishākha to Savitri, the wife of Brahma, by Hindu women to propitiate her and gain longevity for their husbands.

Rites of the Monday on which the Dark Moon Date falls, like, for instance, the rite of the worship of the *Ficus religiosa*, are performed on that Monday, if the Dark Moon Date nearly stretches at least over two Ghatikas of the afternoon ; but learned men say that if it stretches only over the 6 Ghatikas of the Late-afternoon, or even only on the night, the rite ought not to be performed.

For the hair-cutting rite, &c., wandering ascetics ought to take the Full Moon Date which includes the 3 Muhurtas of the time of sunrise, but if it does not include the third of these Muhurtas, they must take the day on which the 14th and the 15th meet.

Thus is the twenty-first chapter, a description of the 15th Tithi.

CHAPTER XXII.

Description of the Time for Sacrifices.

The “Worship of Wood and Fire”¹⁴⁵ must be performed in the end, and sacrifices in the beginning, of the half-months. It must be well observed that here the word “Upavása” means the “Worship of Wood and Fire.” The time for the sacrifice is that stretching from the fourth part of the last day of the half month to the third part of the first day of the following half month, and learned men recommend the morning for it. The sacrifice must not be performed in the fourth part of the 1st Tithi.

If both the 15th and the following 1st are complete Tithis, no difficulty arises, for one gets then the ordered time for the performance of the “Worship of Wood and Fire” on the 15th, and for that of the sacrifice on the 1st.

If the 15th is an Encroached Tithi, one must first count the Ghatikas by which the following 1st Tithi is increased or decreased, and take half of them, and then, if there has been a decrease subtract the half of the decrease from the 15th Tithi ; but if there has been an increase, one must add the half of it to the 15th Tithi.

¹⁴⁵ The word I translate thus is “Anvádhínam.” This rite consists in taking on the day preceding the sacrifice fuel-twigs, in worshipping them with incantations, in throwing them either into the three domestic sacrificial fires, if one follows the ritual called Revelation, or into the one domestic fire, if one follows the ritual of Tradition (cf. note 30), and finally in meditating on and worshipping the Fire.

The conjunction of the two Tithis being thus established, let the time for the "Worship of Wood and Fire" and for (the sacrifice) be determined.

When there is neither decrease nor increase, the conjunction of the two Tithis is clear (for then it is) just where they meet. This conjunction is of four kinds : the Forenoon-conjunction, the Mid-day-conjunction, the Afternoon-conjunction, and the Night-conjunction. Dividing the day into two parts, the first half is the Forenoon, and the second half the Afternoon. The conjunction of the Forenoon and the Afternoon consisting of one Muhurta=two Ghatikas is called the "Mid-day-Turning," or according to the Kaustubha the "Veer ing around." The common practice of learned men, however, now, is to consider as the Mid-day-conjunction only the very minute on which the two Tithis meet, and not 2 Ghatikas.

Now if the conjunction of the 15th Tithi with the following 1st Tithi, which is determined by the above rule of adding or subtracting the half of the increase or decrease, takes place in the Forenoon or in the Mid-day time, then the "Worship of Wood and Fire" must be performed on the day preceding that of the conjunction, and the sacrifice on the day of the conjunction ; but if the conjunction occurs in the Afternoon or in the Night, then the "Worship of Wood and Fire" must take place on the day of the conjunction and the sacrifice be offered on the following day. The following examples illustrate the case :—

1st. The 15th Tithi has 17 Ghatikas, the following 1st Tithi has 11 Ghatikas ; the decrease is thus 6 Ghatikas and the half of it is 3 Ghatikas, which 3 Ghatikas being subtracted from the 17 Ghatikas of the 15th Tithi leave to it 14 Ghatikas, at which time the conjunction is then considered to occur. This makes a Forenoon-conjunction, at least if the length of the day is 30 Ghatikas, but it is a Mid-day-conjunction if the length of the day is 28 Ghatikas. In this case the sacrifice must take place on the day of the conjunction, and the "Worship of the Wood and Fire" is to be performed on the previous day.

2nd. The 15th Tithi has 14 Ghatikas, the following 1st Tithi has 19 Ghatikas. Here there is an increase of 5 Ghatikas the half of which is $2\frac{1}{2}$ Ghatikas, which being added to the 15th Tithi brings it to $16\frac{1}{2}$ Ghatikas, at which time the conjunction is then considered to take place. This makes an Afternoon-conjunction, and in connection

with it must the "Worship of Wood and Fire" be performed on the day of the conjunction and the sacrifice on the following day.

Here is another description for simple people.

Let the Ghatikas of the 15th which remain after sunrise be counted together with the Ghatikas of the following first Tithi, and then if their sum is *less* than the length of the day, it makes a Forenoon-conjunction; if their sum is *equal* to the length of the day, it makes a Mid-day-conjunction, and if it is *more* than the length of the day it makes an Afternoon-conjunction. Thus do people now generally establish this conjunction by counting the Ghatikas of the 15th Tithi and those of the 1st Tithi remaining after sunrise and comparing their increase or decrease.

According to the Kaustubha and other works the Ghatikas of the 15th which occur before its sunrise on the day of the 14th ought to be counted together with the Ghatikas which occur after its sunrise; then again should the Ghatikas of the following 1st Tithi which occur on the day of the 15th be counted together with those that occur on its own day and then one should look as to the increase or decrease of the 1st Tithi in comparison with the 15th. The following examples illustrate this view.

1st. The 14th Tithi stretches up to 22 Ghatikas after sunrise, the 15th up to 17 Ghatikas after sunrise (of the following day) having thus 38 Ghatikas on the day of the 14th and 17 Ghatikas on its own day, which counted together make 55. Again the following 1st Tithi having 43 Ghatikas on the day of the 15th and 11 Ghatikas on its own day, has in all 54 Ghatikas. There is thus a decrease of 1 Ghatika of the 1st Tithi as compared with the 15th, the half of which decrease is $\frac{1}{2}$ Ghatika which $\frac{1}{2}$ Ghatika being deducted from the Ghatikas of the 15th remaining after sunrise leaves to it $16\frac{1}{2}$ Ghatikas making thus an Afternoon-conjunction. But if the former rule were followed, it would give in this case a Forenoon-conjunction.

2nd. The 14th has 24 Ghatikas remaining (after sunrise); the 15th has 17 Ghatikas after sunrise and has thus 36 Ghatikas on the day of the 14th plus 17 on its own day, making in all 53 Ghatikas. Again the following 1st Tithi has 43 Ghatikas on the day of the 15th and 11 Ghatikas on its own day making in all 54 Ghatikas. Here, following the same rule as that used for the previous example where

we found a decrease, we find an increase of 1 Ghatika the half of which is $\frac{1}{2}$ Ghatika, which $\frac{1}{2}$ Ghatika being added to the 17 Ghatikas of the 15th Tithi, brings it to $17\frac{1}{2}$ Ghatikas, making thus an Afternoon-conjunction.

Thus it is clear that these two manners of establishing the conjunctions are opposed to each other as their decrease, increase, &c. are differently reckoned. According to the last rule (of the Kau-stubha, &c.) the decrease or increase never surpasses two Ghatikas. The plural form which (instead of the dual form referring to the Ghatikas) occurs in the following text: "The Ghatikas by which the following day is increased or decreased," is a mistake, as can be seen in the Purushártta Chintámani.

Special Rules concerning the Full Moon Date.

When the conjunction occurs after the Forenoon, that is when it begins with the 13th Ghatika of the day and before the middle of the day (*i.e.* the 16th Ghatika) and there is during these 2 Ghatikas sufficiency of the Full Moon Date for the performance of the "Worship of Wood and Fire," then should that rite be performed on that day of the conjunction and during the time of the Full Moon Date, and the sacrifice should follow at once. Some writers, however, say that the performance of both rites on the same Full Moon Date is defective.

In connection with the Dark Moon Date the two rites must be performed at two different times and never on the same day.

If on a Full Moon or a Dark Moon Date the conjunction occurs in the afternoon, then the sacrifice may without harm be performed during that fourth part of the day (*viz.*, the afternoon). But if there is on the Dark Moon Date an Afternoon-conjunction, and the following 1st Tithi is encroached upon by the 2nd Tithi with more than three Muhurtas so that the moon is visible on that day, then, as sacrificing when the moon is visible is forbidden, the sacrifice must by people following the school of Baudháyana and others be performed on the Dark Moon Date and the "Worship of the Wood and the Fires" on the 14th Tithi. Yet if the 2nd Tithi encroaches upon the 1st Tithi with 7 Ghatikas only (*i.e.* less than 4 Muhurtas) the followers (of the ritualistic rules of the ancient Sage and author) Baudháyana and others may perform the sacrifice on the 1st Tithi though the moon is then somewhat visible.

As the visibility of the moon does not convey a prohibition to the Apastambas (cf. note 148) and the Ashvaláyauas (cf. note 143), they may perform the sacrifice on the 1st Tithi.

When a sacrifice is performed on the conjunction day then must it be ended on the 1st Tithi and not on the 15th (*i.e.* the conjunction day); if it is ended on the 15th it is valueless and must be performed again.

Thus are the rules for the sacrifice of the cooked rice to the Smárta domestic Fire (cf. notes 30 and 145).

Some writers, again, say that the sacrifice of the cooked rice to the Smárta domestic Fire may be ended on the 1st Tithi. Thus there is really no strict rule. After having performed the sacrifice of the cooked rice in the Forenoon, one must after the conjunction only perform the meal rite to a Brahmin. Jayanta says that the sacrifice of the cooked rice is to be performed in the early morning nearest to the conjunction.

Thus do (different) writers give different rules.

In connection with the sacrifice to the three Shravita domestic Fires (cf. notes 30 and 145) one must on the 1st Tithi only perform the meal-rite to Brahmins; all the other rites must be performed on the preceding day, for, according to the Purushártha Chintámani the 1st Tithi is of no use for them.

The followers of Kátyáyana¹⁴⁶ ought, in connection with the Full Moon Date also, to follow the general rule as given above, for the Nirnayasindhu and many other authorities agree, that the full moon does not make any difference to them. Some other writers, however, say that the Kátyáyanas ought at a Forenoon-conjunction on the Full Moon Date to perform the "Worship of Wood and Fire" on the day of the conjunction and the sacrifice on the following day.

Special rules for the Followers of Kátyáyana¹⁴⁶ concerning the Dark Moon Date.

Let the day of the Dark Moon Date be divided into three parts, the Forenoon being the first, the Mid-day being the second, and the

¹⁴⁶ Kátyáyana is an ancient Sage and author of Vedic Sutras of the Yajur, of Treatises on Ritual and on Grammar. His descendants accepted in common life his rules on ritual and have followed them until this present time. They are called after him the Kátyáyanas. Some authors opine that all those who follow the ritualistic rules of Kátyáyana are Kútyáyanas.

Afternoon being the third. If the conjunction occurs during the night, the Kātyāyanas ought, like other sects, to perform the offering of the rice balls to dead ancestors and the "Worship of Wood and Fire" on the day of the conjunction (that is the 15th) and the Sacrifice on the following day (*i.e.* on the 1st Tithi), though the moon may then be visible. There is a general agreement as to this point.

If the conjunction occurs in the Forenoon or in the second part of the day called Mid-day, then the "Worship of Wood and Fire" and the oblation of rice balls to dead ancestors must be performed on the day preceding the conjunction and the sacrifice on the day of the conjunction.

When on the 14th Tithi the third part of the day called Afternoon is pervaded by the Dark Moon Date, then there is no doubt that the oblation of the rice balls to dead ancestors must be performed on that afternoon of the 14th which is pervaded by the Dark Moon Date. Some other writers say that when the Dark Moon Date only nearly touches the afternoon (of the 14th Tithi), the oblation of the cooked rice to one's ancestors ought to be performed on the day of the Dark Moon and not on the 14th Tithi. However, some other authors again say that it may be performed at the end of the 14th, as the moon is very dim then.

There are four kinds of Afternoon-conjunctions :—

1st. When the Dark Moon Date is included in the afternoon of the conjunction day. Example : The 14th has 29 Ghatikas, the Dark Moon Date 30, the following 1st Tithi 29, and the length of the day is 30 Ghatikas. Here the "Worship of the Wood and of the Fires" and the oblation to dead ancestors must be performed on the Conjunction-day and the sacrifice on the following day.

2nd. When the Dark Moon Date is included in the afternoon of the day preceding the Conjunction-day. Example : The 14th has 20 Ghatikas, the Dark Moon Date 22 Ghatikas, the following 1st Tithi has 24 Ghatikas, and the length of the day is 30. Here according to the Kanstantubha, as the 1st Tithi includes on the day following the conjunction day (that is the 15th Tithi) a full morning of 6 Ghatikas and fully three parts of the 1st Tithi, and thus time enough to perform the sacrifice, the "Worship of the Wood and of the Fires" and the oblation to dead ancestors must take place on the

day of the conjunction and the sacrifice on the day of the 1st Tithi. Some other writers however following the text, "when the afternoon of the 1st Tithi includes 6 Ghatikas of the 2nd Tithi then, as the Moon has become visible and therefore the sacrifice cannot be performed, the Worship of Wood and Fire must be performed on the 14th Tithi," say that the Worship of Wood and Fire and the oblation to dead ancestors should take place on the 14th and the sacrifice on the day of the conjunction. Here is another example illustrating this case : The 14th has 18 Ghatikas, the Dark Moon Date 18, the following 1st Tithi has 19 Ghatikas and the length of the day is 27; now as the 1st Tithi includes the morning but not the three parts of the day (necessary to a sacrifice) the followers of Kátyáyana (cf. note 148) according to all authorities must perform the sacrifice on the conjunction day (*i.e.* the 15th) and the "Worship of Wood and Fire" and the oblation to dead ancestors on the preceding day of the 14th Tithi.

3rd. When the Dark Moon Date nearly pervades the afternoon of both days equally or unequally. Example : The 14th has 25 Ghatikas, the Dark Moon Date 25, the following 1st Tithi 24, and the length of the day is 30. Here both Afternoons include equally (the Dark Moon Date); concerning such a case we have seen above that there are two opinions, viz. that of the Kaustubha and that of other authorities.

Another illustration of this case : The 14th has 25 Ghatikas, the Dark Moon Date 20, the following 1st Tithi 17, and the length of the day is 27. Here also the afternoon of both days alike nearly includes the Dark Moon Date. All agree that here the Kátyáyanas should perform the sacrifice on the conjunction day (*i.e.* the 15th) and the "Worship of Wood and Fire" and the oblation to dead ancestors on the preceding day.

Here is an example where both afternoons nearly include the Dark Moon Date, but not equally : The 14th has 25 Ghatikas, the Dark Moon Date 23, the 1st Tithi 23 and the length of the day is 30. Concerning this case also two different opinions are given by the authorities mentioned in the former case.

A further example illustrating this case : The 14th has 25 Ghatikas, the Dark Moon Date 22, the 1st Tithi 18, and the length of the day is 30. Here also do both afternoons nearly include the Dark Moon Date, but not equally, and concerning it all agree that the

Kátyáyanas (cf. note 146) should perform the sacrifice on the conjunction day and the "Worship of Wood and Fire" and the oblation to dead ancestors on the preceding day of the 14th Tithi.

A last illustration of this case : The 14th has 25 Ghatikas, the Dark Moon Date 27, the following 1st Tithi 29, and the length of the day is 30. Here should the "Worship of Wood and Fire" and the sacrifice (sic ! instead of "sacrifice" it ought to be the "oblation to dead ancestors") be performed on the conjunction day and the sacrifice on the 1st Tithi.

4th. When the afternoon of the conjunction day nearly includes the Dark Moon Date : The 14th has 31 Ghatikas, the Dark Moon Date has 26 Ghatikas, the following 1st Tithi 23 Ghatikas, and the length of the day is 30 ; or again : the 14th has 28 Ghatikas, the Dark Moon Date 22, the following 1st Tithi 17, and the length of the day is 27 ; in both these cases the "Worship of Wood and Fire" and the oblation to dead ancestors must take place on the conjunction day and the sacrifice on the following day of the 1st Tithi.

Thus even for Kátyáyanas (cf. note 146) the visibility of the moon does not always imply a prohibition ; in some cases the prohibition holds good and the sacrificial rites, &c. must be performed on the preceding day, while in other cases they may be performed on the day the moon is visible. The same is the case with regard to the daily oblation of rice balls to deceased ancestors. Concerning the meal given to Brahmin in honour of deceased ancestors on the Dark Moon Date, a general description will be given further on in the work.

Rule for Sama-Vedists concerning the Sacrifice.

In connection with the Full Moon Date they should follow the general rule given above. In connection with the Dark Moon Date if there is a Night-conjunction, they should perform the sacrifice on the following 1st Tithi, even if the moon is then visible ; if there is an Afternoon-conjunction and the 1st Tithi includes a Morning of 6 Ghatikas and stretches over the three first parts of the day, affording thus time enough for the sacrifice, then it should be performed on the 1st Tithi even though the moon should be visible and the "Worship of Wood and Fire" and the oblation to dead ancestors must take place on the Conjunction day (i.e. the 15th). If there is not sufficient time on the 1st for the sacrifice, then it must be performed on the Conjunction day and the "Worship of Wood and Fire" and the oblation to ancestors on the previous day of the 14th Tithi.

Thus should the Sauna Vedists like the Kātyāyanas (cf. note 146) observe as much as possible the prohibition of the visibility of the moon. This is the rule for the Sauna-Vedists.

Thus is the twenty-second chapter, a description of the time of the sacrificial rites (of the 15th Tithis).

CHAPTER XXIII.

Definition of the time for the Oblation of Rice Balls to dead Ancestors.

For the oblation of rice balls to dead ancestors should the followers of Ashvalāyana¹⁴⁷ take, from among the five parts into which the day is divided, the fourth part, namely the afternoon, of that day and night on which the Dark Moon Date and the 1st Tithi meet. If the conjunction occurs in the afternoon this oblation is performed during the afternoon on the day of the "Worship of Wood and Fire."

If the conjunction occurs in the Mid-day time or in Forenoon, the oblation must take place on the day of the sacrifice after the sacrifice has been offered and during the afternoon.

When the conjunction of the two Tithis occurs at the time of the conjunction of day and night then the sacrifice of rice balls to dead ancestors must take place on the day of the "Worship of Wood and Fire" (in the afternoon).

Both the Apastambas¹⁴⁸ and the followers of Hiranyakeshi¹⁴⁹ perform the oblation of rice balls to dead ancestors on the day of the conjunction. It must be performed either in the afternoon or just when the sun stands over the tree (*i.e.* mid-day).

When the day is divided into five parts, the fourth is the afternoon; but when it is divided into nine parts the seventh is the afternoon.

It has been shown above that the Sankhyāyanas,¹⁵⁰ the Kātyā-

¹⁴⁷ Ashvalāyana is an ancient Sage and author of Sutras, or Rules on the Ritual of the Rig-Veda. His descendants and others who follow his rules in common life are called after him Ashvalāyanas.

¹⁴⁸ Apastamba is the name of an ancient Sage and author of Sutras, or Rules on Ritual. His descendants and the followers of his rules are called after him Apastambas.

¹⁴⁹ Hiranyakeshi, an ancient Sage and author of Sutras, or Vedic Rules on Ritual. His descendants and followers are called after him Hiranyakeshayas.

¹⁵⁰ Shūnkhyāyan or Shūnkhyayana is an ancient sage and author of Sutras, or Rules on the Ritual of the Rig-Veda. His descendants and the followers of his rules are called after him Shūnkhyāyanas.

yanas and the Sama-Vedists should perform the oblation of rice balls to deceased ancestors on the day of the "Worship of Wood and Fire." The day being divided into three parts it must be performed during the third part, viz. the afternoon.

If the oblation of rice balls to dead ancestors and the meal given to Brahmins in their honor fall on the same day, then must Rig-Vedists, who keep the domestic sacrificial fire, perform them by amalgamation. "Amalgamation" means here that both rites must be performed at the same time.

If the 15th Tithi is a defective Tithi, then only the meal to Brahmins in honor of dead ancestors should take place on the first day and only the oblation of rice balls to them on the second day.

People who keep the three domestic sacrificial fires ought only to make the oblation of rice balls in the North Fire and not by amalgamation (with the other rite).

When the Dark Moon Date is complete, people who keep the three sacrificial fires ought to perform the rites in the following manner: Firstly the "Worship of Wood and Fire," then the oblation to all divinities, then the oblation of rice balls to dead ancestors then the meal to Brahmins in honour of dead ancestors.

A man who keeps the sacrificial fire and whose father is still alive, should perform the oblation of rice balls to his deceased grandfather (his grandfather's father), &c., up to three generations at that specified time or at the end of the daily fire oblation, and either with balls or without rice balls. If such time cannot be got the oblation of the rice balls to ancestors should not be commenced.

If a sacrificial rite is neglected, then the Four-Feeted-Penance¹⁵¹ rite must be performed. If two sacrificial rites have been neglected the Half-Penance rite¹⁵² must be performed.

¹⁵¹ The Four-Feeted-Penance derives its name from the four days over which it stretches. It is performed as follows:—Let one on the first day eat only once at the time of Mid-day, and only twenty-six handfuls of rice fried in ghee; on the second day eat only once at night and take only twenty-two handfuls of food; on the third day only twenty handfuls of food which has been received yet without begging; on the fourth day keep a full fast.

¹⁵² The Half-Penance derives its name from the fact that it stretches only over six of the twelve days of a Full-Penance which will be described later on. It is performed as follows:—On the first day one should eat but once, viz., in the afternoon; on the second day only once, viz. at night: on the third and fourth day eat only food which has been received, yet without begging; and on the fifth and sixth fast.

As by the neglect of three sacrificial rites the domestic sacrificial Fire is destroyed, it should be renewed and reconsecrated.

If the oblation of rice balls to dead ancestors has been omitted then the penance of Vaishvanara¹⁵³ should be performed; or, in lieu of the omitted rite one should pronounce the following words: "I offer seven oblations" and, by throwing four times ghee into the Fire, perform a full Fire oblation.

Thus is the twenty-third chapter, a definition of the time of the sacrificial rite to dead ancestors.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Rules for the Meal to Brahmins in honor of Dead Ancestors in connection with the Dark Moon Date.

For the Meal to Brahmins in honor of dead ancestors, that day should be taken, whose fourth part of the five into which the day is divided, viz. the afternoon, includes the Dark Moon Date. Either the first or the second day of the Dark Moon Date may be taken, of their afternoons fully or nearly include the Dark Moon Date. If the afternoons of both days nearly include the Dark Moon Date, but not equally, then that day whose afternoon includes more should be taken. When the afternoons of both days include the Dark Moon Date equally, then if there has been a decrease of the (15th) Tithi, the first day should be taken, but if the (15th) Tithi has increased or is like the 14th the second day should be taken.

Here follow examples of the afternoons of both days nearly including the Dark Moon Date, and that equally when there is either decrease or increase or likeness:

The 14th has 19 Ghatikas after sunrise, the Dark Moon Date has 23, and the length of the day is 30. Here the afternoons of both days include equally 5 Ghatikas of the Dark Moon Date, and as there is an increase of 4 Ghatikas of the 15th as compared with the 14th, the second day should be taken.

Another example: The 14th has 23 Ghatikas after sunrise, the Dark Moon Date 19. Here as the afternoons of both days include equally 1 Ghatika, and as there is a decrease of 4 Ghatikas, the first day should be taken.

A further example: The 14th has 21 Ghatikas after sunrise, and the Dark Moon Date also 21 Ghatikas. Here both afternoons

¹⁵³ I cannot find any particulars concerning the manner of this Penance Rite.

include 3 Ghatikas alike, and as there is neither decrease nor increase, but the 14th and 15th are equal, then the second day should be taken.

When both the afternoons include fully (that is during their own length, viz. 6 Ghatikas) the Dark Moon Date, then as there is forcibly an increase (of the 15th as compared with the 14th), the second day should be taken.

When the afternoon of neither of the two days includes the Dark Moon Date, then those who keep only one domestic sacrificial Fire as well as those who keep all three domestic Fires must take the first day, i.e. the day on which the 14th meets with the 15th and includes that time of the 15th or Dark Moon Date which is called Sinivali.¹⁵⁴

As for those who keep no sacrificial Fire as women, Shudras¹⁵⁵ &c. they must take that day on which the 1st Tithi meets with the 15th Tithi and includes that time of the 15th or Dark Moon Date, which is called "Kuhu"¹⁵⁶; thus at least is the opinion of Madhavachárya as to the Dark Moon Date of those people, and it is generally accepted by all learned men.

The Purushárhachintámani says that people who keep the sacrificial domestic Fire and are followers of the Rig-Veda or of the Black-Yajur-Veda must perform the meal to Brahmins in honor of dead ancestors on the day preceding that of the sacrifice (that is on the 14th) even then if its afternoon does not include the Dark Moon Date.

Thus when the afternoons of both days are completely pervaded by the Dark Moon Date, the meal to Brahmins in honor of dead ancestors must be performed on the second day. If the afternoons of both days include nearly the Dark Moon Date and there is an increase of the 1st Tithi, then must the meal to Brahmins in honor of dead ancestors be performed on the first Tithi after the sacrifice.

When the afternoon of the second day includes the Dark Moon Date and there being a decrease of the 1st Tithi, the sacrifice is

¹⁵⁴ Sinivali is the first watch of the whole time of the Dark Moon Date.

¹⁵⁵ The last of the four castes into which Hindu society was divided in ancient times and which are not allowed to wear the sacred shoulder cord. The word Shudras is now used for all lower divisions of castes within the pale of Hinduism.

¹⁵⁶ Kuhu consists of the two last watches of the whole time of the Dark Moon Date.

performed on the Dark Moon Date, then must Rig-Vedists take the first day which includes the time of the Dark Moon Date, called Siniśāl (cf. note 154) ; the Black-Yajur-Vedists¹⁵⁷ must take the second day which includes the time of the Dark Moon Date called Kuhu (cf. note 155) ; and the Sama-Vedists may take either.

When the afternoon of the first day includes more of the Dark Moon Date than that of the second day, then Sama-Vedists must take the first day, but Black-Yajur-Vedists the second. It is said that even when the afternoon of neither of the two days includes the Dark Moon Date, Sama-Vedists must take the first and Black-Yajur-Vedists the second day.

When both the Dark Moon Meal and the Yearly Meal to Brahmins in honor of deceased ancestors, or both the Dark Moon Meal and the Monthly Meal to Brahmins in honor of deceased ancestors ; or both

¹⁵⁷ One must remember that the Veda called Yajur exists in two Recensions, viz. the Vajasaneyá or White Recension and the Taittiriya or Black Recension, which are at variance in many points, that this difference arose probably before the text of the Yajur was committed to writing at a time when the Vedas were still transmitted orally from one generation to the next. The legend of the Matsia Purana relates that the author of the Yajur-Veda, the Sage Vaishampáyana imparted that Veda first to his pupil Yájnavalkya charging him to teach it to his twenty-six fellow-pupils. Before Yájnavalkya had time to do so, however, he contrived to offend his teacher, the Sage, who at once commanded him to relinquish the acquired Vedic words he had confided to him. Yájnavalkya vomited them at once in a tangible form on the ground. The teacher transforming then his twenty-six other disciples into so many Taittiris, or partridges, bade them pick up the vomited Veda, which through its contact with the ground, had already become soiled and blackened and was ever afterwards called the Black-Yajur, also Taittiriya-Yajur-Veda.

Being left without Veda, Yájnavalkya by means of pleasant Hymns gratified the Sun, who to reward him appeared in the form of a horse, or Vajin, and gave him a fresh Yajur text, called therefore Vajasaneyin Text, also White-Yajur-Veda.

The true meaning of this legend is not difficult to surmise. As it has always been with scholastic or philosophical schools, numerous examples of which we see in Greek history of philosophy, and even in our own times, in the relation of St. Simon, Comte, Spencer to each other, that, namely, a spirited and progressive disciple separates from his teacher, rejects parts of his system, and, adding to that which he retains new conceptions, makes, so to say, a new system, and despises the fountain from which he had first drawn ; so also Yájnavalkya, after having mastered his teacher's philosophy, rejected parts of it, established a new method, and called the old system of his former master by a bad name, the Black Yajur or the Yajur of Partridges.

the Dark Moon Meal and the Water-Pot Donation Meal¹⁵⁸ to Brahmins in honor of dead ancestors occur on the same Dark Moon Date then both are to be performed on the same day; but different divinities must be worshipped. On such occasions the monthly meals, the yearly meals, &c., ought first to be performed, and then the Dark Moon Meal to deceased ancestors should be performed with food separately prepared.

The Vishvadeva Rite¹⁵⁹ must be performed before the Dark Moon Meal to Brahmins in honor of deceased ancestors with the food that remains from the Monthly Meals or the Yearly Meals, or fresh food can be expressly prepared.

People who keep the sacrificial domestic Fire when these rites meet thus on the same day, must first perform the Vaishvadeva Rite, then the oblation of rice balls to dead ancestors, then the Yearly, Monthly Meals to Brahmins in honor of deceased ancestors, etc.

The Dark Moon Meals to Brahmins in honor of deceased ancestors may be performed even by people who have not been invested with the sacred cord, by widowers and by travellers.

People who have neglected to perform the Dark Moon Meals to Brahmins in honor of dead ancestors must repeat hundred times the Rig-Veda incantation which begins thus : " Niyúshu vácham."¹⁶⁰

Thus is the twenty-fourth chapter, concerning the meal rites to deceased ancestors on the Dark Moon Date.

¹⁵⁸ This Water-Pot-Donation-Rite consists in the usual Meal Rite to Brahmins in honor of one's deceased ancestors with this difference, that handfuls of water are poured upon the ground to refresh them and a pot filled with water given to every one of the Brahmins who represent one's ancestors. It is very meritorious to give a pot of gold, silver and other metals (cf. note 32).

¹⁵⁹ The Vishvadevas are a kind of divinities, lower than the gods, but higher than deceased ancestors. They must be propitiated daily and the oblation offered to them according to this text must be performed before the meal to Brahmins who represent the ancestors. In the Vedas, the word Vishvadevas seems to mean all the gods of the Universe.

¹⁶⁰ न्यूऽसुवाचं प्रमहे भरामहे गिरद्वायसदने विवस्तः ।
नृचिद्विरत्ने सस्तामिवाविद्बद्धुत्तिर्विणोदेषु शस्यते ।

" We bring to the glorious Indra, whose throne is in the Sun, a sweet Hymn of Praise, (for) he accepts with eagerness the gift of the good, and bad praise is not acceptable to gift-givers."

In giving the meaning of this Mantra of the Rig-Veda Mand. I. 53. 1, I do not follow entirely Sayana's Commentary, for his supply of extra words only confuses the simplicity of the text. His taking " gira" as a Nom. Pl. is evidently in this place a mistake.

CHAPTER XXV.

On the time for beginning Sacrificial Rites.

The periodical sacrificial rite and the offering of cooked rice should begin on the Full Moon Date and not on the Dark Moon Date.

Laying the sacrificial domestic Fire ¹⁶¹ should take place after the daily burnt offering which is performed on the entering a new dwelling place.

When the periodical sacrifices of both the Dark and the Full Moon Date is begun on the date of the Full Moon, then neither the intercalary month, nor the month of Pausha, nor the setting of Venus and other Planets are detrimental to them ; but if one has neglected to begin them at the time of Full Moon, some writers say, that then duo regard must be paid to Pure months (for their beginning) ; other authorities even say that they ought always to be begun during a Pure month.

Thus is the twenty-fifth chapter, a description of the beginning of sacrificial rites.

CHAPTER XXVI.

Times for Irregular Sacrificial Rites.

There are three kinds of Irregular sacrificial rites :—

1st. Obligatory Irregular sacrificial rites, like the oblation of the first-fruits, the Four-months' sacrifice, &c.

2nd. Occasional Irregular sacrificial rites like the child-birth-sacrifice, &c.

3rd. Desiring Irregular sacrificial rites, as those connected with the Sun, &c.

All those rites are of great importance.

The sacrifice completing rites are also Irregular rites. They are of two kinds ; viz., Obligatory and Occasional.

¹⁶¹ As the daily burnt offerings to the All-Spirit, to the Gods, the Vishva-devas (cf. note 159), the Ganas (a kind of maleficial demi-Gods under the supervision of Ganapati, cf. note 6), the Demons (cf. the Sandhyā-pustakam) and even to the crows and the two dogs Shama and Shabala (cf. ibidem) are obligatory, on entering a new residence the place for the domestic sacrificial Fire must be prepared and the Fire kindled at once for ever (cf. note 30) as soon as one has offered one burnt offering on a provisory place, where the Fire which one has brought from the old residence is kept.

There is some uncertainty as to whether Irregular sacrificial rites must be performed at the very moment of their occasion or during the space of two days. It is doubtful as to whether they ought to take place at the Dark Moon, or at the time of the Mansions of the Gods (cf. below) in the Light half month.

When the rule that they are to be performed at the Dark Moon Date is followed, if there is an Afternoon-conjunction, then the Irregular sacrificial rite must take place either on the day of the Conjunction and during the very time specified, or in the course of two days; the Regular rite then follows. But when there is a Mid-day or a Forenoon-conjunction then the Regular rite must be performed on the Conjunction day and the Irregular rite must follow at once.

The 14 sidereal Mansions beginning with Kṛittika and ending with Vishāka are called the Mansions of the Gods.

A description of the oblation of the first fruits will follow in the second part of this work.

The Initiatory sacrifice is to be performed on the 14th Tithi.

Thus is the twenty-sixth chapter, a general definition of Irregular Rites.

CHAPTER XXVII.

On Sacrifices of Animals.

The sacrifice of animals should be performed on one of the four Full Moon Dates of the rainy season, beginning with the month of Shrāvana, or either on the day of the Sun's southward course or on that of its northward course.¹⁶²

If the Full Moon Date is Defective then the general rule of the 15th given above for the Irregular sacrificial rites should be followed.

Thus is the twenty-seventh chapter, on the time for the sacrifice of animals.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

Times for the Sacrificial Rites called Four Months' Sacrifices.

There are four kinds of Four Months' sacrifices :—

1st. That which is called the Life-Long.¹⁶³ Let the Vishadeva rite (cf. note 159) be performed on the Full Moon Date of the month of Phalgunā or of the Month of Chaitra ; then, counting either from

¹⁶² On this double motion of the Sun compare note 28 and the text to it.

¹⁶³ The reason of the name of this and of the two following rites is evident from the description of the rites themselves.

the one or the other of these two months, let a rite be performed on the same date of all the following fourth months up to one's death.

2nd. That which is called the One-Year-Long. Its time is the same as that of the above rite, only that it lasts but one year and that its end consists in performing either a Savana or an Animal or a Soma sacrifice.

3rd. The Twelve-Days-Rite, which consists in this, that an All-Gods-Rite (cf. note 159) is performed on the first-day, a Varura-Praghása-Rite (cf. note 167) on the fourth day, the sacrifice called Saka on the eighth and ninth days, and the sacrifice called Shuná-siriya on the twelfth day.

4th. The Much-Practiced-Rite,¹⁶⁴ which consists in this that a rite is performed on four consecutive days and ended on the fifth.

Some writers say that these last two rites, viz., the Twelve-Days-Rite and the Much-Practiced-Rite should begin on a day of the Northening course¹⁶⁵ of the Sun, in the Light half month and during the Conjunction of one of the Sidereal Mansions of the Gods, and that they should have their end-rite in the Light half month. Some other writers however say that their end should occur in the Dark half Month.

If the Twelve-Days-Rite and the Much-Practiced-Rite are ended by offering a Savana¹⁶⁶ or any other like sacrifice, then they may be performed once only; but if they are not so ended, they must be performed every year.

Some writers even say that a rite of one day only is sufficient and that it is to be performed on one of the four Full Moon Dates beginning with Chaitra.

Other writers again mention a rite of seven days, namely the Vaishvadeva (cf. note 159) on the two first days, the Varura-Praghása¹⁶⁷ on the third day, the Domestic-Sacrifice on the fourth

¹⁶⁴ The reason of the appellation of this rite is very probably this, that being easier to perform than the preceding ones, it is oftener practiced than they.

¹⁶⁵ Compare note 28.

¹⁶⁶ This rite consists in oblations of the Soma-juice and forms the completing part of other sacrifices. Particulars will be given later on in the work.

¹⁶⁷ A kind of oblation to Varuna (the God of the Ocean) at which time barley is both offered and eaten. As this and the following rites will again appear and be explained in the course of this work; and as it would take too much time to give here a satisfactory description of them, I refer to the translation of latter chapters.

day, the Great Ghee oblation on the fifth day, the oblation to dead ancestors and other other-like concluding rites of the Saka-Sacrifice on the sixth day, and the Shunásiriya-Rite on the seventh day. For these rites of seven days the same time of the Light half Moon must be taken, which are ordered for the rites of the five days.

Thus is the twenty-eighth chapter, a definition of the time for the rites called Four-Months-Rites.

CHAPTER XXIX.

Description of the time for Desiring and Occasional Rites.

Regarding Desiring rites¹⁶⁸ the general rule which has been given for the Irregular rites should be followed and the Dark Moon Date be taken, or they may be performed during the conjunction of the lunar sidereal Mansions of the Gods in the Light half Month.

A wife should perform the (thanksgiving) sacrifice for child-birth on the Date of the Moon's change after the removal of the uncleanness of delivery, which for twenty days precludes the performance of rites.

Occasional rites like, for instance, that connected with the conflagration of one's house, should be performed at once after their occasion has arisen, and a Moon's change should not be waited for. But as to rites for which there is no such occasion one should perform them on the date of the Moon's change.

Those sacrificial rites, which obligatorily accompany sacrifices, must be performed along with those sacrifices by which they are occasioned ; no other time should be looked for.

If during a sacrifice a defilement¹⁶⁹ of the things to be offered occurs and one becomes aware of it after the part of the sacrifice

¹⁶⁸ Desiring-rites are such which are not obligatory but are only occasional and performed for the sake of certain blessings, like getting a son, riches, long life, &c.

¹⁶⁹ This defilement occurs by the things to be offered and the Brahmins who officiate being touched or even only looked upon by a low caste man ; by their being touched by another Brahmin who has not bathed and put on newly washed cloths, by cats, dogs, rats, crows, fowls, &c. by the fall of flies, insects into the offerings to be burnt and by a host of other causes.

called Svishtakrit¹⁷⁰ has been performed, and before the Yajur-Veda-Incantation called Samishta¹⁷¹ is pronounced, then must one perform the penitential rite which is occasioned by the defilement at that very time and begin the sacrifice again with the Sowing-Ceremony;¹⁷² but if one becomes aware of the defilement only towards the end of the sacrifice, then must that sacrifice be finished and a fresh one from the very kindling of the Fire be performed.

This is the twenty-ninth chapter, a definition of Desiring and Occasional sacrifices.

CHAPTER XXX.

Laying the Sacrificial Fire.

The laying of the sacrificial fire (cf. note 161 and 30) must take place on the Date of the Moon's change and of the conjunction of certain lunar sidereal mansions. For it that Date of the Moon's change should be taken which lasts throughout the rite from the time of pronouncing the Resolution to that of the final oblation. If such a 15th Date cannot be obtained, such a one may be taken

¹⁷⁰ The word Svishtakrit means "the fulfilling of the desire" scil. one has to get some special blessing by means of the sacrifice offered. The part of the sacrifice called by that name consists in a burnt offering of a mixture of ghee, boiled rice, fruits, &c. and is supposed to cause the whole sacrifice to be pleasant to the gods, and to effect it, that they grant that which one wishes to obtain by means of the whole sacrifice.

¹⁷¹ Samishta is the Yajur-Veda incantation which is pronounced at the end of the Sacrifice to unify its different parts and to fructify them.

¹⁷² In order to understand the meaning of this ceremony one must remember that at the time of sacrifices before the rice, &c., can be offered, it must in the hands of the officiating Brahmin figuratively pass through the natural process of sowing, watering, threshing, cleansing, and cooking. The officiating Brahmin therefore takes handfulls of rice and pretends to sow it in a winnowing wicker basket, then throws handfulls of water on it to represent the rain. Thereupon he waits some minutes repeating incantations and meditating upon the rice which is supposed to spring up and to grow. When it is imagined as ripe it is reaped in the basket, winnowed, washed with water and cooked with many incantations. When it is cooked it is offered in oblation. This "Sowing Ceremony" of the text refers to the sowing of the rice in the basket.

which lasts from the time of laying the Garhapatya-fire to that of laying the Ahavania-fire.¹⁷³

The following is the rule concerning the lunar sidereal mansions : If each of the two days of the 15th Tithi includes the time which is necessary for the performance of the rite, that day of the two should be taken which has the conjunction of the ordered Tithi. If a day can be had which has the threefold advantage of being in the season of Vasanta (cf. note 29), of being in connection with the date of the Moon's change and of having the ordered lunar sidereal conjunction, it is excellent ; if the Vasanta season is wanting, it is middling ; and if it has either only the date of the Moon's change, or only the ordered lunar mansion, it is bad.

The Ashvaláyana-Sutra gives the following seven lunar sidereal mansions as the ordered ones : Krittika, Rohini, Vishakhá, Purváphalguni. Uttaráphalguni, Mriga and Uttarábhadrapada. Other Sutra works give the following seventeen : Krittika, Rohini, Uttaraphalguni, Uttarabhadrapada, Uttaráshádhá, Mriga, Panervasu, Pushya, Purváphalguna, Purváshádhá, Hasta, Chitra, Vishákha, Annrádhá, Shravana, Jeshtá and Revati (cf. note 25).

According to the text : "For the laying of the Fire before the Soma-sacrifice¹⁷⁴ one must not look for a (propitious) season or for a conjunction with a lunar sidereal mansion ;" the time for the laying of that fire is in accordance with that of the Soma, and one does not want to look for a special time.

Thus is the thirtieth chapter, a description of the time of the laying of the sacrificial fire.

¹⁷³ For these Fires compare note 30. The three Fires are not always glowing ; at ordinary times or when the house-holder entitled to offer the three Fires-Oblations is absent, two are covered over with ashes and the third only kept burning for the daily burnt-offering which the wife has to perform. This passage refers probably to the rekindling of the two extinguished Fires from the burning third one and to the ceremonies accompanying it.

¹⁷⁴ It is to be performed with the juice of the Soma-plaut (*Asclepias acida*). It is now it seems quite out of use and the manner of its performance is difficult to ascertain.

CHAPTER XXXI.

*Description of Eclipses*¹⁷⁵

The time of a solar or lunar eclipse is propitious as long as the eclipse is visible. If the eclipse sets in and is apparent in another island but invisible in one's own country, its time is not propitious. Thus also if the eclipse begins before sunrise, the time of the eclipse before sunrise is not propitious, yet if the eclipse is made invisible by clouds, &c. then one ought to ascertain from astronomical works, almanacs, &c. the exact time it begins and ends, and to perform the ceremony of bathing, donations to Brahmins, &c.

Eclipses of the Sun on a Sunday and of the Moon on a Monday are called "Gem Eclipses," and rites of donations to Brahmins, &c. performed then are very meritorious.

The regular order for rites during an eclipse is as follows : At the beginning, bathing ; in the middle, oblation worship of the gods, meal to Brahmins in honor of one's deceased ancestors ; at the end, rite of donation to Brahmins ; and when the eclipse is passed, bathing.

The following is a rule concerning the degrees of merit of the water used for bathing.

Bathing in cold water is more meritorious than bathing in warm water ; bathing in water which has been drawn by one's self is more meritorious than in water prepared by another ; bathing by plunging is more meritorious than pouring the water over one's self ; bathing in a pond is more meritorious than in flowing water, yet bathing in a large river is better than it ; after that come the following kinds, of which each is more meritorious than the preceding : bathing in holy rivers, in the Ganges and in the sea.

For the (two) baths in connection with an eclipse, one must keep one's cloths on ; some writer however say that the cloths are to be retained only for the bath after the eclipse.

¹⁷⁵ In order to understand this description of eclipses with their defilement and rites one must remember that the eclipses of the Sun and Moon are attributed to the evil power of Rahu, a kind of demon belonging to the class called Daityas. He is believed to snap at the Moon and Sun at the time of partial eclipses and to swallow and disgorge them again at the time of total eclipses. This he does to revenge himself upon the Sun and Moon for that, that they prevented him from tasting along with the Gods, with whom they had mixed in disguise, the Nectar of Immortality which they had just found and were going to drink.

If one does not bathe after the eclipse is passed the defilement occurring from childbirths or deaths remains.

The bath of the eclipse should not be accompanied by incantations.

Married women should bathe from the head down; but other women should bathe even the head at the time of an eclipse.

The rites connected with an eclipse as bathing, donations to Brahmins, meal rites to Brahmins in honor of one's deceased ancestors, &c., must be performed even if there is then a defilement from childbirth or death.

If an Occasional bath-rite (like that of an eclipse) occurs during the time of menstruation, a woman must perform the bath by pouring over herself water from a pot. Let her not wring her cloths, nor change them.

In connection with an eclipse it is very meritorious to fast three days or one day, and to perform the rite of donations to Brahmins, &c. Some writers say that those who fast one day, should do so on the day before the eclipse, but some others say that they ought to do so on the very day and night of the eclipse.

The householder who has a son ought not to fast on occasions like eclipses, solar conjunctions, &c.; some say that even if he has (only) a daughter he ought not to fast. Some authors say that on the day of eclipses, libations of water ought to be made to the gods and to deceased ancestors.

The sight of the demon Ríhu (cf. note 175) (at the time of an eclipse) brings defilement to all, therefore the cloths, &c., which have been touched during an eclipse must be washed, or cleansed by other proceedings.

At the time of eclipses donations of cows, fields, gold, grain, &c., are very meritorious.

The Brahmin who leads a penitential life and is learned is most worthy of donations; now, giving to a worthy Brahmin is very meritorious.

Following the text: "at the time of a lunar or solar eclipse, all waters are like the water of the (holy) Ganges, all Brahmins like Vyása (the supposed author of the Vedas), all donations like the donation of fields," some think that every thing is alike meritorious.

Some others teach that there are degrees of merits, that giving to a non-Brahmin is meritorious, that giving to a Brahmin who is so

by name only is doubly meritorious, that giving to a learned Brahmin who is conversant with the Vedas is hundredfold and thousandfold meritorious, and that giving to a worthy Brahmin is endlessly meritorious. A non-Brahmin is a Brahmin ¹⁷⁶ who has not had the holy ceremonies of investiture performed (cf. note 57) and is thus a Brahmin by caste only: making donations to such a one is only meritorious in the manner settled above. The Brahmin only by name is a Brahmin who has had the holy ceremonies of Garbhadhánam &c. (cf. note 54) performed, but has not studied nor taught the Vedas; giving to him is only doubly meritorious. Giving to a Brahmin who has studied and is conversant with the Vedas is thousandfold meritorious. He who is both learned and leads a godly life is a worthy Brahmin; giving to him is endlessly meritorious.

A meal rite to Brahmins in honor of one's deceased ancestors at the time of an eclipse is to be performed by giving raw grain or gold. If possible one should do it with cooked food.¹⁷⁷

At a solar eclipse the meal to Brahmins in honor of deceased ancestors should be performed after the manner of that which is performed in holy places of pilgrimage, viz. with food the chief component of which is ghee.

He who eats of the meal to ancestors at the time of an eclipse commits a great sin.

A rich man should perform the Weighing-Rite at the time of an eclipse.

¹⁷⁶ A non-Brahmin according to other writers is a man belonging to other castes. Giving to him according to all authorities is a *very little* meritorious. The author of our work the Dharmasindhu, a Brahmin of the Brahmins, tries even to shut this small door by which giving to other castes but Brahmins is meritorious, and explains the expression "non-Brahmin" in the unwarranted manner of the text.

¹⁷⁷ As that which the Brahmins eat is said to be fully enjoyed by deceased ancestors, the best and most meritorious rite is to give cooked food. But here is a difficulty, for Brahmins during eclipses are forbidden to eat and will take upon themselves the sin of breaking the rule only when large sums of money are paid down to them. To a rich man only therefore is it possible to give a meal to Brahmins at the time of an eclipse.

He who goes to receive the investiture of vedic incantations and the (sacred) mark¹⁷⁸ at the time of a solar or lunar eclipse need not look for a propitious month, or a Star-conjunction, &c. as is the case with it when it is done in holy places of pilgrimage and at the time of Grand-conjunctions.

As to the manner of receiving the investiture of vedic incantations and the mark one must look for it in the works called Tantras.¹⁷⁹

To take the "mark" means *now* to receive the (holy) doctrine (by word of a Priest). In all former Yuga-Ages (cf. note 60) the "mark" of investiture was taken; in this present (bad) age of Kali however the investiture by "word only" is received.

Receiving the investiture by "word only" means, when the holy incantations only are communicated to an adept at the time of a solar or lunar eclipse, near a holy river, in a holy place, and in a temple of Shiva.

For the initiation with holy incantations a solar eclipse is the best time. Some writers even say that if it is performed during a solar eclipse, one will fall into poverty and other like troubles.

On the day of a solar or lunar eclipse one should first bathe, fast, and then repeat without interruption from the beginning of the eclipse to the end, praying incantations.

Burnt offering should be made in the ratio of $\frac{1}{10}$ to the number of incantations and libations in the ratio of $\frac{1}{10}$ to the number of burnt offerings.

If one is unable to make burnt offerings let him repeat fourfold incantations. One should first pronounce the chief incantation, then the incantations of the names of the divinities, putting these names in the accusative case and saying: "I refresh this or that

¹⁷⁸ It was in former times the custom at the time of Brahmanic investiture to have the mark of Brahmanism and of the Divinity to which one consecrated oneself marked with a red hot iron on the forehead and other parts of the body.

¹⁷⁹ The Tantras are a kind of treatises teaching mystical and magical incantations for the attainment of superhuman power and for the worship of the gods. As they contain incantations to do evil to one's enemies and protect oneself from the evil influence of demons, scarcellors, &c., they are very much read and studied in India now.

god with my libation. Praise!" Then taking with both hands water mixed with barley one should make libations in the ratio of $\frac{1}{6}$ to the number of the burnt offerings.

At the end of the worship one should also utter a chief incantation, then say : " I anoint this or that divinity," pouring at the same time some of the holy water on one's own head and thus perform the Anointing-Rite in the ratio of $\frac{1}{6}$ to the number of libations. Finally, let one make meals to Brahmins in the ratio of $\frac{1}{6}$ to the number of Anointings.

Thus should the rite called " Purascharana" be performed which consists in the five following ceremonies: Repeating incantations, burnt-offerings, libations, anointings, and meals to Brahmins.

If one cannot make the libations or any other of these rites let him repeat the worship of incantations fourfold the number settled for every one of them.

This rite of Purascharana must not be performed at the time of an eclipse which has begun before sunrise, or ends after sunset.

In connection with this rite of Purascharana even a householder who has a son should fast.

As it is a sin for a man who performs this rite of Purascharana to neglect the usual obligatory rite of bathing, donations to Brahmins, &c, which are connected with the eclipse, he should have them performed by his son, wife, &c. as substitutes.

Here follows the manner how to perform the Purascharana rite.

Having bathed before the beginning of the eclipse, one must pronounce the following resolution : " I, of this or that tribe, of this or that name, at the time of this eclipse of the sun or of the moon, desiring the fruit of this or that incantation, which I repeat with the name of this or that divinity shall perform the rite of Purascharana in the form of repeated incantations lasting from the beginning to the end of the eclipse"; whereupon one should prepare one's seat, perform the Nyâsa-rite¹⁸⁰ before the eclipse sets in, and then from the beginning to the end of the eclipse repeat the chief incantation.

¹⁸⁰ This rite consists in repeating incantations and attributing special divinities to every member and part of the body. In pronouncing the name of the god to which this or that member is consecrated one must touch the different parts with the forefinger of the right hand.

On the following day after having performed the usual obligatory rites of bathing, &c. one must pronounce this resolution : " In order to complete the incantations of the rite of Purascharana performed at the time of an eclipse by means of such and such a number of incantations, I give burnt offerings in the ratio of $\frac{1}{5}$ to the number of incantations, make libations in the ratio of $\frac{1}{5}$ to the number of burnt offerings, perform anointings in the ratio of $\frac{1}{5}$ to the number of libations, and meals to Brahmins in the ratio of $\frac{1}{5}$ to the number of anointings"; and then one should perform the burnt offerings and other rites, or instead of them repeat incantations in the ratio of 2 or 4 to 1 of the number ordered for each of those rites.

On the day of the eclipse the son, or wife, &c. who has been ordered (by father, husband, &c.) to perform as substitute the usual obligatory rites of bathing, &c., must pronounce the following resolution : " I of this or that name,¹⁸¹ of this or that tribe, in order to get the fruit accruing from bathing at the beginning of the eclipse, shall perform the bath of the commencement of the eclipse ", and then he should instead of his father, &c., bathe, make donations to Brahmins, &c.

Those who do not perform the rite of Purascharana ought nevertheless at the time of an eclipse to repeat the incantation taught by their spiritual teacher, that of the name of their beloved divinity, and that of the Gáyatri. If they fail to do so the incantations are defiled.

During an eclipse, he who sleeps is punished by sickness ; he who pisses, by poverty ; he who discharges excrements by becoming a worm (in the next stage of transmigration), he who has sexual intercourse by becoming a town swine,¹⁸² he who anoints himself (with sweet oil) by leprosy, and he who eats by hell.

The food which has been cooked before the eclipse should not be eaten after the eclipse, but thrown away.

The water also which has stood (in pots) during an eclipse should be thrown away, as the penance called Kritchra is ordered to him who has drunk such water.

¹⁸¹ The name to be used is not that of him or of her who acts as a substitute but of him for whom they act.

¹⁸² A town swine is more abominable than a wild or country swine on account of the filthiness of its food.

Rice-water, curds, food fried in ghee or oil and milk which have been prepared before the eclipse, may be taken after the eclipse.

At the time of an eclipse some of the holy Darbha-grass should be thrown into the ghee, and in the milk and other products of the cow (for preservation from defilement).

Here is a description of the Defilement of Eclipses.

At the time of a solar eclipse the four watches preceding the watch of the eclipse are defiled; at that of a lunar eclipse the three watches preceding the watch of the eclipse are defiled. When a solar eclipse occurs in the first watch of the day, then one ought not to eat during the four watches of the preceding night; when the eclipse occurs at the second watch of the day, should one not eat from the second watch of the preceding night.

When a lunar eclipse occurs during the first watch (of the night), should one not eat from the second watch of the preceding day; if the eclipse occurs during the second watch of the night, then should one not take food from the third watch of the preceding day.

For children, aged and sick people the defilement of the eclipse lasts only half a watch or six Ghatikas.

A strong man who eats at the time of this defilement must perform a penance of a three days' fast.

If one eats during the very time of the eclipse, one must perform the Prájápatya ¹⁸⁸ penance.

If the moon rises when the eclipse has begun already, then one should abstain from food on the preceding day, as its four watches are defiled.

Some people say that when there is a full eclipse of the moon, four watches are defiled, but that if it is a partial eclipse the defilement is only of three watches.

When the moon sets during the time of an eclipse, one should regard the following text: "when either sun or moon set during the time of an eclipse, one should after their next day's rising bathe and thus be purified and then do one's daily work." As the words "one should bathe and be purified" mean here that by bathing after the sun's or moon's disc has become visible, the previous defile-

¹⁸⁸ The Prájápatya penance is the same as the Four-Footed-Penance described in note 151 repeated thrice.

ment (of the eclipse) is removed, my opinion is, that before having previously bathed after the moon or sun have become visible, one should not draw water or cook food.

Some say that as a householder who has a son ought not to fast at the time of the sun setting or rising during the time of the eclipse, he should avoid a defilement of six Muhurtas before the setting in of the eclipse and eat afterwards.

Mádhava, following the usual custom of the learned, says that even a householder who has a son should fast fully. This is the right teaching.

If the sun sets during its eclipse, or the moon rises during its eclipse, one who keeps the sacrificial domestic fire should perform the "Worship of Wood and Fire," and in connection with it drink water, but eat no food.

If the moon sets during its eclipse, then the daily bath, burnt offering, &c. must be performed on the next morning; yet if from astronomical books or almanacs it appears that the eclipse is over in a very short time after the moon's setting, then one must bathe and perform the burnt offering after the eclipse is passed. If the eclipse (according to almanacs, &c.) lasts a longer time after the moon's setting so that it oversteps the time of the daily burnt-offering (*i. e.*, the morning), then, following the rule given for the "rising when the eclipse has set in," it seems to me that he should perform the daily Sandhyá¹⁸⁴ and burnt offering during the time of the eclipse, bathe at the time at which, according to almanacs, the eclipse ends, and perform the Brahma libations¹⁸⁵ and other usual daily obligatory rites.

By performing the meal rite to Brahmins in honor of one's deceased ancestors, in connection with an eclipse falling on a Dark Moon Date, one gets both the fruit accruing from the meal rite to deceased ancestors, which ought to be performed on that Dark Moon

¹⁸⁴ The Sandhyá may be said to be the most sacred ceremony of the ritual of the Brahmins. It consists briefly in bathing ceremonies, incantations, oblations to gods, ancestors, ancient sages, demons, men, crows and the two dogs Shama and Shabala, in worship of the penates, and prayers. For a full definition of this rite I beg to refer to my translation with annotations of the "Book of Sandhyá of the Rig-Vedists," which will shortly be published.

¹⁸⁵ The Brahma libation consists in pouring water on the ground as a refreshment to the gods, to ancestors, and to the ancient sages.

Date, and that of a meal rite to ancestors in connection with a solar conjunction.

If the Yearly or other Occasional meal rites to Brahmins in honor of one's deceased ancestors fall on the day of an eclipse, then, if one can do so, one should perform it with food. But if one cannot get Brahmins to eat the food, then one should perform it by giving them raw grain or gold (cf. note 177).

Counting from one's own birth's solar conjunction (cf. chap. II.) the eclipse which occurs during the third, the sixth, the tenth, and the eleventh solar conjunctions, is propitious; that which occurs during the second, fifth, seventh, and ninth solar conjunctions is middling; and that which occurs during the first, fourth, eighth, and twelfth solar conjunctions is unpropitious.

One on whose birth-solar-conjunction or on whose birth-star an eclipse occurs is very unfortunate. Let him perform the penance ordered by Garga¹⁵⁶ or the Disc-Donation-Rite, which is as follows:—

At the time of a lunar eclipse he should make a lunar disc of silver and a serpent of gold, and at the time of a solar eclipse a solar disc of gold and a serpent of gold, and put them in a brass or copper pot filled with ghee; then prepare a donation of sesamum, cloths, and the Brahmins-Gift, and pronounce the following resolution: “I make a donation of this disc, &c. in order to be freed from all unluckiness coming from this or that eclipse which has fallen on my birth-star or my birth-solar-conjunction, and to get the benefit accruing from the eclipse which occurs on one of the eleven conjunctions.” He should then meditate upon the Moon, the Sun, and the demon Ráhu, worship and say: “O Thou tenebrous one! Thou destroyer of Moon and Sun, for the sake of this disc of gold avert all calamities from me! Worship unto thee, O Thou harasser of the Moon! For the sake of this gift of a (golden) snake save me from the fear of the defilement (of this eclipse), O Thou Imperishable son of Simhiká!”¹⁵⁷. Then giving those gifts to a Brahmin, whom he has already worshipped he should say: “In order to get a blessing and to destroy the unluckiness coming from this eclipse I give unto thee this golden snake in the form of Ráhu (cf. note

¹⁵⁶ Garga is the name of an ancient Sage and author of Rules on Ritual. I am unable to ascertain the manner of the penance ordered by him in this case and referred to in the text.

¹⁵⁷ The mother of Ráhu (cf. note 175), a ferocious feminine demon.

and this golden solar disc, or silver moon disc (if this eclipse is a lunar one), which are deposited in this brass vessel filled with butter, and add, according to my ability, sesamum, cloths, and the Brahmins' gift." It seems further to me that these donations should be made also then when the eclipse occurs in the fourth and other unlucky solar conjunctions.

The man upon whose birth-solar-conjunction or birth star an eclipse of the sun or moon falls, should not look at their disc so long as Ráhu seizes upon them (cf. note 175). Other people also should not look at the eclipse immediately, but only through a thin cloth or reflected in water. When there is a total eclipse of the moon, one should avoid performing joyful ceremonies (like marriages, &c.) for seven days, counting from the 12th of the half month to the 3rd of the next half month; if it is a total eclipse of the sun, the nine days between the 11th and the 4th should be rejected. If the eclipse is partial, three days should be rejected, beginning with the 14th.

According to the degrees of the eclipse's magnitude, which can be ascertained in almanacs, &c., more or less days should be rejected.

If the moon or sun set during the eclipse, the previous three days are to be rejected.

If the moon or sun rise during an eclipse, the following three days should be rejected.

If the eclipse is total, the star which is in conjunction (with the moon) during the eclipse must be rejected, whenever it recurs during the six following months.

If it is a quarter-eclipse (or a half eclipse), &c., the star in conjunction should be rejected in the ratio of $1\frac{1}{4}$ month per quarter.

If one gives to the Brahmin that gift which one in one's Resolution had made the vow to give only after the eclipse, one must give it double.

Thus is the thirty-first chapter, a description of Eclipses.

CHAPTER XXXII.

Rules for Bathing in the Sea.

One may bathe in the sea on a Full Moon, Dark Moon and other such Dates, but one must avoid doing so on Fridays and Tuesdays.

The holy fig tree and the sea may be worshipped but not touched, yet one may touch the first on a Saturday and the last on the Dates of the moon's change.

In connection with the Rite of Ráma's Bridge¹⁸⁸ bathing in the sea is not prohibited.

For further rules on sea-bathing one should look in other works.
Thus is the thirty-second chapter, rules for bathing in the sea.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

*Rules concerning prohibition in connection with certain Tithis,
Sidereal Lunar Mansions and Days.*

On the 7th Tithi one should not touch oil, wear black cloths, wash one's self with Emblic Myrabolan fruits, quarrel or eat one's food in copper vessels.

On Joyful Tithis (like the 1st, the 6th, and the 11th) one should not anoint one's self with oil.

On Worthless Tithis (the 4th, the 9th, and the 14th) one should not have one's hair shaved.

On Victorious Tithis (the 3rd, the 8th, and the 13th) Shudras and other low caste people should not eat meat.

On Full Tithis (the 5th, the 10th, and the Full Moon 15th) one should abstain from sexual intercourse.

On Sundays anointing one's self with oil should be avoided.

On Tuesdays one's hair should not be shaved.

On Wednesday one should abstain from sexual intercourse.

On the sidereal lunar mansions of Chitra, Hasta and Shravana one should avoid oil ; on that of Vishákhá as also on the 1st Tithi of both half months one should not shave one's face. On the sidereal lunar mansions of Magha, Krittiká, Uttaráphalguni, Uttaráshádha, and Uttarábhadrapadá one should abstain from sexual intercourse.

On the 7th Tithi one should not eat sesamum, nor make libations with water mixed with sesamum.

On the 8th Tithi one should not eat cocoanuts.

On the 9th Tithi one should not eat gourds.

On the 10th Tithi one should not eat Patol cucumbers.

On the 11th Tithi one should not eat the Phaseolus Radiatus pulse.

On the 12th Tithi one should not eat Cicer lentils.

¹⁸⁸ This rite of Ráma's Bridge refers to the pilgrimage made to the sacred place Rameshvara and to the bathing ceremonies which are performed there in the sea at a place supposed to be that where Ráma, with the help of the Ape-God Hanumán and his host of Monkeys, built his bridge stretching from India's South Coast to Ceylon.

On the 13th Tithi one should not eat the Solanum Melongana Vegetable.

He who uses oil, has intercourse with a woman, or eats meat on the Full Moon or Dark Moon Dates, on the day of a solar conjunction, and on the 14th and 8th Tithis, will be born again in the womb of a low caste woman.

On a Full Moon or Dark Moon Date, on the day of a solar conjunction and on that of a Meal-Rite to Brahmins in honor of one's deceased ancestors, one should not wring one's cloths (after bathing). In the night one should not bring earth, cow-dung, or water. In the Evening Tide one should not bring the urine of the cow.

On a Dark Moon Date and the other Dates of the Moon's change, one should necessarily make the sesamum oblation and perform the Donation Rite for one's own salvation. On those dates one should not study (the Vedas), but one must perform the Rite of Purification,¹⁸⁹ the Sipping ceremony¹⁹⁰ and the Brahmacharya-Rite.¹⁹¹

On the 1st Tithi, on the Dark Moon Date, on the 6th and 9th Tithis, on the day of a Meal-Rite to Brahmins in honor of one's deceased ancestors, on one's birth-day, on days of sacrifices, on fasting days, on Sundays and at the time of Mid-day-Bathing one should not cleanse one's teeth with a twig (cf. note 86).

On days when one cannot get twigs or on days when cleansing one's teeth with a twig is forbidden, one should wash one's mouth with twelve mouthfuls of water or with tree-leaves.

These prohibitions concern only the time of the Tithi, or of the Sidereal Lunar Conjunction, or of the days on which something is prohibited.

Thus is the thirty-third chapter of the Ocean of Religious Rites, a list of prohibitions concerning certain Tithis, Sidereal Lunal Conjunction, &c.

¹⁸⁹ This rite consists in going at least one mile away from one's house for evacuation. This must be done near a tree and on dry grass. After returning home one must rub one's body with earth and bathe.

¹⁹⁰ The Sipping ceremony consists in sipping water with incantations to the honor of gods, deceased ancestors, ancient sages, &c.

¹⁹¹ The Brahmacharya Rite consists in abstaining from sexual intercourse.

It is not for learned, wise, and industrious men who are conversant with the Mimánsa¹⁹² and the Dharmashástra¹⁹³ and can from their knowledge of previous writers perform their (religious) duties, that I have written this easy work, called the Dharmasindhu, but rather for the stupid, the lazy, the ignorant who yet wish to know the rules of (their own) religion.

May the Great Vittala (cf. note 2) he who is so kind to the faithful be pleased with my work.

Those who wish to know and investigate the original texts used here may look in the Kaustubha, the Nirnayasindhu, the works of the great Mádhava and others.

Though there may be grammatical or other mistakes in this work yet it is worthy of being accepted with kindness and examined by the learned ; for did not Vishnu himself accept the poor Brahmin Sudáma's handful of rice though it was mixed with chaff ? ¹⁹⁴

Thus is the end of the first part of the work called Ocean of Religious Rites written (by me) the Priest Káshinatha and the son of the Priest Ananta (cf. note 16).

MAY IT BE AS A BURNT OFFERING TO THE GREAT RAMA.

END OF THE FIRST PART.

¹⁹² Mimánsa is one of the great divisions of Hindu philosophy. It is divided into two parts : the Purva-Mimánsa and the Uttara-Mimánsa. Our text hero refers to the first, the Purva-Mimánsa, which is rather an interpretation of the vedic ritual than a philosophical work.

¹⁹³ Under this appellation are included all treatises on Hindu law and customs.

¹⁹⁴ This refers to an anecdote related in the Mahabharata of a poor Brahmin who came to the incarnated Krishna in Dváraká to pray for riches and happiness, and gained his purpose though he had with him to propitiate the incarnated Vishnu but a handful of coarse rice mixed with chaff.

ART. X.—*Antiquarian Remains at Sopârâ and Padâna.*By BHAGVÂNLÂL INDEAJI.¹

[Read 25th May 1882.]

This paper treats of two groups of antiquarian remains. One of these groups was found in and near the ancient city of Sopârâ, about five miles north of Bassein and thirty-seven miles north of Bombay. The other group belongs to Padâna Hill, a great block of trap in Sâlsette, about fifteen miles north of Bombay.

In December 1881, I received from Mr. James M. Campbell, Compiler of the *Bombay Gazetteer*, some notes on remains at Sopârâ, and a rough sketch of a mound locally known as Buruda Râjâchâ Killâ, that is, the Fort of the Basket-Making King. These notes and the sketch had been obtained through the kindness of Mr. W. B. Mulock, the Collector of Thâna, whose exertions, during the past year, have brought to light a large number of inscribed Silhâra land grant stones and other early Hindu remains.

Finding from the rough sketch that the Buruda Râjâ's fort was much like a stûpa, the desire overtook me of seeing Sopârâ, a name which, under slightly varying forms, occurs in the Nâsik, Junnar, Kârle, and Nânâghât inscriptions, but about which nothing has yet been written. On the seventh of February I went with Mr. Campbell to Sopârâ. We found three short inscriptions from a small hill to the south-west of the town known as Vakâlâ or Brahmâ Tekdi, saw several other remains, and satisfied ourselves that the Buruda King's fort was a stûpa, and that Sopârâ was rich in objects of antiquarian interest. At our first hurried visit of one day we had not time to open the stûpa or to make a detailed search. We therefore returned to Sopârâ during the Easter holidays (April 7–10) to make further inquiries and with the special object of opening the stûpa. During the four days we stayed at Sopârâ we opened the stûpa and made a careful search for ancient remains.

Sopârâ is a large village in the Bassein sub-division of the Thâna district. It lies about thirty-seven miles north of Bombay, and three

¹ I am indebted to Mr. Ratirám Durgârám, B.A., for much help in preparing this paper for the press.

and a half miles south-west of the Virâr station on the Baroda railway. It appears as a holy city in Buddhist, Brâhmanical, and Jain books, and as a wealthy city and emporium in Aparânta or the Konkâna from B. C. 250 to about A.D. 1500. About the middle of the third century before Christ, Aśoka sent to Aparânta one of his missionaries, Dhammarakhita (Sk. Dharmarakshita) the Yona or Yavana, that is the Greek or Baktrian. This missionary is said to have preached the Buddhist faith to 70,000 hearers, of whom a thousand men and more than a thousand women, all of them Kshatriyas, entered the priesthood.¹ Aparânta included, I believe, all the coast country from Navsâri to Gokarña. It was bounded on the west by the sea and on the east generally by the Sahyâdris, though perhaps at times it included a little of the Deccan.² Of all this coast Sopârâ was the capital.³ It was the chief city as early as the time of Aśoka, as in it were engraved his rock edicts, a fragment of which was found in April 1882, and will hereafter be noticed in detail. I believe Dhammarakhita made Sopârâ the centre of his missionary efforts, and that it was from Sopârâ that Buddhism spread over Western India.* It is worthy of note that Dhammarakhita was a Yona or Yavana; and Aśoka's choice of him as missionary to Aparânta seems to show that there was at that time a Yavana element in the population of the western coast. In Aśoka's time there was a Yavana ruler in Surîshtra or Kâthiawâr, with which Aparânta was closely connected by sea.⁵ And in the first century after Christ the Junpar and Kârle

¹ Turnour's Mahâwanso, 71, 73. The text runs:—

'Tathâparântakân Yonân Dhammarakhitanâmakân.

* * * * *

Gantvâparântakân Thero Yonako Dhammarakhito.
Aggikhandhopaman Suttan Kathetva Janamajjhago.
So Sattati Sahassâ' Pâne Tattha Samâgate.
Dhammâmata Mapayisi Dhammâdhammesu Kowido.
Purisânañ Sahassancha Itthiyocha Tatodhikâ.
Khattiyânañ Kulâyewa Nikkhamitwâna Pabbajun.'

² Indian Antiquary, VII. 259.

³ The explanation of the word Aparânta in the Yâdava Kosha, अपरान्तास्तु पाञ्चात्यास्ते च शूर्परकादयः seems to show that Śurparaka was the chief place in Aparânta. Mallinâtha's commentary on verse 53, Raghuvamsha, Canto iv.

⁴ It is curious to find the French friar Jordanus, 1500 years later (A. D. 1320) writing of 'Supora' as an important Christian missionary centre. Yule's Mirabilia V. Mr. J. M. Campbell.

⁵ Indian Antiquary, VII. 257.

cave inscriptions record gifts by Yavanas who had Indian names and were apparently settled in India.¹

Like several other places Sopārā is honoured in Buddhist books as the birth-place of Gautama Buddha in one of his previous births, and as having been visited by Gautama during his last and greatest appearance on earth. Buddhist writers say that in one of his former births Gautama Buddha was Bodhisat Suppāraka,² and that at the request of Punna (Sk. Pūrṇa), the son of a slave girl who had risen to be one of the chief merchants of Sopārā (Sūrpāraka), Gautama came to Sopārā and had a temple built there in his honour. In the neighbourhood of Sopārā he converted to Buddhism a Brāhmanical sage named Vakkali, who lived on the Musalaka hill, and five hundred widows, to whom he gave his nails and some of his hair as reliques, over which they built a stūpa, which was called the Widows' Stūpa or the Vakula Stūpa. While at Sopārā Gautama also converted to his faith two powerful Nāga kings, Krishna³ and Gautama, who lived in the sea and harassed Sopārā.⁴

Brāhmanical writings also speak of Sūrpāraka as a holy place. The Mahābhārata mentions that while visiting various places on the western coast, Arjuna, the third of the Pūndava brothers, came to the very holy Sūrpāraka.⁵ From there, crossing a little inlet of the sea, he reached a famous forest where in times of yore the gods had performed austerities and pious kings had offered sacrifices. There he saw the altar of Richika's son, the foremost of bowmen, surrounded by crowds of ascetics, and worthy of worship by the pious. He saw the holy and pleasant shrines of Vasu, of the Marudganas, of Ashvin, Vaivasvat, Āditya, Kubera, Indra, Vishṇu, Savitri, Vibhu, Bhava,

¹ Archaeological Survey of Western India, No. X., 32, 43, 55.

² Hardy's Manual of Buddhism, 13. The Mahāwanso calls it Suppārakapāṭṭanam where Vijaya (c. 540?) landed. (Turnour, 46.)

³ The Kanheri or Krishnagiri Hill, with the celebrated Buddhist caves, fifteen miles south-east of Sopārā, perhaps takes its name from this Nāga king Krishna.

⁴ Legend of Pūrṇa in Burnouf's Introduction à l'Histoire du Buddhisme Indien, 235—274. I should not here fail to record my obligations to Dr. DaCunha and Mr. Campbell for explaining to me the French original.

⁵ Mahābhārata (Bom. Ed.) Vanaparva, Chap. CXVIII. The Calcutta Edition has Surppāraka. The Harivamsa, (Chap. 39, verse 28, and Chap. 40, verse 39,) calls it Surppāraka, 500 bows (3,000 feet) broad and 500 arrows (1,500 feet) high, the height being, I believe, in consonance with the idea of Sanskrit poets that the palaces of large cities touched, nay, supported the sky.

Chandra, Divâkara, Varuna, the Sâdhyaganas, Dhâtri, the Pitris, Rudra with Ganas, Sarasvatî, Siddhagana, and other holy gods. He gave clothes and jewels to Brâhmaṇas, returned to Śûrpâraka, and from Śûrpâraka went with his brothers by sea to the famous Prabhâsa, or Somnâtha Pattana in South Kâthiawâr. I have no doubt this Śûrpâraka is Sopârâ. The fact that it is reckoned among the holy places on the western coast, and that Arjuna, coming from the south, is said to have gone from Śûrpâraka to Prabhâsa, prove to my mind that the ancient Śûrpâraka is the present Sopârâ.¹

Jain writers also mention Sopârâ. Their mythical king Śripâla married Tilakasundari, the daughter of king Mahasena of Sopârakanagari.² The well-known Jain priest and writer Jinaprabhasûri, who flourished in the beginning of the fourteenth century, and compiled his work from old stories and personal observation, mentions Sopâraka as one of the eighty-four holy places of the Jains. He notices that during the lifetime of that saint it had an image of Rishabhadeva, the first mythical Tirthânkara.³ Of the eighty-four Jain sects or *gachchhas*, one is called Śûrpâraka *gachcha*, or the sect which originated in Sopârâ.⁴

Western India cave inscriptions contain six references to Sopârâ. A Kârle inscription of the beginning of the first century after Christ records a gift of money to make a pillar by Sâtimita, son of Nandâ and nephew and disciple of the reverend Dhamutariya from Sopâ-

¹ Though I have no hesitation in identifying Sopârâ with Śûrpâraka, I do not quite see what place of Brâhmaṇical celebrity near Sopârâ is situated in a forest, reached from Sopârâ by crossing a small arm of the sea, and has an altar of Jamadagni and shrines of Brâhmaṇical gods and sacred bathing places, *tirthas*. The legend of Purna mentions a place apparently near Sopârâ where five hundred Brâhmaṇical Rishis lived whom Buddha converted to his faith.—(Burnouf's Introduction à l'Histoire du Buddhisme Indien, 265.) Perhaps this may be the place mentioned in the great epic as situated somewhere in the Kanheri forest, a tract which still requires to be carefully explored.

² Śripâlacharita, Chap. III. The Jains still regard Sopârâ as holy, and not a few visit it as a place of pilgrimage. Some broken carved stones in Sonârbhât, about 200 yards south of the Râma Kunda (see below p. 281) mark the site of one of the old Jain temples.

³ The text is सोपारके जीवन्तस्वामि ऋषभदेवप्रतिमा.

⁴ List of 84 Jain *gachchhas* or sects.

raka.¹ Ushavadāta, the son-in-law of the Kshatrapa Nahapāna, records in a Nāsik cave inscription, in the beginning of the first century after Christ, the gift of a rest-house with four doors and four verandahs, and an almshouse in Sōrpāraga. The same inscription mentions another gift of 32,000 cocoa palms in Nānagola village to the mendicants of the Charaka order who lived in Rāmatīrtha in Sōrpāraga.² About the same time a Nānāghāt inscription records the excavation of a cistern by one Govindadāsa of Sopāraya.³ A little later, about the middle of the first century after Christ, inscription XII., in a cistern recess marked No. VII. in the Kanheri caves, records the gift of a cistern by the worshipper Samika, a merchant of Sopāraka; and, about the end of the second century, inscription V. in Kanheri Cave III. records the gift of something in the district or *dhāra* of Sopāraka. This ends the list of early Indian references to Sopārā.

Among foreign references the earliest and the most important is its identification with the Ophir of Solomon, made by Benfey and Reinaud. The point has been ably discussed by these and other scholars. I need only remark that the antiquarian remains found at Sopārā strengthen the identification of Benfey and Reinaud.⁴ The Greek geographer Ptolemy, about the middle of the second century after Christ, has, among the Ariake ports, a Supara between Nusaripa (Naosari) and Simylla (Chemuda ?) which is very probably our

¹ This inscription has been effaced and another carved below a small round hole which has been cut into the pillar. The later inscription may be translated, 'The gift of a pillar containing relics by Satimita, nephew of the reverend Dhamutariya from Sopāraka.' It seems from this that Dhamutariya died after the pillar and the first inscription were carved; that a hole was cut into the pillar, and relics were placed in the hole and the inscription changed. See my Karle Cave Inscriptions VIII. and IX. in Arch. Sur. X. 32.

² Nāsik Inscription XIII.

³ Nānāghāt Inscription VIII. The Nānāghāt is in the Sahyādri hills about half-way between the north-eastern and the south-eastern lines of the Peninsula railway. It was the old highway of trade between Paithana, the capital of the Deccan and Sopārā. I trust, at an early date, to have a paper on the Nānāghāt inscriptions ready for publication. Cf. *Bombay Gazetteer*, XIV. 287-291.

⁴ Benfey in McCrindle's *Periplus* 127; Reland in Bitter's *Erdkunde Asien*, VIII. Pt. 2, 386; Reinaud *Mémoire Sur l' Inde*, 222. Sir Henry Yule (*Cathay*, I. 227) considers the connection between Ophir and Sopārā plausible. A summary of the chief views held on the position of Ophir is given in the *Bombay Gazetteer*, XV. 317.

Sopârâ.¹ About a hundred years later (A. D. 247) the author of the Periplus of the Erythraean sea notices Ouppara as a local *mart* between Barugnza or Broach and Kalliena or Kalyân.²

In the sixth century (545) the Greek merchant and monk Kosmas Indikopleustes has a doubtful reference to Sopârâ under the name of Sibor near Kalliana.³ In the beginning of the tenth century (915) the Arab traveller Maçudi mentions Subara along with Thâna and Saimur as coast towns where the Lar dialect was spoken.⁴ About forty years later, the Persian travellers Ibn Haukal and Al Istakhri place Surbârâ and Surabâya between Cambay and Sanján, perhaps confusing it with Ulpár near Surat.⁵ At the beginning of the eleventh century the Arab geographer and traveller Al Biruni (1030) calls it Subara, and restores it to its right place, forty-eight miles south of Sanján and forty north of Thâna.⁶

About sixty years later, A. D. 1094 (Sâka 1016), in the grant of the Silhâra king Anantadeva, exemption from tolls, at the ports of Srîsthânaka, Nâgapura, Surpâraka, and Chemuli, was granted to ships belonging to two brothers, Bhâbhâna and Dhañama, the ministers of Anantadeva.⁷ About the middle of the twelfth century (A. D. 1135—1145) Sopârâ (Sûrpâraka) had the honour of sending the Konkâna delegate, Tejakânta, to a literary congress held in Kâshmir. The Konkâna king who sent Tejakânta is named Aparâditya.⁸ About the middle of the twelfth century the African

¹ Bertius' Ptolemy, 198.

² Geographiæ Veteris Scriptores, I. 30.

³ Kosmas Indikopleustes quoted in Yule's Cathay, I. CLXXVIII. This and the three following references I owe to the kindness of Mr. Campbell.

⁴ Elliot and Dowson, I. 24. Prairies d' Or, I. 251, 381.

⁵ Elliot and Dowson, I. 30, 34.

⁶ Reinaud's Fragments, 121; Elliot and Dowson, I. 66.

⁷ Indian Antiquary, IX. 38.

⁸ Journal B. B. R. A. S., XII. Extra Number CXV. Dr. Bühler (ditto 52) seems to identify this Aparâditya with the Aparâditya of the Patel and Thâna stone inscriptions which are dated Saka 1109 (A. D. 1187). Mr. Telang (Ind. Ant., IX. 41,) has doubted the correctness of Dr. Bühler's identification. The kindness of Mr. Mulock enables me to settle the point. During the current year Mr. Mulock has collected and placed at my disposal fifteen Silhâra stone inscriptions which throw much light on several unknown periods of North Konkâna Silhâra history. From these materials I am preparing a paper which I hope, ere long, to have the honour of laying before the Society. One of these stones, found in the village of Chânch, near Urâña, in the island of Karanâ.

geographer Al Idrisi describes Subara as a mile and a half from the sea, a very well-peopled city with a great trade, one of the emporiums of India.¹ In 1322 the traveller and missionary Friar Jordanus went from Thāna to 'Supera' on his way to Broach. He brought with him and buried the bodies of his four companions who had been killed by the Musalmāns of Thāna. There would seem to have been Christians at that time in Sopārā, as the friars are said to have been buried in a church, and Jordanus is said to have made many converts.²

In the fifteenth century, with the rest of the Thāna coast, Sopārā seems to have passed to the Musalmān rulers of Ahmadabad. Early in the sixteenth century the building of the Musalmān fort of Bassein, and later, under the Portuguese, the establishment at Bassein of the Court of the General of the North took from Sopārā its former importance.³ Of several coins I collected at Sopārā about ten were of Shāh Jahān (A. D. 1625–1658). They were square in shape, made of white metal, and bore the legend of Shāh Jahān in Persian. I believe these coins were perhaps struck at Sopārā to replace the Portuguese white metal coins, which were current in this part of the country. I may mention that except here I have never found a white metal Moghal coin. (Plate II., fig 9.)

These references prove that from B. C. 250 to about the end of the fifteenth century Sopārā was not only a place of sanctity,

records a grant by king Aparāditya in Śaka 1060 (A. D. 1138). This Urana Aparāditya is different from the Aparāditya of the Parel and Thāna stones (A. D. 1187). Between the two Aparādityas come two kings, Haripāla, whose name occurs in two unpublished stone inscriptions, dated Śaka 1072 (A. D. 1150) and 1075 (A. D. 1153), and Mallikārjuna, whose name occurs in two other unpublished stone inscriptions dated Śaka 1078 and 1082 (A. D. 1156 and 1160). As Dr. Bühler fixes Mankha's date between A. D. 1135 and 1145, there seems no doubt that the Aparāditya mentioned in Mankha's book is the first or Urana Aparāditya and not the second or Parel and Thāna Aparāditya.

¹ Jaubert's Idrisi, I. 171; Elliot and Dowson, I. 85.

² Mirabilia, VI., VII. An extract from Dr. W. Germann's Thomas Christen, 187, kindly supplied by the Rev. H. Bochum, S.J., places this beyond doubt, and shows that the Sopārā church was dedicated to St. Thomas.

³ In 1500 the Mirāt-i-Ahmadi has a doubtful reference to Sopārā under the form Sorab, which is mentioned as a Konkana port trading with Gujarāt.—Bird's Mirāt-i-Ahmadi, 129.

but was one of the leading cities and trade centres on the western coast of India.

The following statement shows the different forms under which the name Sopârâ occurs:—

AUTHORITY.	SPELLING.
Sûryodgamanasûtra	Suppâraka.
Mahâwanso.....	Suppârakapattanam.
Legend of Pûrnâ	Sûrpâraka.
Yâdavakosha	Sûrparaka.
Mahâbhârata (Bom. Ed.)	{ Sûrpâraka.
Srikanthacharita	Sopârakanagari.
Śripâlacharita	{ Sopâraka.
Jinaprabhasûri	Sorpâraka.
Kârle Inscription	Sorpâraga.
Kanheri Inscriptions.....	Sopâraya.
List of 84 Gachchhas	Surppâraka.
Nâsik Inscription	Supara.
Nânâghât Inscription	Ouppara.
Mahâbhârata (Cal. Ed.)	Sibor (?)
Ptolemy	Surppâraka.
Periplus	Subara.
Kosmas	Surabâya.
Silhâra Copper-plate.....	Surbârah.
Maçudi	{ Subara.
Ibn Haukal	Supera.
Al Istakhri.....	
Al Biruni	
Al Idrisi	
Jordanus.....	

The modern village or country town which stands on the site of the old city is called Sopârâ. It lies on the west bank of a creek or back water which winds between the railway bridge on the Bassein creek and the Vaitarnâ. Though Sopârâ is no longer a port, the old landing-place is still shown on a low mound about fifty yards east of the Bhâtelâ lake to the east of the town. The part of the creek near Sopârâ is still called the Sopârâ creek, and at high tide boats of from ten to twelve tons still pass, within a mile of the town, both from the Vaitarnâ and the Bassein creek.

Sopârâ has about 2,000 people and 600 houses. Of the people the class which has the most markedly local character are the Sâmvedi Brâhmaṇas, who number about 4,000 in Sopârâ and the

neighbouring villages. They live as husbandmen and know nothing of the Sātras. They can be readily distinguished from the other inhabitants by their pentagonal faces and muscular frames. They have sixteen *Gotras* or family stocks, and four subdivisions, Nāik (Sk. Nāyaka, leader), Vajhe (Sk. Upādhyāya, priest), Joshi (Sk. Jyotishī, astrologer), and Bhatāre (Sk. Bhakta-kara (?), cook or cultivator). Besides the Hindu Sāmvedis there are others of the same caste who were converted to Christianity by the Portuguese. They are locally known as Kirastāun (किरस्ताउन), but in their surnames, dress, manners, and some religious practices they do not differ from their Hindu brethren. Another class of people who seem to have been long settled in Sopārā are the Bhandāris, or palm-juice drawers, a strong sturdy set of men. The rest of the upper class Hindus are probably more recent settlers, Lāda Vānis from Cambay, Palshe Brāhmaṇas from the Deccan, and Śrimāli Vānis and Brāhmaṇas from Gujarāt. The Musalmāns are an important class at Sopārā. There is among them a strong trace of the Nāita or foreign element introduced by the Arab and Persian refugees and merchants who settled on the west coast of India chiefly between the eighth and the thirteenth centuries.

Old Sopārā spread far beyond the present town. The exact area cannot be made out, but the remains show that buildings stretched about a mile from east to west over modern Sopārā and the neighbouring village of Gās. As in the modern town, most of the houses of old Sopārā must have been built of wood, which when ruined leave no trace except their foundation plinths. It is this which at first sight gives Sopārā so modern an air, but in various places examination brings to light sculptured and dressed stones, pieces of broken images and large old bricks, and, besides these, the surest sign of an old city, an extensive provision for storing water. Of seven reservoirs the four largest are the Bhātela, Chakrāla, Khāre or Śirmoli, and Gās lakes, the last a great sheet of water 800 yards long by 120 broad, with two cross dams. Besides these reservoirs or lakes there are three old ponds or *kundas*, and several old wells. The *kundas* are Rāmakunda, Pokarāṇa, and Boghā Tirtha. Of these Rāmakunda is the most important, and though much filled with earth, eleven stone steps may still be seen. On its banks are some Brāhmanical sculptures of about the eleventh or twelfth century. The pool, or *kunda*, is still regarded as holy. It is the 'Rāmatirtha in Sopāraga' mentioned in Nāsik Cave Inscription XIII. Pokarāṇa is

a square reservoir built of dressed stones with steps on all four sides. Boghâ Tirtha, also called Bud Talâvdi, though now much filled with earth, seems to have been a well-built stone-lined reservoir.

The Antiquities of Sopârâ come under four heads:—

- I. A fragment of the VIIIth of Aṣoka's Edicts.
- II. Inscribed stones at Vakâlâ or Brahmâ Hill.
- III. A brick Buddhist stûpa.
- IV. Sculptures at the Chakresvar temple.

I. The Asoka Rock Edict. The most important discovery that has yet been made at Sopârâ is a broken block of basalt bearing a fragment of one of Aṣoka's edicts. The stone was found near the Bhâtelâ pond to the east of the town close to the old landing-place. It appears to be a fragment of a large block of bassalt. It has the remains of six lines in the Asoka character, which, when compared with other copies of Aṣoka's edicts, proved to be part of the eighth edict. Plate I. gives a copy of the inscription. The dark letters are those preserved on the Sopârâ stone, the other letters are filled from the Girnâr and other edicts. The copy shows that the fragment is about one-third of the original edict.

The fourteen or fifteen edicts of Aṣoka which have been discovered in Girnâr, Kapuredi-gâdi, Kâlsi, Dhauli, and Jaugadâ, have always been found in a group. In no case have separate edicts been found. For this reason I think that a complete set of edicts was inscribed in or near Sopârâ. After this fragment was discovered I made a careful search on the banks of the Bhâtelâ pond. Many blocks of basalt were examined, some of them loose, others built into Musalmân tombs, but on none of them were there traces of an inscription.¹ There is no large single rock near Sopârâ suited for engraving a

¹ Búla Miah, the police *patel* of Pelâr, about five miles east of Sopârâ, told me that he believed the inscribed stone had lately been left near the Bhâtelâ pond by some one who had charge of the stone and had broken it, and was afraid his carelessness would be found out. This agrees with a story which many of the people of Sopârâ tell, that about ten years ago there was a large stone covered with letters near the brick stûpa; that an Assistant Collector ordered the *patel* of Sopârâ to take special care of the stone, but that within the last five or six years the stone has disappeared. Much inquiry has since been made at Sopârâ, but no trace of this stone has been found. This stone may have had part of the Aṣoka edicts, but it is also possible that a minute examination of the Musalmân and Christian buildings in the neighbourhood may bring to light some more fragments.

set of edicts. The fragment found seems to show that the edicts were engraved on the large blocks of basalt which are common in the neighbourhood of Sopârâ, and that the blocks were built together like a wall or a face of rock. In time the blocks must have got separated, and then have been broken by the people for their petty wants, or have been used by Musalmân or Christian builders.

The fragment preserved is the lower left hand corner of the eighth edict. A narrow strip of the face of the stone on the extreme left has been broken off and has carried with it the first letters of three lines. All that remains are the beginnings of six lines. On filling in the missing letters of these six lines from the edicts as found at Girnâr, Kâlsi, Kapuredi-gâdi, Dhauli, and Jaugadâ, each line when entire seems to have contained from fifteen to twenty letters. From this it would seem that three four top lines have been lost, and that the original edict consisted of nine or ten lines. In the seventh line six letters seem to have been omitted at the first engraving, and to have been entered by the engraver in smaller size above the line. The form of the letters and the language of the inscription resemble the Girnâr edict. As at Girnâr the letter ζ is used instead of the π of the Kâlsi, Dhauli, and Jaugadâ edicts.

To show what is missing in this fragment I give the transcripts of the edict from Girnâr, Kâlsi, Kapuredi-gadi, Dhauli, and Jaugadâ, the last from a photograph kindly sent me by General Cunningham, the others as taken by myself from the originals. The numbers show the lines of the original inscriptions.



VIII. *Edict of Asoka—Sanskrit.*

I would offer the following translation of this edict:—

“For long, kings have started on pleasure tours where were (which consisted of) the chase and other such amusements. For this reason a religious tour was started by the ten-years-installed king Piyadasi (Sk. Priyadarśī), dear to the gods, who had reached true knowledge. In which (tour) this happens: Visiting and making gifts to Brāhmaṇas and to Buddhist monks, visiting old men, making gifts of gold, looking after the land and the people, giving instruction in religion and making inquiries as to (the state of) religion. By such means this (religious tour) becomes a source of great delight in other parts (of the dominions) of king Piyadasi (Sk. Priyadarśī) dear to the gods.”

In support of this translation I would offer the following remarks:—

अतिकारं अन्तरं Sk. अतिकान्तमन्तरं ‘for long,’ ‘a long time since.’ Prof. Kern gives in Sanskrit अतिकान्ते अन्तरे ‘in past times,’ but this is unnecessary as the accusative of अन्तरं is an accusative of time referring to जयासु in the sense of ‘till,’ thus अतिकान्तमन्तरं यावत् विहारयात्रा न्ययासिषुः like तेन बहुदिनं परिचयो कृता.

राजानो—The Kâlsi edict has here देवानं पिया which would show that देवानं पिया was a term commonly used for a king.¹ विहारयात्रा Sk. विहारयात्रा ‘on pleasure tours,’ Kap. has वोहारयात्रा नाम—where the वो is, I think, a mistake of the engraver for वि, the two letters being closely alike, and नाम also in Dhauli which has विहालयातं नाम is redundant, meaning ‘named,’ ‘called.’

जयासु Sk. न्ययासिषुः Kâlsi and Dhauli have निखमिषु and Kap. निकमिषु all of which stand for Sanskrit निरक्षमिषुः, a synonym for न्ययासिषुः in the sense of ‘started,’ ‘went out.’ एत् probably Sansk. अन्. Kap. has अत् which is no doubt अन्. Dhauli, too, appears to have had अत् as the first letter अ is distinct. Kâlsi has हिदा which also must stand for इह in the sense of अन्. The Kachchhi word for ‘here’ is still हिडां.

स्तारिसनी is I think a mistake of the engraver for एतारिसानी. Kâlsi has हेडिसानि for Sansk. ईद्धशानि, a word which much resembles the present Kachchhi word for ‘such’ हेडो. Kap. has सरेशानि and Dhauli परिसानि both for Sansk. ईद्धशानि.

¹ Ind. Ant., X. 108.

अतु स्क. अभवन्. Kālsi has हुस्, which is the same the अ being dropped. Kap. has अभव् but Dhauli हुवंति for Sansk. भवति in the present tense, which would seem to show that pleasure tours were still in vogue at the time Priyadarśī wrote. After हुवंति Dhauli and Jaugadā have न्, which I think an expletive.

सो Sk. तत् Kālsi and Dhauli omit सो, but Kap. has स, and Jaugadā से both for तत्. तत् is used here in the sense of तस्मात् कारणात् 'for that reason' or 'therefore.' The meaning is that because the pleasure tours of former kings, which principally consisted of the chase and other such amusements, were a source of annoyance to the people, and caused loss of animal life, for that reason king Priyadarśī started a religious tour.

अयाय Sk. अयायि in the sense of 'was started.' Kālsi and Sopārā have instead निष्क्रमिथा which appears to stand for Sanskrit निष्क्रामिता. Kap. has निकामि and Dhauli निष्क्रामि for Sansk. निरक्रामि. Girnār is the only edict which has अयायि which on the analogy of निष्क्रमिता and निरक्रामि must be taken with धर्मयाता and not with संबोधि as Messrs. Kern and Senart have done reading एषि for ऐ, though none of the five has an Anusvāra. I must therefore read संबोधितैन in the sense of 'by one who has reached true knowledge.' I especially differ from these two great scholars in this point, as the निष्क्रमिथा of Kālsi and Sopārā, the निकामि of Kap. and निष्क्रमि of Dhauli which are used for अयाय of Girnār mean 'started' or 'was started' and go with धर्मयाता and not with संबोधि assuming there was an Anusvāra. Another difficulty if संबोधि is adopted and इयायि or निष्क्रमिता taken with it, is that धर्मयाता has no verb. The 'behold' of M. Senart and 'began' of Prof. Kern are mere additions, there being nothing in the original for which they stand. The only difficulty I feel is about दशवर्णाभिषिक्तः सन् in the nominative case, where, according to my reading of the passage, the Sanskrit idiom would require दशवर्णभिषिक्तेन सता. This must have been a Prākrit idiom.

थेरान् Sansk. स्थविराणां may mean 'of old men' or 'of the Theras' (Seniors). That the former meaning is intended, appears from बुद्धान् in Kap. and Sopārā, वटान् in Dhauli and Jaugadā, and विधान् in Kālsi, all of which stand for बृहतानां; and we know that Aśoka several times inculcates respect to old men in his edicts. हिरनपटिविधान Sk. हिरण्यपतिविधान means 'gifts of gold.' It seems here to have some technical ritualistic meaning.

जनपदस च जनस दसर् means looking after the country and the people.

तदोपया is a little difficult. Kâlsi and Kap. have ततोपया. I believe it stands for तदुपायात् 'by such means.'

भूयोरति may mean, 'producing repeated desire' or 'producing great desire.' It is a Bahuvrihi compound attributive to भर्मयाचा and may be dissolved into भूयसी रतिर्घट्यं सा; or it may be an adverb भूयसीरतियथास्पानथा 'so as to produce great pleasure.' Dhauli and Jaugadâ have एते अभिलाषे for एसा भूयोरति where अभिलाषे refers to the collective notion of all that Priyadarshî does in his religious tour.

भागे अत्रे Sk. भागे अन्ये 'in other parts (of his dominions),' that is, other than the part he visits at a particular time.

The sense of the edict is that while the pleasure tours of former kings were disliked by the people on account of the forced labour, the exactions, the loss of animal life, and the general oppression with which they were attended, Priyadarshî's religious tours were so popular that, when he went to one part of his kingdom, the people of other parts considered the place where the king was touring highly fortunate, and longed to see him come to their part of his realm.

II. **Vakâlâ** or **Brahmatekdi**, the second object of antiquarian interest in Sopârâ, is a basalt hillock about a mile southwest of Gâs village; it stretches from north to south, sloping gently westward, and ending towards the east in a steep rocky face. The hillock is thickly overgrown with *karand* (*Carissa Carandas*) bushes, with here and there some brab-palm and *râyan* (*Mimusops Indica*) trees. At the foot of one large *râyan* tree are pieces of the pedestal of a medieval image later than the eleventh century. Brahmatekdi, one of the names of the hill, suggests that the image may have been of Brahmâ. Near this *râyan* tree is a flat level space where Brâhmaṇas are fed in the discharge of vows and during scares caused by the outbreak of epidemic diseases. To the east of the hill is a small pond known as the Vakâlâ pond, from which the name of the hill is popularly derived. To the south-west is an old well called Visrâl which is regarded as holy. At some distance to the west are two large ponds much filled with silt, whose beds are tilled during the hot weather. Further west, covered with brush wood, is Nirmal hill, with a modern temple of Śankarâchârya.

The chief objects of interest found on the Vakālā hill are four inscribed blocks of basalt, the letters much resembling those used in the fragment of the Aśoka edict.¹ The inscriptions are all of the same age, and consist of personal names in the genitive case. (Plate II.)

Inscription I. was found a little to the north of the large *rāyan* tree, on a block of undressed basalt in shape an irregular hexagon, eighteen inches long and eighteen inches high. It lay by the side of several other blocks of basalt, which looked as if they had been arranged in a circle somewhat like a south Indian tomb. The inscribed stone lay to the east of the circle, close to it, and apparently belonging to it. The stone was partly buried, but the inscribed side was exposed. The letters are distinct and well preserved.

Transcript.

सत्रुमर्दनस्

Sanskrit.

सत्रुमर्दनस्य

Translation.

Of Satrumardana.

Note.—Satrumardana is a man's name. It is a name likely to have been used by one of the warrior classes, meaning 'killer of enemies.'

Inscription II. was found on a block of basalt three feet long by two broad, about fifty yards to the west of the former stone. It was half buried and only three letters were at first visible. The letters are distinct, large, and well preserved.

Transcript.

दताय भेष्य.

Sanskrit.

दताया भेष्याः

Translation.

Of Dattā (Sk. Dattā) the daughter of Bhīma.

Note.—From the feminine form of the genitive the word Dattā seems to be the name of a woman.

Inscription III. was cut on a similar undressed block of basalt, about two feet broad, two and a half long and two feet high, which was found in Gās village, in front of the house of a Sāmvedi

¹ The only letter which differs in form from the letters of the Aśoka inscription is व.

Kirastán. Though now lying in Gás village and used as a bathing and washing stone, according to the owner's story, it was brought from Vakálâ hill. The inscription, which consists of three large distinct letters, is of the same age as the two other inscriptions.

Transcript.

बधुय

Sanskrit.

बध्वा:

Translation.

Of Badhu.

Note.—From the feminine form of the genitive the word seems to be a woman's name.

Inscriptions IV. and V. are cut on two sides of an irregular block of basalt, about a foot and a half across and a foot and a half high, which lies in Gás village, in front of the dwelling of Báb Náik, a Sámvedi Brâhmaṇa. The owner of the house states that this stone was brought from the old pond at the eastern base of Vakálâ hill.

Transcript.

कोडस कलवाडस

Sanskrit.

कोद्दस्य कलवाडस्य

Translation.

Of Kalavâda, a Kotta.

Note.—Koda (Sk. Kotta) is I believe a tribal name, and Kalavâda the name of a man. About the time of this inscription the Koda tribe seems to have been widely spread over India. A coin, which I brought from Sâhâranpore for the late Dr. Bhâu Dâji, has *Kâdasa* engraved on both sides in letters much resembling the letters of this inscription. (Plate II., fig. 10.) At the end of the second century after Christ a Kotta king was reigning in Upper India. Skandagupta's inscription on the Allâhâbâd pillar states that he punished the scion of a Kotta family in Pâtaliputra.¹ This would show that the Kottas were ruling in India for nearly 300 years.

Inscription V. is cut on the other side of the same stone as Inscription IV. The letters are worn and somewhat dim.

¹ This verse has not hitherto been properly rendered. It reads दृष्टेयोह्य-तेव कोद्दकुलजं पुश्पाव्यये क्रीडता, that is '(by whom)' while playing in Pushpâ-vhaya, '(Pâtaliputra) the scion of the Kotta family was, as it were, punished.'

Transcript.

उग्रदेवय

Sanskrit.

उग्रदेवाया:

Translation.

Of Ugradevā.

Note.—From the feminine form of the genitive the word seems to be a woman's name. I cannot account for these two inscriptions being cut on the same stone except by supposing that the inscription originally cut became useless and was slightly defaced, and a second inscription cut on the other side.

The fact that five inscriptions, three of them bearing the names of women, and two of them bearing the names of men, all in the genitive case, have been found in the Vakālā hill calls for explanation. As noticed above, Inscription I. is cut on a stone which lay close to a circle of undressed blocks of basalt, and apparently belonged to it. This seems to show that the circle is connected with Śatrumardana, whose name is carved on the stone in the genitive case, and that in the same way the other inscribed stones originally belonged to other circles. Though the meaning of these circles of undressed stones is not certain they seem to be memorial circles, probably tombs. One of them was opened but yielded nothing except some enamelled pieces of earthenware. Two other circles on the hill top were also opened, but after digging two feet below the surface, the work was stopped, as the ground was a mass of large blocks of stone which seemed never to have been moved.

These circles may have been empty memorial tombs, or the contents may have been close to the surface and taken away. It is also possible that the contents may be below the level to which the digging was carried. In any case, the circles seem to be tombs. As Inscription IV. gives the tribal name, they were perhaps Koda tombs, and from the form of the letters I think they are of the second century before Christ.

Vakālātekdi, the present name of the hill, looks as though it was originally Vakulatekdi, or the hillock of the *rakula* tree (*Mimusops elenghi*). The Buddhist legend of Punna (Sk. Purna), translated by the late M. Burnouf, notices that, on his way to Sopārā, Gautama went to a place, apparently near Sopārā, where five hundred widows lived. He preached the law and converted them to Buddhism. In answer to their prayer, Gautama gave the widows

some of his hair and nails. The widows built a *stūpa* over the relics, and the presiding goddess of Jetavana, who had come with Gautama, planted a branch of the *rakula* tree near the *stūpa*, and, from this, besides as 'The Widows' *Stūpa*,' it came to be known as 'The Vakula *Stūpa*.' May there not be some connection between this Vakula *stūpa* and the Vakālā hill? I did not find near or on the hill any vestige of a *stūpa*. But it is worthy of note that of the five Vakālā inscriptions, three give the names of women. All are in the genitive case with some word understood. I have taken the unexpressed word to be "tomb"; but it is possible that the inscriptions relate to the *stūpa*, and that the unexpressed word is "gift," each stone marking the gift of the woman (perhaps one of the widows of the legend) whose name it bears.

III. Buruda Rajacha Kota.—Buruda Rājācha Kota, or the Basket-Making King's Fort, is the name of a large brick mound about half a mile west of modern Sopārā, on the east border of Mardeś village. According to a local story, Sopārā had once a Buruda king, who lived with his wife on this relic mound. He was a kindly king and lived a most simple life. He levied no taxes, and met his expenses from the sale of bamboo baskets which he made with his own hands. His wife was a *sati* and lived an equally simple life. If ever she wore ornaments they were of bamboo chips, or palm leaves. She used to fetch water on her own head, and her chastity and goodness enabled her to walk on the water and fill her jar from the centre of the Chakrāla lake, where the water was undisturbed. The village women, well dressed and with rich ornaments, upbraided the simple queen for her bamboo and leaf ornaments, telling her that such ornaments were unworthy of a queen, and that she should wear rich jewels and pearls. The queen asked her husband to give her ornaments like those worn by other women. The king said 'Of what use are jewels?' But the queen persisted, and he levied a betulnut from every house and gave her ornaments of betel.¹ Wearing them she went as usual to fetch water, but the unrighteous-

¹ Beads, with delicate ornamental lines and like betelnuts in shape, are found in the neighbourhood of Sopārā, and are called by the people the Buruda queen's ornaments. The story goes that these beads were once of betel and are now of stone. They appear to be clay ornaments which were formerly used by the people. (See Plate II., fig 8.)

ness of which she had been guilty in obliging her husband to levy a tax on the people weighed her down, and as she found she could not walk on the water she filled her jar at the muddy shore. The king asked why the water was muddy, and she told him that she had sunk when she tried to walk on the water and had filled her jar at the side of the lake. The king stopped the levy of the betel tax, seeing that this was the result of his wife's forsaking her simple mode of life.

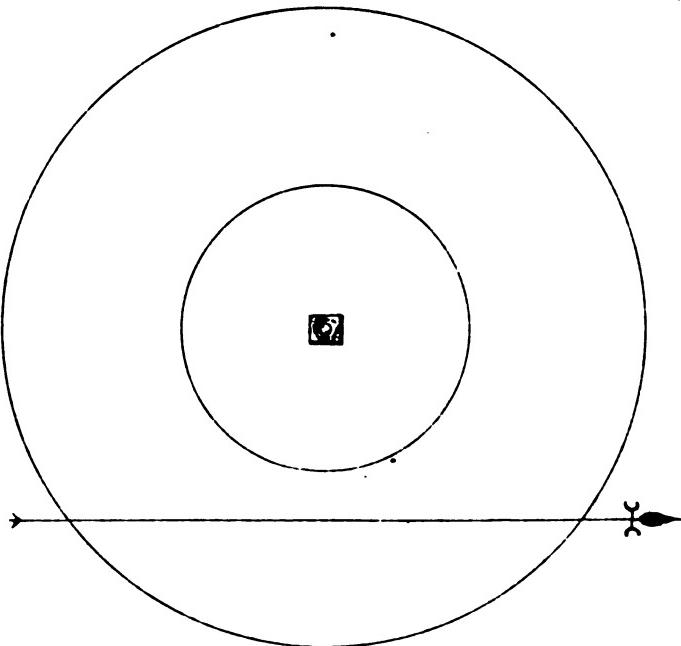
It is said that his subjects once went to this simple king to reason with him because he had no army. The righteous king patiently replied that God was his protector. Some of his people dissatisfied with his answer banded together and came against the city as if about to attack it. The king was told that an invading army was advancing against the city. Without a sign of anger he clept with his knife some bamboos that were lying before him, and at that instant the band of his pretended enemies perished. The origin of this Buruda king's story may perhaps be the likeness in sound between the Prâkrit सुप्पारअ, a winnowing basket maker or Buruda (Sk. शूपकारक) and सुप्पारअ the old name of Sopârâ.

The Buruda Râjâ's fort is a large dome-topped mound in a rectangular enclosure, surrounded by a ruined wall, and about ten feet above the level of the road. Its original shape was a round plinth, from the centre of which with a terrace eighteen feet broad, rose a dome half a circle or nearly three-quarters of a circle in shape. Most of the dome has fallen and hidden the plinth, while portions of both the plinth and the dome lie scattered on the ground. The whole appears like a small conical heap on a large mound of clay and brick. The height of the tope is about thirty-one feet and the diameter sixty-seven feet. The outline of the plinth is well preserved on the east, and gives a fair idea of its original form. On the east of the terrace is the grave of one Ramján Khán, a *fakir* who lived on the tope, and who has a fragment of a Hindu temple as a head-stone. Karanj bushes and other trees have grown on the mound. The people say that till within the last fifty years the land round the tope was a thick wood, and that it was cleared and turned into a garden by a Pathân *fakir* named Shaikh Amir, who planted the jack, mango, and cocoanut trees with which the tope is now surrounded. This Shaikh Amir was much respected for his supposed knowledge of alchemy and magic, and lived in a hut on the top of the plinth

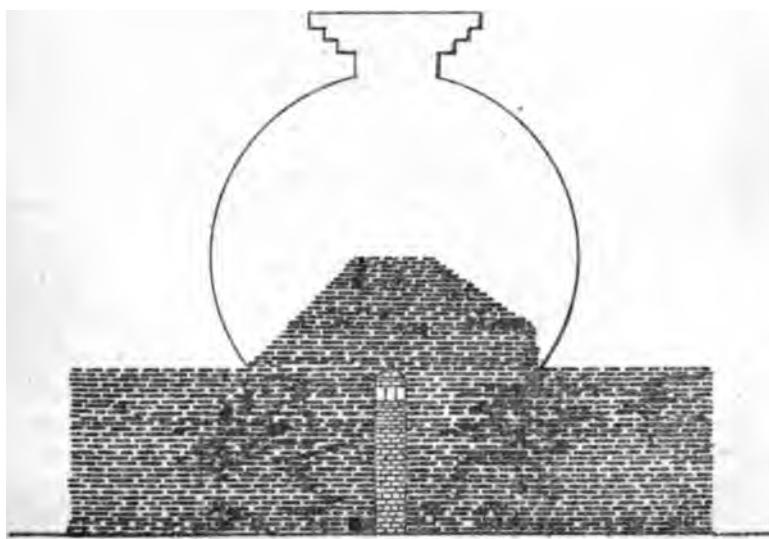
near where Ramjân Khân's grave now stands. He dug into the dome a pit about six feet deep, and large enough to hold four men whom he employed to rob for him at night, and whose plunder he kept in the pit. After a time the robbers were traced to the mound, the stolen property recovered, and Shaikh Amir transported. After him the place was occupied by his disciple, Ramjân Khân, whose grave now stands on the top of the plinth. The tope and the surrounding piece of land is at present in the possession of the Musal-mân community of Sopârâ.

In opening the tope we fixed its centre and made a cutting as nearly east and west as Ramjân Khân's grave would allow. Digging was begun from the top. In the first six feet were found a pair of scissors, a two-anna piece of 1841, Šîvrâi pice, fragments of glass bottles and porcelain, and bones of sheep, all of them traces of Shaikh Amir's plunder. About eight feet were dug on the first day and four more on the second. On the morning of the third day (9th April 1882), at about eight or nine o'clock, in the centre of the dome, a little below the level of its base, the beginning of a built brick chamber was found. The chamber looked like a hollow brick pillar, three feet square, with a pyramidal top, the direction of the walls corresponding with the cardinal points of the compass. Within the chamber, under about two feet of soft moist clay, was found a large circular stone coffer kept in its place by eight large bricks. On the top three large bricks were laid side by side, and below the coffer were some black spots as if the ground had been strewn with scented powder, before the coffer was laid in its place. Under the coffer were about four inches of soft clay, and then layer of bricks set in clay. These layers of bricks were dug out of the chamber to the depth of about thirteen feet, when the layers of loose bricks ceased. While taking out these bricks a frog was found in a small hollow in the clay about four feet below the coffer. It is of a different species from ordinary frogs. It is about an inch and a half long and has a reddish stripe down the back. The sides are dark green, the chest white, and the arms and legs are dark speckled with white spots. A brick coloured stripe passes over the eyes to the sides. The mouth was closed, and the seam of the closed part was of a sulphur colour. The throat throbbed violently. I believe it closely resembles a variety found in some of the old Kanheri cave cisterns.¹

¹ The frog is at present in the Victoria and Albert Museum at Byculla.



Ground Plan.



Section through centre.

(3)



About thirteen feet from the top, the base of the pillar was found to be laid with large baked bricks, which were fastened with cement to the bricks of the pillar walls. Further digging was stopped, as there was little time at our disposal, and because we were anxious not to spoil the relic chamber by removing its sides. It is possible that further digging may bring to light some more remains.

In Nepál the ordinary *Chaityas* made at the present day hold no relics. In these *Chaityas*, three stones, each with nine square holes containing the seven jewels and gold silver and other metals, are laid, one at the base of the mound, a second at the base of the dome, and a third under the top, which is generally called *chulti* or *sikhá*. Any relics which may have been kept in the top of the Sopārā tope have disappeared. The relics that were found were near the level of the base of the dome. The relic chamber began about a foot below the base of the dome, and the coffer was two feet below the beginning of the chamber. It is possible that the seven jewels or some inscription may still be found at the foundation of the tope.

After securing the relic box, the east foundation of the tope was cleared to determine its exact form. The clay and bricks which had fallen from above were removed, but nothing particular was noticed. A brick roughly shaped like an elephant was found, which perhaps stood by the steps which led up the plinth. Some brick moulding was also found, but the short time at our disposal did not allow us to clear the entire face of the plinth. It is possible if the whole side was cleared that some traces of the original shape might be found.

The plinth was about eighteen feet high, 268 feet in circumference, and its terrace was eighteen feet in breadth. The dome is in too ruinous a state to determine its original height. I believe it was about a semicircle of from fifteen to eighteen feet high, or it may be nearly a three-quarters globe, about thirty feet high. On the top of the dome there must have been a tee, perhaps about seven feet high. This would give a total height of about fifty-five feet from the base to the top of the tee. The tee would be crowned with umbrellas and flags. (See Plate III.)

As regards the masonry of the tope, the outermost coating was of smooth bricks well set in carefully-prepared clay. A trace of this outer coating appears in the part of the east wall which was cleared. Inside were layers of brick and clay, the proportion of bricks gra-

name is Abir. It is white in colour, and is mostly used in worship and for throwing about during the Holi holidays. Another almond-coloured scented powder is called Padi in Gujarāti and Ghisi in Hindi. It is laid in small cloth bags or paper covers to scent robes and rich clothes. The Deccan Abir, or Bukkā, which is black in colour, is used in worship and in religious meetings, such as Bhajanas, Kirtanas, and Hardās Kathās, when it is applied to the foreheads of visitors.¹ The powder which the Jainas make is of a pale yellow colour. It is used for worship, for sprinkling on newly-consecrated images, and on disciples when first admitted to holy orders.²

Of the eight images, the chief, facing the west, is Maitreya or the Coming Buddha. His image is about five inches high by three and a half broad. This is larger than the rest, which, with slight variations, measure about three and a half inches by two and a half. All the figures are seated on flat raised platforms, and over each is a horse-shoe arch or canopy. The chief figure, or Maitreya Bodhisattva, differs greatly from the rest, whose general character is much alike. His pedestal is higher, and it is square instead of oval; his right foot hangs over the edge of the pedestal; he wears ornaments, and has a rich conical crown or tiara; his crown is surrounded by a horse-shoe aureole, and his canopy is plain. All the other figures are seated in the usual stiff cross-legged position, wearing a

¹ The white Abir is made from the following ingredients: the root of the Andropogon muricatus, *vālo*, the tuber of the Hedychium spicatum, *kapurakāchali*, the wood of the Santalum album, *chandana*, and arrowroot or the flour of cleared Sorghum vulgare. Besides *vālo*, *kapurakāchali* and *chandana*, Padi or Ghisi is prepared from the seeds of the Cerasus mahaleb, *ghaunla*, the leaves and stem of the Artemisia indica, *davño*, the wood of the Pinus deodora, *deradára*, the tuber of the Curcuma zerumbet, *kachuro*, the dried flower bud of the Caryophyllus aromaticus, *laringa*, and the fruit of the Elettaria cardamomum, *elchi*. The Deccan variety of Abir is made of the following three ingredients in addition to those used in preparing Padi: the wood of the Alocyllum agallochum, *agara*, the root of the Aucklandia costus, *kuth*, the root of the Nardostachys Jatamansi, *jatūmāsi*, the half liquid balsam of the Liquidamber orientale, *selārasa*, and charcoal.

² The Jain scented powder Vásakhepa, or more properly Vásakshepa, is made of sandalwood, saffron, musk, and Dryobalanops aromatica, *bhimseni barása*. The last two ingredients are taken in very small quantities and mixed with saffron and water. They are rubbed on a stone slab by a large piece of sandalwood, and a ball is prepared. This ball is dried, powdered, and kept in silk bags which are specially made for holding it.

waistcloth, and with an upper robe drawn over the left shoulder. The expression of all is calm and unmoved, the hair looks as if close curled with a knob on the crown, and the ears are heavy and long. The hands are arranged in different positions, two of the positions being repeated. Each figure represents a different Buddha, the plume of leaves that crowns the canopy showing which of the Buddhas each image represents. All are copper castings, well-proportioned and clearly and gracefully formed. The ears, though large and heavy-lobed, are not so unshapen or ugly as those of later images. And the leaves of the different *bodhi* trees, which crown the canopies of the different Buddhas, are formed with extreme care and accuracy.

Maitreya Bodhisattva, or the Coming Buddha, the chief and largest image, is placed facing the west, because, on gaining Buddhahood, he will pass through the great eastern gateway, open the reli-chamber, and, from the gold casket, take out the fragments of Śākyamuni's bowl. Maitreya is represented as a Bodhisattva or Coming Buddha, not as a Buddha. He is seated on a high pedestal. His right leg is half-drawn across, the foot hanging down, the toe resting on a lotus. The left leg is doubled right across, the heel drawn back close to the body, and the sole half turned up. The right arm is stretched forward, the back of the open hand resting on the right knee in what is known as the Giving Position, or *Varamudrā*. The left hand, which is raised a little above the elbow, holds, with much grace, a branch which ends above in three flower heads. He wears a rich conical crown or tiara, and round the crown a detached aureole in shape like a horse-shoe. He wears earrings, two necklaces, a sacred thread, armlets, bracelets, and anklets. Round the waist is a band as if of thick string, and round the hips and hanging in front is a fringed belt. Over his head rises a horse-shoe arch or canopy, with about half-way up a cross-bar or back-rest. (Plate V.)

To the left, facing south-west, is Śākyamuni, the last or seventh Buddha. He sits, as he sat when he gained perfect knowledge; his left hand is laid in his lap with up-turned palm, his right arm stretched in front, the palm laid on the right knee, and the finger-tips resting on the pedestal, in the Earth-Touching Position, or *Bhūsparshamudrā*. From the centre of the arched canopy above him rise three sprigs of the peak-leaved *pipala*, *Ficus religiosa*, Śākyamuni's *Bodhi* Tree. (Plate VI.)





Sákyamuni.

. (

mulrā, or Teaching Position, both raised to the chest, the tip of the left little finger caught between the points of the right thumb and first finger. Over his head hangs a bunch of *pipala*, *Ficus religiosa*, leaves representing the tree under which he is sitting. On Gautama's right is Kāsyapa, dusky yellow in hue, with a dark grey robe covering both shoulders like a coat. His hands are in the *Dhyānamulrā*, or Meditating Position, both laid in the lap, with upturned palms, the right hand above. His tree is an *ulambara*, *Ficus glomerata*, with faded fruit. On Kāsyapa's right is Kanaka, umber brown, with a white robe drawn over the left shoulder, leaving the right shoulder bare. His hands are in the *Abhayamudrā*, or Blessing Position, the right hand raised to the right shoulder, the palm open and held slightly forward: the left hand in the lap open and with upturned palm. His tree looks like a banyan, but it has no air-roots, and may be a *pakhādi* or *pipri*, *Ficus infectoria*. On Kanaka's right is Krakuchchhanda who, like Kāsyapa (No. 3), is shown in the Meditating Position. He is black with a white robe, which rises to the neck, covering both shoulders. His tree is the *pātuli*, *Bignonia snaveolens*. On Krakuchchhanda's right is Viṣvabhū, black in hue, with a white robe drawn over his left shoulder. He sits like Kanaka (No. 4) in the Blessing Position. Over his head is a bunch of long deep green leaves, perhaps of the *asoka*, *Jonesia asoka*, but they are difficult to identify. On Viṣvabhū's right is a damaged figure of Śikhī, black, with a light coloured robe that fastens round the neck, covering both shoulders. Like Kāsyapa (No. 3) and Krakuchchhanda (No 5) his hands are in the Meditating Position. His tree has disappeared. On Śikhī's right is Vipasyī, black, with a white robe drawn across the left shoulder. Like Śākyamuni (No. 2) his hands are in the Teaching Position. Above his head hangs a bunch of *sāla* leaves, *Shorea robusta*, representing a portion of the tree under which he is sitting. (Plates XVII.-XVIII.)

In the copper casket were enclosed, one within the other, four caskets, of silver, of stone, of crystal, and of gold. The copper casket is about six inches high, one-half of it body and the other half lid. The body is cup-shaped with a flat base. The lid is slightly conical, and has two circles of hollow moulding about an inch and a half apart. At the back and at the front of the lid is a copper ring, and at the back and at the front of the body is a pair of similar copper rings. When the lid is shut, the three rings in front and the three rings behind come into a straight line. At the back a copper





In the middle of the fourth string comes a white and purple amethyst cut in the form of a Buddhist trident, about $\frac{1}{8}$ " broad by a little more in length. On either side of the trident come two pairs of six-sided beryl beads. Next on the left comes a carbuncle, and on the right a small bead of dark red glass. Last comes on the right an irregular six-sided amethyst and on the left a flat round crystal.

In the copper casket, among the stones, gold flowers, and scented powder, was a well-preserved unworn silver coin. It weighs thirty-four grains. On the obverse is a well made male head looking to the right. The head-dress consists of a strap with a bunch of pearls on the forehead ; and from the temple locks of combed hair fall over the strap. Behind the head hangs a string knotted at the end, probably a braided lock of hair ; from the ear hangs a three-ringed ornament, one ring below another, falling to the neck. The beard and moustache are shaved, and the face looks about forty years of age. Round the face is a legend in ancient Nágari characters, much like the character used in Násik and Kanheri Cave inscriptions of the first and second centuries after Christ. The legend reads :—

सिरियज्ञातकनिस रजो गोतमिपुतस्

Sanskrit.

भीयज्ञशातकर्णे राजो गोतमीपुतस्य

Translation.

'Of the illustrious Yajna Śátakarṇi, the king Gotamiputra.'

Yajnasrī's title, as given in the Násik and Kanheri cave inscriptions, is रजो गोतमिपुतस् सिरि यज्ञातकनिस, that is, 'Of king Gotamiputra, the illustrious Yajna Śátakarṇi.' The legend should, therefore, be read first from above the head down as far as the mouth, and again from the back of the neck to the middle of the head. This would read as in Plate II., fig. 6. The reverse has, in the middle, a pyramidal symbol with three tiers of circles, the lowest tier of three circles, the middle of two, and the highest of one, with a larger circle on the top. To the left is the usual Śátakarṇi and Ujjain coin-symbol, of four circles joined by two cross lines. Above these two symbols are the sun with rays and a crescent moon, and below them is a waving serpent-like line. Round the symbols is the legend in characters exactly the same as on the obverse, and round the legend is a dot-

ted circle. The impression on this side is imperfect, as the coin seems to have slipped while it was being stamped. Six letters of the legend are only partly shown. The letters that appear entire are गोतभिपुतकुमारु यत्रसातकनि. Of these the मा of कुमारु and सा of सातकनि look like रा ; both of these, I believe, are mistakes due to the engraver's ignorance of the character. Of the six letters, of which only the lower parts appear, the sixth is evidently स and from their lower parts I believe that the other letters are च, तु, र, प, न, together forming the word चतुरपन. (Plate II., fig. 7.)

In the absence of another specimen of this coin with the legend entire, the legend on the reverse may be read :—

चतुरपनस गोतभिपुतकुमारु यत्रसातकनि

Note.—The lower part of च appears; then there is a long stroke, probably तु; then another stroke, probably र; the lower parts of प and न are fairly distinct.

Translation.

Yajna Śātakarṇi, son of Gotamī, prince of Chaturapana.

Note.—Chaturapana is, I believe, the name of Yajnasrī's father. As the coin is struck in imitation of the Kshatrapa coins, which give the name of the father, and as the Śātakarnis were always called after their mothers, care has been taken to give the names both of Yajnasrī's father and of his mother.

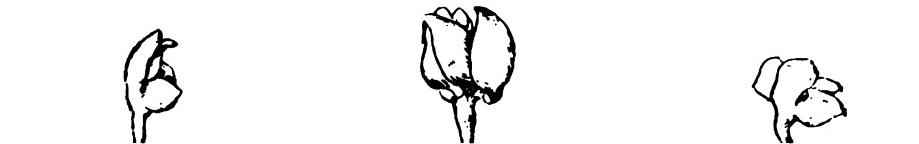
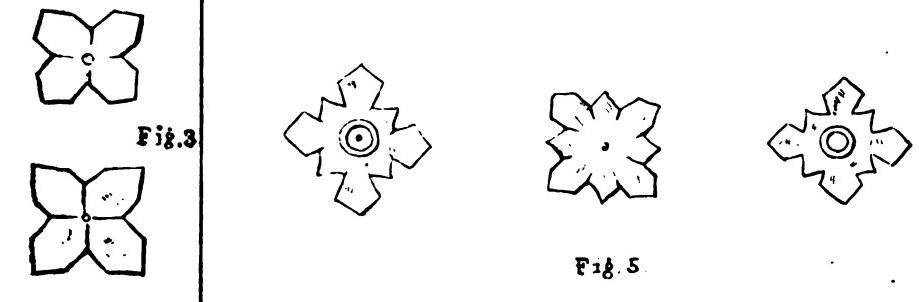
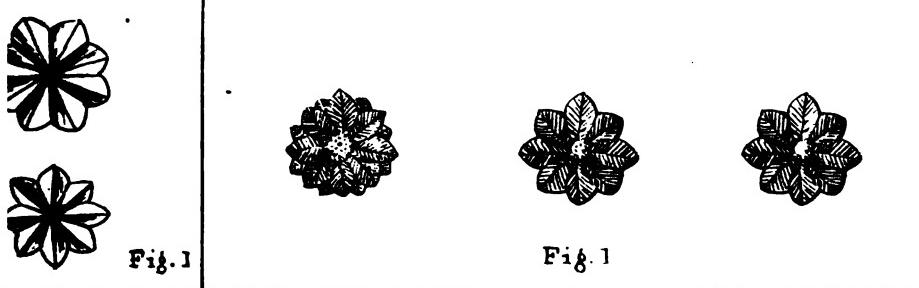
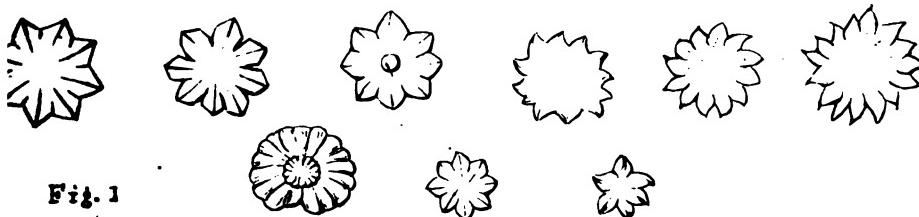
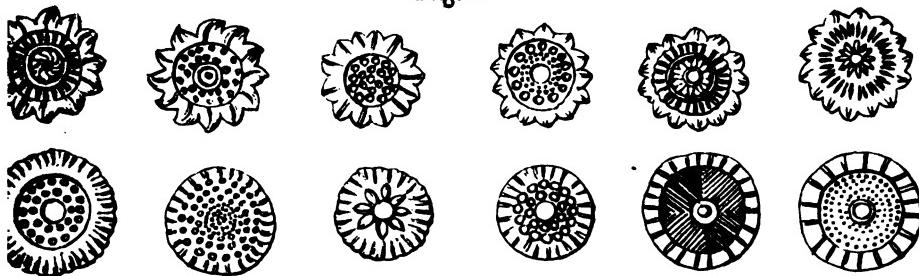
The workmanship of the coin is good. The style is copied from the coins of the Kshatrapas, the difference being in the bare head, the side locks, the bunch of pearls, and the hanging braid of hair of the Śātakarṇi king.

The silver casket, which was inside of the copper casket, is about six inches high, with a diameter in the middle of $4\frac{1}{4}$ inches. It is in two parts, body and lid, the body $2\frac{5}{8}$ and the lid three inches in height. The body stands on a rim about half an inch high, and rises bowl-like till, near the lip, it is cut into a round groove about a quarter of an inch deep. The lid fits in this groove, and is shaped like an inverted bowl. It rises in three tiers. The top of the third tier, which is flat and about an inch and a half across, ends in the middle in a pointed boss about one and a quarter inches high. The casket is made of pure silver, and weighs 7 oz. 29 grains. (Plate XIII., fig. 3.)

In the space between the silver casket and the stone casket, were eighty-six gold flowers of 900 touch and weighing 188 grains. They are of eight different kinds, thirty-seven are plain round

flat

Fig. 2.



nothing but gold flowers, for gold is the richest and most meritorious offering. While the images of the gods are carried in procession, or while the wealthy or saintly dead are borne to the burning ground, it is still the practice to scatter gold flowers mixed with real flowers, and to leave the gold flowers to be picked up by the poor. Again, on festive, religious, and other great occasions, when a ruler seated on an elephant passes in state through his capital, persons sit behind him and throw over his head gold or silver flowers to be scrambled for by the people. So also when a vow has been made to present a god with a particular kind of flower for a certain number of days, on the last day of the vow, instead of real flowers, flowers of gold are presented, as gold is the richest of offerings. The flowers in the Sopârâ caskets were placed there as offerings to the relics. How did it come that flowers were laid in all the caskets except in the stone casket? The ceremonial observed in laying the relics in their place seems to have been this. Flowers were dropped over the pieces of earthenware and the golden casket was closed; flowers were dropped over the golden casket and the crystal casket was closed. When the crystal casket was closed flowers were strewn over it, but they had to be taken out as it was found that the stone casket fits the crystal casket too tightly to leave room for flowers. Again, when the stone casket was closed flowers were dropped into the silver casket, and when the silver casket was laid in the copper casket gold flowers were again strewn. The number in the copper casket was specially large, as it included the flowers for which there was no room in the stone casket. In the copper casket besides the gold flowers there were the thirteen undrilled and thirty-one drilled stones, the sweet-scented powder, the gold image of Buddha, the inch or two of silver wire, and the patch of gold leaf and the coin. All of these were offerings to the pieces of earthenware. The seven kinds of undrilled stones represented, as has been noticed, an offering of seven jewels, and the drilled-stones probably represented the offering of a necklace; the sweet-scented powder was an offering of incense; the silver wire and the gold leaf were offerings of metal; and the coin was an offering of money.

Remarks.

The objects of worship in whose honour the *stûpa* was raised are beyond doubt the tiny pieces of earthenware. That so large

a structure should have been raised to preserve so tiny and so few fragments of clay seems to me to prove that the builders of the relic mound believed them to be pieces of the begging bowl of the world-honoured Gautama Buddha.

That the builders of the *stūpa* believed these pieces of earthenware to be fragments of Gautama's begging bowl is further proved by the circle of Buddhas that surround the copper casket. The meaning of the circle of Buddhas is that Maitreya, the Coming Buddha, has come, has entered the relic mound, and asks from Gautama his begging bowl in token that Gautama admits his claim to be Buddha. The other Buddhas are present because it is the belief that Gautama's bowl had been passed from one Buddha to another as a symbol of the office of Buddha.

The past and the future history of Gautama's bowl were told by an Indian Buddhist to the Chinese pilgrim Fah-Hian in the beginning of the fifth century. The Indian's account was that Buddha's bowl was first at Vaisālī, the modern Vashāda or Besārh, about twenty-five miles north-east of Patnā. In Fah-Hian's time (A. D. 410) it was on the borders of Gāndhāra in the Peshāwara relic mound. In about a hundred years the bowl would go beyond the Oxus to the country of the western Yuechi. After a hundred years with the Yuechi it would pass (600) to Khoten east of Yarkanda. The eighth century would find it at Koutche to the north of Khoten. In the ninth century it would be in China. In the tenth century it would pass to Ceylon, and in the eleventh century to Mid-India. It would then go to the paradise of Maitreya or the Coming Buddha in Tusita. Maitreya would say, with a sigh, 'Gautama's bowl is come.' After seven days' worship the bowl would go back to India, and a sea dragon would take it to his palace and keep it till Maitreya was about to become Buddha. It would then divide into four and return to the four rulers of the Air from whom it originally came. When Maitreya became Buddha the four kings of the Air would present him with the bowl. All future Buddhas would use it, and when the bowl disappeared the law of Buddha would perish.¹

It is well known that Gautama's bowl was held in great reverence by Buddhists. The bowl is the first object of worship in Nepāla on the four gift days, *yugāditithis*. The Khatmandu bowl is of silver and shaped like a somewhat rounded U.

¹ Beal's Fah Hian, 36—38, 161—163.

It is about a foot in diameter and seven inches deep. Several sitting images of Buddha at Buddha Gayā hold short round bowls, narrow at the mouth, much like the copper bowls given to Nepāla Bhikshus at the time of initiation, *dīkshā*. In Ajanta Cave XVII. (scene 32), a painting of the fifth or sixth century, represents Gautama holding a bowl, and his wife Yaśodharā pushing forward their son Rāhula to give Gautama alms.¹ Fah Hian found a stone bowl held in great respect in Peshāwara, and there are four other famous bowls in Ceylon, in China, in Kandahar, and in Ladak. All of these, except the Ladak bowl, are of stone, and most of them are whole bowls and of a very large size. The proper begging bowl of the Buddhist monk was either of iron or of clay. This and the fact that, as early as the second century after Christ, so few and such small fragments were deemed worthy of so grand a resting place, give the Sopārā relics a better claim than any of their rivals to represent the begging bowl of Gautama Buddha.

As no inscription accompanied the relics, nothing can be said as to the builder of the *stūpa*. As to the date when the *stūpa* was built its shape is too ruined to let us say anything positive about it. What appears is a high circular plinth, from which rises part of a dome, a shape which might resemble *stūpas* of the Sānchi period (B. C. 250-150), which consist of a circular plinth surmounted by a semi-circular dome ; but the quantity of brick and earth which covers the sides of the plinth leads me to think that the dome was larger, probably a three-quarter circle, akin in shape to the *dāghobás* found in Western India caves of Yajnaśri's time, the difference being in the greater breadth of terrace in the Sopārā *stūpa*, a feature which seems to have been narrowed in the cave *dāghobás* from want of space. If no relics had been found, the form of the structure and the large bricks used in the building would have led me to assign the *stūpa* to an earlier period. But the fact that no coins except one of Yajnaśri's, was found among the relics, makes it probable that the *stūpa* belongs to his time. The coin is so fresh and well-preserved that it seems to be an unused specimen which was placed in the relic box as an example of the current coin of the time. Yajnaśri's date has not been fixed. Three inscriptions belonging to Yajnaśri's reign occur in Western India caves, one at Násik and two at Kanheri. The Násik

¹ See Frontispiece. Compare the bowls in Fergusson and Burgess' *Cave Temples*, woodcuts Nos. 54 and 59.

inscription No. 4 in Cave VIII. is dated the 7th year of **Yajnaśrī**.
It reads :—

रञ्जो गोतमिपुतस सामिसिरियज्ञसतकणिस सवळरे
सातमे ७ हेमताण पखे ततिये १ दिवसे पधमे

Translation.

On the first day of the third fortnight of the winter months, in the seventh year of the illustrious King, Lord Yajnaśātakarnī, son of Gotami.

In a second inscription in the great Cathedral Cave III. at Kanheri, the year is lost. The inscription reads :—

रञ्जो गोतमि - - - - -
सातकणिस स - - - - - [गि]
द्यु पखे पंचमे

Translation.

Of King Gotami - - - - -
Of Sātakani, year - - - - -
Fifth fortnight of summer.

The third inscription in Kanheri Cave LXXXI. is dated in the sixteenth year of Yajnaśrī. It reads :—

रञ्जो गोतमिपुतस सामिसिरियज्ञसतकणिस सवळरे १६ गिम्हान पखे १ दिवस ६

Translation.

On the fifth day of the first fortnight of summer in the sixteenth year of the illustrious king lord Yañasātakani, son of Gotami.

The form of the letters and the architecture of the caves in which these inscriptions occur leave no doubt that Yajnaśrī is a later king than Pulumāyi Vāsishthīputra. As to Pulumāyi's date, it is now becoming admitted by scholars that the Tiastanos of Ozene and the Siri Polemaios of Bathana, mentioned by Ptolemy in his Geography, are Chashtana of Ujjuiin, the founder of the Ujjain Kshatrapa dynasty and Śrī Pulumāyi Vāsishthīputra of Paithan of the Śātakarnī dynasty, and that, therefore, these were two contemporary or nearly contemporary kings. Admitting that Ptolemy took many years to collect the materials for his great work, the date of these two kings cannot well be placed at more than twenty-five years before Ptolemy. Ptolemy made astronomical observations in Alexandria in A. D. 139, and he survived Antoninus, that is, he was alive in A. D. 161. Taking the date of Ptolemy's manhood at between A. D. 139 and A. D. 160, the two Indian kings whom he mentions may be placed some years earlier. The dates on Kshatrapa

coins, which continue through a term of 300 years, almost certainly belong to one of the two eras, Saṁvat or Śaka. Assuming the Kshatrapa era to be Saṁvat, that is b.c. 56, Chashtana's date, whose year is about fifty, would be about b. c. 6, that is, 144 years before Ptolemy, taking Ptolemy at about A.D. 150. This is improbable, as Ptolemy would not have named, as the ruler of Ujjain, a king who had been dead nearly a hundred and fifty years. On the other hand, as was accepted by the late Dr. Bhāu Dāji and Mr. Justice Newton, take the Śaka era of A.D. 78 as the Kshatrapa era. This brings Chashtana with his fifty years to A.D. 128, from eleven to thirty-two years before Ptolemy, a very reasonable interval. This, then, is Pulumāyi's date, and, as I have said above, there is no doubt that Yajnaśri comes a little later than Pulumāyi. Though it is not settled how many years passed between Pulumāyi and Yajnaśri, the form of the letters used in the inscriptions bearing Yajnaśri's date, seems to show that Yajnaśri was not much later. I incline to think that there was only one king between Pulumāyi and Yajnaśri, and that very probably this king is the Chatarapana who is mentioned in the legend on the reverse of the Sopārā coin as Yajnaśri's father. A new inscription, which I have found above a cistern in the Nānāghāṭ, mentions a king Chaturapana Śātakani, son of Vāsithi. The inscription reads: —

Transcript.

- (1) सिध्ध रणे वस्तिनुतस चतरपनसतकनिस
- (2) सवठर तर १५ हेमतपख पचमे दिवसे १०
- (3) कमवनस गहपतस दमघसस देयधम
- (4) पनियपुवा देयधम सतगरपवते एथ *

* L. 1 वस्ति is evidently a mistake of the engraver for वासिति. As the upper stroke of व in चतरपन is a little curved, the name may be also read चतरफन. Anyhow it is a corruption of the Sanskrit name Chatushparna or Chitraparna.

L. 2 तर is an abbreviation for तेरसे. For हेमतपख read हेमतपखे.

L. 3 For कमवनस read कामवनस. For गहपतस read गहपतिस. For दमघसस read दमघोसस.

The fourth line has सतगरपवते एथ, which would seem to show that the name of the Nānāghāṭ mountain was Satagara (Sk. Saptagiri). But there can be another reading of the fourth line पनियपुवा देयधम इ स तगरपवते एथ. According to the Sandhi rules in Prākrit an अ is often dropped without making any change in the previous letter, thus the Sanskrit of this line would be पानीयप्रया देयधमास्य तगरपवते अश्च that is, a water cistern here in the Tagara mountain, a meritorious gift of his (Damaghosha). This would support my previous identification of Tagara with Junnar (Journal B. B. R. A. S., XIII.), as the Nānāghāṭ is the direct pass between Junnar (Tagara) and the coast.

Sanskrit.

- (1) सिर्वं राशो वासिनीपुत्रस्य चतुष्पर्णज्ञातकर्णः
- (2) संवत्सरस्त्रयोदशः १३ हैमतपक्षे पञ्चमे दिवसे १०
- (3) कामवनस्य गृहपतेर्दमघोषस्य देयधर्मः
- (4) पानीयप्रपा देयधर्मः सप्तगिरि [° घर्मोस्य नगर?] पर्वते अच

Translation.

To the perfect one. A water cistern the meritorious gift here in Satagara (Sk. Saptagiri or Tagara ?) mountain. The meritorious gift of the householder Damaghosha of Kāmavana on the tenth day of the fifth fortnight of winter (in) the thirteenth (13th) year of king Chatarapana Śātakani (Sk. Śātakarṇi), son of Vasathi (Sk. Vāsishthi).

I believe that the Chatarapana or Chatarphana of this inscription is very probably the Chatarapana of the Sopārā coin. My reasons for this opinion are: (1) the king in the Nānāghāṭ inscription is called Śātakani; (2) his maternal name is Vasathiputa; (3) and the letters of the inscription resemble the letters of the times of Yajnaśrī. The first two points prove him to be a king of the Śātakarṇi dynasty of Paithan; the third point and the words चतरपनकुमाह on the Sopārā coin show him to be the father of Yajnaśrī. Chatarapana's maternal name of Vāsishthiputra, that is Vāsishthi's son, probably shows him to be the younger brother and successor of Pulumāyi Vāsishthiputra. Again, a comparison of the Sopārā coin, with Kshatrapa coins brings out more clearly that Yajnaśrī was a contemporary of the Kshatrapas. As in Kshatrapa coins the head on the obverse of the Sopārā coin looks to the right; while except the peculiar Śātakarṇi symbol of four circles joined by a cross, the reverse shows all the usual Kshatrapa symbols, the dotted circle, the pyramidal symbol with the rayed sun and crescent moon, and the waving line below. I have little doubt that the Sopārā coin was struck on the model of Kshatrapa coins of a type later than Chashtana. Of the later Kshatrapas, Rudradāman's coins are those which the Sopārā coin most resembles in style and workmanship. I think Yajnaśrī was a contemporary of Rudradāman, and believe that he is the very Śātakarṇi mentioned in Rudradāman's Girnar inscription as having been twice really conquered.¹ Probably Yajnaśrī made a successful inroad into Kāthiawār from Aparānta by sea, but after a time was

¹ Ind. Ant. VII., 262.

forced to withdraw. Anyhow, Rudradāman's boast suggests that Rudradāman's conquests over Śātakarnī involved a previous conquest of his territory by Śātakarnī. Another coin of Yajnaśri which I have obtained from Amreli in Kāthiawār supports this view (Plate II., fig. 7a). In the Amreli coin the head is a little worn, but the legend राजा गोताशेषुतस यज्ञासतकणिस is fairly clear, though unfortunately the reverse has lost more of its legend than the Sopārā coin. It is true that the finding of a coin does not prove that the place where the coin was found formed part of the territory of the king to whom the coin belongs. It is possible that for a time, however short, Yajnaśri did hold that part of Kāthiawār, and that his coins were current there. From coins and inscriptions I have fixed Rudradāman's reign as lasting from 70 to 100 of the Kshatrapa era.¹ Taking, as suggested above, the Kshatrapa era to be the Śaka era, Rudradāman's date would be A.D. 148-178. The date of his contemporary Yajnaśri would therefore be somewhere about the middle of Rudradāman's reign, or A. D. 160, which approximately is the date of the *stūpa*.

I have still one difficulty to solve before fixing the middle of the second century after Christ as the age of the *stūpa*. It is caused by the images which were found encircling the copper casket. As the images of the seven Buddhas are in a style of dress which did not vary, nothing can be said against their belonging to the time of Yajnaśri. With the image of Maitreya the case is different. We have no good specimens of the richer dress and ornaments in use during the second century after Christ. But comparing Maitreya's dress and ornaments with the specimens of Yajnaśri's time, of which there are many examples in the Násik and Kanheri cavés, the pyramidal crown, the sacred thread, the waist band and Maitreya's other ornaments differ greatly from the royal crown and corresponding details of dress and ornament in Yajnaśri's time ; and closely resemble the dress and ornamentation of images of about the seventh or eighth century. I can explain this only by supposing that about the seventh or eighth century the tope was opened for repairs, when new images and probably new copper and silver caskets were put in instead of the old ones, which had been spoiled by damp and verdigris.

¹ Ind. Ant. VII. 257, 258.

IV. Sculptures near Chakresvara Temple.—About half a mile north of modern Sopârâ, and about 500 yards north-east of the Buddhist *stûpa*, is a lake called the Chakresvara or Chakâlâ Talâv. About the middle of its west bank is a modern temple of Chakresvara Mahâdeva, to which a collection of sculptured stones, varying in age from the tenth to the twelfth century, gives a special interest. The chief of the sculptured stones is a well carved statue of Brahmâ, which leans against a large bâyan tree facing the temple. The people say that this statue was found about thirty years ago in a field in Sonârbhât, about half a mile south-west of Sopârâ.¹ It measures six feet four inches long by two feet broad, and stands erect with three heads and four arms. The three heads, a front and two side faces, have richly carved tiaras. The fourth head is not shown, as it looks back. The middle face has a long pointed beard, the side faces are hairless. Of his four hands the right upper hand holds the sacrificial ladle or *sruk*, and the lower right hand a rosary; in the left upper hand is a book roll, the Veda manuscript, and the left lower hand holds either a water jug, *kamandalu*, or a *ghi* flask, *âgyasthâli*. There are necklaces round the neck, armlets on the arms, bracelets on the wrists, and rings on the fingers. The *dhotar* or waistcloth is fastened by a girdle round the waist. On the shoulder is a deer skin, the head of the deer appearing on the chest below the right shoulder. The sacred thread hangs like a thick strap in a waving line to the thigh. On each side below the knee is a female figure, probably Sâvitri and Sarasvatî. The figure on the visitor's right holds sacrificial fuel, *samidh*, and the figure on the left holds a *ghi* pot in the left hand and a ladle, *sruk*, in the right. Below this left hand figure is another figure with a sword in the right hand, and below the right-hand figure is a swan, the carrier and symbol of Brahmâ. The image is well executed, but is not complete. The earrings and the minute carving of the armlets and bracelets have been left unfinished.

¹ Near where the image of Brahmâ was found are the ruins of a temple which, from a fallen image which looks like the Jain Devî Ambikâ, appears to have been a Jain temple. This spot is held sacred and visited by Jains. At a little distance from the site of this Jain temple a headless Nandi was found, which with other remains in the Sonârbhât, leads to the inference that there were several Brâhmaical temples in this neighbourhood. The Nandi is now placed in front of Chakresvara temple.

Under the banyan tree, close to Brahmâ's statue, are several other sculptured stones. One of them is a standing cobra-hooded image of Pârvyanâtha, of the Digambara sect of the Jains. It is not later than the tenth century, perhaps older. About five feet to the south of the banyan tree is a modern shrine of Hanumân, with verandahs on the four sides. On the verandahs are placed several old images. One of these, on the east verandah, facing the pond, is Haragaurî or Sîva and Pârvati ($1' 10'' \times 1' 9''$). Sîva has four hands, a tiara, and an aureole. By the side of Pârvati, on the right, is Ganesh, and below Ganesh is Kârtikeya on a peacock. Near Haragaurî, on the first stone facing the south, is an image of the Sun ($2' 6'' \times 2'$) standing on the heads of seven horses. The two hands are raised above the elbows and hold lotuses. Round the neck are rich necklaces, and a chaplet of beads falls below the knees. The end of the waist cloth hangs in heavy folds between the legs, and a well carved cloth is shown round the thighs. He wears large and rich shoes, the peculiar symbol of the Sun god. Near the sun image is a small well-carved figure of Chandraprabha, the eighth Tirthankara. Besides these there are two *sati* memorial stones, and other broken sculptures.

PART II.

Ancient Inscriptions and Symbols on Padana Hill.

About eleven miles north of Bombay, eighteen miles south of Sopârâ, and three miles north-east of Goregaon station on the Baroda railway, is a small range of hills whose northern extremity, jutting out towards the deserted village of Akurli, goes by the name of Padana. The Marâthi word Padana corresponds to the Gujarâti Padâna and to the Hindi Padâva, and means a place of encampment. The name Padana has been given to this hill because during the rainy months the cattle from the neighbouring villages are taken to its dry flat top to save them from the mud and slime of the rice lands below.¹ Many similar places are called Padana.

¹ When I was on the hill top in February, there was much dry cowdung which boys were collecting to take to the fields for manure.

Padana hill is from 180 to 200 feet above the level of the surrounding rice lands. It rises with an easy slope from the west, but on the east ends in a sheer cliff. To the south it is connected with a range of small hills, and on the north falls gradually into the plain. The top measures about 350 feet from north to south. It is somewhat broader in the south, narrowing northwards with a gradual downward slope. On the west much of the hill top is on a slightly higher level, like a raised platform. The hill lies six miles west of Kanheri, and the black cleft in which the Kanheri caves are cut can be clearly seen.

There is no building on the top of the hill. On the south appears something like the foundation of a wall, and on the north is a circle of undressed stones. Neither of these are old foundations; they are the sites of temporary huts erected during the rainy months by cattle keepers. At the base of the hill to the west is a pond with a broken dam which is almost dry in the fair season.¹

The hill top contains the following objects of interest:—

- (1) A natural cave.
- (2) Symbols cut on the surface of the rock.
- (3) Inscriptions cut on the surface of the rock.

CAVE.—The natural cave is almost in the middle of the hill top, near the western edge. Over it grows a stunted tamarind, and at the foot of the tree are some signs of stone work. The cave faces north. Its entrance is almost choked with earth, and it looks like the hole of some small animal. I learnt from the people of the neighbourhood that Káthodis in search of porcupine quills sometimes make their way into the cave, and they say there is space inside for sitting. The outside of the cave favours the truth of this statement of the Káthodis. If the mouth were opened the cave might be found to contain some objects of interest.

SYMBOLS.—There are eleven symbols carved in different parts of the hill top. (No. 1.) The footmarks of a cow and a calf are sixty feet east of the tamarind tree. The four feet of the cow with the hoofs marked are well cut in the rock, the cow facing north. The distance between the front and hind legs is two feet six inches. The forelegs are rather far apart, the distance between them being

¹ The dam of this pond is said to have been made by Bháu Rasul, once the proprietor of Malád village. But as the pond seems to have been old, Bháu Rasul probably repaired an older dam.

eight inches ; the hind legs are closer together, only two inches apart. Each hoof is about three inches long and about the same in breadth. The calf faces the south, and from the position of its feet seems to be sucking the cow. The distance between its front and hind feet is one foot six inches. Each hoof measures an inch and a half long, and about the same in breadth. The distance between the two fore feet and between the two hind feet is about an inch. (See Plate I., fig. 1.)

(2) The *chakra* or Buddhist wheel is cut about fifteen feet south of the cow's feet. It has fifteen spokes and a double circle. The diameter of the wheel is $9\frac{1}{2}$ inches. (Pl. I., fig. 2.)

(3) Seventeen feet east of the *chakra* or Buddhist wheel, and on the east edge of the hill are two pairs of human feet facing each other, one pair smaller than the other. These feet are not cut in the way feet are usually carved ; they are either cut with shoes, *champals*, or perhaps the work is rough and unfinished. The larger pair faces west, each foot ten inches long by four inches broad. Facing it about two inches to the west is a smaller pair, each foot $8\frac{1}{2}$ inches long by three inches broad. The people call these the footmarks of a husband and wife, *navard-navariche phye*. (Plate I., fig. 3.)

(4) About three feet south of the two pairs of footmarks is a small conch shell, nine inches long and six inches broad in the middle. (Plate I., fig. 4.)

(5) About fifty feet south of the small conch shell is a pair of child's feet going from south to north. The left foot is in front, and the right behind, as if the child was crossing a slit in the rock. The two feet are ten inches apart ; each foot is four inches long, with a breadth at the toes of $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches. These feet are very well carved. (Plate I., fig. 5.)

(6) Three feet west of the right or hind foot of the child is a large conch shell, one foot seven inches long and nine inches broad in the middle. (Plate I., fig. 6.)

(7) a & b. About fourteen feet south of the large conch shell is a pair of large human footmarks, each mark being one foot long by five inches broad. They are on the eastern edge of the hill, and are the marks of some one leaping out towards the east. The right foot is five feet and five inches in front of the left. They are both well carved. In front of the hind footmark is Inscription E in letters

S.

Plate III.



Bha

Sanskrit.

पर्वतस्य वासाकस्थाराम अपरास्थः

Translation.

The western seat of the Vāsūka mountain.

Note.—वासाक may be a corruption of वास्तक, that is, for the rainy season; but I think वासाक is the original name of Padana hill. आराम properly means a pleasure seat or garden. Here I think it is used in the sense of a pleasure seat, as having been a favourite seat of some ascetic who used to sit on the hill top enjoying the view across to the sea. If आराम meant a garden, something would have been added to say whether it was a gift, and if so by whom it was given. Again there is a mention in another inscription of an eastern आराम.

Inscription B.

Inscription B is about thirty feet south-east of inscription A. It is one foot ten inches long, and is written in two lines. The letters are well cut and well preserved of about the first century after Christ.

Transcript.

कोसिकयस उदयो आरामो च

Sanskrit.

कौशिकैयस्य उदय आरामच

Translation.

And the eastern pleasure seat of Kosikaya.

Note.—Kosikaya is Sanskrit Kauśīkeya, that is son of Kauśikī.

This inscription tells us that the eastern आराम is of one Kosikaya. In Inscription A, a western आराम is mentioned, as also the mountain where it is, but not the person to whom it belongs. Here the name of the person is also mentioned, while the च 'and' at the end leaves no doubt that both आराम's are of Kosikaya.

Inscription C.

Inscription C, about twenty feet south of Inscription B, is of one line three feet four inches long. The letters are large, deeply cut and well preserved. From their form they appear to belong to the first century after Christ.

Transcript.

पवतो अमुन्तो सिध्वस्ति

Bhaǵváni

Inscription F.

Inscription F is on the (visitor's) left of 7a. It is in Sanskrit and records the same name as E, in well-cut letters of about the second or third century after Christ.

Transcript.

मुसलदत्त.

Musaladatta.

This is the same name as in Inscription E, omitting his title of सिद्ध and adding the nominal affix दत्त.

Inscription G.

Inscription G is about nine inches to the (visitor's) right of symbol 7b. It is well-cut and well-preserved, and from the form of the letters appears to be of about the second or third century after Christ.

Transcript.

रामाकमो

Sanskrit.

रामविक्रमः

Translation.

Step of Râma.

Note.—Ikamo is probably for Sanskrit Vikramah, which means a footstep. Even to the present day, the Mahârâshtris interchange व for अ as एका for वेका (time), एडा for वेडा (mad).

Inscription H.

Inscription H is to the right of the Buddhist trident No. 8. It is carved in well-cut, well-preserved letters of the first century after Christ.

Transcript.

नंदिपञ्च.

Sanskrit.

नंदिपद्म

Translation.

The symbol (or residence) of Nandi.

Inscription I.

Inscription I is below the trident. It is well-cut and well-preserved in letters of the second or third century after Christ.

Transcript.

मुसलदत्त

Musaladatta.

Note.—The writer seems at first to have left out ष, and added it below between य and ल.

Inscription J.

Inscription J is to the (visitor's) left of the trident. It is well-cut in letters of the second or third century after Christ, and is well-preserved.

Transcript.

जिरासंधदत्त

Jirāsandhadatta.

Inscription K.

Inscription K is to the (visitor's) left of 7b. It is in three lines. The letters are small and not deeply cut. They are of about the fifth or sixth century after Christ. The inscription is the well-known Buddhist formula, Ye Dharma Hetu, &c.

Transcript.

ये धर्मां हेतुप्रभवा हेतुस्तेषां
तथागतो अवदत् तेषां च यो निरो[ष]
एवं वादी महाभवणः

Note.—In the formula as found on the pedestals of several images of Buddha at Buddha Gayā, the reading is धर्मे for धर्मां, हेतुं तेषां for हेतुस्तेषां and महाभवणः for महाभवणः. The formula is differently interpreted by scholars. I translate it: The Tathāgata (or similarly come, that is any of the Buddhas) showed the object of those (that is the previous Buddhas) who took birth for the sake of religion, he (that is any of the Buddhas) also told what they forbade. So spake (literally A thus-speaker is) the Great Sramana (Gautama). Almost all the seal impressions in dried clay found by Mr. West in Kanheri Cave XIII. (Jour. B. B. R. A. S. VI. 157, Plate VII., figs. 1—21) had this formula, with the reading धर्मी as at Padana. According to this reading, which is also found at the end of several Nepalese Buddhist manuscripts, the sense would be: 'The Tathāgata (or similarly come, that is any of the Buddhas) has shown the cause of those merits which are the result of some cause; he has also shown what prevents merit (from accruing). So spake (literally A thus-speaker is) the Great Sramana (Gautama). Compare Ariana Antiqua, 51; Jour. Beng. A. S. IV., 132.

Remarks.

The origin of these symbols and inscriptions on the Padana hill is its natural cavern, whose solitude and the beautiful view

it commands, probably recommended it to some ascetic. People may have tried to preserve the memory of this ascetic by carving symbols and inscriptions, or some ascetic living on the hill may have tried to confer holiness upon it by connecting it with stories of some former sage. The sage who lived on the hill, or, according to the second supposition, the imaginary sage for whom the story was got up, was probably Musala or Musaladatta, whose name is twice carved near footmark 7a (Inscriptions E and F). This and the other footmark, 7b, are carved as if they were the feet of some one leaping off the east cliff towards Kanheri. These are I believe the chief symbols connected with the story. In the legend of the Sopârâ merchant Punna (Sk. Pûrṇa), translated from Buddhist manuscripts by the late M. Burnouf, it is said that when, at the request of Punna (Sk. Pûrṇa), Gautama came to Sopârâ, he visited several places in the neighbourhood. One of these places was the hill of Musalaka, on which lived a sage called Vakkali (Sk. Valkalin, or the bark-dress wearer). According to the story, the sage saw Buddha from afar, when he was coming from a hermitage of 500 Rishis, and on seeing Gautama the thought arose in his heart, 'Why should I not throw myself from the top of the hill?' He threw himself down, and Gautama caught him by his supernatural power and converted him.¹ I have little doubt that the Musalaka hill of this story is our Padâra hill, and that the footmarks (symbols 7a and 7b) are those of the Vakkali who leapt over the cliff. Vâsâka, the name given in Inscription A, is probably the old name of the hill. The legend calls it the hill of Musalaka, from the sage who lived on it, and whose name is carved on the top. Vakkali, the name given in the legend to the sage who lived on the hill, is a common noun, meaning the wearer of a dress made of bark. The question arises whether this Vakkali was Musala, or whether Musala was the sage, who, to confer holiness on the hill, had the symbols connected with the story of Vakkali carved on its top. The legend does not explain this point. I incline to believe that Musala is the Vakkali, as his name 'the sage Musala' is carved near footmark 7a in one (E) of the oldest inscriptions, not as a donor, but as though he were the person whose footmark it is. Inscriptions F, G, and I, which are all of the same time and more than a century later than E, seem to show that an attempt was made to give a different colour to the story. Inscriptions F and I read 'Mu-

¹ Burnouf's Introduction A l' Histoire du Buddhisme Indien, 167.

saladatta,' which may either mean 'given by Musala,' or may be an attempt to make मुसला a purely Brâhmanical name by adding दत्त. Inscription G, near footprint 7b, seems to imply an attempt to connect the mark with the story of Râma, the hero of the Râmâyana. Inscription J, near the trident, which is of the same period, records the name of some one who does not seem to have any connection with Musala's story. Inscription K is very late, of about the fifth or sixth century. It is the well-known Buddhist formula, and was probably carved by some late Buddhist visitor of the Mahâyâna school. It seems to have no connection with the other symbols.

B, one of the two early inscriptions (1st century) runs, 'And the eastern pleasure seat of Kosikaya.' Kosikaya may be a family name meaning 'one of the Kausîki dynasty,' but it is more probably a maternal name, meaning the son of Kausîki. It is possible that it may be Musala's own name, or the name of some sage connected with Musala. Inscription C 'The mountain the residence of sages all about,' is a mere exaggeration, an attempt to confer greatness on the hill. This practice is common. The Jainas say that thousands of their sages obtained absolution, *mukti*, on the Girnâr and Satrunjaya hills.

How the various symbols are connected with the story of Musalaka we have no means of knowing. Burnouf's legend gives us only the name of Musalaka, and allows us to draw an inference about the footmarks. To the other symbols it gives no clue. In the absence of materials I do not like to build on conjecture, but leave the matter to future research. This much seems pretty certain ; (1) that the old name of the Padâna hill was Vâsîka ; (2) that it was also called the hill of Musalaka, because a sage of that name lived on its top ; (3) that the Buddhists probably regarded it as holy, believing it to be the scene of the story of Musalaka, whom Gautama came to see and converted ; and (4) that as it was believed to have been the residence of many sages, people of the Brâhmanical religion probably regarded it as holy.

From the inscriptions, the symbols and the legend of Punna (Sk. Pûrṇa) the history of the Padâna antiquities may be thus summarised. As the legend of Pûrṇa mentions a Brâhmanical sage, and as there is a natural cave on the hill top fit for the residence of an ascetic, it may be inferred that the hill was once the residence of a Brâhmanical sage ; that some time later, about the first century after Christ, the footmarks and other symbols and the six inscriptions, A,

B. C. D. E and H were carved to connect the story of the sage with Buddha: that about a century later an attempt was made to connect the hill and its symbols with the Brahmanical story of Rāma; and that in the sixth century Buddhists probably regarded the hill as holy, as some Buddhist of the Mahāyāna school carved on it the well-known Buddhist formula.

NOTE.—The special honour shown to Maitreya the Coming Buddha in the Sopārā site suggests that Pūrṇa, the son of Maitrāyani, the glory of Sopārā and the apostle of Buddhism in the Kukkura (see above, p. 275, Burnouf's Introduction, 233—274), may be, or may really have been claimed to be, Maitreya or the Coming Buddha. Maitreya is not an admissible form of Maitrāyaniputra, or son of Maitrāyani; but the similarity of the name favours the suggestion that Pūrṇa was locally believed to be the Coming Buddha. This belief finds support from the details of Pūrṇa's life preserved in M. Burnouf's Introduction to Buddhism. This story of his life shows that Pūrṇa, the son of Maitrāyani, rose to the highest rank. He became a Bodhisattva or potential Buddha, and is one of the first of Gautama's followers who will hold the office of Buddha (*Le Lotus de la Bonne Loi*, 122, 123). The high honour in which he was held is shown by the fact that Hiwen Thsang found a stupa of Pūrṇamaitrāyani at Mathurā, which was said to have been built by Asoka (Julien's *Mémoirs I.* 208). At the same time there are several difficulties in the way of the suggestion that the honour done to Maitreya in the Sopārā site is connected with a desire to show respect to Pūrṇa. Pūrṇa's title as Buddha is Dharmaprabhāsa (*Le Lotus*, 123), not Maitreya. It is stated (Burnouf's Introduction, 55.102,) that the former name of Maitreya was Ajita, or the Unconquered, and that he was a Brāhmaṇa, not like Pūrṇa, the son of a merchant. Further in the introduction to the *Lotus of the Good Law* (Burnouf II. 1, 2) among the beings who gather to hear Gautama's teaching, Pūrṇamaitrāyaniputra appears as an Arhat and Maitreya appears as a Bodhisattva Mahāsattva.

Since the above was written, Dr. Burgess has stated in the *Indian Antiquary* for August 1882 (Vol. XI., p. 236,) that Maitreya is often confounded with Dharmaprabhāsa. Dr. Burgess does not give the authority for this statement. If it is correct it greatly increases the probability that the prominent position given to Maitreya among the images that surround the relics was due to the belief that Pūrṇa, the apostle of Sopārā, is the Coming Buddha.—(J. M. Campbell.)

ART. XI.—*Manusāradhammasattham*, the only one existing Buddhist Law Book, compared with the Brahminical Mānavadharmaśāstram.
By REV. DR. A. FUEHRE.

[Read 27th June 1882.]

I.

THE word “Manu,” derived from the root “man,” to understand, and signifying “intelligent,” is the name applied with various modifications to all the ancient law-givers of the Eastern world, from the banks of the Nile to those of the Menam. Manu, according to the Brahmanic legend, was the son or grandson of Brahma, the first of created beings. Manu governed the world, and became the progenitor of all mankind. Turning from the Ganges to the Nile, it will be found that the description given by Diodorus of the Egyptian Mneves, answers exactly to the account given in Burmese and Siamese mythology of the ascetic Manu. Mneves was the first law-giver; he lived after the gods and heroes, when a change was made in the manner of life among men. He was a man of exalted soul, and a great promoter of civil society, which he benefited by his laws. Those laws were unwritten and received by him from the deity Hermes.

So also according to the Burmese and Siamese legend, the original inhabitants of the world lived in a state of perfect innocence and bliss. They gradually degenerated, until, for the repression of crime, it became necessary to establish a government among them. In the days of their first king arose Manu. Originally a cowherd, he was promoted to the Chief Justiceship, but discovering after a time his own fallibility, he retired from the society of men, and on the boundary walls of the world he discovered “the Dhammasattham” inscribed in letters as large as elephants. This he copied and presented to the king. Such is the mythical Burmese account of the origin of “the Dhammasattham,” or “Laws of Manu.” Although mainly of Indian origin, none of the Burmese Pāli works which bear this name corresponds with the Samskrit Mānavadharmaśāstram, or “Institutes of Manu.”

Concerning the time when, and the means by which the Pâli Dhammasattham, which forms the basis of the greatest part of the still existing Burmese law books was first introduced into the valley of Irrawaddy, much remains to be discovered. Burman historians ascribe the introduction of the Dhammasattham "to their progenitors," who, they believe, migrated from the plains of Hindûstân some five or six centuries before the Christian era. This is a pure myth, destitute probably of any foundation of truth, and invented in later days to support the pretensions of Burman monarchs to be the descendants of the solar kings of Oudh.

As the Burmans received their religious literature originally through the Talaings from Ceylon about the fifth century A. D., it seems to be not improbable that some of their secular literature may have reached them from the same source. But inquiries which I have made through the Buddhist high-priest, Mr. Subhûti, in Colombo, as to whether there are now extant in that island any Pâli works corresponding to the Burmese account of the Manusâradhammasattham, have failed to elicit information on the subject. If any of the Burmese Dhammasats really possess such claims to antiquity as is asserted for them by Burman writers, it is clear that they must have been received through a Talaing medium, but the national vanity of the Burmans, of course, prevents them from acknowledging their indebtedness in this respect to the conquered race.

Another hypothesis is that the *Burmese* dhammasats date chiefly from the reign of the great king Anaw-ra-hta, whose capital was at Pagahm in the beginning of the eleventh century A. D. Under this monarch there was a great revival of religion, literature, and architecture in Burma, and communication with India and Ceylon appears to have been frequent. The fact that nearly all *Burmese* Dhammasats are more Brahminical than Buddhist, favours the supposition that the Brahminical originals were introduced from Manipur at this later period, when Brahmanism had regained the ascendancy over Buddhism in India. Thus the division of the people into castes is everywhere recognised by the Burmese dhammasats, whilst the equality of all men is one of the leading tenets of pure Buddhism.

On the first annexation, 1826, to the British Indian Empire of provinces inhabited by a Burman population, the Courts of Justice,

established in such provinces, took as their guide, in cases where the parties were Buddhists, and the matter in dispute related to inheritance, partition, marriage, or religious usages, "the law of the country." In recent legislative enactments, this "law of the country" has been inaccurately described as the "Buddhist law." By section IV. of the Burma Courts Act, 1875, it is enacted, that "where in any suit or proceeding, it is necessary for any Court under this Act to decide any question regarding succession, inheritance, marriage, or caste, or any religious usage, or institution, the Buddhist law in cases where the parties are Buddhist shall form the rule of decision, except in so far as such law has by legislative enactment been altered or abolished, or is opposed to any custom having the force of law in British Burma."

The Buddhist law, properly so called, is contained in the Tipitaka, or the three baskets, divided into the Suttapitaka, or discourses and maxims of Śākyamuni; Vinayapitaka, or books on morals and discipline; and Abhidhammapitaka, or on metaphysics. Of these, the Vinayapitaka contains many passages that are law with regard to the religious usages of the people, but the rules that govern inheritance, partition, marriage, divorce, &c., among the laity, are contained in totally distinct works known generally as "the Dhammasatṭham," or "the Dhammasatṭham of Manu," which form no portion of the Buddhist law. These works in fact, as stated before, are more Brahminical than Buddhist, and the term "Buddhist law" when applied to them is a misnomer. Of these Burmese dhammasats there are various versions with various titles. They profess generally to be based on the Pāli text of the Manusāradhammasatṭham, the only one existing Buddhist law book, but contain also passages which have evidently been interpolated in later days to suit the changing forms of society. One of their prominent characteristics is a total want of systematic arrangement. Various and often inconsistent provisions on cognate subjects are scattered here and there throughout their pages, and topics the most incongruous are jumbled up together, forming a strange *indigesta moles* of law and custom, ancient and modern, Hindu and Buddhist, Indian and Burman.

Up to 1847 such books existed only on palm-leaf manuscripts. In that year Dr. Richardson published at Maulmain an edition in Burmese with translation into English of the Manu-Kyay-Dham-

masat, and from that time until now this edition—second edition, Rangoon, 1874—has been the sole book of reference consulted by judges, both European and native, in matters relating to Burman law. This edition possesses much the same defects as other Burman works of the same nature. It is destitute of all attempt at arrangement. The provisions relating to adoption for example are found in four or five different parts of the work. Those on divorce in a dozen different places, in juxtaposition with some other uncongenial subjects, such as debts or bailments, as if the book were simply a collection of *placita* of different judgments, given in chronological sequence, and not according to the subject matter of the judgment.

Burman libraries contain many Dhammasats or treatises on law, written on palm-leaves, which treatises are looked upon as works of authority by native lawyers. Whilst such treatises exist only in this form, it need hardly be said that they are practically unavailable for the use either of the public or the courts. The number of copies is limited, and the tedium of poring over the hardly legible scratches on the palm-leaves is intolerable to a European. It was therefore a most valuable undertaking, wisely initiated by Mr. J. D. Sandford, Judicial Commissioner of British Burma, for collecting and rendering available all the sources of Burman law, so that they may ultimately be moulded into an intelligible and convenient shape. For he proposed to print a certain number of these treatises, and so to increase the general knowledge of the sources of Burman law, as well as to furnish materials for the ultimate compilation of an authoritative work of reference on Buddhist law, or on such branches of it as have been declared to form the rule of decision in Indian and Burman Courts. A sketch of the Burman text of the four best known Dhammasats, namely, of the Manu-Reng-Dhammasat, the Manu-Vaṇṇanā-Dhammasat, the Manusāra-Shwe-Myeen-Dhammasat and the Vinichchhayapakāsani-Dhammasat, with such particulars regarding their authorship and dates as can be gathered from the works themselves, and the most generally accepted Burman tradition with respect to them, was published by Moung Tetto, Extra Assistant Commissioner, Thayetmyo, under the superintendence of Colonel Horace A. Browne, Commissioner of Pegu, in 1875-1877, at Rangoon. But it must be said that reliable information on these points is difficult to obtain. The palm-leaf manuscripts themselves are untrustworthy. Although the name of the trans-

scriber and the date of transcription is always carefully entered in each copy, such highly important facts as the name of the author and the date of compilation are generally omitted. These four law books, according to the preface to be based on the Pâli Manusâradhammasattham, are therefore very useful for preparing a critical edition of the standard authority of Bhuddist law; but these editions show the same defects in all that regards arrangement as the abovementioned editions of the Manu-Kyay-Dhammasat.

Dr. R. Rost, the well-known Chief Librarian of the India Office at London, has already called attention to the great value of the Pâli Manusâradhammasattham in an article published, in 1850, in Prof. Weber's "Indischen Studien," Vol. I., 315-320. But since then the most valuable Buddhist law book has been forgotten. During my stay in London in the winter of 1880-81, I copied in the British Museum and India Office six different Burmese palm-leaf manuscripts, containing the whole Pâli text of the Manusâradhammasattham in Burmese characters, with a Burmese commentary by Manurâjâ. This text compared with the above-mentioned Burmese law books gives a rather correct text. Whilst as far as I know the law books in Siam, Java, and Bali are based on the same standard authority of the Pâli Manusâradhammasattham it would be surely interesting to compare the different manuscripts with the Burmese in order to arrive at the correct text. But all my inquiries on this point through the English Ambassador, Mr. Palgrave, at Bangkok, and Dr. Van der Tuuk in Boeleleng, had no results. Therefore I have restored the Pâli text of the old Manusâradhammasattham according to the Burmese sources as correctly as it was possible; the text with an English translation I hope soon to publish.

The pre-eminent importance of the Manusâradhammasattham makes it necessary to treat its relation to the Brahmanical Code of Manu as fully as the limits of a short time would allow; therefore I shall give to-day as briefly as possible the contents of the only one existing Buddhist law book, and I shall try to show in a following paper how far the relation extends to the Mânavadharmaśâstram and to the Codes of Yajñavalkya, Nârada and Brihaspati, and more especially that Manusâra used a more ancient version of Manu than that we now possess.

The Code of Manusâra contains according to my text 1,134 *slokas*, and is divided into ten chapters, which treat of everything

relating to inherited property, partition, donations, marriage, sons, divorce, and all other matters of Civil and Criminal law under the jurisdiction of the Courts.

The first chapter gives in 82 ślokas the mythical origin of the Dhammasattham, and certain rules to be observed by judges in the performance of their duties. The mythical origin of the work is thus related in the preface :—In the time of king Mahāsamadā, the great original monarch of mankind, a Brāhmaṇa named Brahmadeva passed away from the Brahma heaven, and became a nobleman at the Court of Mahāsamadā. Perceiving at last that the world of men was desperately wicked, he abandoned his family and became a hermit, living in a cave in the Vastrā hill, near the Mandagiri lake. There he was visited by a female Kinnara, a fabulous winged semi-human being, whose blandishments ultimately overcame his asceticism, the result being that she bore him two sons, the elder of whom was named Sūbhadra, and the younger Manusāra. In course of time the Brāhmaṇa communicated to his children his intention of returning to the Brahma heaven. Their mother also, he said, would go back to Gandhappa, but they, the children, were to remain living as recluses until they perfectly acquainted themselves with the original sources of all knowledge which would be found inscribed on the boundary wall of the world. They were then to proceed to the Court of king Mahāsamadā, and to communicate the knowledge they had so acquired to him. These instructions were carried out by his sons, Sūbhadra devoting himself especially to the study of natural science, and Manusāra to law. The latter coming once to the great chain of the mountains Chakkavála, found the Code of Laws here set down, carved in capital letters upon the rocks. He made a faithful copy of them, which upon his return he presented as an inestimable treasure to the great king Mahāsamadā, who being informed of the wonderful way in which they had been discovered, commanded them to be observed by all his subjects, and the Code was called Manusāradhammasattham. After this mythical period the work is said to have been revised in the time of king Byūmandhi—perhaps Vyomandhi instead of Vyomadhi (?)—the third king of the Pagahm dynasty, who reigned no less than 75 years at that capital in the end of the second and the beginning of the third centuries of our era. Burman history records of this king that he erected many religious buildings and caused books of law to be compiled for the benefit of his people. Finally this Code, which

was written in Pâli only, and kept in the island of Ceylon, always called Râmaññadeśa—perhaps a blending of Râmadesa and Râvaññadeśa (?)—was at length brought into the Burmese empire, and afterwards revised by Buddhaghôsa in the time of the Toungu monarch Tsheng-bhyu-mya-sheng, who commenced to reign about 1550 A.D. And such is the origin and history of the Dhammasattham.

It is not difficult to prove that also this last part of the legend is invented; for the name of Buddhaghôsa should procure to this Civil and Penal Code the same authority as to the canonical books commented by him. The fact is that the original Code of Manusâra was compiled in the time of king Vyomadhi, at the end of the third century A.D., and since then several times revised: the first time under king Anaw-ra-hta in the tenth century, the second time under king Tsheng-bhyu-mya-sheng in the sixteenth century, the third time under king Pha-lwon-meng-dara-gyee, known also as Raza-manie-tsula-daraka, or the founder of the Raza-manie-tsula Pagoda, the third of the second dynasty of Ava kings, who commenced to reign in 1631 A.D. This last edition was prepared by a judge of some literary repute, who received the title of Manuraza, and is generally known by the name of Manuraza-kaing-ywa-tsa. During the hundred years and more which elapsed between the time of king Tha-lwon-meng-dara and Tsheng-bhyu-sheng of the Alompra dynasty, who reigned from 1763 until 1776 A.D., the text of the Manusâra is said to have become corrupted in consequence of errors accumulating by repeated transcriptions. At the request of three priests, Wonna-dhamma-kyaw-deng, the prime minister at Ava undertook, 1770 A.D., the task of revising it, for the benefit of judges and people.

After this there follow some admonitions and counsels to the judges for the regulation of their conduct; such as not to yield to the movements of anger and hatred; not to be blinded by the presents of clients, nor to propose in a judgment the hurt or ruin of any one, but only the fulfilling all the dispositions of the law; to make themselves master of the statutes and laws contained in this Code before attempting to sit in judgment. To judges who act in this manner the esteem and praises of men are held out as a reward as well as happiness in future lives; but if they do otherwise they will be hated by all, and after death will be condemned

to the abodes of the wicked. When judges are going to enter into the tribunal, they must raise up their eyes and hands to heaven. And when they are in the tribunal, they should not be ashamed to ask the opinions and advice of subordinate ministers as to the best and speediest means of satisfying the parties in a lawsuit. They must neither in their countenance nor speech show any regard to the wealth or dignity of either party, but must listen impartially to both ; nor must they be offended, if sometimes harsh words are used by the litigants towards them ; and with the greatest prudence and sagacity they must hear all that is said either by the persons themselves concerned in the cause, or their lawyers. The Code then goes on to speak of those who may act as judges. All persons, whether priests or prudent and pious men, may act in this capacity, provided they have those qualities which constitute a good judge, which are especially these : to be considerate, prudent, wise, eloquent and well versed in the laws and statutes contained in this book. It then proceeds to point out those who more commonly exercise the office of judge, and these are the governors of the cities, and the chiefs of the villages and their lieutenants, those who have made a study of the Dhammasattham, and arbitrators. After the chiefs of the villages or the governors of towns have given their judgment in any cause, they may have recourse to another judge, and if the judge has been chosen by consent of both parties they must abide by his award.

After this follows the enumeration of the eighteen original causes of suits according to Manu and Nârada : 1, recovery of a debt ; 2, on deposits ; 3, sale without ownership ; 4, stipulations among partners ; 5, recovery of a gift ; 6, non-payment of wages ; 7, breach of order ; 8, rescission of purchase ; 9, non-delivery of a thing sold ; 10 breach of promised obedience ; 11, contests regarding boundaries ; 12, violence ; 13, abuse ; 14, assault ; 15, duties of man and wife ; 16, partition of inheritance ; 17, gambling with dice and living creatures ; and 18, miscellaneous disputes. But it must be said that Manusâra does not bind himself strictly to the order kept in enumerating these titles of law.

The second chapter speaks in 77 ślokas of the rules to be observed in giving donations and promises.

The third chapter contains 95 ślokas, and presents an account of heirships, and the seven ways of dividing them among the heirs.

The following are the cases provided for in this section. How property is to be divided : 1, after the death of the father among the mother, sons, and daughters ; 2, among the mother and daughters ; 3, after the death of the mother between the father and sons ; 4, between the father and daughters ; 5, after the death of both parents among the sons and daughters ; 6, what proportion the sons of a former husband, or 7, the sons of a former wife, must receive.

The fourth chapter treats in 150 ślokas of the rules to be regarded in performing the solemnization of marriage, of the duties of man and wife, of the different cases of divorce, fornication, violation, &c.

The fifth chapter speaks in 95 ślokas of the fines which those must pay who insult, assault, or strike, or wound persons in conditions superior to their own.

The sixth chapter contains in 136 ślokas the rules of recovering a debt, of interest on money, of deposits, including the rules of evidence by writing, by witnesses, and of ordeals by balance, water, fire, and poison.

The seventh chapter discusses in 113 ślokas the rules to be observed regarding theft, lying and deceit.

The eighth chapter deals in 111 ślokas with the rules in regard to the sale of slaves. There are seven kinds of slaves who are bound to render personal services to their masters : 1, those who are bought with money ; 2, the children of a female slave living in a family ; 3, slaves by birth, that is, those whose parents are slaves ; 4, slaves given as presents ; 5, those who make themselves slaves to deliver themselves from some trouble ; 6, those who in times of scarcity are dependent on others for their support ; and 7, those who hire themselves out for daily or monthly labour. Manu also knows this seven-fold division of bondage, whilst Nārada distinguishes between fifteen forms of slavery. There are two species of slavery, one temporary, the other perpetual ; a man may be sold in both these kinds of slavery.

The ninth chapter refers in 95 ślokas to the rules to be observed in laying wages and gambling with dice and living creatures.

The tenth chapter contains in 180 ślokas miscellaneous disputes or sundries, and gives rules of the different kinds of buying, selling, borrowing, &c. The introduction of such a title as this is

338 MANUSĀRADHAMMASATTHAM, THE ONLY BUDDHIST LAW BOOK.

a sign of expansion of the original limits of legislation, and proves as distinctly as possible the presumption that Manusāra used for the compilation of his work not only the Code of Manu, but also the more recent Codes of Yajñavalkya and Nârada.

This is a short account of the most valuable Digest of Buddhist Law, and in a following paper I shall compare it with the different codes of Brahminical Law.

AET. XII.—*On a Hoard of Coins found at Broach.* By Surgeon-Major O. CODEINGTON, M.D., M.R.A.S., Secretary.

[Read 10th October 1882.]

THIS treasure was found last March by labourers who were digging a tank in the compound of the Jamat Khana building of the Parsi Panchayet, near the Police Lines and the Borwád or street of the Borahs. A man's pick struck against an old brass pot, and the workmen suspecting it contained treasure, immediately covered the earth over it again, and leaving it began to work in another spot. In the evening they returned, removed the vessel and after taking out the contents, threw it into the river. It was therefore seen only by the workmen, but from their account it was an ordinary old brass *lota*. The hoard consisted of 448 entire and some pieces of gold coins, 4 small ingots of gold, and about 1,200 silver coins and pieces.

The collection includes coins of Genoa, Venice, Egypt, Armenia, Persia and Delhi; and all, with the exception of one Khalif coin of a previous century, are of dates comprised within the period between A. H. 658 and 782, or A.D. 1260 to 1380.

From all the coins being of so nearly the same age, although of such different countries, we may conclude that the deposit was made soon after the date of the most recent one—that is, towards the end of the fourteenth century; and from the description of the money, we may suppose that the owner was a merchant engaged in foreign trade with the West at Broach, then the great emporium for such traffic on this coast, his transactions being with Africa and Arabia on the one side and the interior of India on the other.

GOLD COINS.

MAMLUK SULTANS.—BAHREE DYNASTY.—367 gold coins belong to this group, comprising good and some very fine specimens of

the coinage of 13 out of the 25 Sultans of the dynasty—viz., 5th, 8th, 10th, 14th, 16th, 17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st, 22nd, 23rd and 24th. Thus only 7 Sultans who reigned in the period A. H. 658 to 782 are unrepresented in the collection. Of these the 6th and 7th Sultans were on the throne about one year each, the 9th three years, the 11th two years, the 12th two years, the 13th one year, and the 15th but a few months—that is, altogether only about ten years.

In the British Museum collection, according to the Catalogue published in 1879, there are no coins of the 6th, 7th, 13th, 14th, 15th, and 16th Sultans, and but one gold and one silver of the 9th, one silver of the 11th, and one silver of the 12th, so no doubt the coinage of these Mamluks is very rare. We are fortunate in having in this collection gold coins of Seyf-ed-deen Kaláoon the 8th, Seyf-ed-deen Alxoo Bekr the 14th, Násir Shiháb-ed-deen Ahmad the 16th, and El-Kámil Seyf-ed-deen Shaabán the 18th Sultan, of which there one none in the British Museum Catalogue, and several varieties of the coinage of some other Mamluk kings.

The following is the list :—

EDH-DHÁHIR RUKN-ED-DEEN BEYBARS, 5th Sultan.

No. 1. (Fig. I.)—No mint or year.

<i>Olv.</i> —Area, within double circle—	<i>Olv.</i> —Area, within double circle—
--	--

الْأَمَام الْمُسْتَنْصَرْ بِاللَّهِ ابو القسم احمد بن الْأَمَام الظاهير امير المؤمنين	الْسُّلْطَانُ الْمَلِكُ الظاهر رَكْنُ الدُّنْيَا وَ الدِّينِ بِيرْس قَسِيمُ اَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ
---	--

Margin illegible.

Beneath, Lion to left.

Size, .95; weight, 97.5.*

Margin illegible.

The legends on this coin are similar to those of a silver coin in Brit. Mus. Cat., No. 481.

* Sizes are given in inches and decimals; weights in grains and decimals.

EL-MANSOOR SEYF-ED-DEEN KALĀ-OON, 8th Sultan.

No. 2. (Fig. II.)—El-Káhirah ; year obliterated.

Obv.—Area, within double *Rev.*—Within double circle—circle—

ضرب بالقاهرة

المومنين

لا اله الا الله

السلطان الملك

محمد رسول الله

سيف

ارسله بالهدى

المنصور الدنيا والدين

و دين الحق

قلادون الظاهر

Margin illegible.

Margin illegible.

This is similar to a silver coin in Brit. Mus. Catalogue, No. 492.

Size, '9 ; weight, 112.

No. 3.—Dimashk ; year obliterated.

Obv.—Within crenated circle— *Rev.*—Area within crenated circle—

بدمشق

.....

As No. 2.

السلطان الملك

سيف

المنصور الدنيا والدين

قلادون الظاهر

قسم امير

Margin illegible.

Margin illegible.

Size, '9 ; weight, 91.5.

EN-NÁSIR NÁSIR-ED-DEEN MOHAMMAD, 10th Sultan.

No. 4. (Fig. III.)—El-Káhirah ; year obliterated.

Obv.—Area, within double *Rev.*—Area, within double circle—circle—

ضرب بالقاهرة

قلادون

لا اله الا الله

السلطان الملك

محمد رسول الله

الناصر ناصر الدنيا والدين

ارسله بالهدى

محمد بن الملك

و دين الحق

المنصور

Margin illegible.

Margin cut off.

Size, '9 ; weight, 86.

The legends are similar to those on a silver coin, No. 504, Brit. Mus. Catalogue. Four other coins, of the same type, all without date, two coined at Káhirah ; two doubtful.

No. 5. (Fig. IV.)—Dimashk; year 740.

Obv.—

الله
وما النصر الا من عند
لا اله الا الله محمد
رسول الله ارسله
باليهدي و دين الحق

Size, 1.05; weight, 116.5.

Rev.—Area, within circle—

ضرب بدمشق
السلطان الملك الناصر
ناصر الدنيا و الدين محمد
بن الملك المنصور سنة
اربعين و سبعمائة

This is very similar to No. 500, Brit. Mus. Catalogue, of Káhirah mint.

Seventeen more of this type, 15 being of Káhirah, two dated 739, and one 741. One of Dimashk, date illegible, and one of doubtful mint of the year 741.

All these are probably of the 2nd and 3rd reigns of this Mamluk.

EL-MANŞOOR SEYF-ED-DEEN ABOO BEKR, 14th Sultan.

No. 6. (Fig. V.)—El-Káhirah; year 742.

Obv.—As No. 5.

Rev.—

ضرب بالقاهرة
السلطان الملك
سيف
المنصور الدنيا و الدين ابو بكر
الملك الناصر محمد سنة اثنين
و اربعين و سبعمائة

Size, 1.05; weight, 114.

There are no coins of this Mamluk in Brit. Mus. Catalogue. Both legend and date are plain.

No. 7. (Fig VI.)

EN-NÁŠIR SHIHÁB-ED-DEEN AHMAD, 16th Sultan.

El-Káhirah; year 742.

Obv.—

الله
وما النصر الا من عند
لا اله الا الله محمد
رسول الله ارسله باليهدي
و دين الحق ليظهره علي
الدين

Rev.—

ضرب بالقاهرة سنة اثنين
السلطان الملك الناصر
شهاب الدنيا و الدين احمد
بن الملك الناصر محمد
و اربعين و سبعمائة

Size, 1; weight, 107.5.

No coins of this Sultan are given in Brit. Mus. Catalogue.
This is a fine one with distinct legend and date.

Es-SALIḥ IMĀD-ED-DEEN ISMĀEEL, 17th Sultan.

No. 8. (Fig. VII.)—El-Káhirah ; year 745.

Obv.—As No. 7

Rev.—

ضرب بالقاهرة
السلطان الملك الصالح
صهاد الدنيا و الدين اسماعيل
بن الملك الناصر محمد خمس
و اربعين و سبعماية

Size, 1·05 ; weight, 107·5.

Another similar, dated 7[4]3.

This seems quite the same as No. 529, Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

EL-KÁAMIL SEYF-ED-DEEN SHAABÁN, 18th Sultan.

No. 9. (Fig. VIII.)—Dimashk ; year 746.

Obv.—As No. 5.

Rev.—

ضرب بدمشق
السلطان الملك الكامل
سيف الدنيا و الدين شعبان
بن الملك الناصر محمد
سنة مت و اربعين
و سبعماية

Size, 1 ; weight, 81·5.

One similar. El-Káhirah ; year 747.

No. 10. No mint ; year 7[4]6.

Obv.—As No. 9.

Rev.—As No. 9, but in addition—

المنصور قلاون

No. 11. (Fig. IX.)—Dimashk ; year 746.

Obv.—As No. 9, with in addition—

Rev.—As No. 10.

Rev.—

ليظهرة

Size, 1 ; weight, 149·5.

Three similar without dates ; two of El-Káhirah mint.

No gold coin of this Mamluk is described in the Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

These three varieties are, as far as I know, new.

EL-MUDHAFFAR SEYF-ED-DEEN HAJEE, 19th Sultan.

No. 12. (Fig. X.)—Dimashk ; year 747.

Obv.—As No. 7, with in addition—
Rev.—
tion—

كله

ضرب بدمسق
السلطان الملك المظفر
سيف الدنيا و الدين حاجي
بن الملك الناصر في شوال
سنة سبع و اربعين
[و سبعماية]

Size, .95; weight, 99.5.

This coin is similar to No. 546 of Brit. Mus. Catalogue, except that شوال is written instead of الحجه. This is the only instance in this coinage in which the month of the year is given.

Another of the same mint and year.

No. 13. (Fig. XI.)—No mint; no year.

Obv.—Area, in circle—

الله

وما النصر الا من عند
لا اله الا الله محمد
رسول الله ارسله بالهدى

Margin illegible.

Size, .95; weight, 138.5.

Rev.—Area, in circle—

السلطان

الملك المظفر سيف
الدنيا و الدين حاجي
الملك الناصر محمد

Margin illegible.

Six coins similar to this. Apparently a new variety, the name of the mint cannot be made out on any of them, but the general appearance of the coins leads me to think them of Dimashk.

EN-NASIR NASIR-ED-DEEN HASAN, 20th Sultan.

No. 14. (Fig. XII.)—El-Kahirah; year 752.

Obv.—

Rev.—

الله

وما النصر الا من عند
لا اله الا الله محمد
رسول الله ارسله بالهدى
و دين الحق ليظهره عالي
الدين كله

ضرب بالقاهرة

السلطان الملك الناصر
ناصر الدنيا و الدين حسن بن
الملك الناصر محمد سنة اثنين
و خمسين و سبعماية

Size, 1.1; weight, 115.5.

Nine similar to this, all of the same mint and dated 751, 7-2, 751, 752, 751, 752, 75-, - -2, 7- -.

These coins are all of the first reign of Násir Hasan (A. H. 748—752). There are none of the kind in the Brit. Mus. Catalogue, nor any in gold which can be with certainty attributed to the first reign of the Sultan.

No. 15. (Fig. XIII.)—Dimashk; year 758.

Obv.—As No. 5.

Rev.—

ضرب بدمشق
السلطان الملك الناصر
ناصر الدنيا و الدين حسن
بن الملك الناصر سنة تمان
و خمسين و سبعين

Size, .95; weight, 93.

This is similar to No. 560 of Brit. Mus. Catalogue, except in the position of the date on the reverse.

Twenty more coins similar to this, viz.:—

Of Dimashk mint; years 760, 760, 760, 7- -, 760, - --, 756, 75-, 757, 75-, 7- -, 7- -, 7- -, - - -, -57, 7- -.

Of Káhirah mint; years 7- -, -5-, - - -.

No mint legible; year 7- -.

No. 16. (Fig. XIV.)—El-Káhirah; year 756.

Obv.—As No. 14.

Rev.—

ضرب القاهرة سنة ست
السلطان الملك الناصر
ناصر الدنيا و الدين حسن بن الملك
الناصر محمد الملك المنصور
و خمسين و سبعين

Size, 1·5; weight, 121.

This corresponds to No. 558 of Brit. Mus. Catalogue. Forty-one more similar coins, viz.:—

Of Káhirah mint; years 758, 760, -5-, 75-, - -7, - - -, 75-, 75-, - - -, - - -, 762, 757, 7- -, 757, 76-, 756, 75-, - - -, - -8, 7- -, 75-, - -7, 757, 7-2, - - -, -58, 757, 7-9.

Of Dimashk mint; year 7- -, -2, 76-.

Of Iskendereyyeh mint; years 7- -, 756, - - -, 76-, - - -.

No mint legible; years - - -, -56, - - -, 7- -, - - -.

No. 17. (Fig. XV.)—Dimashk ; year 748.

Obv.—As No. 14.

Rev.—

ضرب بدمشق
السلطان الملك الناصر
ناصر الدنيا و الدين حسن بن
مولانا السلطان الشد
الملك الناصر سنة ثمان
وأربعين و سبعمائة

Size, 1·05 ; weight, 159.

This fine coin, it will be seen, is of the first year of the first reign of the Sultan. It appears similar to No. 562 of Brit Mus. Catalogue.

Four others of the same type, viz.:—

Of Dimashk mint ; year - - 7 and - - -.

Of unknown mint ; year - 5-, - - -.

No. 18.

Obv.—As No. 15.

Rev.—As No. 16.

Three of Dimashk ; year 760.

One of Káhirah ; year illegible.

No. 19. Mint unknown ; year 756.

Obv.—As No. 15.

Rev.—

السلطان الملك الناصر
ناصر الدنيا و الدين حسن بن
الملك الناصر سنة ست
و خمسين و سبعمائة

This is similar to No. 15, except in arrangements of lines.

ES-SÁLIH ŞALÁH-ED-DEEN SÁLIH, 21st Sultan.

No. 20. (Fig. XVI.)—El-Káhirah ; year 753.

Obv.—As No. 14.

Rev.—

ضرب بالقاهرة
السلطان الملك الصالح
صلاح الدنيا و الدين صالح
بن الملك الناصر محمد سنة ثلاث
و خمسين و سبعمائة

Size, 1·05 ; weight, 111.

This is quite the same as No. 555, Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

Eight others of the same mint of the years 754, 754, 752, 753, 753, 754, 753 754.

No. 21. (Fig. XVII.)—Dimashk; year cut off.

Obv.—As No. 14, without the *Rev.*—As No. 20, except date.
last line.

Size, .9; weight, 78.5.

EL-MANSOOR SALAH-ED-DEEN MOHAMMAD, 22nd Sultan.

No. 22. (Fig. XVIII.)—El-Káhirah; year 7[6]2.

Obv.—As No. 14.

Rev.—

ضرب بالقاهرة سنة اثنتين
السلطان الملك المنصور
صلاح الدنيا والدين محمد بن الملك
المظفر حاجي الملك الناصر
وسبعينية
.....

Size, 1.05; weight, 124.

Similar to No. 570, Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

Nine more of Káhirah mint; years 7-- , 7-3, 7-2, 76-, 764, 76-,
76-, 7-4, - - 4.

Two of Dimashk mint; years - - 3, 7-3.

Five of Iskendereyeh mint; years - - 4, 7-4, - - -, - - 4, 7-2.

One of unknown mint and date.

No. 23. (Fig. XIX.)—Dimashk; no year.

Obv.—As No. 14.

Rev.—

ضرب به مسقى
السلطان الملك المظفر [صورة]
صلاح الدنيا والدين محمد بن
الملك المظفر حاجي الملك
الناصر محمد بن قلاون

Size, .95; weight, 88.

There is nothing like this coin in the Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

EL-AŞHRAF NÁSIR-ED-DEEN SHAABÁN, 23rd Sultan.

No. 24. (Fig. XX.)—El-Káhirah; year 766.

Obv.—As No. 14.

Rev.—

ضرب بالقاهرة سنة ست
السلطان الملك الأشرف
ناصر الدنيا والدين شعبان بن حسن [بن]
الملك الناصر محمد بن قلاون
وستين و سبعينية

Size, 1.2; weight 101.

This is similar to No. 576 of Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

Forty-eight more of Káhirah mint; of years 77-, 7-3, -78, -71, 77-, 7--, 766, 76-, 772, --3, 77-, 767, 77-, 77-, 765, 771, 766, 771, 7- -, 77[8], 77-, 77-, 767, 77-, 776, 7-2, --7, 778, 77[2], 7[66], 771, 776, 77[3], 7-7, 77-, 77-, 7-7, 776, 7-7, --3, 77[8], 7-7, 7-5, 77-, 7-7, and two without date.

Twenty more of Dimashk mint; of years --5, --7, --8, 7-4, 7-5, 7- -, --7, 7- -, 7--, 771, --6, 7--, 7-6, 7- -, 76-, and five without date.

Twenty more of Iskendereyyeh mint; of years 777 (Fig. XXI.), 7-6, 767, 76-, 777, (Fig. XXII), 7-5, 77-, 767, 777, 773, --5, 77[8], 775, 777, 777, and five without date.

Fig. XXI.: Size 1·1; weight 151·5. Fig. XXII.: Size, 1·1; weight, 124.

Thirteen more without legible mint; of years 77-, 77-, 7- -, 767, 76-, 77[5], 7- -, 7- -, 7- -, 7- -, and three without date.

No. 25. Mint obliterated; year 7--.

Obv.—As No. 14, with in addition—
Rev.—

* * *

السلطان الملك الاشرف
فاصر الدنيا و الدين شعبان بن حسن بن
الملك الناصر محمد بن الملك
المنصور قلاون
و سبعينية

One other of the same.

This corresponds to No. 579, Brit Mus. Catalogue.

No. 26. No mint or year.

Obv.—As No. 14.

Rev.—As No. 24, but that instead of the first line there is the beginning of the legend of the obverse.

الله
وما النصر الا من عند

One other of the same.

No. 27. (Fig. XXIV.)—No mint; year 77-.

Obv.—As No. 14, but below *Rev.*—As No. 26.

last line—

و سبعين و سبعينية

Size, 1; weight, 113.

EL-MANSOOR 'ALA-ED-DEEN 'ALEE, 24th Sultan.
Dimashk ; year 77-.

No. 28.

Obv.—As No. 25.

Rev.—

ضرب بدمشق
لسلطان الملك المنصور
علاء الدنيا والدين علي
بن السلطان الملك الأشرف
شعبان بن حسن بن الملك الناصر محمد
سبعين و سبعينية

Size, .9 ; weight, 140.

Fourteen similar of Dimashk mint, of the years --8, - -8, --8,
- -8, - 80, 7-- , --8, 7-8, and six without date.

Twelve of illegible mint, of years 77- (Fig. XXIII.) 77-, 7--,
7--, 7--, 77-, 77-, 77-, 77-, 7--.

No. 29. Dimashk ; year 780.

Obv.—As No. 28.

Rev.—As No. 28 ; but in
the first line—

سنة احد (sic.) و تمانين

No. 30. (Fig. XXV.)—El-Káhirah ; year 781.

Obv.—As No. 14.

Rev.—

ضرب بالقاهرة سنة احد
السلطان الملك المنصور
علاء الدنيا والدين علي بن الملك
الاشرف شعبان بن حسن محمد فلان
و تمانين و سبعينية

Size, 1·05 ; weight, 109·5.

This is the same as No. 609 of Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

Nineteen more of a like pattern, viz. :—

Of Káhirah ; years 777, 77-, 7-8, 777, 777, 781, 78-, 77-, 781,
78-, 781, 778, 77- ; one without date.

Of Dimashk, year 7-7.

Of Iskendereyeh ; years 781, 77-.

No mint legible ; years 778, 77-.

Ayyoobes.

No. 31. A coin of En-Nasir Salih-ed-deen Yoosuf ibn Ayyoob, 1st Sultan of the line of Salih-ed-deen (A. H. 564-589). I could not make out the date, but it was similar in appearance to No. 243, Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

Size, .8; weight, 63.5.

No. 32.—A large very much worn coin of the last Khalif of Al-Abbas I think, but I could not read the legend.

Persian—Monguls.

ULJAITU, 8th Khan.

No. 33.

Mint and year doubtful.

Obv.—Area within ornamented six foil— *Rev.*—Area, within ornamented seven foil—

الله	ضرب
لا اله الا	خلي دولة المولى السلطان
محمد	الاعظم على رقاب
رسول الله	الايمان غياث الدنيا والدين
علي ولی الله	اوچایتو سلطان محمد
	خلد الله ملکه

Margin—

اللهم صلي على محمد و علي و الحسن
والحسين و علي و محمد و جعفر و عيسى Margin, in spaces between
و علي و محمد و علي و الحسن و محمد
seven foil and outer circle.
ضرب | -- | - - | سنن | اربع (?) | | |

Size, .85; weight, 63.5.

This is similar to No. 128 of Brit. Mus. Cat. of the year 714.

ABOO-SA'EED, 9th Khan.

No. 34.

Tebreez; year 731.

Obv.—Within eight foil—

Rev.—Area, within ornamented octagon—

محمد بن	ضرب
الله	السلطان الاعظم
لا اله الا	ابو سعيد بهادر خان
محمد	خلد الله ملکه
رسول الله	تبريز
مثیان	

Margin in space within outer circle.

ضرب | تبریز | فی | منه | احد و | تلثین | وسبع | ماية

Size, .9; weight, 128.

This is similar to No. 174, Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

Mudhaffaree.

SHÁH SHUJÁ.

No. 35. (Fig. XXVI.)—Sheeráz; year 777.

Obv.—In quartrefoil within *Rev.*—Area, within ornamental quartrefoil and circle—

ابو بكر

ضرب

امیر المؤمنین

ع الله عا

والسلطان المطاع

الله محمد

شاه شجاع خلد

رسول الله

الله ملكه

شیراز

٣٦٧

Margin, in spaces within,
circle—

--- | سبع و | سبعين | وسبعينية ---

Siz, .9; weight, 66.5.

No gold coin of Sháh Shujá is given in the Brit. Mus. Cat., but the legend on this is similar to that on silver ones in the collection.

Jelair.

HOSEYN.

No. 36. (Fig. XXVII.)—Baghdád; year 7--.

Obv.—In circle and ring of *Rev.*—Area, in six pointed dots— star—

الله

السلطان

ع الله عا

الاعظم جلال الدين

بغداد

حسين بهادر

محمد

Margin, between points within

ضرب

a circle—

رسول الله

ملكه | ٣٦٧ | ملکه | ٣٦٧

• •

Size, .9; weight 159.

The word I read حسین is not very distinct, and there appears to be something above it, but the character of the coin and the words جلال الدین confirm the reading.

Doubtful.

No. 37. (Fig. XXVIII.)—Kerman; 781.

Obr.—Area in square within two circles—
Rev.—In circle with outer ring of dots and curves—

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا

الْمَلِكُ

اللهُ مُحَمَّدٌ

الْأَعْظَمُ الْعَادِلُ

رَسُولُ اللهِ

قَطْبُ الْحَقِّ وَ الدِّينِ

In spaces between square and circle—

مُحَمَّدٌ ضَرَبَ كُرْمَانٍ

ابو يکر | عمر | عثمان | علي

Margin between two circles, divided into four by dotted loops at corners of inner square—

ضَرَبَ مِيمَنَةً فِي صَفْرٍ أَحَدٍ وَ ثَمَانِينَ
وَ سَبْعَمِائَةً

Size .85; weight, 171.5.

The date is rather doubtful, but comparison of the six specimens in this collection confirms the reading 781.

No. 38. (Fig. XXIX.)—Kirman; year 768 (?)

Obr.—Area as No. 37.

Rev.—In circle and outer circle of dots—

Margin divided by four dotted circles—

ضَرَبَ كُرْمَانٍ فِي .. * ثَمَانِينَ
وَ سَبْعَمِائَةً

الْمَلِكُ
الْأَعْظَمُ عَبْدُ الْحَقِّ
وَ الدِّينِ ضَرَبَ مُحَمَّدِيَّةً كُرْمَانٍ

Size, .85; weight, 170.

Five others of this kind.

I feel very uncertain about this date. The appearance of the coin and the character of the letters are so like the preceding one that no doubt they are of the same dynasty. From A. H. 746 to 795 the Mudhaffarees were the reigning princes at Kerman, but these coins not having the word مظفر on them, I think they cannot be

of Mohamed-ibn-El-Mudhaffar, the first prince of that line, and looking at No. 35 of this collection, they are more certainly not of Sháh Shújá. I do not know to whom to attribute them.

Note.—I am indebted to Dr. Dymock, for much help in deciphering these two coins, as well as many others in the silver series.

No. 39. Venetian Sequins.

- 2 of Bartolomeo Gradenigo, elected Doge A.D. 1339.
- 8 of Andrea Dandolo, elected Doge A. D. 1343.
- 3 of Giovani Dolfin, elected Doge A. D. 1356
- 1 of Lorenzo Celsi, elected Doge A. D. 1361.
- 6 of Marco Cornaro, elected Doge A. D. 1365.
- 13 of Andrea Contarini, elected Doge A. D. 1368.

The sequins of the last named Doge show a very considerable falling off in workmanship. The name on some of them is Andr Otarno, and on others Andr Otareno in badly formed letters. Perhaps the imitation of the Venetian ducat had already begun then. It was for a very long time the chief European gold coin current in the East, and so no doubt was early imitated to meet the demands for it as currency in trade, as we find was the case with Athenian and other Greek money in a still earlier age. The sequin still holds its own as the favourite coin for ornaments in this part of India. A fine old one is much valued by the natives, and a greater proportion of the women, coolies and others, one sees in the streets of Bombay, have one or more rudely made and usually very thin imitations hung round the neck. They are still made in quantities in the city, a thin piece of gold being hammered between rudely cut iron dies of the shape of hammer heads.

The reasons of its extensive currency and popularity in India were no doubt at first the fineness of its metal, the touch being 99·7 of pure gold in 100 parts; its novelty, being the first modern European coin which came to India in any quantity; and to some extent its beauty. Its continuing in chief favour as an ornament, although now of debased form and poor metal, must be accounted for by the love of the people to adhere to the customs and traditions of their ancestors (and especially is this so with the women of all classes). That, as the particular turn of the turban and fold of the dhoti or sari is carefully preserved without change through generations, so is the neck ornament, without knowing or thinking why of such a shape, size, or kind.

Genoa.

No. 40. (Fig XXX.)

Five Quartardo.

Obverse—In centre the Griffo, or Castle of Genoa, with three towers surrounded by a wreath. Marginal legend—DVX IANVENSIVII QVARTV. C.

Reverse—In centre a cross with surrounding wreath. Marginal legend—CONRADV. REX ROMANORVM. P.

Note.—Conrad III., when king of the Romans, gave permission to the Republic to coin their own money in December 1138, when the first dinaro was struck. On the obverse is seen the Griffo or Castle of Genoa, with the three towers, and the king's name; on the reverse is the cross, the banner of Genoa, and the inscription "Janua."

The earliest appearance of the gold coinage of Genoa was in the first half of the thirteenth century, and was valued at eight soldi, and called the Genovino d'oro. It was sub-divided into two smaller gold coins, viz. a quartardo of two soldi and an ottavo of one. This latter coin was very small, and but little used. There was also a terzaro or third of a Genovino d'or, coined by some of the Doges in gold, having only the inscription DVX IANVÆ, and no ordinal numbers.—(Bent's *Genoa*.)

Pathan Kings of Delhi.

ALA-UD-DIN MUHAMMAD SHAH.

No. 41.—Three coins similar to No. 130, Thomas' Pathan kings, and No. DCCI. of Marsden. Margin of each partly gone, but on one the date 704 can be read.

GHIÁS-UD-DEEN TUGHLAK SHAH.

No. 42.—Three coins similar to No. 159, Thomas' Pat. kings; of dates 721, 723 and 7- - .

No. 43. (Fig. XXXI.)

Obv.—Area within circle—

المرکل على

الله ابوالمظفر

تغلق شاه

Rev.—

فياث الدنبا

والدين ناصر

اميرالمومنين

The marginal legends are cut off.

Size, .95; weight, 168.5.

This is, I believe, a new variety of this king's coinage.

MUHAMMAD-BIN TUGHLAK.

No. 44.—A very perfect coin, similar to No. 174 of Thomas. Deogir; year 727.

No. 45.—A coin similar to No. 176 of Thomas, and DCCXVI. of Marsden. Delhi; year 735.

No. 46.—A coin similar to No. 179 of Thomas; year 73[3].

Coin struck in the name of the Egyptian Khalif.

No. 47 (Fig. XXXII.)—Six coins similar to No. 212 of Thomas, bearing the name of Al Mustakfi Billah, Abú al rabi'a Sulaiman. One dated 741, the years of the others uncertain.

No. 48.—Twenty-five coins as No. 213 of Thomas, bearing the name Al Hákím b'amr illah, Abú al Abbás Ahmad.

No. 49 (Fig. XXXIII.)—One coin bearing the name of the same Khalif.

Obv.—

Rev.—

أحمد
العباس
ابو

الله
الحاكم
بامر

Size, .75; weight, 167.

This appears to be a new variety of gold coin, the legend and arrangement of the name are the same as on a copper one, No. 218 of Thomas.

MĀHMUD SHAH BIN MUHAMMAD SHAH BIN TUGHЛАK SHAH.

Two coins similar to that described and figured by Mr. J. G. Delmerick, Beng. Asiat. Journ., Vol. XLIII., page 97, attributed by him to a child, the real or pretended son of Muhammad bin Tughlak, who was placed upon the throne at Delhi on the death of that king, but deposed and probably killed by Firuz Shah on his reaching the capital from the field. Mention is made of three specimens being known. I myself have another, which I got from a Bombay Marwari.

Obv.—

Rev.—

يَمِين
امير المؤمنين
غِياث الدِّين وَالدِّين
ابو المظفر

محمد شاه
بن محمد شاه بن
تغلشاه السلطان
٧٥٤

Size, .8; weight, 170.

FIRUZ SHAH.

No. 51.—Two coins similar to No. 224 of Thomas.

Both without margins, and one of very inferior workmanship.

No. 52.—One coin similar to No. 225 of Thomas.

SILVER COINS.

The great majority of the silver are pieces of Mamluk coins, with them a good many Persian and some few Armenian. They were all much encrusted with verdigris from the brass vessel in which they had been, and some too were partly covered with a hard green coloured lac or wax which was very difficult to remove with turpentine or spirits ; in some cases it had to be burnt off in a lamp. It is curious that there should be no Delhi coins amongst the silver when there was such a proportion of golden coinage of that sort in the hoard.

PERSIAN.

No name.

No. 1. (Fig. I.)—Samarkand (?) ; year 750.

Obv.—Centre within square—

الله الا
الله محمد
رسول الله

Margin within circle and circle
of dots divided by ornamental
work into four spaces corre-
sponding to sides of square—

Rev.—Within double circle
with intervening one of
dots—

السلطان
الاعظم العادل
راج الدنيا و الدين
خلد الله ملكه

و بع الآخر | ضرب سمرقند [د] | سنة خمسين | و سبعمائة

Size, 1 ; weight, 61·5

The name of the mint is not distinct, but appears to be Samarkand.

No name.

No. 2. (Fig. II.)—No mint ; year 770.

Obv.—Area circular—

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم
لا إله إلا الله
محمد رسول الله
رسول بالهدى

Margin within a plain and
dotted circle—

أبو بكر عمر عنمان علي رؤسا الافق
والإيمان رضي الله عنهم

Rev.—Figure of a man sitting
cross-legged in oval space at top
of area.Area circular except piece cut
off at top—

السلطان الملك
الأفضل ضرغلم
الدين العطاء عاي

Margin as obverse.

الامام المعظم بالله امير المؤمنين
ضرب * سبعين و سبعماية

Six of this kind. No other dates legible.

Size, ·1; weight, 29.

No. 3. (Fig. III.)—No name; no mint; year 775.

Obv.—As No. 2.

Rev.—Figure of a pigeon above area, otherwise as No. 2.

Six specimens; dates 773, 774, 775.

Size, ·1; weight, 29.

No. 4. (Fig. IV.)—Bagdad (?); year 774.

Obv.—As No. 2.

Rev.—Figure of a fish above area. Area as No. 2; pellet below fish—

السلطان الملك
الافضل ضراغم
الدين العباس
بن علي

Margin within a plain and dotted circle—

المعظم بالله امير المؤمنين ضرب بـ[ا]د
سنة اربع و سبعين و سبعماية

Thirty-two specimens.

Other years 773, 775, 77[8].

Size, ·1; weight, 29.

No. 5. (Fig. V.)

Obv.—As No. 2.

Rev.—Area, circle with piece cut off at the bottom—

علي
السلطان الملك
الافضل ضراغم
الدين العباس

Lion, passant, to right with pellet below.

Margin—

المعظم بالله امير المؤمنين ضرب [عيمونه]
سنة اربع و سبعين و سبعماية

Twenty-one specimens. Other years 775, 777, 778.

Size, .1; weight, 28.

No. 6.—One similar to No. 5, but the inscription on area of reverse upside down.

No. 7.—Two similar to No. 5, but the date in numerals ٧٧٥.

No. 8.—(Fig. VI.)

Obv.—As No. 2.

Rev.—

علي
السلطان الملك
الافضل ضراغم الدين
العباس الملكه
المجاهد

Margin—

الامام المعظم بالله
امير المؤمنين ضرب (ميمازه)
سنة خمس و سنتين و سبعينية

Forty-one specimens. Other years 764, 767, 7-8.

Size, .1; weight 31.

No. 9 (Fig. VII.)—

Obv.—Area in circle with four
nipple-like points—

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم
لا إله إلا الله
محمد رسول الله
باليهدي و دين
الحق

Rev.—Area in circle as ob-
verse—

يوسف
السلطان الملك
المؤيد مفرد الدين
داود بن الملك
المظفر

Margin—

الامام المعظم بالله امير المؤمنين
ضرب [بالمئه ٠ ٠ ٠] سنة سبع
سبعين سبعينية

Margin illegible.

Size, .1; weight 29.

Five specimens. Other year 775.

No. 10. (Fig. VIII.)

Obv.—Area in circle as No. 9.*Rev.*—Area in circle—

عمر
السلطان الملك

المعظم (or المظفر) شمس الدين
يوسف بن الملك

المصادر

Margin—
Margin— ابوبكر عمر عثمان علي
Margin— * * * * *

Size, 1'; weight, 26.5.

Three specimens; no other date.

No. 11. (Fig. IX.)

Obv.—Area as No. 9, but a star in centre—*Rev.*—Area in circle, star in centre—

Margin, divided by 4 stars, as
No. 2.

داود
السلطان الملك
سنة [?] المجهاد الاسلام
علي بن الملك المؤيد

Margin—
Margin— الاعام المعظم بالله امير المؤمنين
ضرب بغداد سنة اربع تسعين سبعينية

Size, 1' to 1.1'; weight 24 to 26.

Eleven specimens; no other dates visible.

The mint place of this coin seems very distinct, except about the fourth letter; it looks as if the word were spelt بعـدد without an !

No. 12. (Fig. X.)

Obv.—Area in crenated circle—*Rev.*—Area in crenated circle—

As No. 9.

* * الحسين
السلطان الملك
المقال عفراء الدين
والدين محمد بن

* * *

Margin illegible.

Margin—

• • • المنصور ضرب
ستة ثلات (ثمين) سبعمائة

Size, .1; weight 24.

The name of the mint appears to be written
بـ مـ حـمـه
No. 13. (Fig. XI.)

Ov.—Area, within ornament-
al circle—

Rev.—Area, in ornamental
circle—

As No. 9.

(?) مت

السلطان الملك
الاشرف محمد
الدين اسماعيل
بن [المغالي]

Margin illegible.

Margin—

• • • المعظم بالله * * * * *

Four specimens; on one of them the date 783 can be made out.

No. 14. (Fig. XII.)

Ov.—Area within six foil—*Rev.*—Centre in six foil a pair
of fishes head to tail.

الله

Inner circle—

بسم
الرحمن الرحيم
لا اله الا
الله

• • داود السلطان الملك * * *

Inner circle within plain ring—

Outer circle—

محمد رسول الله ارسله بالهدى
و دين الحق

الامام المعظم بالله امير المؤمنين

Outer circle within plain ring
and ring of dots, illegible.

ضروب بغداد ثمان * * سبعمائة

Size, 1·3 to 1·95; weight, 32.

Eleven specimens.

No. 15. (Fig. XIII.)

<i>Obr.</i> —Area and inner circle as No. 14.	<i>Rev.</i> —Area in eight foil ; lion rampant.
Outer circle—	Inner circle—
ابوبكر عمر عثمان علي ليظهوره عالي	السلطان الملك المجاهد مفرد الدين
* * * *	علي بن داود
	Outer circle—
	الامام المعظم بالله امير المؤمنين
	ضرب *** سنة ثمان وثمانين سبعمائة

The name of the mint place appears to be با لمجده

Forty-seven specimens.

Size, 1·2 to 1; weight, 30 to 28.

Other dates 7-5, 7-3, 7-7.

No. 16. (Fig. XIV.)

Obr.—As No. 15.

Rev.—Centre in eight foil : a bird.

Inner and outer circles as
No. 15.

Twenty-two specimens.

Size, 1·1 to 1; weight, 21 to 27.

Dates 7-7, 7[4]5, 7[4]0, 7[4]6.

On some the bird looks like a duck, on others a crane, on others a peacock.

No. 17.

Obr.—As No. 15.

Rev.—In centre in eight foil a squatting figure of a man.
Legends illegible.

Four specimens.

I am unable to attribute these coins to their proper dynasty. Dr. Dymock, to whom I am indebted for reading the coins, considers them without doubt to be those of Sultans of Baghdad who enjoyed power after the decadence of the Caliphate. Shams, he says, is Shams-ud-daula Bakhtiyar, a Deilamite whose name frequently occurs in Arabic historical works. The name of Daood the Seljukian is also well known. Meimuna, he adds, means Baghdad, which

has other such names; in full it is Bab-al-Maimuna, the gate of fortune. But the type of coinage is not like that of the Seljuks, nor is the title. The general appearance approaches to the Ayyoo-bees, and the title **السلطان الملك** is only found as far as I know on the Mamluk. The dates too are plainly between 750 and 788, that is a period just preceding the subjection of the country by Taimur, a period of petty dynasties which sprung up with the decadence of the Mongul Empire.

We cannot but be struck by the good workmanship of some of the coins, that with the single fish for instance.

Mudhaffarees.

SHAH SHUJA.

No. 18. Yezd; 777.

Obr.—Within curved border—

مکون
عزاله الا
الله محمد
رسول الله
عثمان

Rev.—Within ornamental
eight foil—

بالله
المعتقد و السلطان
ضرب
المطاع شاه شجاع
يزد
خلد الله ملكه
و سبعما يه

Two specimens.

Nearly similar to No. 672, Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

No. 19.

Obr.—As No. 18, but letters
squarer.

Rev.—As No. 18.

Ornamented between lines
with looped squares.

No. 20. (Fig. XV.)—Sheeraz; no year.

Obr.—In quartre foil and
outer circle as No. 16.

Rev.—Within ornamental
square within circle—

* ضرب *
* امير المؤمنين *
والسلطان المطاع
شاه شجاع خلد *
الله ملكه
شیراز *

No. 21.—Eydej; no date.

Obv.—In eight foil with ornamental loops between lines—

*	*	
		لا اله الا الله
		ضرب
*	محمد	*
*	ایدج	*
		رسول الله
		عثمان

No. 22.—Sheeraz; no date.

Obv.—In ornamental hexagonal grain, within circle—

		لا اله الا
		الله محمد
		رسول الله
In segments within circle—		
* * عثمان علي *		

No. 23.

Obv.—In square within circle—

As No. 22.

In segments within circle.

* *	* *	*
عثمان علي *		

Jelairs.

SHEYK OWEYS.

No. 24. (Fig. XVI.)—Mint and year obliterated—

Obv.—Within eight foil—

* *	* *	
*	محمد	*
		رسول الله
*	عثمان	*

Size, .7.

Rev.—In ornamental hexagonal grain—

بالله	
المعتصم و السلطان	
ضرب	
المطاع شاه شجاع	
ایدج	
خلد *	

Rev.—In eight foil within circle—

امير	
المؤمنين و السلطان	
ضرب	
المطاع شاه شجاع	
شیراز	
خلد الله ملکه	

In segments within circle—

خ	
سبعمائة	

Rev.—As No. 22.

Rev.—Within square—

السلطان الاعظم	
شيخ اویس بهادر	
خان خلد ملکه	

Doubtful.

No. 25. (Fig. XVII.)—Kerman; year 781.

Obr.—In circle—*Rev.*—As obverse.

الله الا الله	الله امما
محمد رسول الله	* * * *
علي ولی الله ضرب	المؤمنین محمد *
کرمان سنه احد	علي *
تمینین سبعما به	ال رسول الله

This coin, the date of which seems pretty certain, although the writing is bad, is, I suppose, that of some chieftain reigning at Kerman at that time, but probably only for a short period as the Mudhafarees were then in power at that place.

Mamluks.

EDH-DHAHIR RUKN-ED-DEEN BEYBARS, 5th Sultan.

No. 26. Káhirah; year 6-8.

Obr.—

ضرب بالقاهرة	الصالحي
لا اله الا الله	السلطان الملك
محمد *	الظاهر رکن الدین والدین
ببرس *	ببرس *

Lion to left.

Another (Fig. XVIII.) with end of reverse legend.

ببرس قسيم امير

Size, .85.

Another of smaller size with parts of the same legends.

No. 27.

Obr.—

Illegible.

Rev.— * * * ** * * * رکن
الملك الظاهر قسيم

Lion to left, and in front of it a triangle with balls at the points.

No. 28.

Obr.—*Rev.*—As No. 26.

* [ا]لا مام الم[ستنصر] *
 ابو القسم احمد بن
 الامام الظاهر
 امير

This appears to be like No. 481 of Brit. Mus Catalogue, a coin of Káhirah. It bears the name of the contemporary Abbásée Khalif of Egypt, El-Mustansir, whose date is 659—661.

No. 29.

Obr.—As No. 26, but mint obliterated.

Rev.—

* * * الملك
 وكن الدنيا و الدين
 قسيم امير المؤمنين
 Lion to left.

No. 30. (Fig. XIX.)—Káhirah; no year.

Obr.—*Rev.*—

* * * * * الا مام المستنصر با لله امير المؤمنين القا * * * * [قسيم احمد] * * * * الظاهر	بالقا هرة السلطان الملك الظاهر * * * بدرس قسيم امير الم * Lion to right.
---	--

The lion on this coin is of very inferior design, looking more like a hare. I do not know of any other coin of this Sultan with the lion to right.

EL MANSOOR SEYF-ED-DEEN KALÁ-OON.

No. 31. (Fig. XX.)—Dimashk; no year.

Obr.—*Rev.*—

ضرب بد[مسق] لا اله الا الله محمد رسول الله قلدون الا	* * * * * السلطان الملك المنصور سيف الد[نیا] * * * *
---	---

Size .9; weight 34.

Four specimens.

EL-NÁSIR NÁSIR-ED-DEEN MOHAMMAD, 10th Sultan.

No. 32. (Fig. XXI.)—Hamah ; no year.

*Obr.—**Rev.—*

فَرِبْ حَمَّة	قَلْوَن
عَالَهُ إِلَّا اللَّهُ	السُّلْطَانُ الْمُلَكُ
مُحَمَّدُ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ	[النَّاسُ] صَرْ نَاصِرُ الدُّنْيَا
* * * * بال	* * مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ الْمُلَكِ

* * *

Eight specimens.

Size, 9 and 8.

This coin is similar to No. 510, Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

ES-SÁLIH-’IMÁD-ED-DEEN ISMÁEEL, 17th Sultan.

No. 33. (Fig. XXII.)—Dimashk ; year 744.

*Obr.—**Rev.—*

عَالَهُ إِلَّا اللَّهُ	السُّلْطَانُ الْمُلَكُ
مُحَمَّدُ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ	الصَّالِحُ عَمَادُ الدِّينُ *
أَرْسَلَهُ بِالْهَدِيِّ وَ [دِين]	الْدِينُ اسْمَاعِيلُ بْنُ الْمُلَكِ
الْحَقُّ أَرْبَعُ وَ أَرْبَعَ [بِنَ]	النَّاصِرُ مُحَمَّدُ [ضَرْبٌ]
وَ سَبْعَمِائَةٍ	بِدِيمَسْقٍ

Size, '9; weight, 44.

Similar to No. 530, Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

Two others of this kind and mint, one dated [7]45.

One more with اسْعَن above reverse, as in No. 535 Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

EL KÁMIL SEYF-ED-DEEN SHAABÁN, 18th Sultan.

No. 34. (Fig. XXIII.)—Dimashk ; year [7]47.

*Obr.—**Rev.—*

وَمَا النَّصْرُ *	*
عَالَهُ إِلَّا اللَّهُ	* * *
مُحَمَّدُ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ	الدِّينُ سَيفُ الدُّنْيَا وَ
*	شَعْبَانُ سَنَةُ سَبْعَ أَرْبَعَينَ

Size, '8; weight 27.

This is the same as No. 544 in Brit. Mus. Catalogue, in which سَبْعَمِائَةٍ is at the top of the reverse inscription.

En-NÁSIR NÁSIR-ED-DEEN HASAN, 20th Sultan.

No. 35. (Fig. XXIV.)—Tarabalus; no year.

*Obv.—**Rev.—*

ضرب بطرابلس	* * *
لا اله الا الله	الناصر ناصر الدين
يد رسول الله	والدين حسن بن عمرو [ن]
*	* * *
بالهوى	ال

Size, .8; weight, 34.

Another has حسن above legend on reverse.

Another has ضرب نعماه above obverse.

Es-SÁLIH SÁLÁH-ED-DEEN SÁLIH, 21st Sultan.

No. 36. (Fig. XXV.)—Hamah.

*Obv.—**Rev.—*

ضرب حماة	* * *
لا اله الا الله	السلطان ال
محمد رسول الله	صالح ملاح
* مسل بال *	والد

Size, .7; weight, 33.

El-ASHRAF NÁSIR ED-DEEN SHAABAN, 23rd Sultan.

No. 37.—There are many coins and pieces of coins of this Sultan. The pieces are mostly roughly rounded, and looking as if cut so with a chisel. Most of them have شعبان بن حسن or part of these words on them. This size of the largest is .65; weight 34.5.

Armenian.

No. 38. (Fig. XXVI.)

*Obv.—In centre—**Rev.—In centre.*

Figure of king on horseback, crown on head, sceptre in hand.	A lion passant to right.
Annulet above horse's head, tail, and behind forefeet.	Cross above the lion.

Margin—In ill-formed old Armenian letters—	Marginal legend as on obverse.
---	-----------------------------------

LEVON TAKÁRAR, *i.e.*, King Leo.

Three specimens.

No. 39. (Fig. XXVII.)

Centre of obverse and reverse as No. 38.

Legend in old Armenian character, CONSTANTIN TAKÁRAB,
i.e., King Constantine.

Two specimens.

No. 40.

Centre of obverse and reverse the same as No. 38.

Legend—KARAK SIS, *i.e.*, Town of Cis.

No. 41.—Centres the same.

Legend—KARAK KARS, *i.e.*, Town of Kars.

No. 42.—Centre the same.

Legend—Chamal, *i. e.*, Newly-born, or Infant.

No. 43. (Fig. XXVIII.)

Eight coins similar to No. 38, which have been restruck with the die of a Mamluk Sultan. The character of the Mamluk letters on all is like that on the coins of about the 10th Sultan, and the one figured in the plate is undoubtedly from the die of that Sultan, No. 516, Brit. Mus. Catalogue.

Obr.—

Rev.—

* * ما النصر *	الله
* * عَلَهُ الْمَلْكُ وَالْحُكْمُ	وَمَا النصر *
* * وَلَهُ الْعِزَّةُ	سُلْطَانُ الْمُلْكِ
* * وَالْحُكْمُ لِلَّهِ	الله * وَالْحُكْمُ

which is peculiar in that the legend on both obverse and reverse begins with

الله وَ مَا لَنْصَرَ إِلَّا مَنْ عَنْهُ

I was for some time puzzled by these coins; I thought they were Armenian, but could not make out the legends by the ordinary Armenian alphabet. My friend, Dr. da Cunha, then came to my help, and found a young Armenian staying with the Armenian priest in Bombay, who could read them, and the above are his readings, translated first into Konkani language by a Goanese servant, and then written in English by Dr. Da Cunha. It is strange that some of the coins should bear the name of the city only, whilst others

have that of the king on both sides. Perhaps the coins were struck during one of the interregna which were not uncommon during the period of the dynasty to which they seem to belong. The word 'Chamal' only, meaning a newly-born infant, on one coin, is very curious. One supposes it refers to some posthumous child. The coins no doubt belong to the time of the Rhoupenian dynasty, which lasted from 1080 to A.D. 1393, reigning in Cilicia with their capital at Lis.

Note.—The following is a list of the kings of this race, taken from Mémoires Historiques et Géographiques, sur l'Arménie, par M. J. Saint-Martin :—

A.D.	A.D.
1080. Rhoupen I. (the Great).	1269. Leon III.
1095. Constantin I.	1289. Haython II. (1st reign.)
1100. Thoros (Theodore) I.	1293. Thoros III.
1123. Levon (Leon) I.	1295. Haython II. (2nd reign.)
1138. Interregnum.	1296. Sempad.
1144. Thoros II.	1298. Constantin II.
1168. Thomas.	1300. Haython II. (3rd reign.)
1189. Meleh.	1305. Leon IV.
1174. Rhoupen II.	1308. Oschin.
1185. Leon II. (the Great).	1320. Leon V.
1219. Zabel (Isabella).	1342. Constantin III.
1220. Zabel and Phillip.	1343. Guy.
1222. Interregnum.	1345. Constantin IV.
1224. Haython (Aiton) I.	1363. Interregnum.
	1365. Leon VI. Prisoner in Egypt
	1375; died in Paris 1393.

There were four kings named Constantin and six named Leo in this dynasty. To which did these coins belong? As I have said some of them are double struck; the die of a Mamluk Sultan being over that of the Armenian king, showing both that the latter is of earlier date than the former, and that in all probability the stamp of the conqueror is over that of the conquered.

History tells us that in A.D. 1267, during the reign of Aiton I., there was a fight with the Egyptians, and that during the reign of Leo V., A.D. 1320 to 1340, Cilicia was invaded by the army of the same country.

As I believe the Mamluk die to be that of En-Násir Mohammad, the Sultan who invaded Armenia during the reign of Leo V.. I

attribute the coins bearing the name Leo to that king, and those marked Constantin to the 2nd king of that name, who reigned from A.D. 1298 to 1300.

It would have fitted in nicely to attribute them to Leo VI., who was carried off prisoner to Egypt in 1375, and his predecessor Constantin IV., the coins without a king's name fitting in well for the interregnum which occurred between their reigns, but the Mamluk die is not of Ashraf Shaaban, the Sultan of that time.

GOLD COINS



to priority. But should the man not have cohabited so long as three years with his wife, she will only receive one-third of a portion or part. A person claiming inheritance must personally appear, substitutes being inadmissible. Heirs to property must assist at, and bear their share of, the charges for obsequies, exceptions being made for those who cannot, from the nature of circumstances, be present. Before property is divided, the debts of the deceased are to be punctually paid, and competent witnesses must be present at the division. It does not appear from the text of the Law Book that any distinction is drawn betwixt property of which a female may be possessed, and that left by a man; both are divided on similar principles. The eldest child, whether male or female, gets the largest share. Should the individual have no parents, grand-parents, or great-grand-parents living, then the portion, or one-third of the real and personal property, which such persons would have otherwise taken, is divided equally, and added to the two remaining portions—the form of first separating the estate into three parts being always adhered to. The same principle regulates the division where there are no claimants to either of the other two shares. A son or daughter having received a marriage-portion from a parent during that parent's lifetime, will not be entitled to share in his estate, unless a paucity of near relatives gives a title thereto. In fact he or she will only, in either supposition, be entitled to such a part of the property as would by law fall to be shared by either, and if the marriage-portion should happen to be less than that part, the deficiency is made up at the division of the property.

A Burmese Buddhist is not restricted to one wife, polygamy being authorised by law. Concubinage is also common; hence it is enacted that one of a couple who have long cohabited without having been legally married, survives the other, he or she will only be entitled to claim a small part of the estate of the deceased depending on the generosity of surviving relatives. A man or woman marrying without the consent of parents will forfeit all right to inherit. This principle is extended to other branches. The paternal authority is enforced very strongly in Burma. A person going to a distant country without consent of parents cannot claim any portion of inheritance at their decease; unless it be proved either that he returned to minister to their wants during their illness, or at any rate that he attended the solemnization of funeral rites. It appears, however,

that under lawful and ordinary circumstances a person remaining ten years absent from his country without intelligence being obtained of him, cannot afterwards lay claim to property which if present he might have inherited.

Passing over to the state of widowhood and their property, we see that according to the Buddhist law it does not materially differ from that in England. Widows are not restricted from marrying again. In the event of separation, merely, betwixt husband and wife, the sons remain with the mother, the daughters with the father, on the principle that the man would otherwise be deprived of female assistance in his household. Although no legal restriction is imposed on the widow, yet by a fancied moral one applying indirectly, the more frequently she has been married, the less will her share be of the deceased husband's property. Should she have married a fourth husband, she cannot claim any part of his property at his decease. She is a *pretsiya*, and her alleged incontinence must thus be punished. But she is entitled to her personal property, and to what she had personally acquired during cohabitation—women carrying on petty traffic if they like—and also to the portion which she may have brought to her husband. When a husband dies before consummation, his widow does not take any portion of his estate, nor can either inherit the survivor's property if they have not cohabited for three years. The children, however, take according to law. The crime of adultery invalidates any claim to such property on the part of the wife. But the wife has no recourse against the husband for infidelity. The moral law on this point would seem to make some amends for the deficiency regarding it contained in the Civil Code. It will subsequently be noticed that a man may kill his wife and her paramour if he discovers them together. If a man has three or more wives they will, in the event of his death, share amongst them one-third of his property, the wife who was first married receiving the largest portion, and the remaining wives portions according to their seniority. They will also get one-half share amongst them when they have no father-in-law or mother-in-law alive. But this supposes the inferior wives to have been free, for if slave debtors they are not entitled. When a widow has been twice married, and has had a family by her first husband, should she have a family by her second marriage also, that family will take five shares more than the step-children in the event

of the death of the second husband ; but according to the commentary of Manurâjâ step-children are not allowed to share, since it is supposed that they receive a portion from their father's estate. If there are no children by the second marriage, the step-children are entitled only to one-sixth part of one of the three shares of the estate ; the reason for this rule is not given by the commentary. A widow who marries a widower and bears a family to him, takes the usual third. Should she have no children, she takes one-half of one of the portions. A widow may marry her deceased husband's brother, or the son of the brother, and the converse holds good in the case of a man marrying a deceased wife's sister. Such property as a widow may have personally acquired, or have brought as a portion to her husband, or have received from him as a gift, remains hers under every circumstance ; and will not be taken into account on the division of the deceased husband's property. Marriage is confined within the following degrees of affinity. A subject may not marry within the 7th degree. The forbidden degrees are from parents, included, down to the remotest lineal descendants, and upwards, so that cousins or any one of the same blood may not intermarry.

An absence such as to cause a husband to be considered dead in law, and which is decided on agreeably to particular facts, entitles the supposed widow to receive her portion of his estate and to marry again. But before she and the rest of his relatives can become vested in their right to their respective shares, it is necessary that certain ceremonies shall be performed, and funeral rites paid, as if the husband was dead in fact. When the death of an absentee has been fully ascertained, it is considered a duty imperative on his heir to scrupulously perform his obsequies.

Inheritance of property as regards the priesthood and officers of Government is stated thus. Were the ordinances of Buddha strictly enforced, a *thera* could not inherit property unless it happened to be solely of that description which might serve to supply his very limited wants and restricted indulgences. A priest can only be brought into a court of law as a witness. If he should commit a crime, he is conveyed, or goes before an ecclesiastical Court, where the consistorial chief judges him consonantly with the laws contained in the sacred Pâli Code. If he should be proved to have been guilty of a very serious offence, he is stripped of the yellow sacerdotal mantle, and delivered

over for punishment to the secular arm. An unordained priest may inherit property of any sort, and an ordained one may take real or personal property which may have been bequeathed to him, but he will not be entitled to take the same as inheritance, where no bequest has been made. The converse likewise holds good, since a priest may bequeath property to one, although his relatives and connections cannot inherit it, because in case of his dying intestate, his goods and chattels appertain to the monastery in which he lived and enjoyed the contributions of the pious worshippers. Indeed, should a priest strictly adhere to the rules of his order, his sole property and effects ought to consist chiefly of a few indispensable articles of daily use.

The estates of courtiers and other servants of Government of 10 to 400 fields are inherited by heirs in the same manner which has been described as applicable to the estates of subjects in general, viz., by the three-fold partition. But for civil and military officers of higher ranks bye-laws are in force.

An officer of the rank of minister cannot, it seems, will the whole of his property away. The Government acts here on the supposition that none of its servants are honest, and therefore reserves the right of controlling the distribution of the property of the higher ranks. When an officer of one of the above degrees dies, his estate is realised, and claims entered, in the manner described for estates in general. It is then separated into four portions, one is taken by the king, and the remaining three portions are divided agreeably to the laws relative to property in general, with exception in case of the deceased leaving a widow or widows bestowed on him by the king. A widow who was the gift of the king to the officer receives, at his death, one-half of a share above that taken by another wife. But if the officer received the wife at his special solicitation, she will receive one-half of a share less than the other. By this is meant one-half of the widow's portion. And the portion, so forfeited, will be divided amongst the other widows, or given to one, if there is only one remaining. A widow must have cohabited three years with a husband to give her a title to the portion fixed by law. A neglect on the part of the widow to assist in defraying the expenses attending obsequies creates a forfeiture of her claim. The widow of a public officer who was a gift from the king will receive a larger portion than above stated, in proportion as it may be made

to appear that she had assisted him in his official duties. If she was not a gift from the king, she receives one-fifth less than she would under the above clause; and if she was given by the king at the request of the officer, two-fifths less. The widow being, or having been, a slave debtor to the deceased, will not receive any portion of his estate ; since by virtue of cohabitation with him, she has been emancipated : but her children inherit according to law. A husband, with the consent of his wife, may leave her in the house of any one as a pledge for the payment of a debt, thus constituting her a species of property.

Written as well as verbal testaments are legal, and the law does not interpose to reverse such acts, even should it appear the testator has in the apportioning and alienating of his property infringed the social obligations.

Traitors and rebels are not allowed to inherit property, and they are ejected from what they possess, their estates are forfeited to the king, and their families are reduced to slavery.

Gifts ought to be made in presence of a competent number of witnesses, and relatives have of course the power to protest against such, should they have reason to believe that the bestower is not in a sound state of mind. Under this belief the giver is subjected to three separate examinations. Should doubts exist they are removed according to the law.

As regards slavery we see that the master has all power over his slave excepting that of inflicting death. A Burmese Buddhist may be born or may become a slave. Captives in war, debtors, or persons who have been confiscated by justice can be enslaved. Children of a debtor born during his period of slavery remain slaves after he has purchased his liberty again. One is born a slave when born of a slave mother, and in slavery the children are divided as on a divorce, the master standing in the place of the father. The other children in the same rank belong to the father if he is free, or to his master if he is a slave. But if the intercourse with the female slave was without the consent of her master, the latter takes all the children. Slavery is caused by a failure in payment of debt, and by selling of personal service, which last is always for an unlimited time.

A contract is made either in writing or verbally, but in either case competent witnesses are required to give validity to the deed. A

written contract cannot be entered into for a sum less than four rupees. A creditor must not write out the deed with his own hand, but have it written by a person unconcerned in the transaction. The parties in a contract affix their marks to the bottom of the deed, and then touch them with their open hands before the witnesses. Deeds of sale of land are either committed to paper or made by delivery of the title deeds in presence of witnesses. The interest for money can never exceed the principal; when both are equal, the debt must be settled, or remain as it is, unless another agreement is written out, making the principal and interest a new debt. For pledges a written agreement is made out, which must be sealed in presence of witnesses, and it generally specifies what accidents will be considered as preventing restitution. Sales and transfers of landed property are made by written deeds, or by the delivery of the property and title deeds to the buyer or receiver in presence of witnesses. As regards deposits, however, unless an agreement has been made to the contrary, the owner can demand his property, and receive it from either depositary in absence of one of them.

It is not my intention to produce all the reports on Criminal Law to be met with in the Manusāra, but I shall only point out some of the specific crimes and their punishments.

A husband will stand excused in the eye of the Buddhist law should he kill his wife and her paramour, under circumstances sufficiently decisive of her guilt. But he may not do so, having once allowed the man to escape, and, it may be presumed, where the offender has power on his side, that the inferior will not venture on a step which must end on his ruin. As regards separation and divorce we find, if the parties mutually agree to a separation, the elders of the village or neighbourhood are assembled and a written deed is executed in their presence. A man who elopes with a virgin must afterwards endeavour to effect a reconciliation with her parents and relatives, and should such be effected, it is incumbent on him to perform all ceremonies which are preliminary to a regular and open marriage. A rape committed on a virgin is punished by corporal punishment and fine, if on a child by a severer fine and corporal infliction, and by death if the victim should die.

Before taking final leave of Manusāra's Law Book, I must notice a peculiar circumstance which deserves attention. Every student

of Hindu Law will see from the extracts given in this essay that Manusāra in compiling his dhammasaṭṭham used the Codes of Manu, Yājñavalkya, Nārada, Br̥haspati, and Kātyāyana; exact references to each sloka I shall give in my edition of the work. In order to show that Manusāra used a more ancient version of the Mānavadharmaśāstram than that we now possess in our editions, or better that he copied the Mānavadharmaśātram which is still missing, I quote only two remarkable instances which, treating on the same subject, differ widely in the expressions used, namely, firstly the chapter of competent and incompetent witnesses, Ms. iv. 11-16, corresponding exactly to M. viii. 62-67; Y. II., 69 72; N. I., 5, 34-47.

Manusāradh., Chapter IV.—

अलुब्धनं सदामोहं तयो सकिखपुच्छेय्य ते ।
 असदृश्यं विकिणेय्यं धेनेन वाददासि वा ॥ ११ ॥
 जातिवादं मित्रवादं तथा च कलहवादम् ।
 बहुवादं अतिरोगं जरामहलकानि च ॥ १२ ॥
 कुमारदहराचेव रोपणदूसं नचकम् ।
 गीतकानुभावच्चेव सुवर्णणलोहलंकारम् ॥ १३ ॥
 कंसकरेष्यं पाटुकाकरेष्यच्च आपकटम् ।
 वधच्च दोसवेज्जच्च नपुंसकच्च वेसियम् ॥ १४ ॥
 चित्तविघातं उम्मतरोगं हीनच्च दुष्टिभवतम् ।
 तथा अक्षविकीलच्च महाकोपच्च चोरकम् ॥ १५ ॥
 इत्यगव्यन्तेकतिस न पुच्छेय्य तथा पन ।
 सचे पक्ष अनुजाटं पुच्छितव्यन्ति विहितम् ॥ १६ ॥

Mānavadh., Chapter VIII.—

गृहिणः पुत्रिणो मौलाः क्षत्रविट्शूदयोनयः ।
 अर्थुकाः साक्ष्यमर्हन्ति न ये केचिदनापदि ॥ ६२ ॥
 आप्ताः सर्वेषु वर्णेषु कार्याः कार्येषु साक्षिणः ।
 सर्वधर्मविदोलुब्धा विपरीतांस्तु वर्जयेत् ॥ ६३ ॥
 नार्थसम्बन्धिनो नाप्ता न सहाया न वैरिणः ।
 न दृष्टदोषाः कर्तव्या न व्याध्यार्ता न दूषिताः ॥ ६४ ॥

न साक्षी नृपतिः कार्यो न कारुककुशीलवौ ।
 न श्रोत्रियो न लिङ्गस्थो न सङ्गम्यो विनिर्गतः ॥ ६५ ॥
 नाध्यधीनो न वक्तव्यो न दस्युर्न विकर्मकृत् ।
 न वृद्धो न शिशुर्नैको नात्यो न विकलेन्द्रियः ॥ ६६ ॥
 नारी न मत्तो नोन्मत्तो न क्षुन्तज्ञोपपीडितः ।
 न श्रमार्तो न कामार्तो न कुद्धो नापि तस्करः ॥ ६७ ॥

As competent witnesses on trials may be admitted only these three :—men free from covetousness, men devoted to religious observances, and men well versed in Pâli learning and skilled in sciences,—by which here are meant astrology and arithmetic. But the following 31 must be excluded :—(1) contemners of religion ; (2) debtors,—under the supposition that their poverty lays them open to bribery ; (3) slaves, and near relatives of parties interested in a suit ; (4) intimate friends of parties ; (5) inmates in the house of a party concerned ; (6) idiots, and persons mentally imbecile whether naturally so or from the effects of disease ; (7) those who do not abhor and refrain from the commission of the following cardinal sins, viz., murder, theft, adultery, lying, drunkenness, breaking of prescribed fasts, and lastly, the sin of reclining or reposing on the mat or couch of a priest, a parent, or a spiritual guide, or generally of treating these in a manner in any way disrespectful ; (8) gamesters ; (9) vagabonds, vagrants, persons having no fixed domicile ; (10) executioners, because hardhearted and fearless ; (11) empirics,—we may judge by this term of the degree of importance which the Burmese Buddhist faculty of medicine attach to themselves. The most skillful of the body cannot avoid the charge of arrant empiricism, although had the genius for the science of physics existed, the Buddhists in Burma might have used their text-books, which are of ancient origin, with more advantage to their patients than they have done. There were no schools for medicine in Burma ; and so long as superstition places more faith in astrological mummery than in physics, there is no temptation to lead the practitioner from his easy course, in which study and reflection have scarcely any share ; (12) performers in theatrical exhibitions, their profession being deemed rather disreputable ; (13) hermaphrodites,—I suppose as they cannot be sworn either as male or female ; (14) strolling musicians, and singers ; (15) strolling shampooing doctors ; (16) women

of bad fame ; (17) blacksmiths,—it is rather singular to find so important a class of handicraftsmen excluded from a right of this nature, but it would seem that the exclusion is founded on the belief that most of the blacksmiths are dishonest ; (18) persons labouring under any loathsome and incurable disease. Here superstition has overbalanced reason. For the Buddhist cannot otherwise account for this exclusion than by affirming that those labouring under a cruel malady are suffering just punishment due for offences committed in a prior state of existence ; (19) personal enemies to accused persons or to one or both parties in a suit ; (20) children under 7 years of age ; (21) persons whose age exceeds 70 years, probably from supposed imperfection of memory ; (22) traducers of the characters of others, same as liars ; (23) persons labouring under any sort of temporary derangement of mind—whether violent passions are included is not specified ; (24) shoemakers are excluded for the same reason that blacksmiths are, because of mean degree in society,—perhaps the prejudice came from Hindūstān, where it prevails in force ; (25) beggars, since open to corruption from their poverty ; (26) braziers ; (27) persons convicted of theft ; (28) obstetricians ; (29) those who use incantations and sorcery ; (30) persons who give medicine to create abortion ; and (31) pregnant women, because their minds are not at rest, and they are subject to sudden affections mental and bodily. But with the consent of both parties such persons must be admitted : this is a settled law.*

Finally I quote as a second instance Ms. ix. 69-71, giving the rules as regard boundary disputes, the content of which answers exactly to M. viii. 246-252, Y. II., 150-153 ; N. ii. 11, 3-6, but without having the same reading :—

पादपोचेव वैलुच कूपो पाक्षवरणी नदी ।
नेतकं सोभ्य रच्छाच पञ्चतो मह सक्षवरम् ॥ ६९ ॥
बालुकदृलं अंकारं गोसीसं अट्टि खाणुकम् ।
दारुयध्मोति एतेन कला सनञ्च दल्हकम् ॥ ७० ॥
खेतञ्च मरियादन्तो एतं धापेय्य नो चे तम् ।
गामजेवुक्त्राहणभिक्षुनं तं सञ्जानिय ।
मरियादेय्य नो चेवं न तदन्तोगाधं भेव ॥ ७१ ॥

* The translation is according to the Burmese commentary of Manurajā.

Mānavadhi., Chapter VIII.—

सीमावृक्षांश्च कुर्वित न्यगोधाश्वथार्किंशुकान् ।
 शाल्मलीन्सालतालांश्च क्षीरिणश्चैव पादपान् ॥ २४६ ॥
 गुल्मान्वेणूंश्च विविधाज्ञभीवल्लीस्थलानि च ।
 शरान्कुञ्जकगुल्मांश्च तथा सीमा न नश्यति ॥ २४७ ॥
 तडागान्युदपानानि वाप्यः प्रख्यवणानि च ।
 सीमासाधिषु कार्याणि देवतायतनानि च ॥ २४८ ॥
 उपच्छन्नानि चान्यानि सीमालिङ्गानि कारयेत् ।
 सीमाज्ञाने नृणां वीक्ष्य निखं लोके विपर्ययम् ॥ २४९ ॥
 अश्वनोस्थीनि गोबालांस्तुषान्भस्मकपालिकाः ।
 करीषमिष्टकाङ्गाराज्ञकराबालुकास्तथा ॥ २५० ॥
 यानि चैवं प्रकाराणि कालाङ्गुर्मिने भक्षयेत् ।
 तानि सन्धिषु सीमायामप्रकाशानि कारयेत् ॥ २५१ ॥
 एतैलिङ्गेन्येत्सीमां राजा विवदमानयोः ।
 पूर्वभुक्त्या च सततमुदकस्यागमेन च ॥ २५२ ॥

“Trees, lakes, wells, pools, streams, mounds of earth, large pieces of stone, bones, tails of cows, bran, ashes, dried cowdung, bricks and tiles, charcoal, pebbles, sand : by such marks the judge may ascertain the limit between two parties in litigation. Should there be a doubt, even on the inspection of those marks, recourse must be had, for the decision of such a contest, to the declaration of priests and elders of towns who can give evidence on the limits. If the boundary cannot be ascertained by those, let the king, knowing what is just, make a boundary line between the lands in dispute : this is a settled law.”

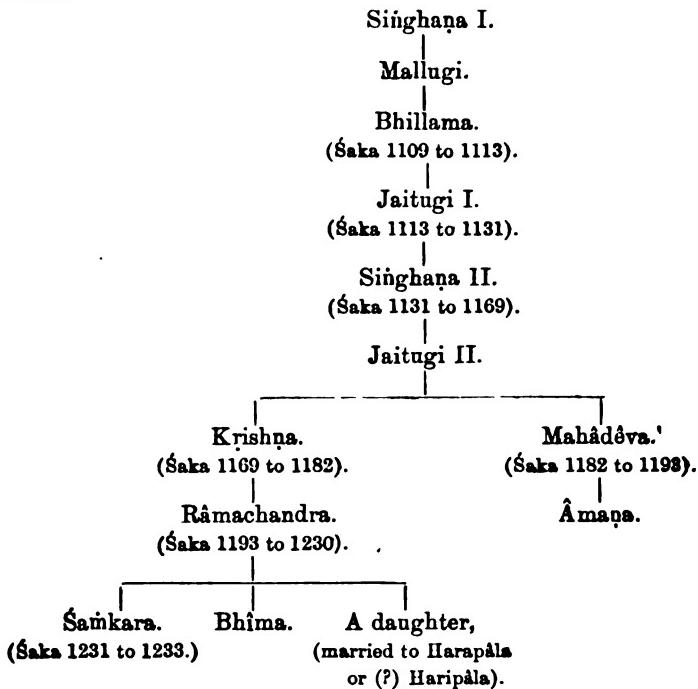
ART. XIV.—A Copper-plate Grant of the Dévagiri-Yādava king Singhara II. By J. F. FLEET, Bo. C.S., M.R.A.S.

[Read 12th December 1882.]

THE accompanying inscription is from a copper-plate grant which was found, in 1880, buried in the ground at the back of the temple of the goddess Uḍachamma at Haraḷahalli, on the Tuṅgabhadrā, in the Karajgi Tālukā of the Dhārwād District. The original plates, from which the lithograph has been prepared, belong to the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.

The plates are three in number, each about $11\frac{1}{2}$ " high by $7\frac{1}{2}$ " broad. The edges of them were fashioned into rims, to protect the writing, and the inscription is fairly well preserved and legible, except in a few places where the surfaces of the plates have been badly corroded by rust. When the plates were first found, though the inscription itself was legible enough, nearly all the letters were filled up with rust ; the excellence of the accompanying lithograph is due to the pains bestowed on clearing out the letters by Mr. H. Cousens, of the Archaeological Survey. The ring on which the plates were strung is about $\frac{2}{3}$ " thick and $4\frac{2}{3}$ " in diameter ; it had not been cut when the plates came into my hands. The seal on the ring is circular, about $2\frac{1}{2}$ " in diameter. When it first came into my hands, it was broken on the right side only ; since then, and before the accompanying lithograph of it was made, it has received a fracture on the left side also. It has a beaded edge, which I have not met with in any other similar seals. And the emblems on it, in relief on the surface of the seal itself, are Garuḍa, kneeling in the usual attitude with his hands joined, and facing full front, with the sun over his right shoulder and the moon over his left shoulder. The three plates weigh $471\frac{1}{2}$ tolas, and the ring and seal $48\frac{1}{2}$ tolas ; total, $519\frac{1}{4}$ tolas. The characters are Nāgari. The language is Sanskrit from line 1 to 91 and in lines 99 and 100 ; the intermediate portion, describing the boundaries of the grant, is Old-Canarese.

The grant is one of the time of Siṅghāṇa II. of the Yādava dynasty of Dēvagiri,—the modern Daulatābād near Aurangābād. The following is the complete genealogy of this dynasty, with dates, as established by the inscriptions now known and by the chronicle of Ferishta¹ :—



The present inscription is dated in Śaka 1160 for 1159 (A.D. 1237-8), the Hēmalambi *savivatsara*,² on the seventh day,—whether of the bright or of the dark fortnight, is not stated,—of the month Phālguna. The genealogical portion commences with Mallugi. His grandson, Jaitugi I., is said to have conquered the Andhra king. The next name is that of his son Siṅghāṇa II., of whose prowess and conquests,—the latter including the Gaulas, Hammiras, and Chōlas,—the usual hyperbolic description is given. His viceroy, for the southern part of his kingdom, was Vichāṇa, whose father

¹ Briggs' translation.

² By the Tables in Brown's *Carnatic Chronology*, Śaka 1160 was the Vilambi *savivatsara*, and the Hēmalambi or Hēvilambi *savivatsara* was Śaka 1159.

Chikka, elder brother Malla, and wife Amāṅganā or Āmāṅganā, are mentioned, and "who conquered with ease the Rattas, the Kādambas who were glorious in the Koikānas, the Pāṇḍyas who shone at Guttī, the turbulent Hoysācas, and other kings, and set up his pillars of victory in the neighbourhood of the river Kāvērī." The inscription then describes the rivers Vārāhī and Tuṅgabhadrā, to the banks of the former of which Vīchāna had come in order to free himself from his debt to the *mānes* of his parents. It then mentions a shrine of the god Sōmanātha, on the banks of the Vārāhī, and two other *liṅga* shrines of the gods Chikkadēva and Mahādēva established, in rivalry of it, by the *Dandēśa* or *Dandānāyaka* Bīcha or Bīchidēva or Bīchirāya, who purchased land on the north of Sōmanātha for the purpose of establishing gods and Brāhmans there. It then mentions a feudatory of Singhana II., the *Dandēśa* Chikkadēva, who established a colony of Brāhmans; and then proceeds to record that, on the date specified above, with the consent of the village-headman Rāmagauṇḍa and of the *Mahāmandalēvara* Jōyidēva of the Gutta family or lineage of Chandragupta,⁸ Chikkadēva presented to these Brāhmans thirty shares, each measuring two *nivartanas* of land, at the village of Rittigrāma. The names and *gōtras* of the Brāhmans are next given, and the share of each of them, and then the boundaries of the land bestowed. The mention, in the definition of the boundaries, of the river Varadā,—the modern Wardā, which flows into the Tuṅgabhadrā, about six miles to the north of Haraṭahalli,—shows that the Rittigrāma of the inscription is the modern Hale-Ritti, six miles to the east of Karajgi. The other names of villages mentioned among the boundaries,—Eleguttūr, Kariyakol, Ereyakol, and Kumbāragol,—cannot be traced on the map. Nor can I at present identify the river Vārāhī.

⁸ See *Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts*, p. 6, note 4.

*Transcription.**First plate.*

[•] Om Namaḥ Śivāya | (||) Rig=ōddhiṣṭya Mēnu(ū)nnaṭa-kalāś-yutām su(śū)ra-
 sad-darpan-āṁkta(ka)in tārā-mukt-ākshat-adlyayam śāsi-chashaka-la-
 sach-chihna-kastu(stū)rik-ādhyayām | dhātri-pūtraṇī dhṛi(dhru)vām
 kamala-talō nyastavān=yas=triśloki-nirmāṇθ marīgal-īrthaṁ
 [•] sa jayati vibhav-ālambana[ḥ*] Śrī-Varāhāḥ | (||) Asti prithvītā-
 bhū(bhū)ga(gb) prathitē Yādav-āhvayāḥ | vāṁśh Kṛishṇa-lasān-muktiāmāni-sūti-
 r=akaintakah | (||) Ahūbd=Āmaragāngyēras=tasmīnn=aamara-vikra-
 mal yad-yaśo-mauktika-maṇḍ[ḥ*] śv(śū)bhūra-dabhran=atū(bhū)n=nābhaḥ ||
 kulu tasmin=Mallungir=vikram-īkarah | karāla-karavīl-ā-
 li(si)-vigr(ga)lad-rūja-māṇḍalāḥ || Vīras=tasmād=sjanī jagatām bhāgadhē-
 [•] y-aika-mūrtir=dvāśa=fourya-tribhuvana-gurur=Bhillaṁ-lakṣṇipālah | yat-kō-
 pagni-prasīmara-sikh-āldham=adyapi dṛipyat-kshat-āranyām
 kalayā n=aiva rōhaty=akharbam | Samajani Jai(tu)giदेवas=tasmīn=bhu-
 ja-bhujaga-nihita-bhūchakrah | sangrāmē=Midhra-uripiśa-prakalita-vikra-
 ma-krīpā-bhīgah | (||) Karākṛīmīta(ta)-dharaḥ padm-ūllāśi dashprēkshya-māndalaḥ |
 bhūbhījn-mauli-stha-pādō=bhūt=tasmāt=Śiṅgo(gla)na-bhūskaraḥ | (||) Āśā-vēlāmīḍa-shāndai-
 r=jagati vijaghatā bhīgī-rajēna bhījū kāmphaḥ kūtair=vipetē patapa-
 titi naga-grāmañīnām jughūrṇē arphobhi=vāriḍhīnām vadhirita-bhu-
 vanām bhūrī-bhēr-virāve=rāśā-rāśīndhraḥ pupurē kathām=ivā ripsvō
 yatra yatrā-dhūrīṇē || Yad-dhāṭī-ghōṭa-dhūlī-bhāra-bhēya-chakite-dvi-
 pa-nātha-praṇītā=nāgā[n*] tvām paśa(śya) Gaua tvām=avahaya(rs) chayām vira-Hā-
 mira tāvata(t) Chōla tvām ratna-bhīr-īnāṭa-nara-nikarām pāya yāvat su-ve-

[18] 18 dāvā-Sri-Singhana[*h**] syād=iti nripa-bhavane vṛttaḥasti vedaṁti ||
 [19] Virśāsē hr̥daya-śpamāni para-bala-dhva[in*]sē kṛitānti-kṛitiṁ budhau nūtana-
 [20] Vishnugupta-sadriśām vittā sya(su)bhāgy-ātmakām labdh[v*]ā bhṛitya-nibh-ātmā-
 [21] puṇya-nichayām Śri-Vichanām dākshinākshonī-ṛaya-pāda[in*]nidhā-

Second plate; first side.

[22] ya suchirāt=svasthō-bhavat=Singhanah || Hēlā-sādhitā-Rāṭṭa-Koṅkāna-ka-
 [23] nar-Kādaīmba-Gutt[y*]-δ(u)llasat-Pāṇḍy-δdā(māra-Hoṣa(yṣa)η-adi-vivi-
 [24] dha-kshmāpāla-bhūmaṁdāśah | vidy-ānn-ūdaka-kañcīryak-ābhaya-dha-
 [25] r̥-dān-aika-sarv-Ātithih Kāvērī-nikaṭa-pratiṣṭhita-jayastañbhō= |
 [26] bhavad=Vichanāh Yad-dān-ūdaka-vāhini-parisāḥ jivanti dēva-dri(dru)mā-
 [27] s=īat-tīr-ḍpalatām bra/vra)jānti sahasā chintāmani-s(śre)na yāyah | tat-pāṭha-h-
 [28] parināma-saṁbhūrīta-resām jagdhv=āiva dūrvāñkuraīn svar-dhēnuḥ sahaj-ābhi-
 [29] jāty-aniyataīn r̥māñtham=ābhyaśā(ya)ti || Śo(sō)=yāin Chikk-ātmejō Mallānūje-
 [30] ē-oh=Āmāñgana-ਪatih apanētum=r̥ṇām pitrō=Vārāhī-t̥ram=aikshatas || Snā-
 [31] nād=Gā[in*]gā vitarati dr̥(di)yām kīm tataḥ pāne-mātrād-dāta[m*] multim jhagiti
 [32] jagatām Tuṅgabhadrā vinidrā | yat-tīr-āimbhā-kāṇa-lava-jushān tyakta- | . . .
 [33] . . imātā v=ēkibhūtis(tan) bhuvī Hari-Harān sā kathā(thys)tē kē(kai)h ||
 [34] Mākāñdaiḥ pikā-nañdāñaiḥ(r=) ma(=ma)dhn.kar-ḍdbhūtaiḥ prashn-ākareiḥ drā-
 [35] kēdāraih kalam-āñkura-ā(δ)ṣuṅka-suṅkais=[t*]air=nālikēr-ādibhiḥ | . . .
 [36] ksh-ailā-phalaps(pū)ra-nāgālatikā-rāmbh-ākshu-pūga-drumair=Va(v)ṛhāḥi var-

* The double *r* of the original, here and in ll. 98 and 97 below, is intended to represent the Dravidian *oɔ*, *r̥*.

• This *Anusvara* is superfluous.

* One syllable at the end of this line, and the first syllable and the consonant of the second syllable at the beginning of the next line, are unintelligible.

Concordia, 1860-1861
1862-1863
1864-1865
1866-1867
1868-1869
1870-1871
1872-1873
1874-1875
1876-1877
1878-1879
1880-1881
1882-1883
1884-1885
1886-1887
1888-1889
1890-1891
1892-1893
1894-1895
1896-1897
1898-1899
1900-1901
1902-1903
1904-1905
1906-1907
1908-1909
1910-1911
1912-1913
1914-1915
1916-1917
1918-1919
1920-1921
1922-1923
1924-1925
1926-1927
1928-1929
1930-1931
1932-1933
1934-1935
1936-1937
1938-1939
1940-1941
1942-1943
1944-1945
1946-1947
1948-1949
1950-1951
1952-1953
1954-1955
1956-1957
1958-1959
1960-1961
1962-1963
1964-1965
1966-1967
1968-1969
1970-1971
1972-1973
1974-1975
1976-1977
1978-1979
1980-1981
1982-1983
1984-1985
1986-1987
1988-1989
1990-1991
1992-1993
1994-1995
1996-1997
1998-1999
2000-2001
2002-2003
2004-2005
2006-2007
2008-2009
2010-2011
2012-2013
2014-2015
2016-2017
2018-2019
2020-2021
2022-2023
2024-2025
2026-2027
2028-2029
2030-2031
2032-2033
2034-2035
2036-2037
2038-2039
2040-2041
2042-2043
2044-2045
2046-2047
2048-2049
2050-2051
2052-2053
2054-2055
2056-2057
2058-2059
2060-2061
2062-2063
2064-2065
2066-2067
2068-2069
2070-2071
2072-2073
2074-2075
2076-2077
2078-2079
2080-2081
2082-2083
2084-2085
2086-2087
2088-2089
2090-2091
2092-2093
2094-2095
2096-2097
2098-2099
2100-2101
2102-2103
2104-2105
2106-2107
2108-2109
2110-2111
2112-2113
2114-2115
2116-2117
2118-2119
2120-2121
2122-2123
2124-2125
2126-2127
2128-2129
2130-2131
2132-2133
2134-2135
2136-2137
2138-2139
2140-2141
2142-2143
2144-2145
2146-2147
2148-2149
2150-2151
2152-2153
2154-2155
2156-2157
2158-2159
2160-2161
2162-2163
2164-2165
2166-2167
2168-2169
2170-2171
2172-2173
2174-2175
2176-2177
2178-2179
2180-2181
2182-2183
2184-2185
2186-2187
2188-2189
2190-2191
2192-2193
2194-2195
2196-2197
2198-2199
2199-2200

[८०] manā(lām) vi(bi)-ss(ss)ṁrātsar-**đ** Phālgruṇa-māś
 [८१] sýa(syā) Śva(svā)sti Samasta-prusā[t̄] j-i-sahitānī* śriman-mahāmānīlātēsví(svā)raṁ Ujjā-
 [८२] yannīpurabā(vu)r-ādhīśvarānīm Chāniṇḍu(dru)gupti-Ānvaya-prabhā(va)īm Guttakula-tila-
 [८३] ka[m*] śrimūj-Jyotiđv-Ānumatiñ lāvībhā(bdhvā) rāja-purushair=ānainguli-prē-
 [८४] kshānīyānī suryanamasyānī kṛita(tvā) hirany-đaka-pūrvakeśī nānā-gotr-
 [८५] bhyō brūhmanođbhuyas=triṁśad-vrittīḥ prātiđā [||*] Tatr-eśhālī[n*] nāma-gotr-a-vira-
 [८६] ranā || Vasishṭhīn-gotrānām Nārāyaṇabhattiđpādhyāyānām
 [८७] dv& vṛitti! tad-gotrānām Appuṇabhattiđpādhyāyānām Vishnubha-
 [८८] tīpādhyāyānām Hariharabhattiđpādhyāyānām Raṅgabhattiđ-
 [८९] pādhyāyānā(nā)m Vāsudēvabhattiđpādhyāyānām Sūmanāthabhattiđpā-
 [९०] dlyiyānānī pratyṄkam=đk-aikā vṛittiḥ ||() Kāśyapa-gotrānām Vi-
 [९१] shnubhattiđpādhyāyānām dv& vṛitti tad-gotrānām Janārdana-bhattiđ-
 [९२] pādhyāyānām Sarasvatī((i)bhattiđpādhyāyānām Rāmadē-

Third plate.

[९३] rabhātđpādhyāyānām pratyṄkam=đk-aikā vṛittiḥ | Bhārad vā-
 [९४] ja-gotrā(trā)nām Apaṇabhattiđpādhyāyānām dv& vṛiti-
 [९५] ttī tad-gotrānām Kēśavabhattiđpādhyāyānām Deva-
 [९६] ṣabhattiđpādhyāyānām Hariharakramitānām pratyṄkam=đk-ai-
 [९७] kā vṛittiḥ | Vīśvāmitra-gotrā(trā)nām Lakshmīdhara-bhattiđpādhyāyā-
 [९८] nām Mādhavarabhattiđpādhyāyānām Vajjanāthabhattiđpādhyāyā-
 [९९] nām pratyṄkam=đk-aikā vṛittiḥ | Vishnuvriddhī-gotrānām Narasim-

* The idiom, though not the language, is Canarese here, down to line 68.

[88]	habhattōpādhyāyānām' m=ēkā	vrittiḥ	[*]	Ātreya-gotrāñām	Sṛīrañ-
[89]	gabhattōpādhyāyānām' d=θ	vrittiḥ		Śaṅkhāyana-gotrā(tṛi)cām	Nara-
[90]	simhabhattōpādhyāyānām' m=ēkā	vrittiḥ		Kau[in*]dinya-gotrā-	
[91]	nām' Vishnuubhatōpādhyāyānām' m=ēkā	vrittiḥ		Vāsaa-gotrāñām'	
[92]	Saṅkarabhatōpādhyā(yā)nām' m=ēkā	vrittiḥ		Srīvatsa-gotrāñām'	
[93]	Sivadēvabhaṭṭōpādhyāyānām' m=ēkā	vrittiḥ		Vīśvāmītra-gotrāñām'	
[94]	trāñām' Mahāṇabhattāñām'=ēkā	vrittiḥ		Bharadvāja-gotrāñām'	
[95]	Banabhattāñām' Vatsa-gotrāñām'	Vāsundēvabhaṭṭāñām'	ch=aikā	vṛittih	Īśad-Brahma-
[96]	puri(r)-kshētra-simā	yathā		Vāradeyim	Śīva-mudreya
[97]	vottim	paduvalu	kallu	Elegutūra	kallu
[98]	allim	paduvalu	dāriyin	badagruñu	badagruñu
[99]	ge	kallu	terikallu	mūḍalu	Kuñibārū ¹⁰ gerru ¹¹ y-oja-
[100]	lu	Kariyakolānu	allim	āgnīyadalu	kallu allim
[101]	allim	badagalit	Elegutūra	paduvalu	paduvalu
[102]	mūḍalu	Kumbārū ¹² gojana	dāriyin	Freyakolāna	muggnddeya
[103]	va(ba)liya	sālu-kallu	kelage	badagruñu	badagruñu
[104]	mudreya	kallu	Śaṅkaradēvara	Vāmanā-mudreya	kallu allim
[105]	shtि-rva(va)rs̥ha-sahasrāni	vishṭāyin	para-dattāñām	teinkalu	halla([lh])da
[106]		jīyatā	vā yō	Vāndoyin	paduvalu
[107]		kīrmīḥ	harōta	Vāmanā-	vasuñiharūm
[108]					sha-
[109]					Sīravas
[110]					no[mah]

¹⁰, ¹¹, ¹², and ¹³. In each case, the Anuvṛtta is superfluous.

¹⁴ From here, down to the end of line 93 certainly, and perhaps further, the present inscription has been engraved over a cancelled passage.

¹⁵, ¹⁶, and ¹⁷. See note 4 above.

III.

80

85

त्वं द्वौ पा धाया वा प्रति
 नु हो त्रां सं प्य एष
 त्वं तद्वौ त्रां क्षेरा र
 त्वं द्वौ पा धाया त्रां हपि
 त्वा वृत्रिः विश्वा भिन्न ग्रात
 द्वामा धेव त्वं द्वौ पा धाया
 त्वं प्रत्येक मैके का वृत्रिः
 द्वौ पा धाया त्रां क्षेरा का
 ग ज्ञ द्वौ पा धाया त्रां हपि
 त्वं तद्वौ पा धाया त्रां हपि
 त्वं विश्वा त्वं द्वौ पा धाया
 एक उत्तम द्वौ पा धाया धाया
 त्विन्द्रुदे व त्वं द्वौ पा धाया
 त्वं तद्वौ पा धाया हपि

दुलासाधित्वैदृष्टोक्
दुमन्त्रदेहसूपादितिष्ठि
द्युग्नोदरककरीकान्यै
तिकटप्रतिष्ठितत्त्वत्त्वं तो
हिकीपरिसंयोगी वंतिदेवदुग्ना
विंतानिष्ठिमेलायांतर्णाय
चदुर्वाकुपस्त्वैवत्तदहारी
निरारोहितिक्षाक्षक्षमलाक्षु
पित्रीर्वाहीतीरमेक्षत्रा॥क्षा
कः प्रातमात्राद्यात्मक्षमिमणिटि
यांनंकालत्तुर्णुषात्मक्ष
एहरोसाकृतिक्षाते कें
कुर्याद्वीतैः प्रसुनोक्षिः
कासंतोन्तिक्षमणिः इ

IIa.

30

35

40

देस्त्रुर्विजार्कवत्तवसिंष
तक्षोद्देवज्ञोम्भस्यांडे
ध्यानिपालनुजडलभिति
यादानेकस्तवोपिधिःका
नवंद्वीरतःायद्वित्तिक्ष
स्त्रीराघवन्नांबहुत्रिस
पुष्टिणामसन्ततप्रस्ता
लात्प्रतिष्ठामैष्मध्यमन्त
स्त्रामाम्भापातःापत्तेन्दु
ताद्युष्टितरतिद्विचंकि
द्विग्रन्त्यग्निद्वित्रिव्याधि
तित्तिभालवेक्षित्रिव्याधि
स्त्रक्रांडेःपिकूर्तद्विष्ठ
स्त्रद्विष्ठकलभाकुरासु
स्त्रापालापारात्तामाल

दुलासाधित्पूर्वद्वया द
दुमचदोसंप्रादिक्षिति
द्वाद्वादककंतीकान्यै
तिकटप्रतिष्ठितन्यैत्तो
देवीप्रियसंतीवंतिदेवदुग्ना
विन्नन्नन्निम्नायांन्नतायां
वद्वर्वाकुचस्वर्वेत्तद्वाहारा
निरारोहंरिकाल्लक्ष्मिभूत
पित्रोर्वादीतीरभैक्षतास्ता
यःषात्मातावात्मक्षिंजगिदि
यानःकालवृत्तुषात्मक्षे
रहर्गासाकृत्यक्षित्ते केऽ
क्षेषोद्वीतेऽप्सुत्तोक्षिप्तेऽ
र्षाक्षस्तोनिकेषादितिः द

PROCEEDINGS OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

(JANUARY TO JULY 1881.)

The monthly meeting of the Society was held in the Library Room on Monday, the 24th January 1881; Col. J. H. White, R.E., *Vice-President*, in the Chair.

R. B. Sedgwick, Esq., H. Cleveland, Esq., Damodhar Thackersey Muljee, Esq., Col. C. S. Sturt, G. B. Spring, Esq., and Wilson Bell, Esq., were elected members of the Society.

Read a letter No. 238, dated 20th January 1881, from the Under-Secretary to Government, General Department, stating that the Collector of Ahmedabad has reported to Government that there is lying in his office a white marble slab bearing a Persian inscription, and said to have been taken from the gate of a building called "Dasturkhan's Sarai," at its demolition several years ago, and inquiring if the Society would like to have the slab for its Museum; also forwarding copy of the Persian inscription, together with its translation in English.

The Secretary intimated that it is arranged to get the slab for the Museum.

Mr. Rehatsek then read a paper on the "Alexander Myth of the Persians."

On the motion of the President, a vote of thanks was passed to Mr. Rehatsek for his paper.

Several reports and other works presented to the Society were laid on the table.

The monthly meeting of the Society was held in the Library Room on Thursday, the 17th March 1881, Surgeon-Major J. Pinkerton, M.D., *Vice-President*, in the chair.

J. F. Muir, Esq., C.S., and W. J. Best, Esq., were elected members of the Society.

The Secretary showed Indo-Sassanian or Balustrade copper coins received from the Deputy Commissioner of Rohtak. These coins were found in the ruins of Khokrakot, an old town near Rohtak, N.W.P.,

also silver coins from Basti in N. W. P. These coins are figured in Mr. Thomas's Prinsep Plate XXXIV., Figs. 12 and 13.

A letter from the Mineralogical Museum at Vienna, forwarding two specimen plates of meteorites, was read, and it was resolved to convey the Society's best thanks to the Museum.

Mr. Rehatsek then read a paper, "Specimens of pre-Islamic Poetry, selected and translated from the *Hamasa*."

On the motion of Rev. A. Bourquin, seconded by Mr. K. R. Kama, a vote of thanks was passed to Mr. Rehatsek for his paper.

Several books and pamphlets presented to the Society were laid on the table, and thanks voted to the donors.

The monthly meeting of the Society was held in the Library Room on Friday, the 8th April 1881, F. Mathew, Esq., in the chair.

The Secretary read the following letter from Mr. E. Leggett, forwarding Notes on Tatta and Tombs on the Muklee Hills, by the late Col. Southey; also six photographs of the tombs near Tatta.

"Dear Sir,—In 1866 I took a series of photographs of the tombs on the Muklee Hills near Tatta, from which in 1868 the accompanying six views were selected by the Government of Bombay, to whom I presented the negatives. These views were intended for publication with others of Architectural Structure in India, and are, I believe, still lying at the India Office.

"Being unable to obtain any authentic accounts of these tombs, and the neighbouring town of Tatta, I applied to the late Lieutenant-Colonel Southey, who was then Collector of Jerruck, and intimately acquainted with the locality, and was kindly favoured by him with the notes, which he had with considerable difficulty and research collected.

"I am not aware that these have ever been made public, and so far as I understand are the only reliable accounts there are of the tombs in Sind, and, as such, will no doubt be of interest and value.

"Yours truly,

"E. L."

It was resolved, on the motion of the Chairman, to convey the Society's best thanks to Mr. Leggett, and that it be left to the Committee to decide how the notes are to be disposed of.

Dr. da Cunha then read a paper on Contributions to the Study of Indo-Portuguese Numismatics, Third Part.

On the motion of Mr. E. Rehatsek, seconded by Rev. A. Bourquin, a vote of thanks was passed to Dr. da Cunha for his paper.

Several books, pamphlets, &c., presented to the Society, were placed on the table, and thanks voted to the donors.

As being *apropos* of the above, Surgeon-Major O. Codrington showed a large number of *larin* coins recently forwarded to the Society by the Collector of Tanna. Dr. Codrington said with regard to *larins* all that are now found on this side of India are of Indian make, and are, he believed, of the Adil Shahi dynasty of Bijapur. There appeared to be three varieties. I. Such as those now shown by Dr. da Cunha, short and stumpy. II. Nearly twice as long as No. I., and of thinner wire. III. Intermediate in length and thickness. A box containing 47 of these coins (of 2nd and 3rd variety) had lately been received from the Collector of Tanna. On these are found various portions of a legend, not yet made out in entirety, of Adil kings. On one of them is the date 992, which would be of the time of Ibrahim Adil Shahi II. On another is the Devanagri letter τ . Mr. Thomas gives as the average weight of *larins* 74·50 grains, and assay touch 96·5. Mr. Hynes of the Mint had examined these 47, and found the average weight to be 85·36 grains, and touch 97·9. Dr. Codrington had never seen a Persian *larin*, nor the half *larin* mentioned by Tavernier. The shape of the coins rendered them easy of carriage about the person, on the waist string or in pugri, and this, together with the simplicity of their make, was, he supposed, the object in making them of that shape. Dr. Codrington then showed a copy of a Chinese book on Numismatics, lately presented to him, in which were drawings of Chinese coins of various shapes and sizes, some being, according to the account of them, thousands of years old.

The monthly meeting of the Society was held in the Library Room on Thursday, the 26th May 1881, the Honorable Mr. Justice R. West, M.A., President, in the chair.

Gilmore McCormick, Esq., C.S., Tapidas Varajdas, Esq., J. A. da Gama, Esq., Dr. J. S. da Fonseca Torrie, Surgeon-Major O. Codrington, M.D., and E. T. Atkinson, Esq., were elected members of the Society.

The President moved that the best thanks of the Society be conveyed to Mr. W. M. Wood for his services during the four years he filled the office of Honorary Secretary.

The motion was carried by acclamation.

Mr. Rehatsek then read a paper entitled "Emporia, chiefly ports of Arab and Indian International Commerce before the Christian era."

On the motion of the President, a vote of thanks was passed to Mr. Rehatsek for his paper.

The monthly meeting of the Society was held in the Library Room on Friday, the 15th July 1881, the Honorable Rao Saheb V. N. Mandlik, C.S.I., *Vice-President*, in the chair.

Rastamjee N. Byramjee Jejeebhoy, Esq., and M. Macmillan, Esq., were elected members of the Society.

Read a letter from the Custos, Imperial Mineralogical Museum of Vienna, acknowledging receipt of the piece of the Dhoolia meteorite, and sending in exchange portion of one which fell at Tieschitz, Moravia, in 1878, and a piece of meteoric iron from Arva, Hungary, found in 1840; also asking information as to one said to have fallen at Rutnagherry in 1874.

The Rev. A. Bourquin read a paper entitled "Peculiarities of Hindu Rites and of their Times. Translation. With Notes of Chaps. 4—13 of Dharma Sindhu."

On the proposition of Honorable Rao Saheb V. N. Mandlik, C.S.I., seconded by Dr. J. Gerson da Cunha, a vote of thanks was passed to the Rev. Mr. Bourquin for his paper.

Dr. Codrington showed two coins kindly lent by the Collector of Bombay, which were found some weeks ago in Kalbadevi when the ground was opened for the Municipal drainage works. A large quantity were found but at once stolen.

The coins are similar to those described by Dr. Bhau Daji in the Society's Journal, page 211, Vol. XII., and later by General Cunningham in Vol. IX., Archaeological Survey Reports of India, and ascribed by General Cunningham to Krishna Raja Rastrakuta, whose date he fixes at A. D. 375-400. The coins being found deep in the ground in the centre of Bombay is a point of interest. Dr. da Cunha mentioned that just at the place in question was the oldest village in Bombay Island as far as was known. When the Portuguese took the island, the only native village on it was there.

Several books presented to the Society were laid on the table, and thanks voted to the donors.

(AUGUST TO DECEMBER.)

The monthly meeting of the Society was held in the Library Room on Saturday, the 6th August 1881, the Hon'ble Mr. Justice R. West, M.A., President, in the chair.

W. C. Holmes, Esq., C.S., and Captain G. Martin, were elected members of the Society.

Dr. J. C. Lisboa read a paper, "A Contribution to the Botany of Mahableshwar, with list of Plants seen on the Hill at the end of last Hot Season."

Dr. Lisboa remarked that the catalogue of plants in the *Bombay Flora* is still incomplete, and that there is much yet to be done to perfect it, and to ascertain what species are relatively abundant or scarce in the plains and hilly districts, and how their growth is affected by their location, climate and elevation; that the proportionate commonness of many plants is undergoing great changes by the destruction of some and the increased and cultivated growth of others. The present list of one hundred and fifty species in sixty-one orders was made at the end of last hot season at Mahableshwar, and is no doubt very imperfect, as being especially defective in ferns and grasses, which it would be necessary to study at another time of the year. Dr. Lisboa also advocated the formation of an herbarium at Mahableshwar, which might with advantage be in union with the one at Poona.

The President said he hoped the paper would be followed by others of a like kind in Botany, and that it would be useful for the promotion of this science for students of Botany to meet together in the hill sanitara and compare their notes. The formation of an herbarium would tend to the same effect. He proposed a vote of thanks to Dr. Lisboa, which was seconded by Dr. J. A. da Gama.

Dr. J. A. da Gama then presented to the Society, on behalf of Mr. Sidney St. Lawrence, a Nepalese man's saddle, a *Khiera*, and a *Kukri*, and gave a short description of their use.

Thanks were voted to Mr. Lawrence and Dr. da Gama.

Before the meeting separated the President, referring to the lamented death of Dr. Macpherson, said that had not the Meeting been specially fixed for this hour, it would have been adjourned as a token of affection and respect to his memory. He will be missed as an active member of this Society, of which he was a Vice-President, and the place he occupied on the committee will be looked upon with regret by the

members, who will cherish his memory both in that capacity and as a Christian minister whose place will not be easily filled.

Several books and pamphlets presented to the Society were placed on the table, and thanks voted to the donors.

A General Meeting of the Society was held in the Library on Wednesday, the 30th November 1881, the Honourable Mr. Justice R. West, M.A., President, in the Chair.

C. H. B. Forbes, Esq.; and Surgeon J. Macgregor, were elected Members of the Society.

The following proposals made in reference to periodicals were placed before the Meeting.

(1) By E. Atkinson, Esq.—

That all the *Year Round*; *Good Words*; *Temple Bar*; *Le Tour du Monde*; *Portfolio*; *Vanity Fair*; *Monthly Journal of Science*; *Nautical Magazine*; *Quarterly Journal of Microscopic Science*; *British Quarterly Review*; *Quarterly Review*; *Architect*; *Army and Navy Gazette*; *Builder*; *Chemical News*; *Guardian*; *Oliver and Boyd's Edinburgh Almanac*; *Nouvelle Revue*; *Bombay Catholic Examiner*; *Bombay Guardian*; *Friend of India*; *Journal of the Anjuman-i-Punjab*; *Bombay Educational Record*; and *Argus* be stopped.—*Lost*.

(2) By P. Peterson, Esq.—

That *Vanity Fair* be discontinued.—*Lost*.

That one first class French and one first class German Political newspaper be taken.

With reference to this Mr. M. A. Rogay proposed that the *République Francaise* be taken.—*Lost*.

There was no proposal about the German paper.

(3) By E. B. Carroll, Esq.—

That the *Architect* be discontinued.—*Lost*.

That the *Builder* be discontinued.—*Lost*.

That *L'Illustration* be taken.—*Lost*.

That the *Illustrate Zeitung* be taken.—*Lost*.

8 copper and 3 silver coins, presented by Mr. Vajeshankar Gowrisankar of Bhownuggur, were laid on the table.

A vote of thanks was passed to Mr. Vajeshankar for the present.

A Meeting of the Society was held on Monday, the 20th December 1881.

The Honourable Mr. Justice R. West, M.A., *President*; the Honourable Rao Saheb V. N. Mandlik, C.S.I., *Vice-President*, in the Chair at the beginning.

The Rev. Dr. Murray Mitchell read translations of select Abhangs from the Maratha Poet Tukârâm, and afterwards exhibited several Sanskrit MSS. brought by him from Japan.

On the proposition of Honourable Rao Saheb V. N. Mandlik, seconded by the President, a vote of thanks was passed to Dr. Murray Mitchell.

Several books and pamphlets presented to the Society were placed on the table, and thanks voted to the donors.

LIST OF PRESENTS TO THE LIBRARY.

(JANUARY TO AUGUST 1881.)

- A Catalogue of Sanskrit MSS. in the Library of H. H. the Maharaja of Bikaner. Compiled by Rajendralal Mitra. By the Government of India.
- Account of the British Settlement of Aden in Arabia. By F. M. Hunter. (Illustrated Edition.) By the Bombay Government.
- Administration Report of the Madras Presidency, 1879-80. By the Madras Government.
- Administration Report of the P. W. Department, Bombay Presidency, 1880-81. By the Bombay Government.
- A Imprensa em Goa. Por I. Gracias. By the Author.
- Annual Police Return, showing the state of Crime in the Town and Island of Bombay, 1880. By the Bombay Government.
- Annual Report of Dispensaries in the Punjab, 1879. By the Punjab Government.
- Annual Statement of the Trade and Navigation of British India for the year ending 31st March 1881. Vol. II.
- Archæological Survey of India Reports. Vols. X. and XI. By the Government of India.
- Archæological Survey of Western India. Cave-Temple Inscriptions. By J. Burgess and Pandit Bhagwanlal Indraji. By the Bombay Government.
- A Sketch of the Northern Baluchi Languages. By M. L. Dames. By the Bombay Government.
- Bombay Gazetteer. Vols. V. and VI., X., XII. By the Bombay Government.
- Bombay Magnetical and Meteorological Observations, 1871 to 1878. By the Bombay Government.
- Catalogue of newly-discovered Canarese and old Sanskrit MSS. in the Lahore Division. By the Punjab Government.
- Catalogue of Sanskrit MSS. in Oudh, Fas. XII., in the N. W. Provinces. By the Government N. W. P.

- Catechism of the History of India. By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.
- Classified Index to the Sanskrit MSS. in the Palace at Tanjore. By the Madras Government.
- Dom Ayres D'Ornellas da Vasconcelas. Por. I. A. Gracias. By the Author.
- Dinkard. Vol. III. By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.
- Eleventh Annual Report of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Surveys, 1877. By F. W. Hayden, Esq.
- Finance and Revenue Accounts of the Government of India, 1879-80. By the Government of India.
- Free Trade and English Commerce. By A. Mongredieu. By the Cobden Club, through Mr. Lal Mohun Ghose.
- General Report on the Operations of the Marine Survey of India, 1879-80. By the Superintendent, Marine Survey.
- General Report on the Operations of the Survey of India, 1879-80. By the Surveyor General of India.
- General Rules and Circular Orders of the High Court at Fort William in Bengal. By the Government of India.
- Glossary of the Multani Language. By the Punjab Government.
- Grammar of the Classical Arabic Languages. By M. S. Howell. By the Government N. W. P.
- Grammar of the Guadian Languages. By Hoernle. By the Bombay Government.
- G. T. Survey of India. Synopsis of the Results of the Operations. Vol. VII.
-
- Account of the Operations of the. Vol. VI. By the Government of India.
- Greenwich Magnetical and Meteorological Observations, 1878. By the Board of Admiralty.
- Guide to the Persian Language. By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.
- Haratattva Didhitih (Bengalee). By Raja Sourindro Mohun Tagore.
- Hindu Tribes and Castes. By M. A. Sherring. Vol. III. By the Bombay Government.
- History of the Commonwealth of the Magian Monarchies. By Jamshedji Pallonji (Gujarathi). By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.
- History of the Medical Art. By Heeraji Edulji. By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.

Indian Meteorological Memoirs. Vol. I. Part V. By the Government of India

Kehavata Mula. (Gujarathi.) By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.

Khordeha Avastha. (Gujarathi.) By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.

Lecture on Wealth and the Silver Question. (Gujarathi.) By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.

**List of Light Houses and Light Vessels in British India for 1881.
By the Superintendent, Marine Survey.**

Nirdosh Zulia. (Gujarathi.) By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.

Notes on Afghanistan and part of Baluchistan. By Major H. G. Raverty. By the Government of India.

Notice sur une Collection de Monnaies Orientales de M. le Comte S. Streigraff. By the Author.

Parliamentary Papers:—

Papers relating to the Advance of Ayub Khan on Kandahar.

Reports on Sanitary Measures in India, 1878-79.

Further Correspondence relating to affairs of Afghanistan.

Further Correspondence relating to the estimates for the War in Afghanistan.

Supplementary Report on Indian Wheat.

Army Indian (Home Charges).

Further Correspondence, Central Asia.

Further Correspondence and Papers about Afghanistan.

Papers respecting Medical Officers in India.

Return. East India. Finance and Revenue Accounts, 1879-80.

East India. (Net Revenue and Expenditure, 1869-70 to 1879-80.) By the Secretary of State for India.

Proceedings of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, U.S. Vol. VII. By the Academy.

Progress Report of District and Canal Arboriculture in the Punjab, 1879-80. By the Punjab Government.

Punjab Administration Report, 1879-80. By the Punjab Government.

Punjab Civil Report, 1879.—Report on the Working of the Registration Department. By the Punjab Government.

Reciprocity. By Sir Louis Mallet. By the Cobden Club, through Mr. Lal Mohun Ghose.

- Relatorio do Servico de Saude do Estado da India Portuguesa. Por
J. S. da Fonseca Torrie.
- Report of the Bombay Chamber of Commerce, 1879-80. By the
Secretary, Chamber of Commerce.
- Report of the Bombay Mill-owners' Association, 1880. By the Associa-
tion.
- Report of the Madras Chamber of Commerce, 1877-1880. By the
Madras Chamber of Commerce.
- Report of the Lahore Medical School, 1879-80. By the Punjab
Government.
- Report on Municipal Taxation and Expenditure in the Bombay Presi-
dency, including Sind, 1879-80. By the Bombay Government.
- Report on Popular Education, Punjab, 1879-80. By the Punjab
Government.
- Report on Public Instruction in Mysore for 1879-80. By the Chief
Commissioner, Mysore.
- Report on Publications issued and registered in the several Provinces
of British India during 1879. By the Government of India.
- Report on the Administration of the Hyderabad Assigned Districts,
1879-80. By the Resident, Hyderabad.
- Report on the Administration of the Meteorological Department of
Western India, 1880-81. By the Bombay Government.
- Report on the Administration of Mysore, 1879-80. By the Chief
Commissioner, Mysore.
- Report on the Amravati Tope. By R. Sewell. By the Bombay
Government.
- Report on the Internal Trade and Manufacture of the Punjab,
1879-80. By the Punjab Government.
- Report on the Irawaddy River. By the Chief Commissioner, British
Burma.
- Report on the Revenue Administration of the Punjab and its Depen-
encies, 1879-80. By the Punjab Government.
- Report on the Search for Sanskrit MSS. in the Bombay Presidency
during 1880-81. By Dr. F. Kielhorn.
- Do. do. do. By Prof. R. G. Bhan-
darkar. By the Director of Public Instruction.

- Review of the External Land Trade of British India, 1879-80. By the Government of India.
- Sacred Books of the East. Vols. VI.—IX. By the Secretary of State, through the Bombay Government.
- Saddar Keta (Gujarathi). By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.
- Smithsonian Report, 1879. By the Smithsonian Institution.
- Speeches of Richard Cobden. Edited by J. Bright and J. E. T. Rogers. By the Cobden Club, through Mr. Lal Mohun Ghose.
- Statistical Tables for British India. By the Government of India.
- The Cause of Color among Races. By Dr. W. Sharpe. By the Author.
- The Conqueror's Dream. By Dr. W. Sharpe. By the Author.
- The Norwegian North Atlantic Expedition, 1876-1878—
Zoology (Fishes).
Chemistry.
- The Plants and Drugs of Sind. By J. A. Murray. By the Kurrachee Municipal Museum Committee.
- The Wild Silks of India, principally Tassar. By the Bombay Government.
- Tide Tables for the Indian Port for 1881. } By the Bombay Government.
for the Port of Karwar, 1881. }
- U. S. Coast Survey Report, 1877. By the U. S. Coast Survey Department.
- United States Geographical Surveys. Vol. II.—VI. By Captain G. M. Wheeler.

(SEPTEMBER TO DECEMBER 1881.)

- Administration Report of the N. W. Provinces and Oudh for the year ending 31st March 1881. By the Government N. W. Provinces.
- Administration Report, Government Central Museum, Madras, 1880-81. By the Madras Government.
- A new English-Hindustani Dictionary. Part IV. By S. W. Fallon. By the Director of Public Instruction.
- Annual Report, Sassoon Mechanics' Institute, 1880-81. By the Institute.

- Annual Report on the Lunatic Asylums, Punjaub. 1880. By the Punjaub Government.
- Archæological Survey of India, Reports. Vols. X. and XI. By the Bombay Government.
- A Sketch of the Changars and of their Dialect. By G. W. Leitner. By the Punjaub Government.
- Astangahridayam. A Compendium of the Hindu System of Medicine. (Sanskrit.) By the Director of Public Instruction, Bombay.
- Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum. Vol. VI. By the Trustees of the Museum.
- Catalogue of Sanskrit MSS. in N. W. Provinces. Part VI.
— Oudh. Fasc. XIII. By the Government N. W. Provinces.
- Charts of Insectivorous Birds and Dangerous Snakes of Victoria. By the Government of Victoria.
- Charts of the Marine Survey of India. By the Superintendent, Marine Survey.
- Civil Report, Punjaub. 1880. By the Punjaub Government.
- Complete Dictionary of the Terms used by Criminal Tribes, Punjaub. By the Punjaub Government.
- Cotton Cultivation in the Punjaub. Report for 1879-80. By the Punjaub Government.
- Descriptive Atlas of the Eucalypts of Australia. By Baron F. von Mueller. By the Government of Victoria.
- Detailed Analysis of Abdul Ghafur's Dictionary of the Terms used by the Criminals in the Punjaub. By G. W. Leitner. By the Punjaub Government.
- Education in India. By J. Murdoch. By the Author.
- England's Duty to India. By J. Murdoch. By the Author.
- Fictions connected with the Indian Outbreak of 1857. By E. Leckey. By Sadashivá Balwantrao, Esq.
- Finance and Revenue Accounts of British India. 1st April 1871 to 31st May 1879. By the Government of India.
- Fragmenta Phytographiæ Australiæ. By F. de Mueller. Vols. 6—10. By the Government of Victoria.
- Gedacht Misrede auf Leonhard von Spengel. By the Munich Academy.

- G. T. Survey of India, Synopsis of Operations. Vols. X.—XIII. By the Government of India.
- Greenwich Magnetical and Meteorological Observations, 1879 (with Appendix). By the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty.
- Hatimatayi (Gujarathi). By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.
- Indian Meteorological Memoirs, Vol. I., Part. IV. By the Government of India.
- Indo-Aryans. By Rajendra Lála Mitra. By the Author.
- Intebébe Vandidad (Gujarathi). By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.
- Introduction to Botanic Teachings at the Schools of Victoria. By Baron F. von Mueller. By the Government of Victoria.
- Journal, North China Branch, R. A. Society. No. III. (1859) ; Vol. II. No. I. (1860) ; Nos. I. to IV., 1864-67 ; Nos. VI.—VIII., 1869-74 ; Nos. X. to XII., 1876-1878 ; and Catalogue of the Library. By the Society.
- Journal of the Ceylon Branch, R. A. Society, for 1845, 1846, 1855, 1865-6, 1871-74 and 1879. By the Society.
- Khordeha Avesta (Gujarathi). By the Sir Jamsetji Translation Fund Trustees.
- Manual of Persian Grammar. By S. B. Baria. By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.
- Maps of the G. T. Survey of India. By the Superintendent, G. T. Survey.
- of the Revenue Survey, Bombay Presidency. By the Bombay Government.
- Memorandum on Dyes of Indian Growth and Production. By L. Leotard. By the Government of India.
- Memorial of Joseph Henry. By the Smithsonian Institution.
- Native Plants of Victoria. By Baron F. von Mueller. By the Government of Victoria.
- Norwegian North Atlantic Expedition, 1876-1878. Zoology. *Gephyrea*. By the Norwegian North Atlantic Expedition Committee.
- Notes on Afghanistan and Parts of Baluchistan. By G. Raverty. By the Government of India.
- Noushirwáné Samangán : (a Drama in 4 acts in Gujarathi). By Jamshedji N. Petit, Esq.

On the Manufacture of Iron and the future of the Charcoal Iron Industry in India. By the Government of India.

Parliamentary Papers. By the Secretary of State for India :—

Military Services. (Special Rewards.)

Loans (India and England), 1857-58 to 1879-80.

Cooper's Hill College. (New Scheme of Management.)

East Indian Railway. (Redemption of Annuities Bill.)

Indian Loan of 1879 (Bill).

Afghanistan ; Further Correspondence.

East India Famine Commission Report, Appendix I.

Police Adminstration, Punjaub. Report for 1880. By the Punjaub Government.

Proceedings of the Literary and Philosophical Society, Liverpool. Vols. 33 and 34. By the Society.

Report of the Bengal Chamber of Commerce. From 1st November 1870 to 30th April 1881. By the Bengal Chamber of Commerce.

Report of the Commissioner of Agriculture, United States, 1878 and 79. By the Agricultural Department, U. S., through the Smithsonian Institution.

Report of the Meteorological Department of the Government of India, 1880-81. By the Government of India.

Report on the Administration of the Baroda State, 1879-80. By the Minister of Baroda.

Report on the External Land Trade of the Punjanb, 1880-81. By the Punjaub Government.

Report on the Jails of the Punjaub, 1880. By the Punjaub Government.

Report on the Meteorology of India, 1879. By the Government of India.

Review of the Forest Administration in the several Provinces under the Government of India, 1879-80. By the Government of India.

Select Plants readily eligible for Victorian Industrial Culture. By the Government of Victoria.

Seventeenth Annual Report of the Sanitary Commissioner for the Government of Bombay, 1880. By the Bombay Government.

Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge. Vol. 23. By the Smithsonian Institution.

Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections. Vols. 18—21. By the Smithsonian Institution.

Suggestions regarding the Management of leased Forests of Busahir in the Sutlej Valley. By Dr. Brandis. By the Punjab Government.

Survey Operations of India, General Report, 1879-80. By the Government of India.

The Great Pyramid, Why and when Built. By the Author.

Thirteenth Annual Report of the Sanitary Commissioner, N. W. Provinces and Oudh, 1880. By the Government N. W. Provinces.

Tide Tables for the Indian Ports for 1882.

————— Port of Bombay for 1882. By the Secretary of State for India through the Bombay Government.

Trade of British India. Statement for 5 years, 1875-76 to 1879-80. By the Government of India.

Trade and Navigation Accounts of British India, Nos. 1 to 8. 1881-82. By the Government of India.

Vinayapitakam. Edited by H. Oldenberg. Vol. III. By the Bombay Government.

Wheat Production and Trade of India: Selection from the Records of the Government of India. By the Government of India.

Wrecks and Casualties in Indian Waters, for 1880. By the Superintendent, Marine Survey.

PROCEEDINGS OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

(JANUARY TO DECEMBER 1882.)

A Meeting of the Society was held in the Library on Wednesday, the 1st February 1882; Honourable Mr. Justice R. West, *President*, in the Chair.

The Minutes of the last Meeting were read and confirmed. The following gentlemen were elected members:—George Moir, Esq., Thos. Forrest, Esq., Charles Lowell, Esq., Louis Penny, Esq., E. H. Moscardi, Esq., C.S., Captain W. W. Robinson, R. E., A. F. Beaufort, Esq., Surgeon K. R. Kirtikar.

Dr. Codrington read “Notes on Kutch and Kattywar Coins.” The series of Kutch coins, known in the bazar as Rāṣai Kori, extended from the time of Bharaji (A. D. 1500), to that of the late Rao Pragmalji II., and specimen coins and casts of coins of each Rao during that period were shown to the meeting. It was shown that the Kutch coins were made in imitation of those of the kings of Guzerat, the copper ones bearing, in addition to that of the reigning Rao, the name of Mahmud bin Latif, and the silver the name of Muzaffer Shah, the reason being that Rao Bharaji obtained permission to coin copper before he was allowed to coin silver, and Mahmud being king at the early part and Muzaffer at the later part of Bharaji’s reign. And that the same pattern with the same Guzerat king’s name and Hijra date 978 was continued on the Koris up to the time of Desalji II. (A. D. 1819) with but one exception, viz., that Lakhapatji for a time issued some, bearing the name of Ahmed Shah in addition to his own, but whether the Delhi Emperor or Durani king of that name was meant the author did not feel sure. The names and particulars of the different copper and silver coins with their value were then given, and the story told which is current in Kutch to account for the name Kori, viz., deriving it from Kamvari—a daughter. The author said he was not satisfied with it, but was not able to give another origin for the word, and looked for further information on this point as

well as on the origin of the size and weight of this coinage which, as far as he knew, was different to any other in India. The coinage of Kathiawad, very similar to the above, was then briefly described, including the Jam Sai of Navanagar, the Divan Sai of Junagar, and the Rana Sai of Porebunder.

On the motion of Mr. Javerilal Umashankar, seconded by the President, a vote of thanks was passed to Dr. Codrington for his paper.

Several books and pamphlets presented to the Society were placed on the table and thanks voted to the donors.

A Meeting of the Society was held in the Library on Friday, the 17th February 1882; Honourable Mr. Justice R. West, *President*, in the Chair.

The Minutes of the last Meeting were read and confirmed.

The following gentleman was elected member:—**Venerable Arch-deacon Stead.**

Mr. W. C. Holmes read a paper on Bi-Metallism, of which the following is an abstract:—"Bi-metallism is a system of currency under which gold and silver are jointly employed as money. The system will, it is claimed, afford three advantages:—first, it will prevent fluctuations in foreign exchanges; second, it will make money as a measure of value less liable to fluctuations than it would be under a gold and silver monometallic system; third, it will prevent contractions of the currency in the present gold-using countries. With regard to the first advantage, unless two countries have a common money (medium of exchange), there is no par of exchange, and the exchanges between them are liable to unlimited fluctuations. If they have a common money exchange, it cannot oscillate beyond the specie points. The second advantage is obtained owing to the irregularity in the supply of gold and silver; if both are used jointly as money, a more regular supply will be obtained. The third advantage is of a negative nature. If bi-metallism is not adopted, silver will be gradually demonetised in Europe and America, and its place will have to be taken by gold. This will cause a contraction in the currencies of gold-using countries, and such contractions are invariably followed by periods of 'stagnation'

of trade and enforced idleness.' There is no danger to be apprehended from the introduction of bi-metallism. The advantages of the system will not be counteracted by any disadvantages as to India. If fluctuations in the Indian exchanges are to end, the Indian Government must either somehow induce Europe to become bimetallic, or it must introduce gold money into India. It could do the latter only by declaring that some gold coin, such as the sovereign, shall be legal tender at some ratio which will induce people in India to import and keep gold circulating as money, that is, at some ratio that is a little above the market value of the gold coin. India should join France and the United States and do all she can to obtain the re-establishment of bi-metallism."

On the motion of the President, a vote of thanks was passed to Mr. Holmes for his paper.

Several books and pamphlets, presented to the Society, were laid on the table and thanks voted to the donors.

A Meeting of the Society was held on Wednesday, the 8th March 1882; the Honourable Mr. Justice R. West, *President*, in the Chair.

Mr. K. R. Cama was in the Chair at the commencement. The Minutes of the last Meeting were read and confirmed.

W. P. Symonds, Esq., C.S., was elected a member of the Society.

Rev. A. Bourquin read a paper entitled "Conclusion of the 1st part of Dharmasindhu. On fasts, oblations to deceased ancestors and bathing ceremonies, with illustrations of the intricacies of their times."

On the proposition of Prof. P. Peterson, seconded by Dr. J. C. Lisboa, a vote of thanks was passed to Rev. Bourquin for his paper.

Several books, pamphlets, &c., presented to the Society, were laid on the table, and thanks voted to the donors.

A Meeting of the Society was held on Thursday, the 25th May 1882; Brigade Surgeon J. Pinkerton, *Vice-President*, in the Chair.

The Minutes of the last Meeting were read and confirmed.

Rev. Dr. Fuehrer, Brigade Surgeon L. S. Bruce, Thomas Blissett, Esq., and Candido Xavier Cordeiro, Esq., were elected Members of the Society.

Mr. J. M. Campbell then read a paper by Pandit Bhagvánlál Indraji on antiquarian remains recently found on the west coast of the Thana District. The paper treated of two groups of remains: one belonging to Sopârâ, or Soparaka, the old capital of the Konkan, whose site is in the rich belt of garden land about five miles north of Bassein; the other on the top of a hill called Padañ, a bare flat block of trap about three miles south-east of Goregaon station on the Baroda Railway.

The Sopârâ remains come under three heads: I.—A fragment of rock on which are cut parts of the 8th of Aśoka's edicts, and so belonging to about B. C. 250. The stone was lying near the Bhatala tank in Sopârâ, but it appears that it was recently thrown there by a villager. No other pieces were found, but as the edict has in other places never been found separately, but always with twelve others, it is hoped some more of this or other edicts will eventually be discovered in the neighbourhood. It is a piece of basalt rock, which evidently had been broken off and used for some purpose. II.—Five inscriptions on smooth-topped basalt pillars on a hillock known as Brahma Tekri, near the village of Gâs, giving names in the genitive case. The letters are about a century later than the Aśoka character (a) "of Satrunardana" (somebody's name); (b) "of Datâ, the daughter of Bhîma;" (c) "of Badhu;" (d) "of Kaluvâda a Kotta," probably a man of the Koda or Kotta tribe; (e) "of Ugradevâ," a woman's name. These were, the Pandit considers, tombstones. III.—The Buddhist stûpa standing in a garden about half a mile west of Sopârâ.

Sopârâ was the capital of Aparanta or the Konkan, from B. C. 250 to A. D. 1265, and it appears as a holy city in Buddhist, Brahman, and Jain books. It is known that Aśoka sent one of his missionaries to Aparânta, and probably from Sopârâ, being the chief town, it was the centre whence Buddhism spread over Western India. It is honoured as being one of the birth-places of Gautama Buddha, and writers say that on his third journey to Ceylon, he visited Sapparaka. Brahmanical writers also speak of it as a holy place. The Mahâ-

bhārata mentions that Arjuna came to the very holy Śūrpāraka. Jain writers frequently mention Sopārā as one of their holy places. The Western Indian cave inscriptions contain six references to Sopārā. One at the Kārli cave of the beginning of the first century after Christ records gifts of money by Sātimita, son of Nandā, from Sopāraka. Ushavadāta, in the Násik cave inscription of the first century, records the gift of a house at Śorpaṛaga, and in another 32,000 cocoa-palms are given to some mendicants of the same place. The Nānāghāṭ inscription records a gift by one Govindadāsa of Sopāraya. About a century later, in the Kanheri caves, is recorded a gift by a merchant of Sopāraka, and in another, in the same caves, mention is again made of the place. Ptolemy has Supara in his list of Ariake ports. The author of the Periplus (A. D. 247) notices Ouppara as a local mart between Barugaza (Broach) and Kalliena (Kalyan). A. D. 545, Kosmas Indikopleustes has a doubtful reference under the name Sibor near Kalliana. A. D. 915, Maçudi mentions Sopara with Thana and Saimur. A. D. 1030, Al Biruni names Supara as forty miles north of Thana. In a grant of Silhāra King Ananta (A. D. 1096) exemption from certain tolls at Surppāraka is granted. A. D. 1135-45, Sopārā sent a delegate to a literary conference at Kashmir. A. D. 1153, Al Idrisi describes Subara as one of the emporiums of India. A. D. 1322, Jordanus went to Sopārā and buried there his four companions, who had been killed at Thana.

Modern Sopārā consists of about 600 houses, but there are signs of the old town having stretched over a much larger space than these occupy.

The stūpa is known by the name of Buruda Rājācha Kota, and there are stories connected with this Burud or Bamboo-worker King. It was originally a round plinth with a semi-circular dome on it, but about 50 years ago it was taken possession of by a Pathan fakir, who made a hiding place on the top for stolen property and his accomplices in theft, so now it is somewhat out of shape; it is about 30 feet high and 70 feet in diameter. To open the top a straight cutting was made to the centre, and about 12 feet from the top of the dome the chamber was come upon, seeming like a square hollow brick pillar of about 3 feet diameter with a pyramidal top. Within this, under a layer of about 2 feet of moist clay, a stone coffer was found carefully placed under 2 large bricks. Under the stone box was about four inches of clay, and then

the chamber was filled with bricks and clay, which were cleared out for several feet deep. In doing this, at a level of about 4 feet below the stone coffer, a frog leaped up. This frog the Pandit believes to be similar to some now found in the Kanheri cave cistern. Excavation to the base of the tope, where some more treasures may be buried, was not carried on. The Pandit then described the stone coffer and its contents, a general account of which, by Mr. Campbell, has already been given. Of the eight images seated round the copper vessel, that on the east is of the coming Buddha, the idea in so placing him being that on his attaining Buddha-hood he would come in by the principal gateway on the east, open the tope that side, and take out from the casket the bowl of the previous Buddha. The image is like that of a Bodhisattva, seated, the right leg hanging and resting on a lotus, the left half turned; the right hand in the "gift" position, the left raised above the elbow and holding a lotus branch with three flowers. A conical crown is on the head, and the figure wears the sacred thread, ear-rings, armlets, bracelets and anklets, and a waist-band. The next image to the right is one of Sákyamuni; the left hand, with palm open, is placed on the lap, while the right passes over the knee and touches the ground. On the pithika are branches of the pipal tree. To his right, again, is a figure with the right hand open in the lap, and the left touching the ground; the leaves above seem those of *ficus glomerata*, the Bodhi tree of Kanakamuni. The next is an image of Buddha in the blessing position, the left hand in the lap, the right raised with the open palm extended to the front; the leaves on this pithika are apparently those of a fig-tree, so the figure is probably that of Kásyapa. The next figure is in the position called "padma sana mudra;" the open palm of the right hand in that of the left. The leaves on his frame appear to be *acacia sirisi*; if so the figure would be that of Kukuchchanda. The next is Visvabhû, the left hand with open palm on the lap, the right hanging down in the "gift" position; the leaves are doubtful. The next is Śikhî in the "thinking" position, the open hands resting one on another in the lap; on his pithika are a lotus flower and leaves. The last is Vipasyî in the "teaching" position; on both sides behind him hang branches of leaves and a bunch of flowers of *Jonesia asoka*. The coin found in the copper box is very similar to a Kshatrapa coin; the legend is in old Nagari character, resembling that of Násik and Kanheri cave inscriptions. The Pandit reads it

"of the illustrious Yajna Śātakarṇī, son of Gotamī, Prince of Chaturapana," and considers that Chaturapana was the king's father's name, being added in addition to that of his mother Gotamī (for the Śātakarṇī kings were known by the mothers', not their fathers' proper names), in order to be more like the Kshatrapa coins, on which the father's name is given; the king being Gotami-putra II., whose date was A. D. 170 to 190. The relics contained in the gold casket were thirteen pieces of three kinds of earthen pots, from a quarter to one inch in length. The smallness of the pieces, carefully preserved with so much elaborate work in seven covers, from the gold casket to the large stupā, induces Pandit Bhagvánlál Indraji to be confident that they are pieces of the bowl of Gautama Buddha himself, which is described in Buddhist books as made of earth of a red or black colour.

The inscriptions and figures found sculptured on the bald head of Padañ Rock were then briefly described and impressions of them shown.

On the motion of Mr. Javerilal Umiashankar and Dr. Codrington, the thanks of the meeting were conveyed to Pandit Bhagvánlál Indraji and Mr. J. M. Campbell by the Chairman.

A Meeting of the Society was held on Tuesday, the 27th June 1882; Hon'ble Mr. Justice R. West in the Chair.

The Minutes of the last Meeting were read and confirmed.

The following gentlemen were elected Members:—Pandit Mohanlálā Vishnulálā Pandiá, Sámaldaan Kabi Rajá, Major H. S. Stock, E. McG. H. Fulton, Esq., C.S.

Rev. Dr. Fuehrer read a paper entitled "Manusāradhammasattham, the only existing Buddhist Law Book, compared with the Brahminical Mánavadharmaśástram," of which the following is an abstract :—

An authoritative work of reference on Buddhist law, or on such branches of it as have been declared by section four of the Burmah Courts Act (1875) to form the rule of decision of any question regarding succession, inheritance, marriage or caste, or any religious usage, or institution in cases where the parties are Buddhists, is still wanting. A part of this law is contained in the Pali Pipitaka, or

the Three Baskets, divided into the Vinayapitaka, Suttapitaka, and Abhidhammapitaka, or Discipline, Discourses, and Metaphysics. Of these, the Vinayapitaka contains many passages that are law with regard to the religious usages of the people, but the rules that govern the civil and criminal law among the laity are contained in totally distinct works, known generally as the Dhammasattham or Dhammasaṭṭham of "Manu." Of these Dhammasats there are in Burmah various versions with various titles. They profess generally to be based on the Pâli text of the Manusáradhammasattham, but contain also passages which have evidently been interpolated in later days to suit the changing forms of society. One of their most prominent characteristics is a total want of systematic arrangement. Various and often inconsistent provisions on cognate subjects are scattered here and there throughout these pages, and topics the most incongruous are jumbled up together, forming a strange *indigesta moles* of law and custom, ancient and modern, Hindu and Buddhist, Indian and Burman. Burman libraries contain many Dhammasats or treatises on law, written on palm-leaves, which treatises are looked upon as works of authority by native lawyers. Whilst such treatises exist only in this form, it need hardly be said that they are practically unavailable for the use either of the public or the courts. The number of copies is limited, and the tedium of poring over the hardly legible scratches on the palm-leaves is intolerable to a European. Burman historians ascribe the introduction of the Dhammasats to their progenitors, who, they believe, migrated from the plains of Hindustan some five or six centuries before the Christian era. This is a pure myth destitute of any foundation of truth, and invented in later days to support the pretensions of Burman monarchs to be the descendants of the solar kings of Oudh. Dr. Fuehrer states that the greatest part of the Burmese Dhammasats dates chiefly from the reign of the great king Anaw-ra-hta, whose capital was at Pagahm Myanh in the beginning of the eleventh century A. D. Under this monarch there was a great revival of religion, literature, and architecture, in Burmah, and communications with India and Ceylon appear to have been frequent.

The fact that nearly all Burmese Dhammasats are more Brahminical than Buddhist, favours the supposition that the original Brahminical law books were introduced from Manipur at this later

period, when Brahminism had regained the ascendancy over Buddhism in India. As the law books of Ceylon, Siam, Java and Bali are said to be based on the same standard authority of the Pâli *Manusâradhammasattham*, it would be surely interesting to compare the different versions with the Burmese in order to arrive at the correct test. But all inquiries of Dr. Fuehrer to get manuscripts from these places had no results. Therefore he restored the Pâli text of the *Manusâradhammasattham* according to indifferent Burmese palm-leaves manuscripts; a critical edition with an English translation he promises soon to publish. The Code of *Manusâra* contains, according to this text, 434 slokas, and is divided into ten chapters, which treat of everything relating to inherited property, donations, marriage, sons, divorce, and all other matters under the jurisdiction of the courts. The first chapter gives the mythical origin of the Dhammasat. Dr. Fuehrer proves that the Pâli Code of *Manusâra*, which forms the standard authority of Buddhist Law, was compiled in the time of king Byûmandhi, the third of the Pagahm dynasty, who reigned no less than 75 years at that capital, in the end of the second and the beginning of the third century of our era. Burman history records of this king that he erected many religious buildings, and caused books of law to be compiled for the benefit of his people. In a second paper Dr. Führer will show that *Manusâra* used in compiling his code is a more ancient version of the *Mânavadharma-sâstram* than that we now possess in our editions.

On the proposition of Professor Peterson, seconded by Dr. da Cunha, a vote of thanks was passed to Dr. Fuehrer for his paper.

A list of several books and pamphlets presented to the Society was read, and thanks voted to the donors.

The President observed that Dr. Fuehrer had found that the Burmese law book was derived from an earlier text of the Hindu law than that now commonly known. It is interesting that the procedure and constitution of courts take the most prominent position in the code, as is perhaps natural on the first establishment of law courts among a people. The division of substantive law was evidently copied from the Brahminical, as it is not on any scientific or logical system, but the arrangement is the same, in spite of this, in all Hindu Shastras.

A Meeting of the Society was held in the Library on Wednesday, the 19th July 1882 ; C. E. Fox, Esq., in the Chair.

The Minutes of the last Meeting were read and confirmed.

The following gentlemen were elected Members :—W. W. Loch, Esq., C.S., Surgeon-Major H. W. Graham, Rev. R. Scott, A. Abercrombie, Esq.

Dr. J. C. Lisboa read a paper “ Herbs and Tubers used as Food in India, during Famine Times.”

On the proposition of Dr. Atmaram Pandurang, seconded by Dr. J. Gerson da Cunha, a vote of thanks was passed to Dr. Lisboa for his paper.

A list of books, pamphlets, &c., presented to the Society was read and thanks voted to the donors.

A Meeting of the Society was held in the Library on Tuesday, the 10th October ; the Hon'ble Mr. Justice R. West, *President*, in the Chair.

The Minutes of the last Meeting were read and confirmed.

The following gentlemen were elected Members :—Vajeshankar Gowrishankar, Esq., and J. A. Cassells, Esq.

Dr. Codrington read a paper on a hoard of gold and silver coins found at Broach last March by labourers working in the Jamatkhana compound of the Parsee Punchayet. The collection was in an old brass *lota*, and consisted of 448 entire and some pieces of gold coins, 4 small gold ingots, and about 1,200 silver coins and pieces, comprising coins from Genoa, Venice, Egypt, Armenia, Persia and Delhi, and all, with the exception of one coin of dates included within the period from A. D. 1260 to 1380, or A. H. 658 to 782. From the character and dates of the coins it is concluded that the deposit was made by some one engaged in trade with Africa and Arabia on the one side, and the interior of India on the other, and towards the end of the 14th century ; 367 of the gold coins were of Mamluk Sultans of Egypt of the Bahree dynasty, 13 out of the 25 Sultans being represented by very fine specimens, amongst which were coins of Seyf-ed-deen Kaláoon, Seyf-ed-deen Aboo Bekr, Násir Shiháb-ed-deen Ahmed, and Kámil Seyf-ed-deen Shaaban, of whom the author believed no gold coinage had yet been described ; and several new varieties of the already known coins of some

other Sultans. Amongst the Persian were fine gold coins of Shah Shuja, Muzaffer ; Hosayn, Jelair ; and some struck at Kerman with no name. And of Pathan kings of Delhi, new varieties of Ghias-ud-din Tughlak, and of Muhammad bin Tughlak bearing the name of an Egyptian khalif; besides some fine specimens of others already described, including two of Mahmud bin Muhammad bin Tughlak, a child who was put upon the throne for a few weeks or days. The gold coins of Genoa were beautiful quartardos marked *Conrad Rex Romanorum*, and the Venetian sequins, of which there were 33, bore the names of six of the Doges reigning between A. D. 1339 and 1368. The majority of the silver coins were also of the Bahree Mamluks, bearing the names of nearly all the Sultans of whom there were specimens in gold. Many varieties of a Persian coin struck, it would appear, at Baghdad from A. H. 750 to 788, were then described. Some were marked with a figure of a lion, others a pigeon, a fish, two fishes, a crane, a peacock, a duck, and bore the names Ali, Al Abbas, Daood, Yoosuf, Hussan. There were also some varieties of Shah Shuja and Sheyk Oweys. The Armenian silver coins bore on one side a figure of a crowned king on horseback, and on the other a lion with a marginal legend in old Armenian characters, which had been read *King Leo, King Constantine, town of Sis, town of Kars*. Several of these had been again struck with the die of a Mamluk Sultan, Nasir Mahummad ; and the author attributed them to Constantine II., who reigned in Cilicia from A. D. 1298 to 1300, and to Leo V., during whose reign, about the year 1332, the country was invaded by the Mamluk Sultan Nasir Mahummad.

A letter from Colonel Sturt, 17th N. I., was then read, describing the finding of some coins, pottery, glass, and shell ornaments in the ruins of the buried city of Nadir Shah, near Thul Chotiali. The coins were exhibited and described by the Secretary as Kufic of Amawee and Abbassee Khalifs, of Wasit mint, A. H. 85, 92, and 115, of Abra-Shahr A. H. 106, and of Samarkhand 201.

On the motion of Colonel White and Dr. Graham, a vote of thanks was passed to the authors.

The President then proposed a vote of thanks to Mr. J. M. Campbell, for the handsome cabinet, to contain the Sopârà relics, presented by him to the Society.

A Meeting of the Society was held in the Library on Tuesday, the 14th November 1882; Honourable Mr. Justice R. West, *President*, in the Chair.

The Minutes of the last Meeting were read and confirmed.

The following gentlemen were elected members:—E. M. Slater, Esq., L. R. W. Forrest, Esq.

Dr. Fuehrer read a paper entitled “*Manusāradhammasattham*, the only one existing Buddhist law book, compared with the Brahminical *Mānavadharmaśāstram*” (conclusion of a former paper), of which the following is a short extract:—For all students of Pali philology and comparative jurisprudence, *Manusāra*'s Digest of Buddhist law possesses a special interest beyond that attaching to other works of the same class. The original elements of the Buddhist law, as prevailing in Burma, have undoubtedly an ancient origin, and are intimately allied to the Brahminical codes of Manu, Yajñavalkya, Nārada, Bṛihaspati, and Katyayana. But laws, from whatever sources derived, must, in process of time, accommodate themselves to the genins, the habits, the propensities, and, in some measure, to the geographical position of the people who use them. Independent of that interest naturally attached by the reflecting portion of mankind to whatever contributes to elucidate the various degrees of mental energy possessed by different nations, and to the exposition of the many cases which may, at different periods, have increased or diminished it, there are, as in this instance, frequently local circumstances tending to connect practical utility with the subject. In the investigation before us some degree of local interest may be said to attach. There is a considerable population of Burman Buddhists who are placed under British rule, and who are consequently subject to an English Court of Judicature. In a political point of view also, it is presumed, that we ought not to be ignorant of the real character, prevailing ideas, and capacities of a people so circumstanced, or of the laws and institutions affecting them. It is likewise supposed that the principles of the Burmese law will prove to be pretty fair transcripts of the codes prevalent in Hindustan. It may be premised that the practice of following precedents has made it easy to evade the law in many instances; hence some customs will occasionally in Burma be found at variance with the law. It is plain that the largest portion of the Burmese law is of Hindu origin, though we have yet

no sure clue by which to trace all the steps of its progress from Hindustan. These codes are abundantly supplied with Pali ordinances for the regulation of moral conduct, and for the due performance of religious duties and rites. In order to show how far the law-book of *Manusāra* relies upon the different Brahmanical codes, Dr Fuehrer gave a complete outline of the civil and criminal law according to its statements, and compared it with that of the Hindu law. As regards the Buddhist law of inheritance, *Manusāra* says, that the property of an intestate person, should he leave no legal heirs, escheats to the king, who contrives generally to get a portion of the estate of every person deceased. Wills are written or made verbally in the presence of competent witnesses and may not be confounded with alienation to gift. Real and personal property may be willed and gifted away to any one, and as hereditaments, descend to, and are without distinction divided amongst the heirs-at-law. The law of inheritance is considered as applying chiefly to heads of families. Under this view, the property of a man deceased is divided into three portions, one goes to the parents and grandparents, one to the widow, and the third to the children and other relatives on the man's side, according to priority. Finally, Dr. Fuehrer proved by two remarkable instances that *Manusāra* in compiling his *Dhammasaṭṭham* used a more ancient version of the *Manavadharmaśāstram* than that we now possess in our editions.

On the proposition of the President, seconded by Dr. da Cunha, a vote of thanks was passed to Dr. Fuehrer for his paper.

The President remarked that he was glad to see amongst the members present, their former President, the Honourable James Gibbs, who always took great interest in the affairs of the Society.

A General Meeting of the Society was held on Wednesday, the 29th November 1882, the Hon'ble Mr. Justice R. West, *President*, in the Chair.

The following proposals were placed before the Meeting :—

(1) By the Venerable Archdeacon Stcad—

That the "Journal des Debats" be added to the Society's list of periodicals.—*Carried.*

(2) By N. S. Symons, Esq.—

That "Baily's Magazine" be taken.—*Lost.*

(3) By Javerilal Umiashankar, Esq.—

That "St. James' Budget," "Indu Prakash," and the "Quarterly Journal of the Poona Sarvajanik Sabha" be taken.—*Carried.*

(4) By Prof. P. Peterson—

That "Longman's Magazine," "Harper's Magazine," and "Church Quarterly" be taken.—*Carried.*

It was resolved to discontinue the following :—

"Architect," "Literary Journal," "Friend of India," "Overland Mail," "Bombay Educational Record."

A Meeting of the Society was held on Tuesday, the 12th December 1882, the Hon'ble Mr. Justice R. West, *President*, in the Chair.

The Minutes of the last Meeting were read and confirmed.

A paper by Mr. J. F. Fleet was read, describing the inscriptions on a copper plate grant of the Dévagiri-Yádava King Siúghana II. found in 1880 buried in the ground at the back of the temple of the goddess Udachama at Harañahalli on the Tungabhadrá, in the Karájgi Táluká of the Dhárwád district. The inscription is dated Śaka 1160 for 1159 (A. D. 1237). The genealogical portion commence with Mallugi. His grandson Jaitugi I. is said to have conquered the Andhra King, and his son Singhana II. described as having conquered the Gaulas, Hammíras and Chôlas and others. It then describes the rivers Vârâhi and Tungabhadrá, mentions a shrine of the god Sômanâtha and two other Linga shrines of the gods Chikkadéva and Mahâdéva, and then records how a feudatory of Singhana II., the (Dandésa) Chikkadéva established a colony of Brâhmaṇas and presented them with lands at the village of Rittigrâma, which the description shows to be the modern Hale-Ritti, six miles east of Karajgi. Eleguthîr, Kariyakol, Ereyakol, and Kumbâragol villages mentioned in the boundaries, and the river Vârâhi cannot be traced on the map.

Dr. J. Gerson da Cunha then read Part IV. of his paper on Indo-Portuguese Numismatics, embracing the period from 1730 to the present time, preceded by a description of some inedited specimens brought to light during the interval which has elapsed since presentation of the former parts of the paper. These coins were a

bazarucco of the time of D. João de Castro, the specimen of which in the cabinet of the King of Portugal was considered to be unique until a find of about a thousand at Vehar, in Salsette, was made as reported in the Archæological Report of Western India, No. 10. A xerafim, dated 1593, a very rare coin, and a double xerafim of 1671. A tanga struck for circulation at Malacca, about 1638, when pecuniary help from Goa was sent to that place then threatened by the Dutch. It bears on the obverse the effigy of St. Philip in honour of King Philip III. of Portugal and IV. of Spain, as it was then often the custom to impress the figure of the saint of the king's name instead of his own portrait. The history of Indo-Portuguese coinage from A. D. 1730 in chronological sequence, and illustrated with examples, was then given. Beginning with the Rupia of D. João V. and its sub-divisions, the author explained the origin of this word now so common in India. It came into use, according to the testimony of Abul Fazel, during the reign of Shir Shah. It is met with for the first time in an authentic official document of 1668, but as that of a foreign coin along with Persian abasis, sadis, &c. Two years before there was in circulation a silver coin called a double xerafim, and this later on was named rupia, a denomination that has been preserved up to the present time, the Mogul Emperors and the E. I. Company helping to make it still more familiar to us. The origin was traced to two Sanskrit sources, viz., rupya used by Panini in the sense of "struck," derived from rupa "form," "shape," or rupayam "silver," the latter being the more probable, as the term was applied to silver coins only. The weight of the rupee was traced up to very early times in the Aryan satarktika, the even 100 rati weight which formed the basis of the standard gold and silver tankas of the Pathans. Dr. da Cunha then described the gold, copper and tutenag coinages of the reign of the same monarch, giving in detail accounts of the roda and the bazarucco, and the imitation of the latter by the British in India to meet probably the facilities of commerce. The roda, which means "wheel," had the S. Catherine wheel impressed on one of its sides, symbolical of the conquest of Goa by the Portuguese on that saint's day, and which is also the emblem of the old senate, the municipal chambers, and of the Metropolitan See of Goa. The bazarucco, and the coin issued by the E. I. Company at Bombay, and called budbrook, is supposed to be derived from two Hindustani words, bazar and rok "ready-money," i.e. "market cash," this being the smallest

Annual Statement of the Trade and Navigation of British India for the year ending 31st March 1881, Vol. II. By the Government of India.

Annual Statement of the Trade and Navigation of British India for the year ending 31st March 1882, Vol. I. By the Government of India.

Annual Report on the Lunatic Asylums in the Punjab, 1881. By the Punjab Government.

Appendix to "Changars and "Linguistic Fragments." By G. W. Leitner. By the Punjab Government.

Archæological Survey of India Report, Vol. XII.-XIX. By the Government of India.

Archæological Survey of Southern India, No. 3. The Amravati Stûpa. By the Bombay Government.

A Treatise on the Parsee New and Leap Years (Gujerathi). By Jamsetji N. Petit, Esq.

Anoditch Prakash (Gujerathi). By the Author.

Brief Sketch of the Meteorology of the Bombay Presidency in 1881. By the Meteorological Reporter, Western India.

Catalogue of Sanskrit MSS. in Oudh, for 1881.

in the N. W. Provinces, Part VII. By the Government of N. W. Provinces.

Chronological Tables for Southern India from the 6th Century A. D. By R. Sewell. By the Madras Government.

Commentaries on the Zoroastrian Religious Ceremonies. By Môbed Aspendiarji Burjorji. By Jamshedji N. Patel, Esq.

Comte Rendu de la Troisième, Congrès Provincial des Orientalistes. Session 1878. By the Musée Guimet.

Della Capacita delle Fosse Nasali. By Prof. P. Mantegazza. By the Author.

Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts of the Bombay Presidency. By J. F. Fleet. By the Bombay Government.

Explorateurs du Cambodge. Par le Marquis de Rozier. By the Musée Guimet.

Finance and Revenue Accounts of the Government of India. By the Government of India.

Finance and Revenue Accounts, British India. Part II., 1st April 1872 to 31st March 1880. By the Government of India.

LIST OF PRESENTS TO THE LIBRARY.

(FROM JANUARY TO DECEMBER 1882.)

- Administration Report on Railways in India, 1880-81. By the Government of India.
- Administration Report, Hyderabad Assigned Districts, 1880-81. By the Resident, Hyderabad.
- Administration Report of Bengal, 1880-81. By the Bengal Government.
- Administration Report of the Bombay Presidency for 1880-81. By the Bombay Government.
- Administration Report of the Madras Presidency, 1880-81. By the Madras Government.
- Administration Report of the P. W. Department, Bombay Presidency. By the Bombay Government.
- Agulha Fixa. J. A. Gracias. By the Author.
- Alcohol; a Factor in Human Progress. By. W. Sharpe. By the Author.
- Ancient India as described by Ktesias the Knidian. By J. M. McCrindle. By the Author.
- Annales du Musée Guimet, 3 vols. By the Musée Guimet.
- Anniversary Memoirs of the Boston Society of Natural History, 1830-80. By the Society.
- Annual Police Returns showing the State of Crime in the Town and Island of Bombay, 1881. By the Bombay Government.
- Annual Report of Dispensaries in the Punjab, 1880. By the Punjab Government.
- Annual Report of the Bombay Jails, 1881. By the Bombay Government.
- Annual Statement of the Trade and Navigation, Bombay Presidency, Vols. 1 & 2, 1877-78; Vols. 1 & 11, 1878-79, 1879-80, and 1880-81.
- Annual Statement of Sind, 1878-79 to 1880-81. By the Bombay Government.

Annual Statement of the Trade and Navigation of British India for the year ending 31st March 1881, Vol. II. By the Government of India.

Annual Statement of the Trade and Navigation of British India for the year ending 31st March 1882, Vol. I. By the Government of India.

Annual Report on the Lunatic Asylums in the Punjab, 1881. By the Punjab Government.

Appendix to "Changars and "Linguistic Fragments." By G. W. Leitner. By the Punjab Government.

Archæological Survey of India Report, Vol. XII.-XIX. By the Government of India.

Archæological Survey of Southern India, No. 3. The Amravati Stûpa. By the Bombay Government.

A Treatise on the Parsee New and Leap Years (Gujerathi). By Jamsetji N. Petit, Esq.

Anoditch Prakash (Gujerathi). By the Author.

Brief Sketch of the Meteorology of the Bombay Presidency in 1881. By the Meteorological Reporter, Western India.

Catalogue of Sanskrit MSS. in Oudh, for 1881.

in the N. W. Provinces, Part VII. By the Government of N. W. Provinces.

Chronological Tables for Southern India from the 6th Century A. D. By R. Sewell. By the Madras Government.

Commentaries on the Zoroastrian Religious Ceremonies. By Mobed Aspendiarji Burjorji. By Jamshedji N. Patel, Esq.

Comte Rendu de la Troisième, Congrès Provincial des Orientalistes. Session 1878. By the Musée Guimet.

Della Capacita delle Fosse Nasali. By Prof. P. Mantegazza. By the Author.

Dynasties of the Kanarese Districts of the Bombay Presidency. By J. F. Fleet. By the Bombay Government.

Explorateurs du Cambodge. Par le Marquis de Rozier. By the Musée Guimet.

Finance and Revenue Accounts of the Government of India. By the Government of India.

Finance and Revenue Accounts, British India. Part II., 1st April 1872 to 31st March 1880. By the Government of India.

Genealogy of Modern Numerals. Sir E. C. Bayley. By the Author.

General Report, Marine Survey of India, 1880-81. By the Superintendent Marine Survey of India.

General Report on the Operations of the Survey of India, 1880-81
By the Surveyor General of India.

Hakluyt Society's Publications :—

Portuguese Embassy to Abyssinia.

History of the Indies, Vol. II.

Baffin's Voyages, 1612-22. By the Secretary of State,
through the Bombay Government.

Handbook of the Collection illustrative of the Wild Silks of India.
By Thos. Wardle. By the Bombay Government.

Historia de la Geografia en Mexico. Par M. O. Berra. By the Author.

Il Terzo Molare nelle Razze Umane. By Prof. P. Mantegazza By the Author.

Imperial Gazetteer, N. W. P. By A. Tupp, Esq.

Indian Civil Service and the Competitive System. By A. C. Tupp.
By the Author.

Indian Civil Service List, October 1880. By A. C. Tupp. By the Author.

Indian Meteorological Memoirs, Vol. I. By the Government of India.

International Monetary Conference, 1878. By A. Tupp, Esq.

International Monetary Conference lately sitting at Paris. Copy of Correspondence. By A. Tupp, Esq.

Irrigation Revenue Report of the Bombay Presidency, 1880-81.
By the Bombay Government.

Lane's Arabic English Lexicon, Vols. 1 to 6, and Fasc. I. of Vol. VII. By the Government of India.

Latin and Greek Verse Translations. By C. D. Maclean. By the Author.

Le Mouvement Économique en Portugal et Le Vicomte de San Januari. Par E. Gibert. By the Musée Guimet.

Lettres Inédites de Malherbe. By H. Curjel, Esq.

License Tax Report, Punjab, 1880-81. By the Punjab Government.

Linguistic Fragments. By G. W. Leitner. By the Punjab Government.

List of Light-Houses and Light Vessels in British India, corrected up to 1st January 1882. By the Superintendent, Marine Survey.

Mackenzie Collection, a Descriptive Catalogue. By the late H. H. Wilson. By the Madras Government, and the Director of Public Instruction, Bombay.

Malaria, its Causes and Effects. By E. G. Russell. By the Director of Public Instruction.

Max Müller's Hibbert Lectures on the Origin and Growth of Religion. Translated into Gujarathi. By Jamshedji N. Patel, Esq.

Memorandum upon current Land Revenue Settlements in the temporarily settled parts of British India. By the Government of India.

Musée Guimet; Catalogue des objets exposés. By the Musée Guimet.

Newcastle-upon-Tyne Public Libraries, Catalogue and Annual Report, 1880-81. By C. Angus, Esq., through Dr. J. Gerson da Cunha.

New English-Hindustani Dictionary. By S. W. Fallon. Parts 5-10. By the Director of Public Instruction.

Note on an Indian Earthquake. By P. Doyle. By the Author.

Note on Local Self-Government in the Bombay Presidency. By Javerilal Umiashanker. By the Author.

Notes on Buddhist Law. John Jardine. By the Author.

Norwegian North Atlantic Expedition—

- Part IV. 1. Historical Account.
- 2. The Apparatus and how used.

- Part V. 1. Astronomical Observations.
- 2. Magnetical Observations.
- 3. Geography and Natural History. By the Committee of the Expedition.

Nuovi Studi Craniologici sulla Nuova Guinea. By Prof. P. Mantegazza. By the Author.

Oriental Biographical Dictionary. By the late Thos. Beale. By the Asiatic Society of Bengal.

Oriental Studies. H. Nevill. Part II. By the Author.

Panini's Eight Books of Grammatical Sutras. Edited with English Translation. By W. Goonetilleke, Vol. I., Part. I. By the Ceylon Branch, R. A. S.

Paris Monetary Conference, 1881. By A. Tupp, Esq.
Parliamentary Papers :—

- Finance and Revenue Accounts, 1880-81.
- East India Financial Statement, 1882-83.
- Southern Maratha Railway.
- P. W. Expenditure, 1873-74 to 1882-83.
- Bombay Civil Fund.
- Army, Cost of Native Troops.
- Revised Retirement Regulations, 1881.
- Special retirement in consequence of the reduction in the Native Army.
- Rules for limitation of Tenure of Regimental Command.
- Petroleum Testing.
- Loans raised in India.
- Punishment of Whipping under sentences of the Criminal Courts of India.
- Home Charges Arrears Bill.
- Opium (Negotiations with China).
- Report on Railways in India, 1881-82.
- East India Report of Famine Commission. Appendix V.
Irrigation as a protection against Famine.
- Report of Famine Commission. Appendix II.
Proceedings of the Commission and Selected Evidence.
- Central Asia. Correspondence.
- Cooper's Hill College. New Scheme of Management.
- Afghanistan. Grants to the Ameers.
- Afghan War. Grant-in-aid.
- Army Indian. Home Charges. Appropriation Account.
- East India. Loans raised in India.
- Loans raised in England.
- Central Asia. Further Correspondence. By the Secretary of State for India.
- Statistical Abstract relating to British India, 1870-71 to 1879-80. By the Secretary of State for India.

Parliamentary Papers :—

Report on Sanitary Measures in India in 1879-80. Vol. XIII.

Return relating to Banks (East India and the Colonies).

India. Prevention of Famine.

East India. Progress and Condition, 1879-80.

International Monetary Conference, 1881.

East India. Home Accounts 1880, 1881-82. By the Secretary of State for India.

Persian Grammar. By Pestonji Cooverji. By the Author.

Police Report of the Bombay Presidency, 1880. By the Bombay Government.

Proceedings of the Council of the Governor of Bombay, 1881. Vol. XX. By the Bombay Government.

Progress Report of District and Canal Arboriculture in the Punjab, 1880-81. By the Punjab Government.

Progress Report of Forest Administration in the Punjab, 1881-82. By the Punjab Government.

Report of the Bengal Chamber of Commerce, 1881. By the Chamber.

Report of the Bombay Chamber of Commerce, 1880-81. By the Chamber of Commerce.

Report of the Bombay Mill-Owners' Association, 1881. By the Association.

Report of the Director of Public Instruction, Bombay Presidency, 1880-81. By the Director of Public Instruction.

Report of the Jamnagar Post Office Robbery Case (Gujerathi). By Mathuradas Laoji, Esq.

Report on Borings in India. (Selection from the Records of the Government of India.) By the Bombay Government.

Report on Cotton Cultivation in the Punjab, 1880-81. By the Punjab Government.

Report on Excise Administration in the Punjab, 1881-82. By the Punjab Government.

Report on Municipal Taxation and Expenditure, Bombay Presidency, 1880-81. By the Bombay Government.

Report on Popular Education, Punjab, 1880-81. By the Punjab Government.

Reports on Publications issued and registered in the several Provinces of British India during 1880. By the Government of India.

Report on Public Instruction in Mysore, 1880-81. By the Resident at Mysore.

Report on Sanskrit MSS. in the Bombay Presidency, 1881-82. By the Bombay Government.

Report on the Administration of Criminal Justice in the Punjab, 1881. By the Punjab Government.

Report on the Administration of Mysore, 1880-81. By the Resident at Mysore.

Report on the Administration of the Central Provinces, 1881-82. By the Chief Commissioner, C. P.

Report on the Administration of the Inland Customs Department, 1867-68 to 1874-75 and 1876-77 to 1880-81. By the Government of India, through the Commissioner, Inland Customs Department.

Report on the Administration of the Meteorological Department of the Government of India, 1881-82. By the Government of India.

Report on the Administration of the Northern India Salt Revenue, 1881-82. By the Government of India.

Report on the Administration of the Registration Department, Punjab, 1881-82. By the Punjab Government.

Report on the Administration of the Stamp Department, Punjab, 1881-82. By the Punjab Government.

Report on the Census of Berar, 1881. By the Chief Commissioner, C. P.

Report on the Census of British Burma taken on 17th February 1881. By the Bombay Government.

Report on the Coorg General Census, 1881. By the Bombay Government.

Report on the External Land Trade of the Punjab, 1881-82. By the Punjab Government.

- Report on the Internal Trade and Manufacture of the Punjab, 1880-81. By the Punjab Government.
- Report on the Jails of the Punjab, 1881. By the Punjab Government.
- Report on the Meteorology of India in 1880. By the Government of India.
- Report on the Police Administration in the Punjab, 1881. By the Punjab Government.
- Report on the Revenue Administration, Punjab, 1880-81. By the Punjab Government.
- Report on the Revised Land Revenue Settlement of the Rohtak District in the Punjab. By the Punjab Government.
- Report on the Sanitary Administration of the Punjab, 1880-81. By the Punjab Government.
- Report on the Working of the Registration Department, Punjab, 1880-81. By the Punjab Government.
- Report upon the U. S. Geographical Surveys. Vol. VII. By the Engineer Department, U. S. Army.
- Return of Wrecks and Casualties in Indian Waters for 1881. By the Superintendent of Marine Survey.
- Review of the External Land Trade of British India, 1880-81 and 1881-82. By the Government of India.
- Review of the Forest Administration in the several Provinces under the Government of India. 1880-81. By the Government of India.
- Review of the Maritime Trade of British India. 1881-82. By the Government of India.
- Review on the Municipal Administration, Punjab, 1880-81. By the Punjab Government.
- Riforma Craniologica. By Prof. P. Mantegazza. By the Author.
- Sacred Books of the East. Edited by F. Max Müller. Vols. 8, 10, 11, 12, 13 and 16. By the Secretary of State for India.
- Saggio sulla Trasformazione delle Forze Psichiche. Professor Paolo Mantegazza. By the Author.
- Smithsonian Report, 1880. By the Smithsonian Institute.
- Statistical Account of Bengal. W. W. Hunter. Vols. 1, 3, 4 and 6 to 10. By the Bombay Government.

- Statistical Account of Assam. W. W. Hunter. Vols. I and II. By the Bombay Government.
- Statistical Tables for British India, 1882. By the Government of India.
- Suggestions regarding Forest Administration in the N. W. Provinces and Oudh. By the Government of India.
- Supplément aux Dictionnaires Arabes. Par R. Dozy. By the Government of India.
- Tide Tables for the Port of Bombay, 1883. By the Government of India.
- Tin Mining in Larut. By P. Doyle. By the Author.
- Transactions, Medical and Physical Society of Bombay. New Series. No. I. By the Bombay Government.
- U. S. Coast and Geodetic Survey. Report 1878. By the U. S. Coast Survey.
- Verahandbrugen des Orientalisten-Congresses. By Professor Weber.
- Vinayapitakam. By H. Oldenberg. Vol. IV. By the Secretary of State for India.

LIST OF ADDITIONS TO THE MUSEUM.

FROM JANUARY 1880 TO DECEMBER 1882.

- 6 Gold Huns of Southern India, found in the Ahmednagar District. Purchased.
- 100 Lead Coins, Andhrabhritya. Presented by the Madras Government.
- 3 Gold Pathan Coins; two of Muhammed bin Tughlak, and one of Alla Uddin Muhammed Shah, found in the Budaun District. Purchased.
- 10 Gold Viraraya Fanams, found in the Chinglepat District. Presented by the Madras Government.
- 10 Silver Coins, Indo-Sassanian, found in the Basti District. Purchased.
- 12 Silver Larin Coins, found in the Thana District. Purchased.
- 2 Modern Indian Rupees, found in the Ahmednagar District. Purchased.
- 10 Copper Indo-Sassanian Coins, found in the Rohtak District. Presented by the Government of India.
- 20 Modern Indian Rupees, found in the Kulladgha District. Presented by the Bombay Government.
- 32 Copper Pathan Coins, Sikandar Lodi, found in the Bahraich District. Purchased.
- 2 Silver Coins of Krishna Raja Rashtrakuta, found in Cavel Street, near Kalbadevi Road, Bombay. Presented by the Collector of Bombay.
- 11 Copper Coins, Indo-Sassanian, found in the Nassick District. Purchased.
- 20 Goa Silver Coins. Purchased.
- 3 Copper Plates bearing a grant of King Singhana II., found in the village site of Harijahalli in Karajaji Taluka of the Dharwar District. Presented by the Bombay Government.
- 12 Whole and 8 half Goa Rupees. Purchased.
- 1 Goa Rupee, A. D. 1824. Purchased.

- 4 Silver Coins, found at Sawant Wari. Purchased.
- 6 Silver Coins of Samanta Deva, King of Kabul, found in the Hoshiarpur District. Purchased.
- 1 Double gulden piece, struck in celebration of the Silver Wedding of the Emperor and Empress of Austria, 24th April 1879. Purchased.
- 4 Silver Coins, found in the Belgaum District. Purchased.
- 1 Gold Hun, found in the Ahmednagar District. Purchased.
- 10 Silver and 20 Copper Coins, Kshatrap and Modern Indian. Presented by Vajeshankar Gowrishankar, Esq.
- 10 Silver Kshatrap Coins, found at Karangui, Sattara District. Presented by the Pant Pratinidhi.
- Buddhist Relics, found at Sopârâ, near Bassein. Presented by the Bombay Government.
- 5 Kufic Coins and pottery, glass and shell ornaments, found in the ruins of the city of Nadir Shah, near Thal Chotiali. Presented by Col. Sturt.
- 37 Gold and 286 Silver Coins (Mamluk, Pathan, Persian, Armenian, Genoa) found at Broach. Purchased.
-

